

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
DEPARTMENT OF ARCHAEOLOGY  
**CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY**

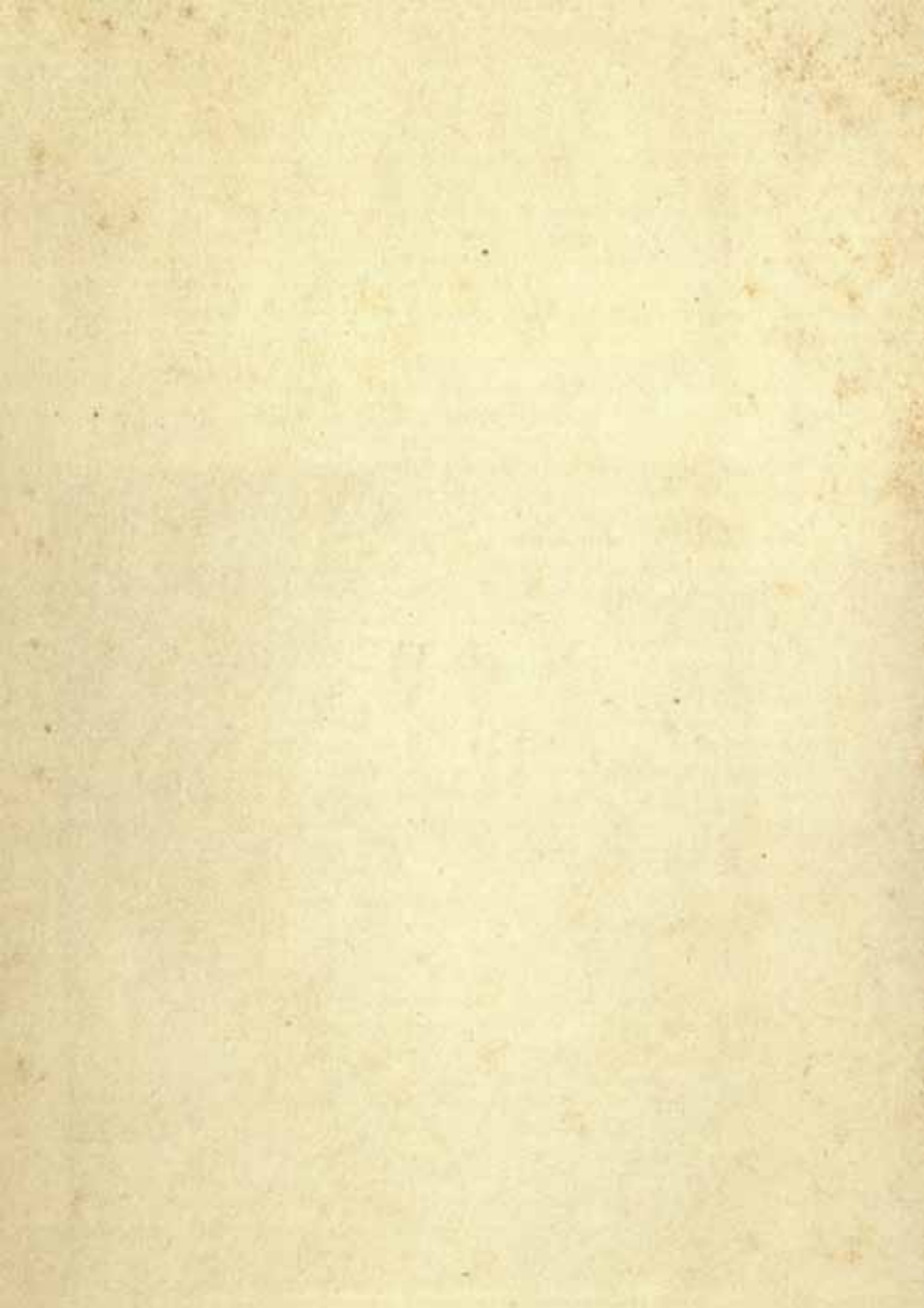
---

CLASS \_\_\_\_\_

CALL No. **892.709** *Nic* \_\_\_\_\_

D.G.A. 79.

B. 22-8-0



A LITERARY  
HISTORY OF THE ARABS





A LITERARY  
HISTORY OF THE ARABS



# A LITERARY HISTORY OF THE ARABS

BY  
REYNOLD A. NICHOLSON



4283



892.709  
*Nic*

CAMBRIDGE  
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS  
1953

PUBLISHED BY  
THE SYNDICS OF THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

London Office: Bentley House, N.W.1

American Branch: New York

Agents for Canada, India, and Pakistan: Macmillan

First edition (T. Fisher Unwin) 1907, reprinted 1914, 1923  
Reprinted (Cambridge University Press) 1930, 1941, 1953

*Printed in Great Britain at the University Press, Cambridge  
(Brooke Crutchley, University Printer)*

Rs 22-8-0

6.2.56

From K. L. Mukhopadhyay

To

PROFESSOR A. A. BEVAN

In grateful recollection of many kindnesses

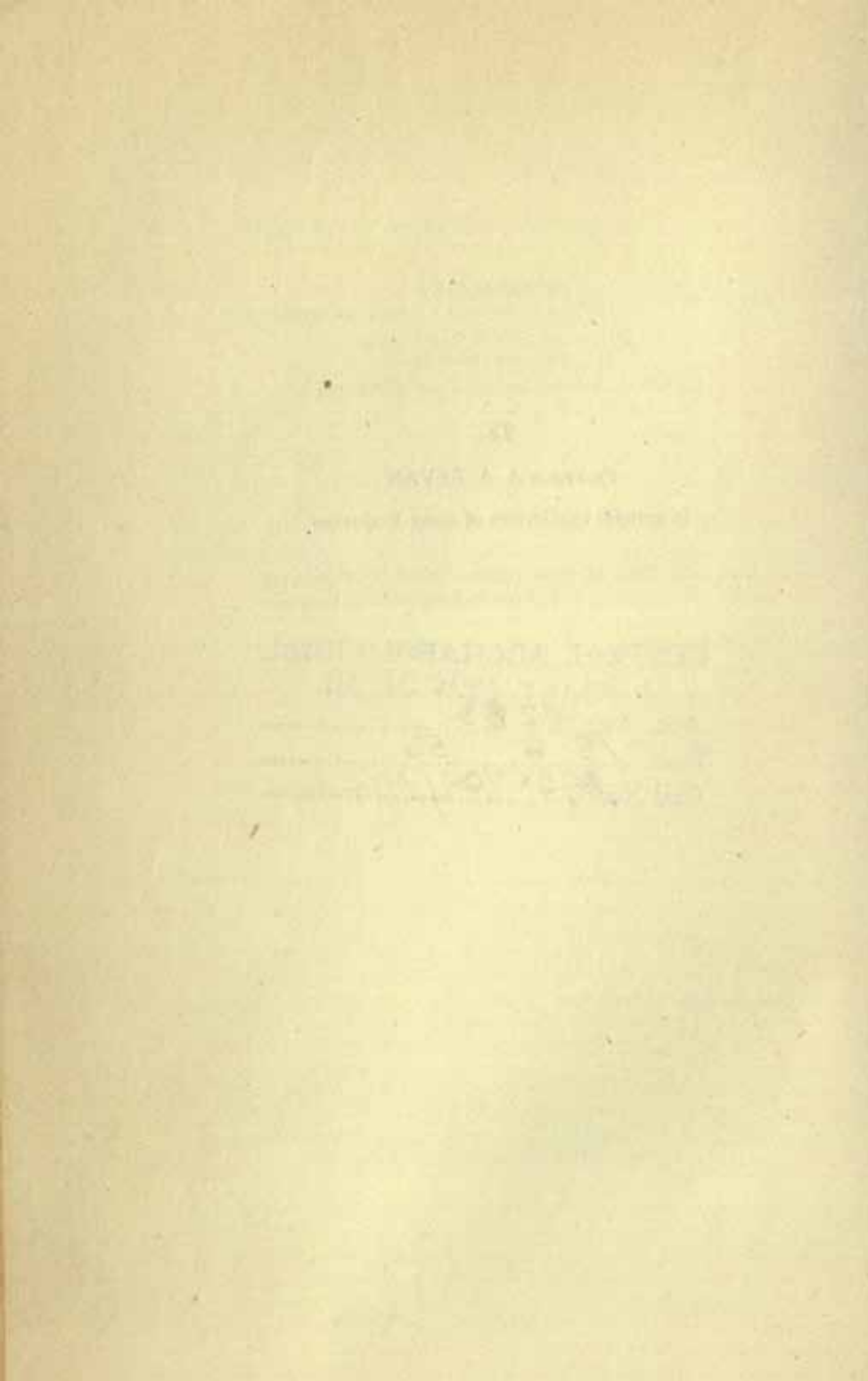
CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No. 4283.

Date. 18. 2. 56.

Call No. 892. 709/ NCC.





## PREFACE

*A Literary History of the Arabs*, published by T. Fisher Unwin in 1907 and twice re-issued without alteration, now appears under new auspices, and I wish to thank the Syndics of the Cambridge University Press for the opportunity they have given me of making it in some respects more accurate and useful than it has hitherto been. Since the present edition is printed from the original plates, there could be no question of revising the book throughout and recasting it where necessary; but while only a few pages have been rewritten, the Bibliography has been brought up to date and I have removed several mistakes from the text and corrected others in an appendix which includes a certain amount of supplementary matter. As stated in the preface to the first edition, I hoped "to compile a work which should serve as a general introduction to the subject, and which should be neither too popular for students nor too scientific for ordinary readers. It has been my chief aim to sketch in broad outlines what the Arabs thought, and to indicate as far as possible the influences which moulded their thought. . . . Experience has convinced me that young students of Arabic, to whom this volume is principally addressed, often find difficulty in understanding what they read, since they are not in touch with the political, intellectual, and religious notions which are presented to them. The pages of almost every Arabic book abound in allusions to names, events, movements, and ideas of which Moslems require no explanation, but which puzzle the Western reader unless he have some general knowledge of Arabian history in the widest meaning of the word. Such a survey is not to be found, I believe, in any single European book; and if mine supply the want, however partially and inadequately, I

shall feel that my labour has been amply rewarded. . . . As regards the choice of topics, I agree with the author of a famous anthology who declares that it is harder to select than compose (*ikhtiyāru 'l-kalām aṣ'abu min ta'līfihī*). Perhaps an epitomist may be excused for not doing equal justice all round. To me the literary side of the subject appeals more than the historical, and I have followed my bent without hesitation; for in order to interest others a writer must first be interested himself. . . . Considering the importance of Arabic poetry as, in the main, a true mirror of Arabian life, I do not think the space devoted to it is excessive. Other branches of literature could not receive the same attention. Many an eminent writer has been dismissed in a few lines, many well-known names have been passed over. But, as before said, this work is a sketch of ideas in their historical environment rather than a record of authors, books, and dates. The exact transliteration of Arabic words, though superfluous for scholars and for persons entirely ignorant of the language, is an almost indispensable aid to the class of readers whom I have especially in view. My system is that recommended by the Royal Asiatic Society and adopted by Professor Browne in his *Literary History of Persia*; but I use *z* for the letter which he denotes by *dh*. The definite article *al*, which is frequently omitted at the beginning of proper names, has been restored in the Index. It may save trouble if I mention here the abbreviations 'b.' for 'ibn' (son of); *J.R.A.S.* for *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*; *Z.D.M.G.* for *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*; and *S.B.W.A.* for *Sitzungsberichte der Wiener Akademie*. Finally, it behoves me to make full acknowledgment of my debt to the learned Orientalists whose works I have studied and freely 'conveyed' into these pages. References could not be given in every case, but the reader will see for himself how much is derived from Von Kremer, Goldziher, Nöldeke, and Wellhausen, to mention only a few of the leading authorities. At the same time I have constantly gone back to the native sources of information."

## PREFACE

xi

There remains an acknowledgment of a more personal kind. Twenty-two years ago I wrote—"my warmest thanks are due to my friend and colleague, Professor A. A. Bevan, who read the proofs throughout and made a number of valuable remarks which will be found in the footnotes." Happily the present occasion permits me to renew those ties between us; and the book which he helped into the world now celebrates its majority by associating itself with his name.

REYNOLD A. NICHOLSON

*November 1, 1929*

## Frontispiece

LITIGANTS BEFORE A JUDGE (British Museum Or. 1200)



# Contents

PREFACE . . . . .	PAGE ix
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	xv
CHAPTER	
I. SABA AND HIMYAR . . . . .	1
II. THE HISTORY AND LEGENDS OF THE PAGAN ARABS . . . . .	30
III. PRE-ISLAMIC POETRY, MANNERS, AND RELIGION . . . . .	71
IV. THE PROPHET AND THE KORAN . . . . .	141
V. THE ORTHODOX CALIPHATE AND THE Umayyad DYNASTY. . . . .	181
VI. THE CALIPHS OF BAGHDAD . . . . .	254
VII. POETRY, LITERATURE, AND SCIENCE IN THE 'Abbásid PERIOD . . . . .	285
VIII. ORTHODOXY, FREE-THOUGHT, AND MYSTICISM . . . . .	365
IX. THE ARABS IN EUROPE . . . . .	405
X. FROM THE MONGOL INVASION TO THE PRESENT DAY . . . . .	442
APPENDIX . . . . .	471
BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .	477
INDEX . . . . .	487





## Introduction

THE Arabs belong to the great family of nations which on account of their supposed descent from Shem, the son of Noah, are commonly known as the 'Semites.'

The Semites.

This term includes the Babylonians and Assyrians, the Hebrews, the Phœnicians, the Aramæans, the Abyssinians, the Sabæans, and the Arabs, and although based on a classification that is not ethnologically precise—the Phœnicians and Sabæans, for example, being reckoned in Genesis, chap. x, among the descendants of Ham—it was well chosen by Eichhorn († 1827) to comprehend the closely allied peoples which have been named. Whether the original home of the undivided Semitic race was some part of Asia (Arabia, Armenia, or the district of the Lower Euphrates), or whether, according to a view which has lately found favour, the Semites crossed into Asia from Africa,<sup>1</sup> is still uncertain. Long before the epoch when they first appear in history they had branched off from the parent stock and formed separate nationalities. The relation of the Semitic languages to each other cannot be discussed here, but we may arrange them in the chronological order of the extant literature as follows:—<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> H. Grimme, *Weltgeschichte in Charakterbildern: Mohammed* (Munich, 1904), p. 6 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Nöldeke, *Die Semitischen Sprachen* (Leipzig, 1899), or the same scholar's article, 'Semitic Languages,' in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*, 11th edition. Renan's *Histoire générale des langues sémitiques* (1855) is now

1. Babylonian or Assyrian (3000-500 B.C.).
2. Hebrew (from 1500 B.C.).
3. South Arabic, otherwise called Sabæan or Ḥimyarite (inscriptions from 800 B.C.).
4. Aramaic (inscriptions from 800 B.C.).
5. Phœnician (inscriptions from 700 B.C.).
6. Æthiopic (inscriptions from 350 A.D.).
7. Arabic (from 500 A.D.).

(Notwithstanding that Arabic is thus, in a sense, the youngest of the Semitic languages, it is generally allowed to be nearer akin than any of them to the original archetype, the 'Ursemitisch,' from which they all are derived, just as the Arabs, by reason of their geographical situation and the monotonous uniformity of desert life, have in some respects preserved the Semitic character more purely and exhibited it more distinctly than any people of the same family.) From the period of the great Moslem conquests (700 A.D.) to the present day they have extended their language, religion, and culture over an enormous expanse of territory, far surpassing that of all the ancient Semitic empires added together. It is true that

The Arabs as  
representatives  
of the  
Semitic race.

the Arabs are no longer what they were in the Middle Ages, the ruling nation of the world, but loss of temporal power has only strengthened their spiritual dominion. Islam still reigns supreme in Western Asia; in Africa it has steadily advanced; even on European soil it has found in Turkey compensation for its banishment from Spain and Sicily. While most of the Semitic peoples have vanished, leaving but a meagre and ambiguous record, so that we cannot hope to become intimately acquainted with them, we possess in the

antiquated. An interesting essay on the importance of the Semites in the history of civilisation was published by F. Hommel as an introduction to his *Semitischen Völker und Sprachen*, vol. i (Leipzig, 1883). The dates in this table are of course only approximate.



case of the Arabs ample materials for studying almost every phase of their development since the sixth century of the Christian era, and for writing the whole history of their national life and thought. This book, I need hardly say, makes no such pretensions. Even were the space at my disposal unlimited, a long time must elapse before the vast and various field of Arabic literature can be thoroughly explored and the results rendered accessible to the historian.

[From time immemorial Arabia was divided into North and South, not only by the trackless desert (*al-Rub' al-Khālī*, the 'Solitary Quarter') which stretches across the peninsula and forms a natural barrier to intercourse, but also by the opposition of two kindred races widely differing in their character and way of life. Whilst the inhabitants of the northern province (the *Hijāz* and the great central highland of *Najd*) were rude nomads sheltering in 'houses of hair,' and ever shifting to and fro in search of pasture for their camels, the people of Yemen or Arabia Felix are first mentioned in history as the inheritors of an ancient civilisation and as the owners of fabulous wealth—spices, gold and precious stones—which ministered to the luxury of King Solomon. The Bedouins of the North spoke Arabic—that is to say, the language of the Pre-islamic poems and of the Koran—whereas the southerners used a dialect called by Muhammadans 'Himyarite' and a peculiar script of which the examples known to us have been discovered and deciphered in comparatively recent times. Of these Sabæans—to adopt the designation given to them by Greek and Roman geographers—more will be said presently. The period of their bloom was drawing to a close in the early centuries of our era, and they have faded out of history before 600 A.D., when their northern neighbours first rise into prominence.]

It was, no doubt, the consciousness of this racial distinction

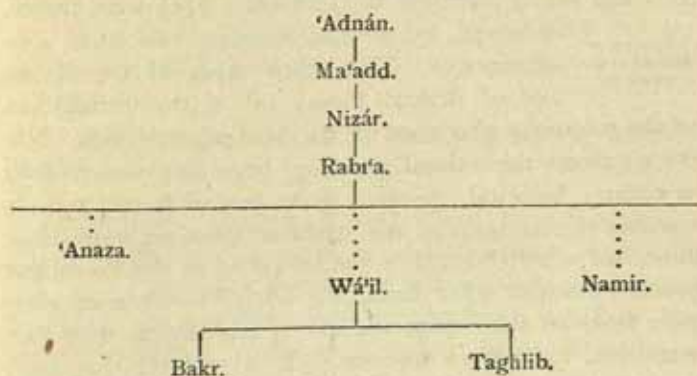
that caused the view to prevail among Moslem genealogists that the Arabs followed two separate lines of descent from their common ancestor, Sám b. Núḥ (Shem, the son of Noah). As regards those of the North, their derivation from 'Adnán, a descendant of Ismá'íl (Ishmael) was universally recognised; those of the South were traced back to Qaḥṭán, whom most genealogists identified with Yoḡṭán (Joktan), the son of 'Ábir (Eber). Under the Yoḡṭánids, who are the elder line, we find, together with the Sabæans and Ḥimyarites, several large and powerful tribes—e.g., Ṭayyi', Kinda, and Tanúkḥ—which had settled in North and Central Arabia long before Islam, and were in no respect distinguishable from the Bedouins of Ishmaelite origin. As to 'Adnán, his exact genealogy is disputed, but all agree that he was of the posterity of Ismá'íl (Ishmael), the son of Ibráḥīm (Abraham) by Hájjar (Hagar). The story runs that on the birth of Ismá'íl God commanded Abraham to journey to Mecca with Hagar and her son and to leave them there. They were seen by some Jurhumites, descendants of Yoḡṭán, who took pity on them and resolved to settle beside them. Ismá'íl grew up with the sons of the strangers, learned to shoot the bow, and spoke their tongue. Then he asked of them in marriage, and they married him to one of their women.<sup>1</sup> The tables on the opposite page show the principal branches of the younger but by far the more important family of the Arabs which traced its pedigree through 'Adnán to Ismá'íl. A dotted line indicates the omission of one or more links in the genealogical chain.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Qutayba, *Kitābu 'l-Ma'āryi*, ed. by Wüstenfeld, p. 18.

<sup>2</sup> Full information concerning the genealogy of the Arabs will be found in Wüstenfeld's *Genealogische Tabellen der Arabischen Stämme und Familien* with its excellent Register (Göttingen, 1852-1853).

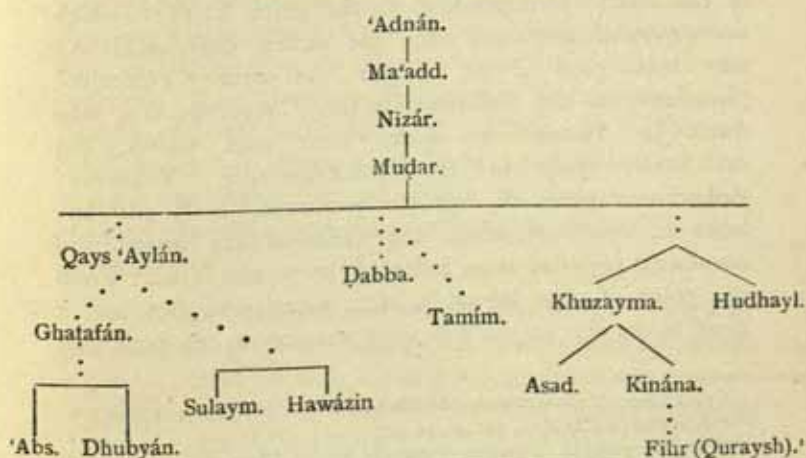
## I.

## THE DESCENDANTS OF RABÍ'A.



## II.

## THE DESCENDANTS OF MUḌAR.



\* The tribes Dabba, Tamím, Khuzayma, Hudhayl, Asad, Kinána, and Quraysh together formed a group which is known as Khindif, and is often distinguished from Qays 'Aylán.



It is undeniable that these lineages are to some extent fictitious. There was no Pre-islamic science of genealogy, so that the first Muhammadan investigators had only confused and scanty traditions to work on. They were biased,

Character of  
Muhammadan  
genealogy.

moreover, by political, religious, and other considerations.<sup>1</sup> Thus their study of the Koran and of Biblical history led to the introduction

of the patriarchs who stand at the head of their lists. Nor can we accept the national genealogy beginning with 'Adnán as entirely historical, though a great deal of it was actually stored in the memories of the Arabs at the time when Islam arose, and is corroborated by the testimony of the Pre-islamic poets.<sup>2</sup> On the other hand, the alleged descent of every tribe from an eponymous ancestor is inconsistent with facts established by modern research.<sup>3</sup> It is probable that many names represent merely a local or accidental union; and many more, e.g., Ma'add, seem originally to have denoted large groups or confederations of tribes. The theory of a radical difference between the Northern Arabs and those of the South, corresponding to the fierce hostility which has always divided them since the earliest days of Islam,<sup>4</sup> may hold good if we restrict the term 'Yemenite' (Southern) to the civilised Sabæans, Himyarites, &c., who dwelt in Yemen and spoke their own dialect, but can hardly apply to the Arabic-speaking 'Yemenite' Bedouins scattered all over the peninsula. Such criticism, however, does not affect the value of the genealogical documents regarded as an index of the popular mind. From this point of view legend is often superior to fact, and it must be our aim in the following chapters to set forth what

<sup>1</sup> Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 133 sqq., 177 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Nöldeke in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 40, p. 177.

<sup>3</sup> See Margoliouth, *Mohammed and the Rise of Islam*, p. 4.

<sup>4</sup> Concerning the nature and causes of this antagonism see Goldziher, *op. cit.*, Part I, p. 78 sqq.

the Arabs believed rather than to examine whether or no they were justified in believing it.

['Arabic,' in its widest signification, has two principal dialects:—

1. South Arabic, spoken in Yemen and including Sabæan, Himyarite, Minæan, with the kindred dialects of Mahra and Shihr.

2. Arabic proper, spoken in Arabia generally, exclusive of Yemen.)

Of the former language, leaving Mahri, Socotri, and other living dialects out of account, we possess nothing beyond the numerous inscriptions which have been collected by European travellers and which it will be convenient to discuss in the next chapter, where I shall give a brief sketch of the legendary history of the Sabæans and Himyarites. South Arabic resembles Arabic in its grammatical forms, e.g., the broken plural, the sign of the dual, and the manner of denoting indefiniteness by an affixed *m* (for which Arabic substitutes *n*) as well as in its vocabulary; its alphabet, which consists of twenty-nine letters, *Sin* and *Samech* being distinguished as in Hebrew, is more nearly akin to the Æthiopic. [The Himyarite Empire was overthrown by the Abyssinians in the sixth century after Christ, and by 600 A.D. South Arabic had become a dead language. From this time forward the dialect of the North established an almost universal supremacy and won for itself the title of 'Arabic' *par excellence*.<sup>1</sup>]

[The oldest monuments of written Arabic are modern in date compared with the Sabæan inscriptions, some of which take us back 2,500 years or thereabout.] Apart from the inscriptions of Hijr in the northern Hijáz,\* and those of Šafá in the neighbourhood of Damascus (which, although written by northern Arabs before the Christian era, exhibit a peculiar character not unlike the

\* The word 'Arabic' is always to be understood in this sense wherever it occurs in the following pages.

The oldest specimens of Arabic writing.



Sabæan and cannot be called Arabic in the usual acceptation of the term), the most ancient examples of Arabic writing which have hitherto been discovered appear in the trilingual (Syriac, Greek, and Arabic) inscription of Zabad,<sup>1</sup> south-east of Aleppo, dated 512 or 513 A.D., and the bilingual (Greek and Arabic) of Harrân,<sup>2</sup> dated 568 A.D. With these documents we need not concern ourselves further, especially as their interpretation presents great difficulties. Very few among the Pre-islamic Arabs were able to read or write.<sup>3</sup> Those who could generally owed their skill to Jewish and Christian teachers, or to the influence of foreign culture radiating from Hîra and Ghassân. But although the Koran, which was first collected soon after the battle of Yamâma (633 A.D.), is the oldest Arabic book, the beginnings of literary composition in the Arabic language can be traced back to an earlier period. Probably all the Pre-islamic poems which have come down to us belong to the century preceding Islam (500-622 A.D.), but their elaborate form and technical perfection forbid the hypothesis that in them we have "the first sprightly runnings" of Arabian song. It may be said of these magnificent odes, as of the Iliad and Odyssey, that "they are works of highly finished art, which could not possibly have been produced until the poetical art had been practised for a long time." They were preserved during hundreds of years by oral tradition, as we shall explain elsewhere, and were committed to writing, for the most part, by the Moslem scholars of the early 'Abbâsîd age, i.e., between 750 and 900 A.D. It is a noteworthy fact that the language of these poems, the authors of which represent many different tribes and districts of the

The Pre-islamic  
poems.

<sup>1</sup> First published by Sachau in *Monatsberichte der Kön. Preuss. Akad. der Wissenschaften zu Berlin* (February, 1881), p. 169 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> See De Vogüé, *Syrie Centrale, Inscriptions Sémitiques*, p. 117. Other references are given in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 35, p. 749.

<sup>3</sup> On this subject the reader may consult Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 110 sqq.

peninsula, is one and the same. The dialectical variations are too trivial to be taken into account. We might conclude that the poets used an artificial dialect, not such as was commonly spoken but resembling the epic dialect of Ionia which was borrowed by Dorian and Æolian bards. When we find, however, that the language in question is employed not only by the wandering troubadours, who were often men of some culture, and the Christian Arabs of Hira on the Euphrates, but also by goat-herds, brigands, and illiterate Bedouins of every description, there can be no room for doubt that in the poetry of the sixth century we hear the Arabic language as it was then spoken throughout the length and breadth of Arabia. The success of Muḥammad and the conquests made by Islam under the Orthodox Caliphs gave an entirely new importance to this classical idiom. Arabic became the sacred language of the whole Moslem world.

*The Koran.* This was certainly due to the Koran; but, on the other hand, to regard the dialect of Mecca, in which the Koran is written, as the source and prototype of the Arabic language, and to call Arabic 'the dialect of Quraysh,' is utterly to reverse the true facts of the case. Muḥammad, as Nöldeke has observed, took the ancient poetry for a model; and in the early age of Islam it was the authority of the heathen poets (of whom Quraysh had singularly few) that determined the classical usage and set the standard of correct speech. Moslems, who held the Koran to be the Word of God and inimitable in point of style, naturally exalted the dialect of the Prophet's tribe above all others, even laying down the rule that every tribe spoke less purely in proportion to its distance from Mecca, but this view will not commend itself to the unprejudiced student. The Koran, however, exercised a unique influence on the history of the Arabic language and literature. We shall see in a subsequent chapter that the necessity of preserving the text of the Holy Book uncorrupted, and of elucidating its obscurities, caused



the Moslems to invent a science of grammar and lexicography, and to collect the old Pre-Muhammadan poetry and traditions which must otherwise have perished. When the Arabs settled as conquerors in Syria and Persia and mixed with foreign peoples, the purity of the classical language could no longer be maintained. While in Arabia itself, especially among the nomads of the desert, little difference was felt, in the provincial garrison towns and great centres of industry like Baṣra and Kūfa, where the population largely consisted of aliens who had embraced Islam and were rapidly being Arabicised, the door stood open for all sorts of depravation to creep in. Against this vulgar Arabic the philologists waged unrelenting war, and it was mainly through their exertions that the classical idiom triumphed over the dangers to which it was exposed.

Arabic in the  
Muhammadan  
Empire.

Although the language of the pagan Bedouins did not survive intact—or survived, at any rate, only in the mouths of pedants and poets—it became, in a modified form, the universal medium of expression among the upper classes of Muhammadan society. During the early Middle Ages it was spoken and written by all cultivated Moslems, of whatever nationality they might be, from the Indus to the Atlantic; it was the language of the Court and the Church, of Law and Commerce, of Diplomacy and Literature and Science.] When the Mongol invasion in the thirteenth century swept away the ‘Abbásid Caliphate, and therewith the last vestige of political unity in Islam, classical Arabic ceased to be the *κοινή* or ‘common dialect’ of the Moslem world, and was supplanted in Arabia, Syria, Egypt, and other Arabic-speaking countries by a vulgar colloquial idiom. In these countries, however, it is still the language of business, literature, and education, and we are told on high authority that even now it “is undergoing a renaissance, and there is every likelihood of its again becoming a great literary vehicle.”<sup>1</sup> And if, for those

<sup>1</sup> Professor Margoliouth in *J.R.A.S.* for 1905, p. 418

Moslems who are not Arabs, it occupies relatively much the same position as Latin and Greek in modern European culture, we must not forget that the Koran, its most renowned masterpiece, is learned by every Moslem when he first goes to school, is repeated in his daily prayers, and influences the whole course of his life to an extent which the ordinary Christian can hardly realise.

I hope that I may be excused for ignoring in a work such as this the information regarding Ancient Arabian history which it is possible to glean from the Babylonian and Assyrian monuments. Any sketch that might be drawn of the Arabs, say from 2500 B.C. to the beginning of our era, would resemble a map of Cathay delineated by Sir John Mandeville. But amongst the shadowy peoples of the peninsula one, besides Saba and Himyar, makes something more than a transient impression. The Nabatæans (*Nabat*, pl. *Anbât*) dwelt in towns, drove a flourishing trade long before the birth of Christ, and founded

the kingdom of Petra, which attained a high degree of prosperity and culture until it was annexed by Trajan in 105 A.D. These Nabatæans were Arabs and spoke Arabic, although in default of a script of their own they used Aramaic for writing.<sup>1</sup> Muḥammadan authors identify them with the Aramæans, but careful study of their inscriptions has shown that this view, which was accepted by Quatremère,<sup>2</sup> is erroneous. 'The Book of Nabatæan Agriculture' (*Kitābu 'l-Falāḥat al-Nabaṭiyya*), composed in 904 A.D. by the Moslem Ibnu 'l-Waḥshiyya, who professed to have translated it from the Chaldæan, is now known to be a forgery. I only mention it here as an instance of the way in which Moslems apply the term 'Nabatæan'; for the title in question does not, of course, refer to Petra but to Babylon.

\* Nöldeke, *Die Semitischen Sprachen*, p. 36 sqq. and p. 51.

<sup>2</sup> *Journal Asiatique* (March, 1835), p. 209 sqq.



From what has been said the reader will perceive that the history of the Arabs, so far as our knowledge of it is derived from Arabic sources, may be divided into the following periods:—

- Three periods of Arabian history.
- I. The Sabæan and Himyarite period, from 800 B.C., the date of the oldest South Arabic inscriptions, to 500 A.D.
  - II. The Pre-islamic period (500–622 A.D.).
  - III. The Muḥammadan period, beginning with the Migration (Hijra, or Hegira, as the word is generally written) of the Prophet from Mecca to Medina in 622 A.D. and extending to the present day.]

For the first period, which is confined to the history of Yemen or South Arabia, we have no contemporary Arabic sources except the inscriptions. The valuable but imperfect information which these supply is appreciably increased by the traditions preserved in the Pre-islamic poems, in the Koran, and particularly in the later Muḥammadan literature. It is true that most of this material is legendary and would justly be ignored by any one engaged in historical research, but I shall nevertheless devote a good deal of space to it, since my principal object is to make known the beliefs and opinions of the Arabs themselves.

The second period is called by Muḥammadan writers the *Jāhiliyya*, i.e., the Age of Ignorance or Barbarism.\* Its characteristics are faithfully and vividly reflected in the songs and odes of the heathen poets which have come down to us. There was no prose literature at that time: it was the poet's privilege to sing the history of his own people, to record their genealogies, to celebrate their feats of arms, and to extol their virtues. Although an immense quantity of Pre-islamic verse has been lost for ever,

\* Strictly speaking, the *Jāhiliyya* includes the whole time between Adam and Muḥammad, but in a narrower sense it may be used, as here, to denote the Pre-islamic period of Arabic Literature.

we still possess a considerable remnant, which, together with the prose narratives compiled by Moslem philologists and antiquaries, enables us to picture the life of those wild days, in its larger aspects, accurately enough.

The last and by far the most important of the three periods comprises the history of the Arabs under Islam. It falls naturally into the following sections, which are enumerated in this place in order that the reader may see at a glance the broad political outlines of the complex and difficult epoch which lies before him.

The Moslem  
Arabs.

#### [ A. The Life of Muḥammad.

About the beginning of the seventh century of the Christian era a man named Muḥammad, son of 'Abdullāh, of the tribe Quraysh, appeared in Mecca with a Divine revelation (Koran). He called on his fellow-townsmen to renounce idolatry and worship the One God. In spite of ridicule and persecution he continued for several years to preach the religion of Islam in Mecca, but, making little progress there, he fled in 622 A.D. to the neighbouring city of Medīna. From this date his cause prospered exceedingly. During the next decade the whole of Arabia submitted to his rule and did lip-service at least to the new Faith.

Life of  
Muḥammad.

#### B. The Orthodox Caliphate (632-661 A.D.).

On the death of the Prophet the Moslems were governed in turn by four of the most eminent among his Companions—Abū Bakr, 'Umar, 'Uthmān, and 'Alī—who bore the title of *Khalifa* (Caliph), *i.e.*, Vicegerent, and are commonly described as the Orthodox Caliphs (*al-Khulafā al-Rāshidūn*). Under their guidance Islam was firmly established in the peninsula and was spread far beyond its borders. Hosts of Bedouins settled as military colonists in the fertile plains of Syria and Persia. Soon, however, the

The Orthodox  
Caliphs.



recently founded empire was plunged into civil war. The murder of 'Uthmán gave the signal for a bloody strife between rival claimants of the Caliphate. 'Alí, the son-in-law of the Prophet, assumed the title, but his election was contested by the powerful governor of Syria, Mu'áwiya b. Abí Sufyán.

### C. The Umayyad Dynasty (661-750 A.D.).

'Alí fell by an assassin's dagger, and Mu'áwiya succeeded to the Caliphate, which remained in his family for ninety years.

The Umayyads, with a single exception, were  
The Umayyad dynasty. Arabs first and Moslems afterwards. Religion sat very lightly on them, but they produced some able and energetic princes, worthy leaders of an imperial race. By 732 A.D. the Moslem conquests had reached the utmost limit which they ever attained. The Caliph in Damascus had his lieutenants beyond the Oxus and the Pyrenees, on the shores of the Caspian and in the valley of the Nile. Meantime the strength of the dynasty was being sapped by political and religious dissensions nearer home. The Shí'ites, who held that the Caliphate belonged by Divine right to 'Alí and his descendants, rose in revolt again and again. They were joined by the Persian Moslems, who loathed the Arabs and the oppressive Umayyad government. The 'Abbásids, a family closely related to the Prophet, put themselves at the head of the agitation. It ended in the complete overthrow of the reigning house, which was almost exterminated.

### D. The 'Abbásid Dynasty (750-1258 A.D.).

Hitherto the Arabs had played a dominant rôle in the Moslem community, and had treated the non-Arab Moslems with exasperating contempt. Now the tables were  
The 'Abbásid dynasty. turned. We pass from the period of Arabian nationalism to one of Persian ascendancy and cosmopolitan culture. The flower of the 'Abbásid troops were Persians from Khurásán; Baghdád, the wonderful

'Abbásid capital, was built on Persian soil ; and Persian nobles filled the highest offices of state at the 'Abbásid court. The new dynasty, if not religious, was at least favourable to religion, and took care to live in the odour of sanctity. For a time Arabs and Persians forgot their differences and worked together as good Moslems ought. Piety was no longer its own reward. Learning enjoyed munificent patronage. This was the Golden Age of Islam, which culminated in the glorious reign of Hárún al-Rashíd (786-809 A.D.). On his death peace was broken once more, and the mighty empire began slowly to collapse. As province after province cut itself loose from the Caliphate, numerous independent dynasties sprang up, while the Caliphs became helpless puppets in the hands of Turkish mercenaries. Their authority was still formally recognised in most Muḥammadan countries, but since the middle of the ninth century they had little or no real power.

*E. From the Mongol invasion to the present day (1258 A.D. — ).*

The Mongol hordes under Húlágú captured Baghdád in 1258 A.D. and made an end of the Caliphate. Sweeping onward, they were checked by the Egyptian Mamelukes and retired into Persia, where, some fifty years afterwards, they embraced Islam. The

The Post-Mongolian period.

successors of Húlágú, the Il-kháns, reigned in Persia until a second wave of barbarians under Tímúr spread devastation and anarchy through Western Asia (1380-1405 A.D.). The unity of Islam, in a political sense, was now destroyed. Out of the chaos three Muḥammadan empires gradually took shape. In 1358 the Ottoman Turks crossed the Hellespont, in 1453 they entered Constantinople, and in 1517 Syria, Egypt, and Arabia were added to their dominions. Persia became an independent kingdom under the Šafawids (1502-1736); while in India the empire of the Great Moguls was founded by Bábur,



a descendant of Tímúr, and gloriously maintained by his successors, Akbar and Awrangzib (1525-1707).]

Some of the political events which have been summarised above will be treated more fully in the body of this work; others will receive no more than a passing notice.

Arabian literary  
history.

The ideas which reveal themselves in Arabic literature are so intimately connected with the history of the people, and so incomprehensible apart from the external circumstances in which they arose, that I have found myself obliged to dwell at considerable length on various matters of historical interest, in order to bring out what is really characteristic and important from our special point of view. The space devoted to the early periods (500-750 A.D.) will not appear excessive if they are seen in their true light as the centre and heart of Arabian history. During the next hundred years Moslem civilisation reaches its zenith, but the Arabs recede more and more into the background. The Mongol invasion virtually obliterated their national life, though in Syria and Egypt they maintained their traditions of culture under Turkish rule, and in Spain we meet them struggling desperately against Christendom. Many centuries earlier, in the palmy days of the 'Abbásid Empire, the Arabs *pur sang* contributed only a comparatively small share to the literature which bears their name. I have not, however, enforced the test of nationality so strictly as to exclude all foreigners or men of mixed origin who wrote in Arabic. It may be said

Writers who are  
wholly or partly  
of foreign ex-  
traction.

that the work of Persians (who even nowadays are accustomed to use Arabic when writing on theological and philosophical subjects) cannot illustrate the history of Arabian thought, but only the influence exerted upon Arabian thought by Persian ideas, and that consequently it must stand aside unless admitted for this definite purpose. But what shall we do in the case of those numerous and celebrated authors who are neither wholly



Arab nor wholly Persian, but unite the blood of both races? Must we scrutinise their genealogies and try to discover which strain preponderates? That would be a tedious and unprofitable task. The truth is that after the Umayyad period no hard-and-fast line can be drawn between the native and foreign elements in Arabic literature. Each reacted on the other, and often both are combined indissolubly. Although they must be distinguished as far as possible, we should be taking a narrow and pedantic view of literary history if we insisted on regarding them as mutually exclusive.



## CHAPTER I

### SABA AND HİMYAR

WITH the Sabæans Arabian history in the proper sense may be said to begin, but as a preliminary step we must take account of certain races which figure more or less prominently in legend, and are considered by Moslem chroniclers to have been the original

Primitive  
races.

inhabitants of the country. Among these are the peoples of 'Ād and Thamūd, which are constantly held up in the Koran as terrible examples of the pride that goeth before destruction. The home of the 'Ādites was in Ḥaḍramawt, the province adjoining Yemen, on the borders of the desert named *Aḥqāfu 'l-Raml*. It is doubtful whether they were Semites, possibly of Aramaic descent, who were subdued and exterminated by invaders from the north, or, as Hommel maintains,<sup>1</sup> the representatives of an imposing non-Semitic culture which survives in the tradition of

Legend of 'Ād.

'Many-columned Iram,'<sup>2</sup> the Earthly Paradise built by Shaddād, one of their kings. The story of their destruction is related as follows:<sup>3</sup> They were a people of gigantic strength and stature, worshipping idols and committing all

<sup>1</sup> *Die Namen der Säugethiere bei den Südsemitischen Völkern*, p. 343 seq.

<sup>2</sup> *Iramu Dhātu 'l-'Imād* (Koran, lxxxix, 6). The sense of these words is much disputed. See especially Ṭabarī's explanation in his great commentary on the Koran (O. Loth in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 35, p. 626 sqq.).

<sup>3</sup> I have abridged Ṭabarī, *Annals*, i, 231 sqq. Cf. also chapters vii, xi, xxvi, and xli of the Koran.

manner of wrong; and when God sent to them a prophet, Húd by name, who should warn them to repent, they answered: "O Húd, thou hast brought us no evidence, and we will not abandon our gods for thy saying, nor will we believe in thee. We say one of our gods hath afflicted thee with madness."<sup>1</sup> Then a fearful drought fell upon the land of 'Ád, so that they sent a number of their chief men to Mecca to pray for rain. On arriving at Mecca the envoys were hospitably received by the Amalekite prince, Mu'áwiya b. Bakr, who entertained them with wine and music—for he had two famous singing-girls known as *al-farádatán*; which induced them to neglect their mission for the space of a whole month. At last, however, they got to business, and their spokesman had scarce finished his prayer when three clouds appeared, of different colours—white, red, and black—and a voice cried from heaven, "Choose for thyself and for thy people!" He chose the black cloud, deeming that it had the greatest store of rain, whereupon the voice chanted—

"Thou hast chosen embers dun | that will spare of 'Ád not one |  
that will leave nor father nor son | ere him to death they shall have  
done."

Then God drove the cloud until it stood over the land of 'Ád, and there issued from it a roaring wind that consumed the whole people except a few who had taken the prophet's warning to heart and had renounced idolatry.)

From these, in course of time, a new people arose, who are called 'the second 'Ád.' They had their settlements in Yemen, in the region of Saba. The building of the great Dyke of Ma'rib is commonly attributed to their king, Luqmán b. 'Ád, about whom many fables are told. He was surnamed 'The Man of the Vultures' (*Dhu 'l-Nusūr*), because it had been granted to him that he should live as long as seven vultures, one after the other.

<sup>1</sup> Koran, xi, 56-57.



In North Arabia, between the Hijáz and Syria, dwelt the kindred race of Thamūd, described in the Koran (vii, 72) as inhabiting houses which they cut for themselves in the rocks. Evidently Muḥammad did not know the true nature of the hewn chambers which are still to be seen at Hġjr (Madá'in Šálih), a week's journey northward from Medína, and which are proved by the Nabaṭæan inscriptions engraved on them to have been sepulchral monuments.<sup>1</sup> Thamūd sinned in the same way as 'Ád, and suffered a like fate. They scouted the prophet Šálih, refusing to believe in him unless he should work a miracle. Šálih then caused a she-camel big with young to come forth from a rock, and bade them do her no hurt, but one of the miscreants, Qudár the Red (al-Aḥmar), hamstrung and killed her. "Whereupon a great earthquake overtook them with a noise of thunder, and in the morning they lay dead in their houses, flat upon their breasts."<sup>2</sup> The author of this catastrophe became a byword: Arabs say, "More unlucky than the hamstringer of the she-camel," or "than Aḥmar of Thamūd." It should be pointed out that, unlike the 'Ádites, of whom we find no trace in historical times, the Thamūdites are mentioned as still existing by Diodorus Siculus and Ptolemy; and they survived down to the fifth century A.D. in the corps of *equites Thamudeni* attached to the army of the Byzantine emperors.]

Besides 'Ád and Thamūd, the list of primitive races includes the 'Amállq (Amalekites)—a purely fictitious term under which the Moslem antiquaries lumped together several peoples of an age long past, e.g., the Canaanites and the Philistines. We hear of Amalekite settlements in the Tiháma (Netherland) of Mecca and in other parts of the peninsula. Finally, mention should

Legend of  
Thamūd.

<sup>1</sup> See Doughty's *Documents Epigraphiques recueillis dans le nord de l'Arabie*, p. 12 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Koran, vii, 76.



be made of Tasm and Jadls, sister tribes of which nothing is recorded except the fact of their destruction and the events that brought it about. The legendary narrative in which these are embodied has some archæological interest as showing the existence in early Arabian society of a barbarous feudal custom, 'le droit du seigneur,' but it is time to pass on to the main subject of this chapter.

The Pre-islamic history of the Yoqtânids, or Southern Arabs, on which we now enter, is virtually the history of two peoples, the Sabæans and the Himyarites, who formed the successive heads of a South Arabian empire extending from the Red Sea to the Persian Gulf.

History of the  
Yoqtânids.

Saba<sup>1</sup> (Sheba of the Old Testament) is often incorrectly used to denote the whole of Arabia Felix, whereas it was only one, though doubtless the first in power and importance, of several kingdoms, the names and capitals of which are set down in the works of Greek and Roman geographers. However exaggerated may be the glowing accounts that we find there of Sabæan wealth and magnificence, it is certain that Saba was a flourishing commercial state many centuries before the birth of Christ.<sup>2</sup> "Sea-traffic between the ports of East Arabia and India was very early established, and Indian products, especially spices and rare animals (apes and peacocks) were conveyed to the coast of 'Umân. Thence, apparently even in the tenth century B.C., they went overland to the Arabian Gulf, where they

The Sabæans.

<sup>1</sup> Properly Saba' with *hamza*, both syllables being short.

<sup>2</sup> The oldest record of Saba to which a date can be assigned is found in the Assyrian cuneiform inscriptions. We read in the Annals of King Sargon (715 B.C.), "I received the tribute of Pharaoh, the King of Egypt, of Shamsiyya, the Queen of Arabia, of Ithamara the Sabæan—gold, spices, slaves, horses, and camels." Ithamara is identical with Yatha'amar, a name borne by several kings of Saba.

were shipped to Egypt for the use of the Pharaohs and grandees. . . . The difficulty of navigating the Red Sea caused the land route to be preferred for the traffic between Yemen and Syria. From Shabwat (Sabota) in Ḥaḍramawt the caravan road went to Ma'rib (Mariaba), the Sabæan capital, then northward to Macoraba (the later Mecca), and by way of Petra to Gaza on the Mediterranean.\* The prosperity of the Sabæans lasted until the Indian trade, instead of going overland, began to go by sea along the coast of Ḥaḍramawt and through the straits of Bāb al-Mandab. In consequence of this change, which seems to have taken place in the first century A.D., their power gradually declined, a great part of the population was forced to seek new homes in the north, their cities became desolate, and their massive aqueducts crumbled to pieces. We shall see presently that Arabian legend has crystallised the results of a long period of decay into a single fact—the bursting of the Dyke of Ma'rib.

The disappearance of the Sabæans left the way open for a younger branch of the same stock, namely, the Ḥimyarites,

or, as they are called by classical authors, The Ḥimyarites. Homeritæ, whose country lay between Saba and

the sea. Under their kings, known as Tubba's, they soon became the dominant power in South Arabia and exercised sway, at least ostensibly, over the northern tribes down to the end of the fifth century A.D., when the latter revolted and, led by Kulayb b. Rabī'a, shook off the suzerainty of Yemen in a great battle at Khazā'a.<sup>2</sup> The Ḥimyarites never flourished like the Sabæans. Their maritime situation exposed them more to attack, while the depopulation of the country had seriously weakened their military strength. The Abyssinians—originally colonists from Yemen—made repeated attempts to gain a

\* A. Müller, *Der Islam im Morgen und Abendland*, vol. i, p. 24 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Nöldeke, however, declares the traditions which represent Kulayb as leading the Rabī'a clans to battle against the combined strength of Yemen to be entirely unhistorical (*Fünf Mo'allaqāt*, i, 44).



foothold, and frequently managed to instal governors who were in turn expelled by native princes. Of these Abyssinian viceroys the most famous is Abraha, whose unfortunate expedition against Mecca will be related in due course. (Ultimately the Himyarite Empire was reduced to a Persian dependency. It had ceased to exist as a political power about a hundred years before the rise of Islam.)

The chief Arabian sources of information concerning Saba and Himyar are (1) the so-called 'Himyarite' inscriptions, and (2) the traditions, almost entirely of a legendary kind, which are preserved in Muḥammadan literature.

Sources of  
information.

Although the South Arabic language may have maintained itself sporadically in certain remote districts down to the Prophet's time or even later, it had long ago been superseded as a medium of daily intercourse by the language of the North, the Arabic *par excellence*, which henceforth reigns without a rival throughout the peninsula. The dead language, however, did not wholly perish. Already in the sixth century A.D. the Bedouin rider made his camel kneel down while he stopped to gaze wonderingly at inscriptions in a strange character engraved on walls of rock or fragments of hewn stone, and compared the mysterious, half-obliterated markings to the almost unrecognisable traces of the camping-ground which for him was fraught with tender memories. These inscriptions are often mentioned by Muḥammadan authors, who included them in the term *Musnad*. That some Moslems—probably very few—could not only read the South Arabic alphabet, but were also acquainted with the elementary rules of orthography, appears from a passage in the eighth book of Hamdānī's *Iklīl*; but though they might decipher proper names and make out the sense of words here and there, they had no real knowledge of the language. How the inscriptions were discovered anew by the enterprise of European travellers,

The South  
Arabic or  
Sabaean  
inscriptions.

gradually deciphered and interpreted until they became capable of serving as a basis for historical research, and what results the study of them has produced, this I shall now set forth as briefly as possible. Before doing so it is necessary to explain why instead of 'Himyarite inscriptions' and 'Himyarite language' I have adopted the less familiar designations 'South Arabic' or 'Sabæan.' 'Himyarite' is equally misleading, whether applied to the language of the inscriptions or to the inscriptions themselves. As regards the language, it was spoken in one form or another not by the Himyarites alone, but also by the Sabæans, the Minæans, and all the different peoples of Yemen.

Objections to  
the term  
'Himyarite.'

Muhammadans gave the name of 'Himyarite' to the ancient language of Yemen for the simple reason that the Himyarites were the most powerful race in that country during the last centuries preceding Islam. Had all the inscriptions belonged to the period of Himyarite supremacy, they might with some justice have been named after the ruling people; but the fact is that many date from a far earlier age, some going back to the eighth century B.C., perhaps nearly a thousand years before the Himyarite Empire was established. The term 'Sabæan' is less open to objection, for it may fairly be regarded as a national rather than a political denomination. On the whole, however, I prefer 'South Arabic' to either.

Among the pioneers of exploration in Yemen the first to interest himself in the discovery of inscriptions was Carsten Niebuhr, whose *Beschreibung von Arabien*, published in 1772, conveyed to Europe the report that inscriptions which, though he had not seen them, he conjectured to be 'Himyarite,' existed

Discovery and  
decipherment  
of the South  
Arabic  
inscriptions.

in the ruins of the once famous city of Zafâr. On one occasion a Dutchman who had turned Muhammadan showed him the copy of an inscription in a completely unknown alphabet, but "at that time (he says) being very ill with a violent fever, I had more reason to prepare myself for death



than to collect old inscriptions."<sup>1</sup> Thus the opportunity was lost, but curiosity had been awakened, and in 1810 Ulrich Jasper Seetzen discovered and copied several inscriptions in the neighbourhood of Zafār. Unfortunately these copies, which had to be made hastily, were very inexact. He also purchased an inscription, which he took away with him and copied at leisure, but his ignorance of the character led him to mistake the depressions in the stone for letters, so that the conclusions he came to were naturally of no value.<sup>2</sup> The first serviceable copies of South Arabic inscriptions were brought to Europe by English officers employed on the survey of the southern and western coasts of Arabia. Lieutenant J. R. Wellsted published the inscriptions of Ḥiṣn Ghurāb and Naqb al-Ḥajar in his *Travels in Arabia* (1838).

Meanwhile Emil Rödiger, Professor of Oriental Languages at Halle, with the help of two manuscripts of the Berlin Royal Library containing 'Ḥimyarite' alphabets, took the first step towards a correct decipherment by refuting the idea, for which De Sacy's authority had gained general acceptance, that the South Arabic script ran from left to right<sup>3</sup>; he showed, moreover, that the end of every word was marked by a straight perpendicular line.<sup>4</sup> Wellsted's inscriptions, together with those which Hulton and Cruttenden brought to light at Ṣan'ā, were deciphered by Gesenius and Rödiger working independently (1841). Hitherto England and Germany had shared the

<sup>1</sup> *Op. cit.*, p. 94 seq. An excellent account of the progress made in discovering and deciphering the South Arabic inscriptions down to the year 1841 is given by Rödiger, *Excurs ueber himjaritische Inschriften*, in his German translation of Wellsted's *Travels in Arabia*, vol. ii, p. 368 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Seetzen's inscriptions were published in *Fundgruben des Orients*, vol. ii (Vienna, 1811), p. 282 sqq. The one mentioned above was afterwards deciphered and explained by Mordmann in the *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 31, p. 89 seq.

<sup>3</sup> The oldest inscriptions, however, run from left to right and from right to left alternately (Βορροπονηδόν).

<sup>4</sup> *Notiz ueber die himjaritische Schrift nebst doppeltem Alphabet derselben in Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes*, vol. i (Göttingen, 1837), p. 332 sqq.



credit of discovery, but a few years later France joined hands with them and was soon leading the way with characteristic brilliance. In 1843 Th. Arnaud, starting from Ṣanʿā, succeeded in discovering the ruins of Maʿrib, the ancient Sabæan metropolis, and in copying at the risk of his life between fifty and sixty inscriptions, which were afterwards published in the *Journal Asiatique* and found an able interpreter in Osiander.<sup>1</sup> Still more important were the results of the expedition undertaken in 1870 by the Jewish scholar, Joseph Halévy, who penetrated into the Jawf, or country lying east of Ṣanʿā, which no European had traversed before him since 24 B.C., when Ælius Gallus led a Roman army by the same route. After enduring great fatigues and meeting with many perilous adventures, Halévy brought back copies of nearly seven hundred inscriptions.<sup>2</sup> During the last twenty-five years much fresh material has been collected by E. Glaser and Julius Euting, while study of that already existing by Prætorius, Halévy, D. H. Müller, Mordtmann, and other scholars has substantially enlarged our knowledge of the language, history, and religion of South Arabia in the Pre-islamic age.

Neither the names of the Himyarite monarchs, as they appear in the lists drawn up by Muḥammadan historians, nor the order in which these names are arranged can pretend to accuracy. If they are historical persons at all they must have reigned in fairly recent times, perhaps a short while before the rise of Islam, and probably they were unimportant princes whom the legend has thrown back into the ancient epoch, and has invested with heroic attributes. Any one who doubts this has only to compare the modern lists with those which have been made from the material in the inscriptions.<sup>3</sup> D. H.

<sup>1</sup> See Arnaud's *Relation d'un voyage à Mareb (Saba) dans l'Arabie méridionale* in the *Journal Asiatique*, 4th series, vol. v (1845), p. 211 sqq. and p. 309 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> See *Rapport sur une mission archéologique dans le Yémen* in the *Journal Asiatique*, 6th series, vol. xix (1872), pp. 5-98, 129-266, 489-547.

<sup>3</sup> See D. H. Müller, *Die Burgen und Schlösser Südarabiens* in *S.B.W.A.*, vol. 97, p. 981 sqq.

Müller has collected the names of thirty-three Minæan kings. Certain names are often repeated—a proof of the existence of ruling dynasties—and ornamental epithets are usually attached to them. Thus we find Dhamar-<sup>The historical value of the inscriptions.</sup> ‘all Dhirriḥ (Glorious), Yatha‘amar Bayyin (Distinguished), Kariba‘ll Watár Yuhan‘im (Great, Beneficent), Samah‘all Yanúf (Exalted). Moreover, the kings bear different titles corresponding to three distinct periods of South Arabian history, viz., ‘Priest-king of Saba’ (*Mukarrib Saba*),<sup>1</sup> ‘King of Saba’ (*Malk Saba*), and ‘King of Saba and Raydán.’ In this way it is possible to determine approximately the age of the various buildings and inscriptions, and to show that they do not belong, as had hitherto been generally supposed, to the time of Christ, but that in some cases they are at least eight hundred years older.

[How widely the peaceful, commerce-loving people of Saba and Himyar differed in character from the wild Arabs to whom Muḥammad was sent appears most strikingly in their submissive attitude towards their gods, which forms, as Goldziher has remarked, the keynote of the South Arabian monuments.<sup>2</sup> The prince erects a thank-offering to the gods who gave him victory over his enemies; the priest dedicates his children and all his possessions; the warrior who has been blessed with “due man-slayings,” or booty, or escape from death records his gratitude, and piously hopes for a continuance of favour. The dead are conceived as living happily under divine protection; they are venerated and sometimes deified.<sup>3</sup>] The following inscription,

<sup>1</sup> The title *Mukarrib* combines the significations of prince and priest.

<sup>2</sup> Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 3.

<sup>3</sup> See F. Prætorius, *Unsterblichkeitsglaube und Heiligenverehrung bei den Himyaren* in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 27, p. 645. Hubert Grimme has given an interesting sketch of the religious ideas and customs of the Southern Arabs in *Weltgeschichte in Charakterbildern: Mohammed* (Munich, 1904), p. 29 sqq.



translated by Lieut.-Col. W. F. Prideaux, is a typical example of its class :—

“Sa’d-iláh and his sons, Benú Marthad<sup>im</sup>, have endowed Il-Maḡah of Hírrán with this tablet, because Il-Maḡah, lord of Awwám Dhú-’Írán Alú, has favourably heard the prayer addressed to him, and has consequently heard the Benú Marthad<sup>im</sup> when they offered the first-fruits of their fertile lands of Arhaḡim in the presence of Il-Maḡah of Hírrán, and Il-Maḡah of Hírrán has favourably heard the prayer addressed to him that he would protect the plains and meadows and this tribe in their habitations, in consideration of the frequent gifts throughout the year ; and truly his (Sa’d-iláh’s) sons will descend to Arhaḡim, and they will indeed sacrifice in the two shrines of ‘Athtor and Shams<sup>im</sup>, and there shall be a sacrifice in Hírrán—both in order that Il-Maḡah may afford protection to those fields of Bin Marthad<sup>im</sup> as well as that he may favourably listen—and in the sanctuary of Il-Maḡah of Ḥarwat, and therefore may he keep them in safety according to the sign in which Sa’d-iláh was instructed, the sign which he saw in the sanctuary of Il-Maḡah of Na’mán ; and as for Il-Maḡah of Hírrán, he has protected those fertile lands of Arhaḡim from hail and from all misfortune (*or*, from cold and from all extreme heat).<sup>\*</sup>

In concluding this very inadequate account of the South Arabic inscriptions I must claim the indulgence of my readers, who are aware how difficult it is to write clearly and accurately upon any subject without first-hand knowledge, in particular when the results of previous research are continually being transformed by new workers in the same field.

Fortunately we possess a considerable literary supplement to these somewhat austere and meagre remains. Our knowledge of South Arabian geography, antiquities, and legendary history is largely derived from the works of two natives of Yemen, who were filled with enthusiasm for its ancient glories, and whose writings, though different as fact and fable, are from the present point of view equally instructive—Ḥasan b. Aḡmad al-Hamdání and

Literary  
sources.

<sup>\*</sup> *Transactions of the Society of Biblical Archaeology*, vol. 5, p. 409.

Nashwán b. Sa'íd al-Hımyarí. Besides an excellent geography of Arabia (*Şifatu Fazırat al-'Arab*), which has been edited by

D. H. Müller, Hamdání left a great work on the history and antiquities of Yemen, entitled *al-Iklıl* ('The Crown'), and divided into ten

books under the following heads:—

Book I. *Compendium of the beginning and origins of genealogy.*

Book II. *Genealogy of the descendants of al-Hamaysa' b. Hımyar.*

Book III. *Concerning the pre-eminent qualities of Qahţán.*

Book IV. *Concerning the first period of history down to the reign of Tubba' Abú Karib.*

Book V. *Concerning the middle period from the accession of As'ad Tubba' to the reign of Dhú Nuwás.*

Book VI. *Concerning the last period down to the rise of Islam.*

Book VII. *Criticism of false traditions and absurd legends.*

Book VIII. *Concerning the castles, cities, and tombs of the Hımyarites; the extant poetry of 'Alqama,\* the elegies, the inscriptions, and other matters.*

Book IX. *Concerning the proverbs and wisdom of the Hımyarites in the Hımyarite language, and concerning the alphabet of the inscriptions.*

Book X. *Concerning the genealogy of Hášhid and Bakıl (the two principal tribes of Hamdán).*

The same intense patriotism which caused Hamdání to devote himself to scientific research inspired Nashwán b. Sa'íd, who descended on the father's side from one of the ancient princely families of Yemen, to recall the legendary past and become the laureate of a long vanished and well-nigh forgotten empire.

In 'The Hımyarite Ode' (*al-Qasıdatu 'l-Hımyariyya*) he sings the might and grandeur of the monarchs who ruled over his people, and moralises in true Muḥammadan spirit upon the

Nashwán b.  
Sa'íd  
al-Hımyarí  
(† 1177 A.D.).

\* This table of contents is quoted by D. H. Müller (*Südarabische Studien*, p. 108, n. 2) from the title-page of the British Museum MS. of the eighth book of the *Iklıl*. No complete copy of the work is known to exist, but considerable portions of it are preserved in the British Museum and in the Berlin Royal Library.

\* The poet 'Alqama b. Dhi Jadan, whose verses are often cited in the commentary on the 'Hımyarite Ode.'



fleetingness of life and the futility of human ambition.<sup>1</sup> Accompanying the Ode, which has little value except as a comparatively unfalsified record of royal names,<sup>2</sup> is a copious historical commentary either by Nashwán himself, as Von Kremer thinks highly probable, or by some one who lived about the same time. Those for whom history represents an aggregate of naked facts would find nothing to the purpose in this commentary, where threads of truth are almost inextricably interwoven with fantastic and fabulous embroideries. A literary form was first given to such legends by the professional story-tellers of early Islam. One of these, the South Arabian 'Abíd b. Sharya, visited Damascus by command of the Caliph Mu'áwiya I, who questioned him "concerning the ancient traditions, the kings of the Arabs and other races, the cause of the confusion of tongues, and the history of the dispersion of mankind in the various countries of the world,"<sup>3</sup> and gave orders that his answers should be put together in writing and published under his name. This work, of which unfortunately no copy has come down to us, was entitled 'The Book of the Kings and the History of the Ancients' (*Kitábu 'l-Muluk wa-akhbáru 'l-Mádin*). Mas'údi (†956 A.D.) speaks of it as a well-known book, enjoying a wide circulation.<sup>4</sup> It was used by the commentator of the Himyarite Ode, either at first hand or through the medium of Hamdán's *Iklil*. We may regard it, like the commentary itself, as a historical romance in which most of the characters and some of the events are real, adorned with fairy-tales, fictitious verses,

<sup>1</sup> *Die Himjarische Kasideh* herausgegeben und übersetzt von Alfred von Kremer (Leipzig, 1865). *The Lay of the Himyarites*, by W. F. Prideaux (Sehore, 1879).

<sup>2</sup> Nashwán was a philologist of some repute. His great dictionary, the *Shamsu 'l-'Ulúm*, is a valuable aid to those engaged in the study of South Arabian antiquities. It has been used by D. H. Müller to fix the correct spelling of proper names which occur in the Himyarite Ode (*Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 29, p. 620 sqq.; *Südarabische Studien*, p. 143 sqq.).

<sup>3</sup> *Fihrist*, p. 89, l. 26.

<sup>4</sup> *Muráju 'l-Dhahab*, ed. by Barbier de Meynard, vol. iv, p. 89.

and such entertaining matter as a man of learning and story-teller by trade might naturally be expected to introduce. Among the few remaining Muḥammadan authors who bestowed special attention on the Pre-islamic period of South Arabian history, I shall mention here only Hamza of  
Iṣfahān. Hamza of Iṣfahān, the eighth book of whose Annals (finished in 961 A.D.) provides a useful sketch, with brief chronological details, of the Tubba's or Ĥimyarite kings of Yemen.

Qaḥṭān, the ancestor of the Southern Arabs, was succeeded by his son Ya'rub, who is said to have been the first to use the Ya'rub. Arabic language, and the first to receive the salutations with which the Arabs were accustomed to address their kings, viz., "*In'im ṣabāḥan*" ("Good morning!") and "*Abayta 'l-la'na*" ("Mayst thou avoid malediction!"). His grandson, 'Abd Shams Saba, is named as the founder of Ma'rib and the builder of the famous Dyke, which, according to others, was constructed by Luqmān b. 'Ād. Saba had two sons, Ĥimyar and Kahlān. Before his death he deputed the sovereign authority to Ĥimyar, and the task of protecting the frontiers and making war upon the enemy to Kahlān. Thus Ĥimyar Ĥimyar and  
Kahlān. obtained the lordship, assumed the title Abū Ayman, and abode in the capital city of the realm, while Kahlān took over the defence of the borders and the conduct of war.<sup>1</sup> [Omitting the long series of mythical Sabæan kings, of whom the legend has little or nothing to relate, we now come to an event which fixed itself ineffaceably in the memory of the Arabs, and which is known in their traditions as *Saylu 'l-'Arim*, or the Flood of the Dyke.

<sup>1</sup> Von Kremer, *Die Südarabische Sage*, p. 56. Possibly, as he suggests (p. 115), the story may be a symbolical expression of the fact that the Sabæans were divided into two great tribes, Ĥimyar and Kahlān, the former of which held the chief power.



Some few miles south-west of Ma'rib the mountains draw together leaving a gap, through which flows the River Adana.

The Dam of  
Ma'rib.

During the summer its bed is often dry, but in the rainy season the water rushes down with such violence that it becomes impassable. In order to protect the city from floods, and partly also for purposes of irrigation, the inhabitants built a dam of solid masonry, which, long after it had fallen into ruin, struck the imagination of Muḥammad, and was reckoned by Moslems among the wonders of the world.<sup>1</sup> That their historians have clothed the bare fact of its destruction in ample robes of legendary circumstance is not surprising, but renders abridgment necessary.<sup>2</sup>

Towards the end of the third century of our era, or possibly at an earlier epoch,<sup>3</sup> the throne of Ma'rib was temporarily occupied by 'Amr b. 'Ámir Má' al-Samá, surnamed Muzayqiyá.<sup>4</sup> His wife, Zarífa, was skilled in the art of divination. She dreamed dreams and

Its destruction  
announced by  
portents.

saw visions which announced the impending calamity. "Go to the Dyke," she said to her husband, who doubted her clairvoyance, "and if thou see a rat digging holes in the Dyke with its paws and moving huge boulders with its hind-legs, be assured that the woe hath come upon us." So 'Amr went to

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Koran xxxiv, 14 sqq. The existing ruins have been described by Arnaud in the *Journal Asiatique*, 7th series, vol. 3 (1874), p. 3 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> I follow Mas'údi, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab* (ed. by Barbier de Meynard), vol. iii, p. 378 sqq., and Nuwayrî in Reiske's *Primæ lineæ Historiæ Rerum Arabicarum*, p. 166 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> The story of the migration from Ma'rib, as related below, may have some historical basis, but the Dam itself was not finally destroyed until long afterwards. Inscriptions carved on the existing ruins show that it was more or less in working order down to the middle of the sixth century A.D. The first recorded flood took place in 447-450, and on another occasion (in 539-542) the Dam was partially reconstructed by Abraha, the Abyssinian viceroy of Yemen. See E. Glaser, *Zwei Inschriften über den Dammbruch von Márib* (*Mitteilungen der Vorderasiatischen Gesellschaft*, 1897, 6).

<sup>4</sup> He is said to have gained this sobriquet from his custom of tearing to pieces (*mazaqa*) every night the robe which he had worn during the day.

the Dyke and looked carefully, and lo, there was a rat moving an enormous rock which fifty men could not have rolled from its place. Convinced by this and other prodigies that the Dyke would soon burst and the land be laid waste, he resolved to sell his possessions and depart with his family; and, lest conduct so extraordinary should arouse suspicion, he had recourse to the following stratagem. He invited the chief men of the city to a splendid feast, which, in accordance with a preconcerted plan, was interrupted by a violent altercation between himself and his son (or, as others relate, an orphan who had been brought up in his house). Blows were exchanged, and 'Amr cried out, "O shame! on the day of my glory a stripling has insulted me and struck my face." He swore that he would put his son to death, but the guests entreated him to show mercy, until at last he gave way. "But by God," he exclaimed, "I will no longer remain in a city where I have suffered this indignity. I will sell my lands and my stock." Having successfully got rid of his encumbrances—for there was no lack of buyers eager to take him at his word—'Amr informed the people of the danger with which they were threatened, and set out from Ma'rib at the head of a great multitude. Gradually the waters made a breach in the Dyke and swept over the country, spreading devastation far and wide. Hence the proverb *Dhahabū* (or *tafarraqū*) *aydī Saba*, "They departed" (or "dispersed") "like the people of Saba."<sup>1</sup>)

This deluge marks an epoch in the history of South Arabia.

Fall of the  
Sabæan  
Empire.

The waters subside, the land returns to cultivation and prosperity, but Ma'rib lies desolate, and the Sabæans have disappeared for ever, except "to point a moral or adorn a tale." Al-A'shā sang:—

Metre *Mutaqārib*: (— — — | — — — | — — — | — — —).

<sup>1</sup> Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. i, p. 497.



"Let this warn whoever a warning will take—  
 And Ma'rib withal, which the Dam fortified.  
 Of marble did Himyar construct it, so high,  
 The waters recoiled when to reach it they tried.  
 It watered their acres and vineyards, and hour  
 By hour, did a portion among them divide.  
 So lived they in fortune and plenty until  
 Therefrom turned away by a ravaging tide.  
 Then wandered their princes and noblemen through  
 Mirage-shrouded deserts that baffle the guide."<sup>1</sup>

The poet's reference to Himyar is not historically accurate. It was only after the destruction of the Dyke and the dispersion of the Sabæans who built it<sup>2</sup> that the Himyarites, with their capital Zafār (at a later period, Ṣan'ā) became the rulers of Yemen.

The first Tubba', by which name the Himyarite kings are known to Muḥammadan writers, was Ḥārith, called al-Rā'ish, *i.e.*, the Featherer, because he 'feathered' his people's nest with the booty which he brought home as a conqueror from India and Ādharbayjān.<sup>3</sup> Of the Tubba's who come after him some obviously owe their place in the line of Himyar to genealogists whose respect for the Koran was greater than their critical acumen. Such a man of straw is Ṣa'b Dhu 'l-Qarnayn (Ṣa'b the Two-horned).

The following verses show that he is a double of the mysterious Dhu 'l-Qarnayn of Koranic legend, supposed by most commentators to be identical with Alexander the Great<sup>4</sup> :—

<sup>1</sup> Hamdānī, *Iktīl*, bk. viii, edited by D. H. Müller in *S.B.W.A.* (Vienna, 1881), vol. 97, p. 1037. The verses are quoted with some textual differences by Yāqūt, *Mu'jam al-Buldān*, ed. by Wüstenfeld, vol. iv, 387, and Ibn Hishām, p. 9.

<sup>2</sup> The following inscription is engraved on one of the stone cylinders described by Arnaud: "Yatha'amar Bayyin, son of Samah'alī Yanūf, Prince of Saba, caused the mountain Balaq to be pierced and erected the flood-gates (called) Raḥab for convenience of irrigation." I translate after D. H. Müller, *loc. laud.*, p. 965.

<sup>3</sup> The words *Himyar* and *Tubba'* do not occur at all in the older inscriptions, and very seldom even in those of a more recent date.

<sup>4</sup> See Koran, xviii, 82-98.

"Ours the realm of Dhu 'l-Qarnayn the glorious,  
 Realm like his was never won by mortal king.  
 Followed he the Sun to view its setting  
 When it sank into the sombre ocean-spring;  
 Up he clomb to see it rise at morning,  
 From within its mansion when the East it fired;  
 All day long the horizons led him onward,<sup>\*</sup>  
 All night through he watched the stars and never tired.  
 Then of iron and of liquid metal  
 He prepared a rampart not to be o'erpassed,  
 Gog and Magog there he threw in prison  
 Till on Judgment Day they shall awake at last."

Similarly, among the Tubba's we find the Queen of Sheba, whose adventures with Solomon are related in the twenty-seventh chapter of the Koran. Although Muḥammad himself did not mention her name or lineage, his interpreters were equal to the occasion and revealed her as Bilqīs, the daughter of Sharāḥīl (Sharahbīl).

The national hero of South Arabian legend is the Tubba'

<sup>\*</sup> Dhu 'l-Qarnayn is described as "the measurer of the earth" (*Massāḥu 'l-ard*) by Hamdānī, *Ḥazīratu 'l-'Arab*, p. 46, l. 10. If I may step for a moment outside the province of literary history to discuss the mythology of these verses, it seems to me more than probable that Dhu 'l-Qarnayn is a personification of the Sabæan divinity 'Athtar, who represents "sweet Hesper-Phosphor, double name" (see D. H. Müller in *S.B.W.A.*, vol. 97, p. 973 seq.). The Minæan inscriptions have "'Athtar of the setting and 'Athtar of the rising" (*ibid.*, p. 1033). Moreover, in the older inscriptions 'Athtar and Almaqa are always mentioned together; and Almaqa, which according to Hamdānī is the name of Venus (*al-Zuhara*), was identified by Arabian archaeologists with Bilqīs. For *qarn* in the sense of 'ray' or 'beam' see Goldziher, *Abhand. zur Arab. Philologie*, Part I, p. 114. I think there is little doubt that Dhu 'l-Qarnayn and Bilqīs may be added to the examples (*ibid.*, p. 111 seq.) of that peculiar conversion by which many heathen deities were enabled to maintain themselves under various disguises within the pale of Islam.

<sup>\*</sup> The Arabic text will be found in Von Kremer's *Altarabische Gedichte ueber die Volkssage von Jemen*, p. 15 (No. viii, l. 6 sqq.). Ḥassān b. Thābit, the author of these lines, was contemporary with Muḥammad, to whose cause he devoted what poetical talent he possessed. In the verses immediately preceding those translated above he claims to be a descendant of Qaḥṭān.



As'ad Kámil, or, as he is sometimes called, Abú Karib. Even at the present day, says Von Kremer, his memory is kept alive, and still haunts the ruins of his palace at Zafár.

As'ad Kámil.

"No one who reads the Ballad of his Adventures or the words of exhortation which he addressed on his death-bed to his son Hassán can escape from the conviction that here we have to do with genuine folk-poetry—fragments of a South Arabian legendary cycle, the beginnings of which undoubtedly reach back to a high antiquity."\* I translate here the former of these pieces, which may be entitled

#### THE BALLAD OF THE THREE WITCHES.\*

"Time brings to pass full many a wonder  
Whereof the lesson thou must ponder.  
Whilst all to thee seems ordered fair,  
Lo, Fate hath wrought confusion there.  
Against a thing foredoomed to be  
Nor cunning nor caution helpeth thee,  
Now a marvellous tale will I recite;  
Trust me to know and tell it aright!

Once on a time was a boy of Asd  
Who became the king of the land at last,  
Born in Hamdán, a villager;  
The name of that village was Khamir.  
This lad in the pride of youth defied  
His friends, and they with scorn replied.  
None guessed his worth till he was grown  
Ready to spring.

\* Von Kremer, *Die Südarabische Sage*, p. vii of the Introduction.

\* A prose translation is given by Von Kremer, *ibid.*, p. 78 sqq. The Arabic text which he published afterwards in *Altarabische Gedichte ueber die Volkssage von Yemen*, p. 18 sqq., is corrupt in some places and incorrect in others. I have followed Von Kremer's interpretation except when it seemed to me to be manifestly untenable. The reader will have no difficulty in believing that this poem was meant to be recited by a wandering minstrel to the hearers that gathered round him at nightfall. (It may well be the composition of one of those professional story-tellers who flourished in the first century after the Flight, such as 'Abid b. Sharya (see p. 13 *supra*), or Yazid b. Rabi'a b. Mufarrigh († 688 A.D.), who is said to have invented the poems and romances of the Himyarite kings (*Aghání*, xvii, 52).)



One morn, alone  
 On Hinwam hill he was sore afraid.<sup>1</sup>  
 (His people knew not where he strayed;  
 They had seen him only yesternight,  
 For his youth and wildness they held him light.  
 The wretches! Him they never missed  
 Who had been their glory had they wist).

O the fear that fell on his heart when he  
 Saw beside him the witches three!  
 The eldest came with many a brew—  
 In some was blood, blood-dark their hue.  
 'Give me the cup!' he shouted bold;  
 'Hold, hold!' cried she, but he would not hold.  
 She gave him the cup, nor he did shrink  
 Tho' he reeled as he drained the magic drink.)

Then the second yelled at him. Her he faced  
 Like a lion with anger in his breast.  
 'These be our steeds, come mount,' she cried,  
 'For asses are worst of steeds to ride.'  
 'Tis sooth,' he answered, and slipped his flank  
 O'er a hyena lean and lank,  
 But the brute so fiercely flung him away,  
 With deep, deep wounds on the earth he lay.  
 Then came the youngest and tended him  
 On a soft bed, while her eyes did swim  
 In tears; but he averted his face  
 And sought a rougher resting-place:  
 Such paramour he deemed too base.  
 And himthought, in anguish lying there,  
 That needles underneath him were.\*

(Now when they had marked his mien so bold,  
 Victory in all things they foretold.  
 'The wars, O As'ad, waged by thee  
 Shall heal mankind of misery.)

\* Instead of Hinwam the original has Hayyûm, for which Von Kremer reads Ahnûm. But see Hamdânî, *Jazīratu 'l-'Arab*, p. 193, last line and fol.

<sup>1</sup> I read *al-jahdi* for *al-jahli*.

Thy sword and spear the foe shall rue  
 When his gashes let the daylight through ;  
 And blood shall flow on every hand  
 What time thou marchest from land to land.  
 By us be counselled : stay not within  
 Khamir, but go to Zafár and win !  
 To thee shall dalliance ne'er be dear,  
 Thy foes shall see thee before they hear.  
 Desire moved to encounter thee,  
 Noble prince, us witches three.  
 Not jest, but earnest on thee we tried,  
 And well didst thou the proof abide.'

As'ad went home and told his folk  
 What he had seen, but no heed they took.  
 On the tenth day he set out again  
 And fared to Zafár with thoughts in his brain.  
 There fortune raised him to high renown :  
 None swifter to strike ever wore a crown.\*

\* \* \* \* \*

Thus found we the tale in memory stored.  
 And Almighty is the Lord.  
 Praise be to God who liveth aye,  
 The Glorious to whom all men pray !"

Legend makes As'ad the hero of a brilliant expedition to Persia, where he defeated the general sent against him by the Arsacids, and penetrated to the Caspian Sea. On his way home he marched through the Hijáz, and having learned that his son, whom he left behind in Medína, had been treacherously murdered, he resolved to take a terrible vengeance on the people of that city.

"Now while the Tubba' was carrying on war against them, there came to him two Jewish Rabbins of the Banú Qurayza, men deep in knowledge, who when they heard that he wished to destroy the

---

\* I omit the following verses, which tell how an old woman of Medína came to King As'ad, imploring him to avenge her wrongs, and how he gathered an innumerable army, routed his enemies, and returned to Zafár in triumph.

city and its people, said to him : ' O King, forbear ! Verily, if thou wilt accept nothing save that which thou desirest, an intervention

As'ad Kāmil  
and the  
two Rabbins  
of Medina.

will be made betwixt thee and the city, and we are not sure but that sudden chastisement may befall thee.' ' Why so ? ' he asked. They answered : ' 'Tis the place of refuge of a prophet who in the after time shall go forth from the sacred territory of Quraysh : it shall be his abode and his home.' So the king refrained himself, for he saw that those two had a particular knowledge, and he was pleased with what they told him. On departing from Medina he followed them in their religion.' . . . And he turned his face towards Mecca, that

As'ad Kāmil  
at Mecca.

being his way to Yemen, and when he was between 'Usfān and Amaj some Hudhalites came to him and said : ' O King, shall we not guide thee to a house of ancient treasure which the kings before thee neglected, wherein are pearls and emeralds and chrysolites and gold and silver ? ' He said, ' Yea.' They said : ' It is a temple at Mecca which those who belong to it worship and in which they pray.' Now the Hudhalites wished to destroy him thereby, knowing that destruction awaited the king who should seek to violate its precinct. So on comprehending what they proposed, he sent to the two Rabbins to ask them about the affair. They replied : ' These folk intend naught but to destroy thee and thine army ; we wot not of any house in the world that God hath chosen for Himself, save this. If thou do that to which they invite thee, thou and those with thee will surely perish together.' He said : ' What then is it ye bid me do when I come there ? ' They said : ' Thou wilt do as its people do—make the circuit thereof, and magnify and honour it, and shave thy head, and humble thyself before it, until thou go forth from its precinct.' He said : ' And what hinders you from doing that yourselves ? ' ' By God,' said they, ' it is the temple of our father Abraham, and verily it is even as we told thee, but we are debarred therefrom by the idols which its people have set up around it and by the blood-offerings which they make beside it ; for they are vile polytheists,' or words to the same effect. The king perceived that their advice was good and their tale true. He ordered the Hudhalites to approach, and cut off their hands and feet. Then he continued his march to Mecca, where he made the circuit of the temple, sacrificed camels, and shaved his head. According to what is told, he stayed six days at Mecca, feasting the inhabitants with the flesh of camels

\* Ibn Hishām, p. 13, l. 14 sqq.



and letting them drink honey.\* . . . Then he moved out with his troops in the direction of Yemen, the two Rabbins accompanying

He seeks to  
establish  
Judaism in  
Yemen.

him ; and on entering Yemen he called on his subjects to adopt the religion which he himself had embraced, but they refused unless the question were submitted to the ordeal of fire which at that time existed in

Yemen ; for as the Yemenites say, there was in their country a fire that gave judgment between them in their disputes : it devoured the wrong-doer but left the injured person unscathed.

The ordeal of  
fire.

The Yemenites therefore came forward with their idols and whatever else they used as a means of

drawing nigh unto God, and the two Rabbins came forward with their scriptures hung on their necks like necklaces, and both parties seated themselves at the place from which the fire was wont to issue. And the fire blazed up, and the Yemenites shrank back from it as it approached them, and were afraid, but the bystanders urged them on and bade them take courage. So they held out until the fire enveloped them and consumed the idols and images and the men of Himyar, the bearers thereof ; but the Rabbins came forth safe and sound, their brows moist with sweat, and the scriptures were still hanging on their necks. Thereupon the Himyarites consented to adopt the king's religion, and this was the cause of Judaism being established in Yemen."\*)

The poem addressed to his son and successor, Hassán, which tradition has put into his mouth, is a sort of last will and testament, of which the greater part is taken up with an account of his conquests and with glorification of his family and himself.<sup>3</sup> Nearly all that we find in the way of maxims or injunctions suitable to the solemn occasion is contained in the following verses :—

As'ad's farewell  
to his son.

"O Hassán, the hour of thy father's death has arrived at last :  
Look to thyself ere yet the time for looking is past.  
Oft indeed are the mighty abased, and often likewise  
Are the base exalted : such is Man who is born and dies.)

\* Ibn Hishám, p. 15, l. 1 sqq.

\* Ibid., p. 17, l. 2 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> Arabic text in Von Kremer's *Altarabische Gedichte ueber die Volkssage von Femen*, p. 20 seq. ; prose translation by the same author in *Die Südarabische Sage*, p. 84 sqq.

Bid ye Ḥimyar know that standing erect would I buried be,  
And have my wine-skins and Yemen robes in the tomb with  
me.<sup>1</sup>

And hearken thou to my Sibyl, for surely can she foresay  
The truth, and safe in her keeping is castle Ghaymán aye.<sup>2</sup>

In connection with Ghaymán a few words may be added respecting the castles in Yemen, of which the ruined skeletons rising from solitary heights seem still to frown defiance upon the passing traveller. Two thousand years ago, and probably long before, they were occupied by powerful barons, more or less independent, who in later times, when the Ḥimyarite Empire had begun to decline, always elected, and occasionally deposed, their royal master. Of these castles the geographer Hamdání has given a detailed account in the eighth book of his great work on the history and antiquities of Yemen entitled the *Iklil*, or 'Crown.'<sup>3</sup> The oldest and most celebrated was Ghumdán, the citadel of Ṣan'á. It is described as a huge edifice of twenty stories, each story ten cubits high. The four façades were built with stone of different colours, white, black, green, and red. On the top story was a chamber which had windows of marble framed with ebony and planewood. Its roof was a slab of pellucid marble, so that when the lord of Ghumdán lay on his couch he saw the birds fly overhead, and could distinguish a raven from a kite. At each corner stood a brazen lion, and when the wind blew

The castles  
of Yemen.

Ghumdán.

<sup>1</sup> The second half of this verse is corrupt. Von Kremer translates (in his notes to the Arabic text, p. 26): "And bury with me the camel stallions (*al-khilán*) and the slaves (*al-ruqqán*)."<sup>2</sup> Apart, however, from the fact that *ruqqán* (plural of *raqiq*) is not mentioned by the lexicographers, it seems highly improbable that the king would have commanded such a barbarity. I therefore take *khilán* (plural of *khál*) in the meaning of 'soft stuffs of Yemen,' and read *zuqqán* (plural of *ziqq*).

<sup>3</sup> Ghaymán or Miqláb, a castle near Ṣan'á, in which the Ḥimyarite kings were buried.

<sup>4</sup> The text and translation of this section of the *Iklil* have been published by D. H. Müller in *S.B.W.A.*, vols. 94 and 97 (Vienna, 1879-1880).



it entered the hollow interior of the effigies and made a sound like the roaring of lions.)

The adventure of As'ad Kámil with the three witches must have recalled to every reader certain scenes in *Macbeth*. Curiously enough, in the history of his son Ḥassán an incident is related which offers a striking parallel to the march of Birnam Wood. Ṭasm and Jadís have already been mentioned. On the massacre of the former tribe by the latter, a single Ṭasmite named Ribáh b. Murra made his escape and took refuge with the Tubba' Ḥassán, whom he persuaded to lead an expedition against the murderers. Now Ribáh's sister

Zarqá'u  
'l-Yamáma.

had married a man of Jadís. Her name was Zarqá'u 'l-Yamáma—i.e., the Blue-eyed Woman of Yamáma—and she had such piercing sight that she was able to descry an army thirty miles away. Ḥassán therefore bade his horsemen hold in front of them leafy branches which they tore down from the trees. [They advanced thus hidden, and towards evening, when they had come within a day's journey, Zarqá said to her people: "I see trees marching." No one believed her until it was too late. Next morning Ḥassán fell upon them and put the whole tribe to the sword.

The warlike expeditions to which Ḥassán devoted all his energy were felt as an intolerable burden by the chiefs of Ḥimyar, who formed a plot to slay him and set his brother 'Amr on the throne. 'Amr was at first unwilling to lend himself to their designs, but ultimately his scruples were overcome, and he stabbed the Tubba' with his own hand. The assassin suffered a terrible punishment. Sleep deserted him, and in his remorse he began to execute the conspirators one after another.

Ḥassán  
murdered by  
his brother.

Dhú Ru'ayn.

There was, however, a single chief called Dhú Ru'ayn, who had remained loyal and had done his best to save 'Amr from the guilt of fratricide. Finding his efforts fruitless, he requested 'Amr to take charge of a sealed



paper which he brought with him, and to keep it in a safe place until he should ask for it. 'Amr consented and thought no more of the matter. Afterwards, imagining that Dhú Ru'ayn had joined in the fatal plot, he gave orders for his execution. "How!" exclaimed Dhú Ru'ayn, "did not I tell thee what the crime involved?" and he asked for the sealed writing, which was found to contain these verses—

"O fool to barter sleep for waking! Blest  
Is he alone whose eyelids close in rest.  
Hath Ḥimyar practised treason, yet 'tis plain  
That God forgiveness owes to Dhú Ru'ayn."<sup>1</sup>

On reading this, 'Amr recognised that Dhú Ru'ayn had spoken the truth, and he spared his life.]

With 'Amr the Tubba' dynasty comes to an end. The succeeding kings were elected by eight of the most powerful barons, who in reality were independent princes, each ruling in his strong castle over as many vassals and retainers as he could bring into subjection. During this period the Abyssinians conquered at least some part of the country, and Christian viceroys were sent by the Najáshí (Negus) to govern it in his name. At last Dhú Nuwás, a descendant of the Tubba' As'ad Kámil, crushed the rebellious barons and made himself unquestioned monarch of Yemen. A fanatical adherent of

Judaism, he resolved to stamp out Christianity in

Najrán, where it is said to have been introduced from Syria by a holy man called Faymiyún (Phemion). The Ḥimyarites flocked to his standard, not so much from religious motives as from hatred of the Abyssinians. The pretended murder of two Jewish children gave Dhú Nuwás a plausible *casus belli*. He marched against Najrán with an overwhelming force, entered the city, and bade the inhabitants choose between Judaism and death. Many perished by the sword; the rest were thrown into a trench which the king ordered to be dug and filled with

Massacre of the  
Christians in  
Najrán (523 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> *Aghání*, xx, 8, l. 14 seq.

blazing fire. Nearly a hundred years later, when Muḥammad was being sorely persecuted, he consoled and encouraged his followers by the example of the Christians of Najrán, who suffered "*for no other reason but that they believed in the mighty, the glorious God.*"<sup>1</sup> Dhū Nuwás paid dearly for his triumph. Daws Dhū Tha'labán, one of those who escaped from the massacre, fled to the Byzantine emperor and implored him, as the head of Christendom, to assist them in obtaining vengeance. Justinus accordingly wrote a letter to the Najáshí, desiring him to take action, and ere long an Abyssinian army, 70,000 strong, under the command of Aryát, disembarked in Yemen. Dhū Nuwás could not count on the loyalty of the Himyarite nobles; his troops melted away. "When he saw the fate that had befallen himself and his people, he turned to the sea and setting spurs to his horse, rode through the shallows until he reached the deep water. Then he plunged into the waves and nothing more of him was seen."<sup>2</sup>

Death of  
Dhū Nuwás.

Thus died, or thus at any rate should have died, the last representative of the long line of Himyarite kings. Henceforth Yemen appears in Pre-islamic history only as an Abyssinian dependency or as a Persian protectorate. The events now to be related form the prologue to a new drama in which South Arabia, so far from being the centre of interest, plays an almost insignificant rôle.<sup>3</sup>

On the death of Dhū Nuwás, the Abyssinian general Aryát continued his march through Yemen. He slaughtered a third part of the males, laid waste a third part of the land, and sent a third part of the women and children to the Najáshí as slaves. Having reduced the Yemenites to submission and re-established order, he held the position of viceroy

Yemen under  
Abyssinian rule.

<sup>1</sup> Koran, lxxxv, 4 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Ṭabari, i, 927, l. 19 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> The following narrative is abridged from Ṭabari, i, 928, l. 2 sqq. = Nöldeke, *Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden*, p. 192 sqq.



for several years. Then mutiny broke out in the Abyssinian army of occupation, and his authority was disputed by an officer, named Abraha. When the rivals faced each other, Abraha said to Aryát: "What will it avail you to engage the Abyssinians in a civil war that will leave none of them alive? Fight it out with me, and let the troops follow the victor." His challenge being accepted, Abraha stepped forth. He was a short, fleshy man, compactly built, a devout Christian, while Aryát was big, tall, and handsome. When the duel began, Aryát thrust his spear with the intention of piercing Abraha's brain, but it glanced off his forehead, slitting his eyelid, nose, and lip—hence the name, *al-Ashram*, by which Abraha was afterwards known; and ere he could repeat the blow, a youth in Abraha's service, called 'Atwada, who was seated on a hillock behind his master, sprang forward and dealt him a mortal wound. Thus Abraha found himself commander-in-chief of the Abyssinian army, but the Najáshí was enraged and swore not to rest until he set foot on the soil of Yemen and cut off the rebel's forelock. On hearing this, Abraha wrote to the Najáshí: "O King, Aryát was thy servant even as I am. We quarrelled over thy command, both of us owing allegiance to thee, but I had more strength than he to command the Abyssinians and keep discipline and exert authority. When I heard of the king's oath, I shore my head, and now I send him a sack of the earth of Yemen that he may put it under his feet and fulfil his oath." The Najáshí answered this act of submission by appointing Abraha to be his viceroy. . . . Then Abraha built the church Abraha viceroy of Yemen. (*al-Qalís*) at Šan'á, the like of which was not to be seen at that time in the whole world, and wrote to the Najáshí that he would not be content until he had diverted thither every pilgrim in Arabia. This letter made much talk, and a man of the Banú Fuqaym, one of those who arranged the calendar, was angered by what he learned of Abraha's purpose; so he went into the church and defiled it. When Abraha heard that the author of the outrage belonged to the people of the Temple in Mecca, and that he meant to show thereby his scorn and contempt for the new foundation, he waxed wroth and swore that he would march against the Temple and lay it in ruins.

The disastrous failure of this expedition, which took place in the year of the Elephant (570 A.D.), did not at once free Yemen from the Abyssinian yoke. The sons of Abraha, Yaksum and Masrúq, bore heavily on the Arabs. Seeing no



help among his own people, a noble Ḥimyarite named Sayf b. Dhī Yazan resolved to seek foreign intervention. His choice

Sayf b. Dhī  
Yazan.

lay between the Byzantine and Persian empires, and he first betook himself to Constantinople.

Disappointed there, he induced the Arab king of Ḥīra, who was under Persian suzerainty, to present him at the court of Madā'in (Ctesiphon). How he won audience of the Sāsānian monarch, Nūshīrwān, surnamed the Just, and tempted him by an ingenious trick to raise a force of eight hundred condemned felons, who were set free and shipped to Yemen under the command of an aged general; how they literally 'burned their boats' and, drawing courage from despair, routed

The Persians in  
Yemen  
(circa 572 A.D.).

the Abyssinian host and made Yemen a satrapy of Persia<sup>1</sup>—this forms an almost epic narrative, which I have omitted here (apart from considera-

tions of space) because it belongs to Persian rather than to Arabian literary history, being probably based, as Nöldeke has suggested, on traditions handed down by the Persian conquerors who settled in Yemen to their aristocratic descendants whom the Arabs called *al-Abnā* (the Sons) or *Banu 'l-Aḥrār* (Sons of the Noble).

Leaving the once mighty kingdom of Yemen thus pitiably and for ever fallen from its high estate, we turn northward into the main stream of Arabian history.

<sup>1</sup> The reader will find a full and excellent account of these matters in Professor Browne's *Literary History of Persia*, vol. i, pp. 178-181.

## CHAPTER II

### THE HISTORY AND LEGENDS OF THE PAGAN ARABS

MUHAMMADANS include the whole period of Arabian history from the earliest times down to the establishment of Islam

The Age of  
Barbarism  
(al-Jāhiliyya).

in the term *al-Jāhiliyya*, which was used by Muḥammad in four passages of the Koran and is generally translated 'the state of ignorance' or simply 'the Ignorance.' Goldziher, however, has shown conclusively that the meaning attached to *jahl* (whence *Jāhiliyya* is derived) by the Pre-Islamic poets is not so much 'ignorance' as 'wildness,' 'savagery,' and that its true antithesis is not *ilm* (knowledge), but rather *hilm*, which denotes the moral reasonableness of a civilised man. "When Muḥammadans say that Islam put an end to the manners and customs of the *Jāhiliyya*, they have in view those barbarous practices, that savage temper, by which Arabian heathendom is distinguished from Islam and by the abolition of which Muḥammad sought to work a moral reformation in his countrymen: [the haughty spirit of the *Jāhiliyya* (*ḥamiyyatu 'l-Jāhiliyya*), the tribal pride and the endless tribal feuds, the cult of revenge, the implacability and all the other pagan characteristics which Islam was destined to overcome." <sup>1</sup> ]

Our sources of information regarding this period may be classified as follows :—

- (1) *Poems and fragments of verse*, which though not written

<sup>1</sup> Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 225.

down at the time were preserved by oral tradition and committed to writing, for the most part, two or three hundred years afterwards. The importance of this, virtually the sole contemporary record of Pre-islamic history, is recognised in the well-known saying, "Poetry is the public register of the Arabs (*al-shi'ru dīwānu 'l-'Arab*); thereby genealogies are kept in mind and famous actions are made familiar." Some account of the chief collections of old Arabian poetry will be given in the next chapter.

Sources of  
information  
concerning the  
Jāhiliyya.

(2) *Proverbs*. These are of less value, as they seldom explain themselves, while the commentary attached to them is the work of scholars bent on explaining them at all costs, though in many cases their true meaning could only be conjectured and the circumstances of their origin had been entirely forgotten. Notwithstanding this very pardonable excess of zeal, we could ill afford to lose the celebrated collections of Mufaḍḍal b. Salama († *circa* 900 A.D.) and Maydānī († 1124 A.D.),<sup>2</sup> which contain so much curious information throwing light on every aspect of Pre-islamic life.

(3) *Traditions and legends*. Since the art of writing was neither understood nor practised by the heathen Arabs in general, it was impossible that Prose, as a literary form, should exist among them. The germs of Arabic Prose, however, may be traced back to the *Jāhiliyya*. Besides the proverb (*mathal*) and the oration (*khutba*) we find elements of history and romance in the prose narratives used by the rhapsodists to introduce and set forth plainly the matter of their songs, and in the legends which recounted the glorious deeds of tribes and individuals. A vast number of such stories—some unmistakably genuine, others bearing the stamp of fiction—are preserved in various literary, historical, and geographical works composed under the 'Abbāsīd Caliphate, especially in the *Kitābu 'l-Aghāni* (Book

<sup>2</sup> Maydānī's collection has been edited, with a Latin translation by Freytag, in three volumes (*Arabum Proverbia*, Bonn, 1838-1843).



of Songs) by Abu 'l-Faraj of Iṣfahān († 967 A.D.), an invaluable compilation based on the researches of the great Humanists as they have been well named by Sir Charles Lyall, of the second and third centuries after the Hijra.<sup>1</sup> The original writings of these early critics and scholars have perished almost without exception, and beyond the copious citations in the *Aghāni* we possess hardly any specimens of their work. "The *Book of Songs*," says Ibn Khaldūn, "is the Register of the Arabs. It comprises all that they had achieved in the past of excellence in every kind of poetry, history, music, *et cetera*. So far as I am aware, no other book can be put on a level with it in this respect. It is the final resource of the student of belles-lettres, and leaves him nothing further to desire."<sup>2</sup>

The Book of Songs.

In the following pages I shall not attempt to set in due order and connection the confused mass of poetry and legend in which all that we know of Pre-islamic Arabia lies deeply embedded. This task has already been performed with admirable skill by Caussin de Perceval in his *Essai sur l'histoire des Arabes avant l'Islamisme*,<sup>3</sup> and it could serve no useful purpose to inflict a dry summary of that famous work upon the reader. The better course, I think, will be to select a few typical and outstanding features of the time and to present them, wherever possible, as they have been drawn—largely from imagination—by the Arabs themselves. If the Arabian traditions are wanting in historical accuracy they are nevertheless, taken as a whole, true in spirit to the Dark Age which they call up from the dead and reverently unfold beneath our eyes.

Scope of this chapter.

<sup>1</sup> The *Kitābu 'l-Aghāni* has been published at Bulāq (1284-1285 A.H.) in twenty volumes. A volume of biographies not contained in the Bulāq text was edited by R. E. Brünnow (Leiden, 1888).

<sup>2</sup> *Muqaddima* of Ibn Khaldūn (Beyrout, 1900), p. 554, ll. 8-10; *Les Prologomènes d' Ibn Khaldoun traduits par M. de Slane* (Paris, 1863-68) vol. iii, p. 331.

<sup>3</sup> Published at Paris, 1847-1848, in three volumes.

About the middle of the third century of our era Arabia was enclosed on the north and north-east by the rival empires of Rome and Persia, to which the Syrian desert, stretching right across the peninsula, formed a natural termination. In order to protect themselves from Bedouin raiders, who poured over the frontier-provinces, and after laying hands on all the booty within reach vanished as suddenly as they came, both Powers found it necessary to plant a line of garrisons along the edge of the wilderness. Thus the tribesmen were partially held in check, but as force alone seemed an expensive and inefficient remedy it was decided, in accordance with the well-proved maxim, *divide et impera*, to enlist a number of the offending tribes in the Imperial service. Regular pay and the prospect of unlimited plunder—for in those days Rome and Persia were almost perpetually at war—were inducements that no true Bedouin could resist. They fought, how-

The Arab  
dynasties of Hira  
and Ghassán.

ever, as free allies under their own chiefs or phylarchs. In this way two Arabian dynasties sprang up—the Ghassánids in Syria and the Lakhmites at Hira, west of the Euphrates—military buffer-states, always ready to collide even when they were not urged on by the suzerain powers behind them. The Arabs soon showed what they were capable of when trained and disciplined in arms. On the defeat of Valerian by the Chosroes Sábúr I, an Arab chieftain in Palmyra, named Udhayna (Odenathus), marched at the head of a strong force against the conqueror, drove him out of Syria, and pursued him up to the very walls of Madá'in, the Persian capital (265 A.D.). His brilliant exploits were duly rewarded by the Emperor Gallienus, who bestowed on him the title of Augustus. He was, in fact, the

Odenathus and  
Zenobia.

acknowledged master of the Roman legions in the East when, a year later, he was treacherously murdered. He found a worthy successor in his wife, the noble and ambitious Zenobia, who set herself the task of building up a great Oriental Empire. She fared, however, no



better than did Cleopatra in a like enterprise. For a moment the issue was doubtful, but Aurelian triumphed and the proud 'Queen of the East' was led a captive before his chariot through the streets of Rome (274 A.D.).

These events were not forgotten by the Arabs. It flattered their national pride to recall that once, at any rate, Roman armies had marched under the flag of an Arabian princess. But the legend, as told in their traditions, has little in common with reality. Not only are names and places freely altered—Zenobia herself being confused with her Syrian general, Zabdai—but the historical setting, though dimly visible in the background, has been distorted almost beyond recognition: what remains is one of those romantic adventures which delighted the Arabs of the *Jāhiliyya*, just as their modern descendants are never tired of listening to the *Story of 'Antar* or to the *Thousand Nights and a Night*.

[The first king of the Arab settlers in 'Irāq (Babylonia): is said to have been Málík the Azdite, who was accidentally shot with an arrow by his son, Sulayma. Before he expired he uttered a verse which has become proverbial :—

Málík the Azdite.

*U'allimuhu 'l-rimāyata kulla yawmīn  
falamma 'stadda sá'iduhū ramānī.*

"I taught him every day the bowman's art,  
And when his arm took aim, he pierced my  
heart."]

Málík's kingdom, if it can properly be described as such, was consolidated and organised by his son, Jadhíma, surnamed al-Abrash (the Speckled)—a polite euphemism for al-Abrāṣ (the Leprous). He reigned as the vassal of Ardāshīr Bābakān, the founder (226 A.D.) of the Sāsānian dynasty in Persia, which thereafter continued to dominate the Arabs of 'Irāq during the whole Pre-islamic

Jadhíma  
al-Abrash.

\* These are the same Bedouin Arabs of Tanúk who afterwards formed part of the population of Híra. See p. 38 *infra*.



period. Jadhīma is the hero of many fables and proverbs. His pride, it is said, was so overweening that he would suffer no boon-companions except two stars called *al-Farqadn*, and when he drank wine he used to pour out a cup for each of them. He had a page, 'Adī b. Naṣr, with whom his sister fell in love; and in a moment of intoxication he gave his consent to their marriage. Next morning, furious at the trick which had been played upon him, he beheaded the unlucky bridegroom and reviled his sister for having married a slave. Nevertheless, when a son was born, Jadhīma adopted the boy, and as he grew up regarded him with the utmost affection. One day the youthful 'Amr suddenly disappeared. For a long time no trace of him could be found, but at last he was discovered, running wild and naked, by two brothers, Málík and 'Aql, who cared for him and clothed him and presented him to the king. Overjoyed at the sight, Jadhīma promised to grant them whatever they asked. They chose the honour, which no mortal had hitherto obtained, of being his boon-companions, and by this title (*nadmáná Jadhīma*) they are known to fame.

Jadhīma was a wise and warlike prince. In one of his expeditions he defeated and slew 'Amr b. Ṣarīb b. Ḥassán b. Udhayna, an Arab chieftain who had brought part of Eastern Syria and Mesopotamia under his sway, and who, as the name Udhayna indicates, is probably identical with Odenathus, the husband of Zenobia. This opinion is confirmed by the statement of Ibn Qutayba that "Jadhīma sought in marriage Zabbá, the daughter of the King of Mesopotamia, who became queen after her husband." \* According to the view generally held by Muḥammadan authors Zabbá<sup>2</sup> was the daughter of 'Amr b. Ṣarīb and was

The story of  
Zabbá.

\* Ibn Qutayba in Brünnow's *Chrestomathy*, p. 29.

<sup>2</sup> Properly *al-Zabbá*, an epithet meaning 'hairy.' According to Ṭabarī (i, 757) her name was Nā'ila. It is odd that in the Arabic version of the story the name Zenobia (Zaynab) should be borne by the heroine's sister.

elected to succeed him when he fell in battle. However this may be, she proved herself a woman of extraordinary courage and resolution. As a safeguard against attack she built two strong castles on either bank of the Euphrates and connected them by a subterranean tunnel; she made one fortress her own residence, while her sister, Zaynab, occupied the other.

Having thus secured her position she determined to take vengeance on Jadhîma. She wrote to him that the sceptre was slipping from her feeble grasp, that she found no man worthy of her except himself, that she desired to unite her kingdom with his by marriage, and begged him to come and see her. Jadhîma needed no urging. Deaf to the warnings of his friend and counsellor, Qaşîr, he started from Baqqa, a castle on the Euphrates. When they had travelled some distance, Qaşîr implored him to return. "No," said Jadhîma, "the affair was decided at Baqqa"—words which passed into a proverb. On approaching their destination the king saw with alarm squadrons of cavalry between him and the city, and said to Qaşîr, "What is the prudent course?" "You left prudence at Baqqa," he replied; "if the cavalry advance and salute you as king and then retire in front of you, the woman is sincere, but if they cover your flanks and encompass you, they mean treachery. Mount al-'Aşâ"—Jadhîma's favourite mare—"for she cannot be overtaken or outpaced, and rejoin your troops while there is yet time." Jadhîma refused to follow this advice. Presently he was surrounded by the cavalry and captured. Qaşîr, however, sprang on the mare's back and galloped thirty miles without drawing rein.

(When Jadhîma was brought to Zabbâ she seated him on a skin of leather and ordered her maidens to open the veins in his arm, so that his blood should flow into a golden bowl. "O Jadhîma," said she, "let not a single drop be lost. I want it as a cure for madness." The dying man suddenly moved his arm and sprinkled with his blood one of the marble pillars of the hall—an evil portent for Zabbâ, inasmuch as it had been prophesied by a certain soothsayer that unless every drop of the king's blood entered the bowl, his murder would be avenged.)

Now Qaşîr came to 'Amr b. 'Adî, Jadhîma's nephew and son by adoption, who has been mentioned above, and engaged to win over the army to his side if he would take vengeance on Zabbâ. "But how?" cried 'Amr; "for she is more inaccessible than the eagle of the air." "Only help me," said Qaşîr, "and you will be clear of blame." He



cut off his nose and ears and betook himself to Zabbá, pretending that he had been mutilated by 'Amr. The queen believed what she saw, welcomed him, and gave him money to trade on her behalf. Qaşir hastened to the palace of 'Amr at Hıra, and, having obtained permission to ransack the royal treasury, he returned laden with riches. Thus he gradually crept into the confidence of Zabbá, until one day he said to her: "It behoves every king and queen to provide themselves with a secret passage wherein to take refuge in case of danger." Zabbá answered: "I have already done so," and showed him the tunnel which she had constructed underneath the Euphrates. His project was now ripe for execution. With the help of 'Amr he fitted out a caravan of a thousand camels, each carrying two armed men concealed in sacks. When they drew near the city of Zabbá, Qaşir left them and rode forward to announce their arrival to the queen, who from the walls of her capital viewed the long train of heavily burdened camels and marvelled at the slow pace with which they advanced. As the last camel passed through the gates of the city the janitor pricked one of the sacks with an ox-goad which he had with him, and hearing a cry of pain, exclaimed, "By God, there's mischief in the sacks!" But it was too late. 'Amr and his men threw themselves upon the garrison and put them to the sword. Zabbá sought to escape by the tunnel, but Qaşir stood barring the exit on the further side of the stream. She hurried back, and there was 'Amr facing her. Resolved that her enemy should not taste the sweetness of vengeance, she sucked her seal-ring, which contained a deadly poison, crying, "By my own hand, not by 'Amr's!"

[In the kingdoms of Hıra and Ghassán Pre-islamic culture attained its highest development, and from these centres it diffused itself and made its influence felt throughout Arabia. Some account, therefore, of their history and of the circumstances which enabled them to assume a civilising rôle will not be superfluous.<sup>2</sup>]

\* The above narrative is abridged from *Aghání*, xiv, 73, l. 20-75, l. 25. Cf. Tabari, i, 757-766; Mas'údí, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab* (ed. by Barbier de Meynard), vol. iii, pp. 189-199.

\* Concerning Hıra and its history the reader may consult an admirable monograph by Dr. G. Rothstein, *Die Dynastie der Lahmiden in al-Hıra* (Berlin, 1899), where the sources of information are set forth (p. 5 sqq.). The incidental references to contemporary events in Syriac and Byzantine writers, who often describe what they saw with their own eyes, are



About the beginning of the third century after Christ a number of Bedouin tribes, wholly or partly of Yemenite origin, who had formed a confederacy and called themselves collectively *Tanúkh*, took advantage of the disorder then prevailing in the Arsacid Empire to invade *Irâq* (Babylonia) and plant their settlements in the fertile country west of the Euphrates. While part of the intruders continued to lead a nomad life, others engaged in agriculture, and in course of time villages and towns grew up. The most important of these was *Hîra* (properly, *al-Hîra*, i.e., the Camp), which occupied a favourable and healthy situation a few miles to the south of *Kûfa*, in the neighbourhood of ancient Babylon.\* According to *Hishâm b. Muḥammad al-Kalbî* († 819 or 821 A.D.), an excellent authority for the history of the Pre-islamic period, the inhabitants of *Hîra* during the reign of *Ardashîr Bâbakân*, the first Sásanian king of Persia (226–241 A.D.), consisted of three classes, viz. :—

(1) The *Tanúkh*, who dwelt west of the Euphrates between *Hîra* and *Anbâr* in tents of camel's hair.

(2) The *ʿIbâd*, who lived in houses in *Hîra*.

(3) The *Ahlâf* (Clients), who did not belong to either of the above-mentioned classes, but attached themselves to the people of *Hîra* and lived among them—blood-guilty fugitives

extremely valuable as a means of fixing the chronology, which Arabian historians can only supply by conjecture, owing to the want of a definite era during the Pre-islamic period. Muḥammadan general histories usually contain sections, more or less mythical in character, "On the Kings of *Hîra* and *Ghassân*." Attention may be called in particular to the account derived from *Hishâm b. Muḥammad al-Kalbî*, which is preserved by *Ṭabarî* and has been translated with a masterly commentary by *Nöldeke* in his *Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden*. *Hishâm* had access to the archives kept in the churches of *Hîra*, and claims to have extracted therefrom many genealogical and chronological details relating to the Lakhmite dynasty (*Ṭabarî*, i, 770, 7).

\* *Hîra* is the Syriac *ḥértâ* (sacred enclosure, monastery), which name was applied to the originally mobile camp of the Persian Arabs and retained as the designation of the garrison town.

pursued by the vengeance of their own kin, or needy emigrants seeking to mend their fortunes.

Naturally the townsmen proper formed by far the most influential element in the population. Hishām, as we have seen, calls them 'the 'Ibād.' His use of this

The 'Ibād.

term, however, is not strictly accurate. The 'Ibād are exclusively the *Christian Arabs of Hīra*, and are so called in virtue of their Christianity; the pagan Arabs, who at the time when Hīra was founded and for long afterwards constituted the bulk of the citizens, were never comprised in a designation which expresses the very opposite of paganism. 'Ibād means 'servants,' i.e., those who serve God or Christ. It cannot be determined at what epoch the name was first used to distinguish the religious community, composed of members of different tribes, which was dominant in Hīra during the sixth century. Dates are comparatively of little importance; what is really remarkable is the existence in Pre-islamic times of an Arabian community that was not based on blood-relationship or descent from a common ancestor, but on a spiritual principle, namely, the profession of a common faith. The religion and culture of the 'Ibād were conveyed by various channels to the inmost recesses of the peninsula, as will be shown more fully in a subsequent chapter. They were the schoolmasters of the heathen Arabs, who could seldom read or write, and who, it must be owned, so far from desiring to receive instruction, rather gloried in their ignorance of accomplishments which they regarded as servile. (Nevertheless, the best minds among the Bedouins were irresistibly attracted to Hīra. Poets in those days found favour with princes. A great number of Pre-islamic bards visited the Lakhmite court, while some, like Nābigha and 'Abīd b. al-Abras, made it their permanent residence.)

It is unnecessary to enter into the vexed question as to the origin and rise of the Lakhmite dynasty at Hīra. According



to Hishām b. Muḥammad al-Kalbi, who gives a list of twenty kings, covering a period of 522 years and eight months, the first Lakhmite ruler was ‘Amr b. ‘Adī b. Naṣr b. Rabī‘a b. Lakhm, the same who was adopted by Jadhīma, and afterwards avenged his death on Queen Zabbā. Almost nothing is known of his successors until we come to Nu‘mān I, surnamed al-A‘war (the One-eyed), whose reign falls in the first quarter of the fifth century. Nu‘mān is renowned in legend as the builder of Khawarnaq, a famous castle near Hīra.

Nu‘mān I.  
(circa 400 A.D.).

It was built at the instance of the Sāsānian king, Yazdigird I, who desired a salubrious residence for his son, Prince Bahráh Gôr. [On its completion, Nu‘mān ordered the architect, a ‘Roman’ (i.e., Byzantine subject) named Sinimmár, to be cast headlong from the battlements, either on account of his boast that he could have constructed a yet more wonderful edifice “which should turn round with the sun,” or for fear that he might reveal the position of a certain stone, the removal of which would cause the whole building to collapse. One spring day (so the story is told) Nu‘mān sat with his Vizier in Khawarnaq, which overlooked the Fen-land (al-Najaf), with its neighbouring gardens and plantations of palm-trees and canals, to the west, and the Euphrates to the east. Charmed by the beauty of the prospect, he exclaimed, “Hast thou ever seen the like of

The Castle of  
Khawarnaq.

Nu‘mān  
becomes an  
anchorite.

this?” “No,” replied the Vizier, “if it would but last.” “And what is lasting?” asked Nu‘mān. “That which is with God in heaven.” “How can one attain to it?” “By renouncing the world and serving God, and striving after that which He hath.” Nu‘mān, it is said, immediately resolved to abandon his kingdom; on the same night he clad himself in sack-cloth, stole away unperceived, and became a wandering devotee (*ṣā’ih*).] This legend seems to have grown out of the following verses by ‘Adī b. Zayd, the ‘Ibādite:—



"Consider thou Khawarnaq's lord—and oft  
Of heavenly guidance cometh vision clear—  
Who once, rejoicing in his ample realm,  
Surveyed the broad Euphrates, and Sadir ;<sup>1</sup>  
Then sudden terror struck his heart : he cried,  
'Shall Man, who deathward goes, find pleasure here ?'  
They reigned, they prospered ; yet, their glory past,  
In yonder tombs they lie this many a year.  
At last they were like unto withered leaves  
Whirled by the winds away in wild career."<sup>2</sup>

The opinion of most Arabian authors, that Nu'mán embraced Christianity, is probably unfounded, but there is reason to believe that he was well disposed towards it, and that his Christian subjects—a Bishop of Híra is mentioned as early as 410 A.D.—enjoyed complete religious liberty.

Nu'mán's place was filled by his son Mundhir, an able and energetic prince. The power of the Lakhmites at this time

Mundhir I.

may be inferred from the fact that on the death of Yazdigird I Mundhir forcibly intervened in the dispute as to the Persian succession and procured the election of Bahrán Góh, whose claims had previously been rejected by the priesthood.<sup>3</sup> In the war which broke out shortly afterwards between Persia and Rome, Mundhir proved himself a loyal vassal, but was defeated by the Romans with great loss (421 A.D.). Passing over several obscure reigns, we arrive at the beginning of the sixth century, when another

Mundhir III,  
b. Má' al-samā.

Mundhir, the third and most illustrious of his name, ascended the throne. This is he whom the Arabs called Mundhir b. Má' al-samā.<sup>4</sup> He had a long and brilliant reign, which, however, was temporarily

<sup>1</sup> Sadir was a castle in the vicinity of Híra.      <sup>2</sup> Tabarí, i, 853, 20 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> Bahrán was educated at Híra under Nu'mán and Mundhir. The Persian grandees complained that he had the manners and appearance of the Arabs among whom he had grown up (Tabarí, i, 858, 7).

<sup>4</sup> Má' al-samā (i.e., Water of the sky) is said to have been the sobriquet of Mundhir's mother, whose proper name was Máriya or Máwiyya.

clouded by an event that cannot be understood without some reference to the general history of the period. About 480 A.D. the powerful tribe of Kinda, whose princes appear to have held much the same position under the Tubba's of Yemen as the Lakhmites under the Persian monarchs, had extended their sway over the greater part of Central and Northern Arabia.

Rise of Kinda.

The moving spirit in this conquest was Hujr, surnamed Akilu 'l-Murár, an ancestor of the poet Imru'u 'l-Qays. On his death the Kindite confederacy was broken up, but towards the year 500 it was re-established for a brief space by his grandson, Hárith b. 'Amr, and became a formidable rival to the kingdoms of Ghassán and Hira. Meanwhile, in Persia, the communistic doctrines of Mazdak

Mazdak.

had obtained wide popularity among the lower classes, and were finally adopted by King Kawádh himself.\* Now, it is certain that at some date between 505 and 529 Hárith b. 'Amr, the Kindite, invaded 'Irâq, and drove Mundhir out of his kingdom; and it seems not impossible

Mundhir  
expelled from  
Hira by Hárith  
of Kinda.

that, as many historians assert, the latter's downfall was due to his anti-Mazdakite opinions, which would naturally excite the displeasure of his suzerain. At any rate, whatever the causes may have been, Mundhir was temporarily supplanted by Hárith, and although he was restored after a short interval, before the accession of Anúshirwán, who, as Crown Prince, carried out a wholesale massacre of the followers of Mazdak (528 A.D.), the humiliation which he had suffered and cruelly avenged was not soon forgotten; † the life and poems of Imru'u 'l-Qays

\* For an account of Mazdak and his doctrines the reader may consult Nöldeke's translation of Tabarí, pp. 140-144, 154, and 455-467, and Professor Browne's *Literary History of Persia*, vol. i, pp. 168-172.

† Mundhir slaughtered in cold blood some forty or fifty members of the royal house of Kinda who had fallen into his hands. Hárith himself was defeated and slain by Mundhir in 529. Thereafter the power of Kinda sank, and they were gradually forced back to their original settlements in Ḥaḍramawt.



bear witness to the hereditary hatred subsisting between Lakhm and Kinda. Mundhir's operations against the Romans were conducted with extraordinary vigour; he devastated Syria as far as Antioch, and Justinian saw himself obliged to entrust the defence of these provinces to the Ghassánid Hārith b. Jabala (Hārith al-A'raj), in whom Mundhir at last found more than his match. From this time onward the kings of Hīra and Ghassān are continually raiding and plundering each other's territory. In one of his expeditions Mundhir captured a son of Hārith, and "immediately sacrificed him to Aphrodite"—i.e., to the Arabian goddess al-'Uzzá;<sup>1</sup> but on taking the field again in 554 he was

Death of  
Mundhir III.

surprised and slain by stratagem in a battle which is known proverbially as 'The Day of Ḥalīma.'<sup>2</sup>

On the whole, the Lakhmites were a heathen and barbarous race, and these epithets are richly deserved by Mundhir III. It is related in the *Aghānī* that he had two boon-companions, Khālīd b. al-Muḍallil and 'Amr b. Mas'ūd, with whom he used to carouse; and once, being irritated by words spoken in wine, he gave orders that they should be buried alive. Next morning he did not recollect what had passed and inquired as usual for his friends. On learning the truth he was filled with remorse. He caused two

Mundhir's  
"Good Day and  
Evil Day."

obelisks to be erected over their graves, and two days in every year he would come and sit beside these obelisks, which were called *al-Ghariyyān*—i.e., the Blood-smeared. One day was the Day of Good (*yawmu na'im*), and whoever first encountered him on that day received a hundred black camels. The other day was the Day of Evil (*yawmu bu's*), on which he would present the first-comer with the head of a black polecat (*ẓaribān*), then sacrifice him and smear the obelisks with his blood.<sup>3</sup> The

<sup>1</sup> On another occasion he sacrificed four hundred Christian nuns to the same goddess.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 50 *infra*.

<sup>3</sup> *Aghānī*, xix, 86, l. 16 sqq.



poet 'Abd b. al-Abraş is said to have fallen a victim to this horrible rite. It continued until the doom fell upon a certain Ḥanzala of Ṭayyi', who was granted a year's grace in order to regulate his affairs, on condition that he should find a surety. He appealed to one of Mundhir's suite, Sharik b. 'Amr, who

Ḥanzala and  
Sharik.

straightway rose and said to the king, "My hand for his and my blood for his if he fail to return at the time appointed." When the day came Ḥanzala did not appear, and Mundhir was about to sacrifice Sharik, whose mourning-woman had already begun to chant the dirge. Suddenly a rider was seen approaching, wrapped in a shroud and perfumed for burial. A mourning-woman accompanied him. It was Ḥanzala. Mundhir marvelled at their loyalty, dismissed them with marks of honour, and abolished the custom which he had instituted.<sup>1</sup>

He was succeeded by his son 'Amr, who is known to contemporary poets and later historians as 'Amr, son of Hind.<sup>2</sup>

During his reign Ḥira became an important literary centre. Most of the famous poets then living visited his court; we shall see in the next chapter what relations he had with Ṭarafa, 'Amr b. Kulthúm, and Ḥārith b. Ḥilliza. He was a morose, passionate, and tyrannical man. The Arabs stood in great awe of him, but vented their spite none the less. "At Ḥira," said Daháb al-'Ijlí, "there are mosquitoes and fever and lions and 'Amr b. Hind, who acts unjustly and wrongfully."<sup>3</sup> He was slain by the chief of Taghlib, 'Amr b. Kulthúm, in vengeance for an insult offered to his mother, Laylá.

It is sufficient to mention the names of Qábús and

<sup>1</sup> *Aghání*, xix, 87, l. 18 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Hind was a princess of Kinda (daughter of the Ḥārith b. 'Amr mentioned above), whom Mundhir probably captured in one of his marauding expeditions. She was a Christian, and founded a monastery at Ḥira. See Nöldeke's translation of Ṭabarí, p. 172, n. 1.

<sup>3</sup> *Aghání*, xxi, 194, l. 22.

Mundhir IV, both of whom were sons of Hind, and occupied the throne for short periods. We now come to the last Lakhmite king of Híra, and by far the most celebrated in tradition, Nu'mán III, son of Mundhir IV, with the *kunya* (name of honour) Abú

Nu'mán Abú  
Qábús.

Qábús, who reigned from 580 to 602 or from 585 to 607. He was brought up and educated by a noble Christian family in Híra, the head of which was Zayd b. Hammád, father of the poet 'Adí b. Zayd. 'Adí is such an interesting figure, and his fortunes were so closely and tragically linked with those of Nu'mán, that some account of his life and character will be acceptable. Both his father and grandfather were men of unusual culture, who held high posts in the civil administration under Mundhir III and his successors. Zayd, moreover,

'Adí b. Zayd.

through the good offices of a *dihqán*, or Persian landed proprietor, Farrukh-máhán by name, obtained from Khusraw Anúshirwán an important and confidential appointment—that of Postmaster—ordinarily reserved for the sons of satraps.<sup>1</sup> When 'Adí grew up, his father sent him to be educated with the son of the *dihqán*. He learned to write and speak Persian with complete facility and Arabic with the utmost elegance; he versified, and his accomplishments included archery, horsemanship, and polo. At the Persian court his personal beauty, wit, and readiness in reply so impressed Anúshirwán that he took him into his service as secretary and interpreter—Arabic had never before been written in the Imperial Chancery—and accorded him all the privileges of a favourite. He was entrusted with a mission to Constantinople, where he was honourably received; and on his departure the Qayşar,<sup>2</sup> following an excellent custom, instructed the officials in charge of the post-routes to provide horses and

<sup>1</sup> Zayd was actually Regent of Híra after the death of Qábús, and paved the way for Mundhir IV, whose violence had made him detested by the people (Nöldeke's translation of Ṭabarí, p. 346, n. 1).

<sup>2</sup> The Arabs called the Byzantine emperor 'Qayşar,' i.e., Cæsar, and the Persian emperor 'Kisrá,' i.e., Chosroes.



every convenience in order that the ambassador might see for himself the extent and resources of the Byzantine Empire. 'Adi passed some time in Syria, especially at Damascus, where his first poem is said to have appeared. On his father's death, which happened about this time, he renounced the splendid position at Hira which he might have had for the asking, and gave himself up to hunting and to all kinds of amusement and pleasure, only visiting Madá'in (Ctesiphon) at intervals to perform his secretarial duties. While staying at Hira he fell in love with Nu'mán's daughter Hind, who was then eleven years old. The story as told in the *Book of Songs* is too curious to be entirely omitted, though want of space prevents me from giving it in full.<sup>1</sup>

It is related that Hind, who was one of the fairest women of her time, went to church on Thursday of Holy Week, three days after Palm Sunday, to receive the sacrament. 'Adi had entered the church for the same purpose. He espied her—she was a big, tall girl—while she was off her guard, and fixed his gaze upon her before she became aware of him. Her maidens, who had seen him approaching, said nothing to their mistress, because one of them called Máriya was enamoured of 'Adi and knew no other way of making his acquaintance. When Hind saw him looking at herself, she was highly displeased and scolded her handmaidens and beat some of them. 'Adi had fallen in love with her, but he kept the matter secret for a whole year. At the end of that time Máriya, thinking that Hind had forgotten what passed, described the church of Thóma (St. Thomas) and the nuns there and the girls who frequented it, and the beauty of the building and of the lamps, and said to her, "Ask thy mother's leave to go." As soon as leave was granted, Máriya conveyed the intelligence to 'Adi, who immediately dressed himself in a magnifi-

---

<sup>1</sup> My friend and colleague, Professor A. A. Bevan, writes to me that "the story of 'Adi's marriage with the king's daughter is based partly on a verse in which the poet speaks of himself as connected by marriage with the royal house (*Aghání*, ii, 26, l. 5), and partly on another verse in which he mentions 'the home of Hind' (*ibid.*, ii, 32, l. 1). But this Hind was evidently a Bedouin woman, not the king's daughter."



cent gold-embroidered Persian tunic (*yalmaq*) and hastened to the rendezvous, accompanied by several young men of Híra. When Máriya perceived him, she cried to Hind, "Look at this youth: by God, he is fairer than the lamps and all things else that thou seest." "Who is he?" she asked. "'Adí, son of Zayd." "Do you think," said Hind, "that he will recognise me if I come nearer?" Then she advanced and watched him as he conversed with his friends, outshining them all by the beauty of his person, the elegance of his language, and the splendour of his dress. "Speak to him," said Máriya to her young mistress, whose countenance betrayed her feelings. After exchanging a few words the lovers parted. Máriya went to 'Adí and promised, if he would first gratify her wishes, to bring about his union with Hind. She lost no time in warning Nu'mán that his daughter was desperately in love with 'Adí and would either disgrace herself or die of grief unless he gave her to him. Nu'mán, however, was too proud to make overtures to 'Adí, who on his part feared to anger the prince by proposing an alliance. The ingenious Máriya found a way out of the difficulty. She suggested that 'Adí should invite Nu'mán and his suite to a banquet, and having well plied him with wine should ask for the hand of his daughter, which would not then be refused. So it came to pass. Nu'mán gave his consent to the marriage, and after three days Hind was brought home to her husband.\*

His marriage to  
Hind.

On the death of Mundhir IV 'Adí warmly supported the claims of Nu'mán, who had formerly been his pupil and was now his father-in-law, to the throne of Híra. The ruse which he employed on this occasion was completely successful, but it cost him his life.<sup>2</sup> The partisans of Aswad b. Mundhir, one of the defeated candidates, resolved on vengeance. Their intrigues awakened

'Adí secures the  
election of  
Nu'mán as King  
of Híra.

\* *Aghání*, ii, 22, l. 3 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> When Hurmuz summoned the sons of Mundhir to Ctesiphon that he might choose a king from among them, 'Adí said to each one privately, "If the Chosroes demands whether you can keep the Arabs in order, reply, 'All except Nu'mán.'" To Nu'mán, however, he said: "The Chosroes will ask, 'Can you manage your brothers?' Say to him: 'If I am not strong enough for them, I am still less able to control other folk!'" Hurmuz was satisfied with this answer and conferred the crown upon Nu'mán.

the suspicions of Nu'mán against the 'King-maker.' [ 'Adí was cast into prison, where he languished for a long time and was finally murdered by Nu'mán when the Chosroes (Parwéz, son of Hurmuz) had already intervened to procure his release.\* ]

'Adí left a son named Zayd, who, on the recommendation of Nu'mán, was appointed by Khusraw Parwéz to succeed his father as Secretary for Arabian Affairs at the court of Ctesiphon. Apparently reconciled to Nu'mán, he was none the less bent on vengeance, and only waited for an opportunity. The kings of Persia were connoisseurs in female beauty, and when they desired to replenish their harems they used to circulate an advertisement describing with extreme particularity the physical and moral qualities which were to be sought after ;<sup>2</sup> but hitherto they had neglected Arabia, which, as they supposed, could not furnish any woman possessed of these perfections. Zayd therefore approached the Chosroes and said : " I know that Nu'mán has in his family a number of women answering to the description. Let me go to him, and send with me one of thy guardsmen who understands Arabic." The Chosroes complied, and Zayd set out for Híra. On learning the object of his mission, Nu'mán exclaimed with indignation : " What ! are not the gazelles of Persia sufficient for your needs ? " The comparison of a beautiful woman to a gazelle is a commonplace in Arabian poetry, but the officer accompanying Zayd was ill acquainted with Arabic, and asked the meaning of the word (*in* or *mahá*) which Nu'mán had employed. " Cows," said Zayd. [ When Parwéz heard from his guardsman that Nu'mán had said, " Do not the cows of Persia content him ? " he could scarcely suppress his rage. Soon afterwards he sent for Nu'mán,

He is imprisoned  
and put to death  
by Nu'mán.  
  
The vengeance  
of Zayd b. 'Adí.  
  
Death of  
Nu'mán III.

\* A full account of these matters is given by Tabarí, i, 1016-1024 = Nöldeke's translation, pp. 314-324.

<sup>2</sup> A similar description occurs in Freytag's *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. ii, p. 589 sqq.



threw him into chains, and caused him to be trampled to pieces by elephants.\* ]

Nu'mán III appears in tradition as a tyrannical prince, devoted to wine, women, and song. He was the patron of

Character of  
Nu'mán III.

many celebrated poets, and especially of Nábigha Dhubyání, who was driven from Híra in consequence of a false accusation. This episode, as well as another in which the poet Munakhkhal was concerned, gives us a glimpse into the private life of Nu'mán. He had married his step-mother, Mutajarrida, a great beauty in her time; but though he loved her passionately, she bestowed her affections elsewhere. Nábigha was suspected on account of a poem in which he described the charms of the queen with the utmost minuteness, but Munakhkhal was the real culprit. The lovers were surprised by Nu'mán, and from that day Munakhkhal was never seen again. Hence the proverb, "Until Munakhkhal shall return," or, as we might say, "Until the coming of the Coqigrues."

[Although several of the kings of Híra are said to have been Christians, it is very doubtful whether any except Nu'mán III deserved even the name; the Lakhmites, unlike

Nu'mán's  
conversion to  
Christianity.

the majority of their subjects, were thoroughly pagan. Nu'mán's education would naturally predispose him to Christianity, and his conversion may have been wrought, as the legend asserts, by his mentor 'Adí b. Zayd.]

According to Muḥammadan genealogists, the Ghassánids, both those settled in Medína and those to whom the name is consecrated by popular usage—the Ghassánids of Syria—are descended from 'Amr b. 'Ámir al-Muzayqiyá, who, as was related in the last chapter, sold his possessions in Yemen and quitted the country, taking with him a great number of its inhabitants, shortly before the Bursting of

The Ghassánids  
or Jafnites

\* Tabarí, i, 1024-1029 = Nöldeke's translation, pp. 324-331. Ibn Qutayba in Brünnow's *Chrestomathy*, pp. 32-33.



the Dyke of Ma'rib. His son Jafna is generally regarded as the founder of the dynasty. Of their early history very few authentic facts have been preserved. At first, we are told, they paid tribute to the ʔajāʔima, a family of the stock of Salfh, who ruled the Syrian borderlands under Roman protection. A struggle ensued, from which the Ghassānids emerged victorious, and henceforth we find them established in these regions as the representatives of Roman authority with the official titles of Patricius and Phylarch, which they and the Arabs around them rendered after the simple Oriental fashion by 'King' (*malik*).

The first (says Ibn Qutayba) that reigned in Syria of the family of Jafna was Hārith b. 'Amr Muḥarriq, who was so called because he burnt (*ḥarraqa*) the Arabs in their houses. He is Hārith the Elder (*al-Akbar*), and his name of honour (*kunya*) is Abū Shamir. After him reigned Hārith b. Abī Shamir, known as Hārith the lame (*al-A'raj*), whose mother was Māriya of the Ear-rings. He was the best of their kings, and the most fortunate, and the craftiest; and in his raids he went the farthest afield. He led an expedition against Khaybar<sup>2</sup> and carried off a number of prisoners, but set them free after his return to Syria. When Mundhir b. Mā' al-samā marched against him with an army 100,000 strong, Hārith sent a hundred men to meet him—among them the poet Labid, who was then a youth—ostensibly to make peace. They surrounded Mundhir's tent and slew the king and his companions; then they took horse, and some escaped, while others were slain. The Ghassānid cavalry attacked the army of Mundhir and put them to flight. Hārith had a daughter named Ḥaiima, who perfumed the hundred champions on that day and clad them in shrouds of white linen and coats of mail. She is the heroine of the proverb, "The day of Ḥalima is no secret."<sup>3</sup> Hārith was succeeded by his son, Hārith the Younger. Among his other sons were 'Amr b. Hārith (called Abū Shamir the Younger), to whom Nābigha came on leaving Nu'mān b. Mundhir; Mundhir b. Hārith; and al-Ayham b. Hārith. Jabala, the son of al-Ayham, was the last of the kings of Ghassān.

<sup>2</sup> A town in Arabia, some distance to the north of Medina.

<sup>3</sup> See Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. ii, p. 611.

He was twelve spans in height, and his feet brushed the ground when he rode on horseback. He reached the Islamic period and became a Moslem in the Caliphate of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb,

Jabala b. al-Ayham.

but afterwards he turned Christian and went to live in the Byzantine Empire. The occasion of his turning

Christian was this: In passing through the bazaar of Damascus he let his horse tread upon one of the bystanders, who sprang up and struck Jabala a blow on the face. The Ghassānīs seized the fellow and brought him before Abū 'Ubayda b. al-Jarrāh,\* complaining that he had struck their master. Abū 'Ubayda demanded proof. "What use wilt thou make of the proof?" said Jabala. He answered: "If he has struck thee, thou wilt strike him a blow in return." "And shall not he be slain?" "No." "Shall not his hand be cut off?" "No," said Abū 'Ubayda; "God has ordained retaliation only—blow for blow." Then Jabala went forth and betook himself to Roman territory and became a Christian; and he stayed there all the rest of his life.\*

The Arabian traditions respecting the dynasty of Ghassān are hopelessly confused and supply hardly any material even for the rough historical sketch which may be pieced

Ḥārith the Lame.

together from the scattered notices in Byzantine authors.<sup>3</sup> It would seem that the first unquestionable Ghassānid prince was Ḥārith b. Jabala (Ἀρίθας τοῦ Γαβάλα), who figures in Arabian chronicles as 'Ḥārith the Lame,' and who was appointed by Justinian (about 529 A.D.) to balance, on the Roman side, the active and enterprising King of Ḥīra, Mundhir b. Má' al-samā. During the greater part of his long reign (529-569 A.D.) he was engaged in war with this dangerous rival, to whose defeat and death in the decisive battle of Ḥallma we have already referred. Like all his line, Ḥārith was a Christian of the Monophysite Church, which he defended with equal zeal and success at a time when its very existence

\* A celebrated Companion of the Prophet. He led the Moslem army to the conquest of Syria, and died of the plague in 639 A.D.

\* Ibn Qutayba in Brünnow's *Chrestomathy*, pp. 26-28.

<sup>3</sup> The following details are extracted from Nöldeke's monograph: *Die Ghassānischen Fürsten aus dem Hause Gafna's*, in *Abhand. d. Kön. Preuss. Akad. d. Wissenschaften* (Berlin, 1887).



was at stake. The following story illustrates his formidable character. Towards the end of his life he visited Constantinople to arrange with the Imperial Government which of his sons should succeed him, and made a powerful impression on the people of that city, especially on the Emperor's nephew, Justinus. Many years afterwards, when Justinus had fallen into dotage, the chamberlains would frighten him, when he began to rave, with "Hush! Arethas will come and take you."<sup>1</sup>

Hārith was succeeded by his son, Mundhir, who vanquished the new King of Hīra, Qábús b. Hind, on Ascension Day, 570 A.D., in a battle which is perhaps identical with that celebrated by the Arabs as the Battle of 'Ayn Ubágh. The refusal of the Emperor Justinus to furnish him with money may have prevented Mundhir from pursuing his advantage, and was the beginning of open hostility between them, which culminated about eleven years later in his being carried off to Constantinople and forced to reside in Sicily.

From this time to the Persian conquest of Palestine (614 A.D.) anarchy prevailed throughout the Ghassánid kingdom. The various tribes elected their own princes, who sometimes, no doubt, were Jafnites; but the dynasty had virtually broken up. Possibly it was restored by Heraclius when he drove the Persians out of Syria (629 A.D.), as the Ghassánians are repeatedly found fighting for Rome against the Moslems, and according to the unanimous testimony of Arabian writers, the Jafnite Jabala b. al-Ayham, who took an active part in the struggle, was the last king of Ghassán. His accession may be placed about 635 A.D. The poet Ḥassán b. Thábit, who as a native of Medīna could claim kinship with the Ghassánids, and visited their court in his youth, gives a glowing description of its luxury and magnificence.

<sup>1</sup> Nöldeke, *op. cit.*, p. 20, refers to John of Ephesus, iii, 2. See *The Third Part of the Ecclesiastical History of John, Bishop of Ephesus*, translated by R. Payne Smith, p. 168.



"I have seen ten singing-girls, five of them Greeks, singing Greek songs to the music of lutes, and five from Ĥira who had been presented to King Jabala by Iyās b. Qabiṣa,<sup>1</sup> chanting Babylonian airs. Arab singers used to come from Mecca and elsewhere for his delight; and when he would drink wine he sat on a couch of myrtle and jasmine and all sorts of sweet-smelling flowers, surrounded by gold and silver vessels full of ambergris and musk. During winter aloes-wood was burned in his apartments, while in summer he cooled himself with snow. Both he and his courtiers wore light robes, arranged with more regard to comfort than ceremony,<sup>2</sup> in the hot weather, and white furs, called *fanak*,<sup>3</sup> or the like, in the cold season; and, by God, I was never in his company but he gave me the robe which he was wearing on that day, and many of his friends were thus honoured. He treated the rude with forbearance; he laughed without reserve and lavished his gifts before they were sought. He was handsome, and agreeable in conversation: I never knew him offend in speech or act."<sup>4</sup>

[Unlike the rival dynasty on the Euphrates, the Ghassānids had no fixed residence. They ruled the country round Damascus and Palmyra, but these places were never in their possession. The capital of their nomad kingdom was the temporary camp (in Aramaic, *ḥértá*) which followed them to and fro, but was generally to be found in the Gaulonitis

<sup>1</sup> Iyās b. Qabiṣa succeeded Nu'mān III as ruler of Ĥira (602-611 A.D.). He belonged to the tribe of Ṭayyī'. See Rothstein, *Lahmiden*, p. 119.

<sup>2</sup> I read *yatafaqqalu* for *yanfaṣilu*. The arrangement which the former word denotes is explained in Lane's Dictionary as "the throwing a portion of one's garment over his left shoulder, and drawing its extremity under his right arm, and tying the two extremities together in a knot upon his bosom."

<sup>3</sup> The *fanak* is properly a kind of white stoat or weasel found in Abyssinia and northern Africa, but the name is also applied by Muḥammadans to other furs.

<sup>4</sup> *Aghānī*, xvi, 15, ll. 22-30. So far as it purports to proceed from Ḥassān, the passage is apocryphal, but this does not seriously affect its value as evidence, if we consider that it is probably compiled from the poet's *diwān* in which the Ghassānids are often spoken of. The particular reference to Jabala b. al-Ayham is a mistake. Ḥassān's acquaintance with the Ghassānids belongs to the pagan period of his life, and he is known to have accepted Islam many years before Jabala began to reign.

(al-Jawlán), south of Damascus. Thus under the quickening impulse of Hellenistic culture the Ghassánids developed a civilisation far superior to that of the Lakhmites, who, just because of their half-barbarian character, were more closely in touch with the heathen Arabs, and exercised a deeper influence upon them. Some aspects of this civilisation have been indicated in the description of Jabala b. al-Ayham's court, attributed to the poet Ḥassán. An earlier bard, the famous Nábigha, having fallen out of favour with Nu'mán III of Ḥíra, fled to Syria, where he composed a splendid eulogy of the Ghassánids in honour of his patron, King 'Amr, son of Ḥārith the Lamé. After celebrating their warlike prowess, which he has immortalised in the oft-quoted verse—

Ghassánid  
civilisation.

Nábigha's  
encomium.

"One fault they have: their swords are blunt of edge  
Through constant beating on their foemen's mail,"

he concludes in a softer strain :

"Theirs is a liberal nature that God gave  
To no men else; their virtues never fail.  
Their home the Holy Land: their faith upright:  
They hope to prosper if good deeds avail.  
Zoned in fair wise and delicately shod,  
They keep the Feast of Palms, when maidens pale,  
Whose scarlet silken robes on trestles hang,  
Greet them with odorous boughs and bid them hail.  
Long lapped in ease tho' bred to war, their limbs  
Green-shouldered vestments, white-sleeved, richly veil."<sup>1</sup>

The Pre-islamic history of the Bedouins is mainly a record of wars, or rather guerillas, in which a great deal of raiding and plundering was accomplished, as a rule without serious bloodshed. There was no lack of shouting; volleys of vaunts

<sup>1</sup> Nábigha, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 78; Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 96. The whole poem has been translated by Sir Charles Lyall in his *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 95 sqq.



and satires were exchanged; camels and women were carried off; many skirmishes took place but few pitched battles: it was an Homeric kind of warfare that called forth individual exertion in the highest degree, and gave ample opportunity for single-handed deeds of heroism. "To write a true history of such Bedouin feuds is well-nigh impossible. As comparatively trustworthy sources of information we have only the poems and fragments of verse which have been preserved.

Character of  
Bedouin  
history.

According to Suyúṭī, the Arabian traditionists used to demand from any Bedouin who related an historical event the citation of some verses in its support; and, in effect, all such stories that have come down to us are crystallised round the poems. Unfortunately these crystals are seldom pure. It appears only too often that the narratives have been invented, with abundant fancy and with more or less skill, to suit the contents of the verses."<sup>1</sup> But although what is traditionally related concerning the Battle-days of the Arabs (*Ayyāmu 'l-'Arab*) is to a large extent legendary, it describes with sufficient fidelity how tribal hostilities generally arose and the way in which they were conducted. The following account of the War of Basús—the most famous of those waged in Pre-islamic times—will serve to illustrate this important phase of Bedouin life.<sup>2</sup>

Towards the end of the fifth century A.D. Kulayb, son of Rabī'a, was chieftain of the Banú Taghlib, a powerful tribe which divided with their kinsmen, the Banú Bakr, a vast tract in north-eastern Arabia, extending from the central highlands to the Syrian desert. His victory at the head of a confederacy formed by these tribes and others over the Yemenite Arabs made him the first man in the peninsula, and soon his pride became no less proverbial than his power.<sup>3</sup> He was

War of  
Basús.

<sup>1</sup> Thorbecke, *'Antarah, ein vorislamischer Dichter*, p. 14.

<sup>2</sup> The following narrative is an abridgment of the history of the War of Basús as related in Tibrizī's commentary on the *Ḥamāsa* (ed. by Freytag), pp. 420-423 and 251-255. Cf. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 39 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 5 *supra*.



married to Ḥalīla, daughter of Murra, of the Banú Bakr, and dwelt in a 'preserve' (*ḥimā*), where he claimed the sole right of pasturage for himself and the sons of Murra. His brother-in-law, Jassās, had an aunt named Basūs. While living under her nephew's protection she was joined by a certain Sa'd, a client of her own people, who brought with him a she-camel called Sarābi.

Now it happened that Kulayb, seeing a lark's nest as he walked on his land, said to the bird, which was screaming and fluttering distressfully over her eggs, "Have no fear! I will protect thee." But a short time afterwards he observed in that place the track of a strange camel and found the eggs trodden to pieces. Next morning

Kulayb b.  
Rabī'a and  
Jassās b. Murra.

when he and Jassās visited the pasture ground, Kulayb noticed the she-camel of Sa'd among his brother-in-law's herd, and conjecturing that she had destroyed the eggs, cried out to Jassās, "Take heed thou! Take heed! I have pondered something, and were I sure, I would have done it! May this she-camel never come here again with this herd!" "By God," exclaimed Jassās, "but she shall come!" and when Kulayb threatened to pierce her udder with an arrow, Jassās retorted, "By the stones of Wā'il,\* fix thine arrow in her udder and I will fix my lance in thy backbone!" Then he drove his camels forth from the *ḥimā*. Kulayb went home in a passion, and said to his wife, who sought to discover what ailed him, "Knowest thou any one who durst defend his client against me?" She answered, "No one except my brother Jassās, if he has given his word." She did what she could to prevent the quarrel going further, and for a time nothing worse than taunts passed between them, until one day Kulayb went to look after his camels which were being taken to water, and were followed by those of

The wounding  
of Sa'd's  
she-camel.

Jassās. While the latter were waiting their turn to drink, Sa'd's she-camel broke loose and ran towards the water. Kulayb imagined that Jassās had let her go deliberately, and resenting the supposed insult, he seized his bow and shot her through the udder. The beast lay down, moaning loudly, before the tent of Basūs, who in vehement indignation at the wrong suffered by her friend, Sa'd, tore the veil from her head, beating her face and crying, "O shame, shame!" Then, addressing Sa'd, but raising her voice so that Jassās might

\* Wā'il is the common ancestor of Bakr and Taghlib. For the use of stones (*anṣāb*) in the worship of the Pagan Arabs see Wellhausen, *Reste Arabischen Heidentums* (2nd ed.), p. 101 sqq. Robertson Smith, *Lectures on the Religion of the Semites* (London, 1894), p. 200 sqq.

hear, she spoke these verses, which are known as 'The Instigators' (*al-Muwaththibāt*):—

*"O Sa'd, be not deceived! Protect thyself!  
This people for their clients have no care.  
Look to my herds, I charge thee, for I doubt  
Even my little daughters ill may fare.  
By thy life, had I been in Minqar's house,  
Thou wouldst not have been wronged, my client, there!  
But now such folk I dwell among that when  
The wolf comes, 'tis my sheep he comes to tear!"*

Verses spoken  
by Basūs.

Jassās was stung to the quick by the imputation, which no Arab can endure, that injury and insult might be inflicted upon his guest-friend with impunity. Some days afterwards, having ascertained that Kulayb had gone out unarmed, he followed and slew him, and fled in haste to his own people. [Murra, when he heard the news, said to his son, "Thou alone must answer for thy deed: thou shalt be put in chains that his kinsmen may slay thee. By the stones of

Kulayb  
murdered by  
Jassās.

Wá'il, never will Bakr and Taghlib be joined together in welfare after the death of Kulayb. Verily, an evil thing hast thou brought upon thy people, O Jassās! Thou hast slain their chief and severed their union and cast war into their midst." So he put Jassās in chains and confined him in a tent; then he summoned the elders of the families and asked them, "What do ye say concerning Jassās? Here he is, a prisoner, until the avengers demand him and we deliver him unto them." "No, by God," cried Sa'd b. Málík b. Dubay'a b. Qays, "we will not give him up, but will fight for him to the last man!" With these words he called for a camel to be sacrificed, and when its throat was cut they swore to one another over the blood. Thereupon Murra said to Jassās:—

*"If war thou hast wrought and brought on me,  
No laggard I with arms outworn.  
What'e'er befall, I make to flow  
The baneful cups of death at morn.*

Verses of Murra,  
the father  
of Jassās.

*When spear-points clash, my wounded man  
Is forced to drag the spear he stained.  
Never I reck, if war must be,  
What Destiny hath preordained.*

<sup>1</sup> *Hamāsa*, 422, 14 sqq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 39, last line and foll.



*Donning war's harness, I will strive  
To fend from me the shame that sears,  
Already I thrill and my lust is roused  
For the shock of the horsemen against the spears!"*

Thus began the War of Basús between Taghlib on the one side and the clan of Shaybán, to which Murra belonged, on the other; for at first the remaining divisions of Bakr held aloof from the struggle, considering Shaybán to be clearly in the wrong. The latter were reduced to dire straits, when an event occurred which caused the Bakrites to rise as one man on behalf of their fellows. Hārith b. 'Ubád, a famous knight of Bakr, had refused to take part in the contest, saying in words which became proverbial, "I have neither camel nor she-camel in it," i.e., "it is no affair of mine." One day his nephew, Bujayr, encountered Kulayb's brother, Muhalhil, on whom the mantle of the murdered chief had fallen; and Muhalhil, struck with admiration for the youth's comeliness, asked him who he was. "Bujayr," said he, "the son of 'Amr, the son of 'Ubád." "And who is thy uncle on the mother's side?" "My mother is a captive" (for he would not name an uncle of whom he had no honour). Then Muhalhil slew him, crying, "Pay for Kulayb's shoe-latchet!" On hearing this, Hārith sent a message to Muhalhil in which he declared that if vengeance were satisfied by the death of Bujayr, he for his part would gladly acquiesce. But Muhalhil replied, "I have taken satisfaction only for Kulayb's shoe-latchet." Thereupon Hārith sprang up in wrath and cried:—

*"God knows, I kindled not this fire, altho'  
I am burned in it to-day.  
A lord for a shoe-latchet is too dear;  
To horse! To horse! Away!"*

And al-Find, of the Banú Bakr, said on this occasion:—

*"We spared the Banú Hind<sup>3</sup> and said, 'Our brothers they remain:  
It may be Time will make of us one people yet again.'*

<sup>1</sup> *Hamdsa*, 423, 11 sqq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 41, l. 3 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Hamdsa*, 252, 8 seq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 44, l. 3 seq.

<sup>3</sup> Hind is the mother of Bakr and Taghlib. Here the Banú Hind (Sons of Hind) are the Taghlibites.



*But when the wrong grew manifest, and naked Ill stood plain,  
And naught was left but ruthless hate, we paid them  
Verses by  
al-Find. bane with bane!  
As lions marched we forth to war in wrath and high  
disdain:*

*Our swords brought widowhood and tears and wailing in their  
train,*

*Our spears dealt gashes wide whence blood like water spilled  
amain.*

*No way but Force to weaken Force and mastery obtain;*

*'Tis wooing contumely to meet wild actions with humane:*

*By evil thou may'st win to peace when good is tried in vain."*<sup>1</sup>

The Banú Bakr now prepared for a decisive battle. As their enemy had the advantage in numbers, they adopted a stratagem devised by Hārith. "Fight them," said he, "with your women. Equip every woman with a small waterskin and give her a club. Place the whole body of them behind you—this will make you more resolved in battle—and wear some distinguishing mark which they will recognise, so that when a woman passes by one of your wounded she may know him by his mark and give him water to drink, and raise him from the ground; but when she passes by one of your foes she will smite him with her club and slay him." So the

*Bakrites shaved their heads, devoting themselves to  
The Day of Shearing. death, and made this a mark of recognition between  
themselves and their women, and this day was called*

*the Day of Shearing. Now Jahdar b. Dubay'a was an ill-favoured,  
dwarfish man, with fair flowing love-locks, and he said, "O my  
people, if ye shave my head ye will disfigure me, so leave my locks  
for the first horseman of Taghlib that shall emerge from the hill-pass  
on the morrow" (meaning "I will answer for him, if my locks are  
spared"). On his request being granted, he exclaimed:—*

*"To wife and daughter  
Henceforth I am dead:  
Dust for ointment  
On my hair is shed.*

*Let me close with the horsemen  
Who hither ride,  
Cut my locks from me  
If I stand aside!*

*The vow of  
Jahdar b.  
Dubay'a.*

<sup>1</sup> *Hamasa*, 9, 17 seq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 45, l. 10 sqq.

*Well wots a mother  
If the son she bore  
And swaddled on her bosom  
And smelt him o'er,*

*Whenever warriors  
In the mellay meet,  
Is a puny weakling  
Or a man complete!"\**

He kept his promise but in the course of the fight he fell, severely wounded. When the women came to him, they saw his love-locks and imagining that he was an enemy despatched him with their clubs.

The presence of women on the field and the active share they took in the combat naturally provoked the bitterest feelings. If they were not engaged in finishing the bloody work of the men, their tongues were busy inciting them. We are told that a daughter of al-Find bared herself recklessly and chanted :—

*"War! War! War! War!  
It has blazed up and scorched us sore.  
The highlands are filled with its roar.  
Well done, the morning when your heads ye shore!"\**

The mothers were accompanied by their children, whose tender age did not always protect them from an exasperated foe. It is related that a horseman of the Banú Taghlib transfixed a young boy and lifted him up on the point of his spear. He is said to have been urged to this act of savagery by one al-Bazbáz, who was riding behind him on the crupper. Their triumph was short; al-Find saw them, and with a single spear-thrust pinned them to each other—an exploit which his own verses record.

On this day the Banú Bakr gained a great victory, and broke the power of Taghlib. It was the last battle of note in the Forty Years' War, which was carried on, by raiding and plundering, until the exhaustion of both tribes and the influence of King Mundhir III of Híra brought it to an end.

Not many years after the conclusion of peace between

\* *Hamása*, 252, 14 seq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 46, l. 16 sqq.

\* *Hamása*, 254, 6 seq. Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 47, l. 2 seq.

Bakr and Taghlib, another war, hardly less famous in tradition than the War of Basús, broke out in Central Arabia. [The combatants were the tribes of 'Abs and Dhubyán, the principal stocks of the Banú Ghatafán, and the occasion of their coming to blows is related as follows :—

The War of  
Dāḥis and  
Ghabrá.

Qays, son of Zuhayr, was chieftain of 'Abs. He had a horse called Dāḥis, renowned for its speed, which he matched against Ghabrá, a mare belonging to Ḥudhayfa b. Badr, the chief of Dhubyán. It was agreed that the course should be a hundred bow-shots in length, and that the victor should receive a hundred camels. When the race began Ghabrá took the lead, but as they left the firm ground and entered upon the sand, where the 'going' was heavy, Dāḥis gradually drew level and passed his antagonist. He was nearing the goal when some Dhubyánites sprang from an ambuscade prepared beforehand, and drove him out of his course, thus enabling Ghabrá to defeat him. On being informed of this foul play Qays naturally claimed that he had won the wager, but the men of Dhubyán refused to pay even a single camel. Bitterly resenting their treachery, he waylaid and slew one of Ḥudhayfa's brothers. Ḥudhayfa sought vengeance, and the murder of Málík, a brother of Qays, by his horsemen gave the signal for war. In the fighting which ensued Dhubyán more than held their own, but neither party could obtain a decisive advantage. Qays slew the brothers Ḥudhayfa and Ḥamal—

*"Ḥamal I slew and eased my heart thereby,  
Ḥudhayfa glutted my avenging brand;  
But though I slaked my thirst by slaying them,  
I would as lief have lost my own right hand."* 17

After a long period—forty years according to the traditional computation—"Abs and Dhubyán were reconciled by the exertions of two chieftains of the latter tribe, Ḥárith b. 'Awf and Harim b.

\* *Ḥamása*, 96. Ibn Nubáta, cited by Rasmussen, *Addimenta ad Historiam Arabum ante Islamismum*, p. 34, remarks that before Qays no one had ever lamented a foe slain by himself (*wa-kuwa awwalu man rathd maqtúlahu*).



Sinán, whose generous and patriotic intervention the poet Zuhayr has celebrated. Qays went into exile. "I will not look," he said, "on the face of any woman of Dhubyán whose father or brother or husband or son I have killed." If we may believe the legend, he became a Christian monk and ended his days in 'Umán.

Descending westward from the highlands of Najd the traveller gradually approaches the Red Sea, which is separated from the mountains running parallel to it by a narrow strip of coast-land, called the Tiháma (Netherland). The rugged plateau between Najd and the coast forms the Híjáz (Barrier), through which in ancient times the Sabæan caravans laden with costly merchandise passed on their way to the Mediterranean ports. Long before the beginning of our era two considerable trading settlements had sprung up in this region, viz., Macoraba (Mecca) and, some distance farther north, Yathrippa (Yathrib, the Pre-islamic name of Medína). Of their early inhabitants and history we know nothing except what is related by Muḥammadan writers, whose information reaches back to the days of Adam and Abraham. Mecca was the cradle of Islam, and Islam, according to Muḥammad, is the religion of Abraham, which was corrupted by succeeding generations until he himself was sent to purify it and to preach it anew. Consequently the Pre-islamic history of Mecca has all been, so to speak, 'Islamised.' The Holy City of Islam is made to appear in the same light thousands of years before the Prophet's time: here, it is said, the Arabs were united in worship of Allah, hence they scattered and fell into idolatry, hither they return annually as pilgrims to a shrine which had been originally dedicated to the One Supreme Being, but which afterwards became a Pantheon of tribal deities.] This theory lies at the root of the Muḥammadan legend which I shall now recount as briefly as possible, only touching on the salient points of interest.

In the Meccan valley—the primitive home of that portion

of the Arab race which claims descent from Ismá'íl (Ishmael), the son of Ibráhím (Abraham) by Hájár (Hagar)—stands an irregular, cube-shaped building of small dimensions

Foundation of  
the Ka'ba.

—the Ka'ba. [Legend attributes its foundation to Adam, who built it by Divine command after a celestial archetype. At the Deluge it was taken up into heaven, but was rebuilt on its former site by Abraham and Ishmael. While they were occupied in this work Gabriel brought the celebrated Black Stone, which is set in the south-east corner of the building, and he also instructed them in the ceremonies of the Pilgrimage.] When all was finished Abraham stood on a rock known to later ages as the *Maqámu Ibráhím*, and, turning to the four quarters of the sky, made proclamation: "O ye people! The Pilgrimage to the Ancient House is prescribed unto you. Harken to your Lord!" And from every part of the world came the answer: "*Labbayka 'lláhumma, labbayka*"—i.e., "We obey, O God, we obey."

The descendants of Ishmael multiplied exceedingly, so that the barren valley could no longer support them, and a great number wandered forth to other lands. They were succeeded as rulers of the sacred territory by the tribe of Jurhum, who waxed in pride and evil-doing until the vengeance of God fell upon them. Mention has frequently been made of the Bursting of the Dyke of Ma'rib, which caused an extensive movement of Yemenite stocks to the north. The invaders halted in the Hijáz and, having almost exterminated the Jurhumites, resumed their journey. One group, however—the Banú Khuzá'a, led by their chief Luḥayy—settled in the neighbourhood of Mecca. 'Amr, son of Luḥayy, was renowned among the Arabs for his wealth and generosity. Ibn Hishám says: "I have been told by a learned man that 'Amr b. Luḥayy went from Mecca to Syria on some business

Idolatry introduced at Mecca.

and when he arrived at Má'ab, in the land of al-Balqá, he found the inhabitants, who were 'Amálfq, worshipping idols. "What are these idols?" he in-



quired. "They are idols that send us rain when we ask them for rain, and help us when we ask them for help." "Will ye not give me one of them," said 'Amr, "that I may take it to Arabia to be worshipped there?" So they gave him an idol called Hubal, which he brought to Mecca and set it up and bade the people worship and venerate it.\* Following his example, the Arabs brought their idols and installed them round the sanctuary. The triumph of Paganism was complete. We are told that hundreds of idols were destroyed by Muḥammad when he entered Mecca at the head of a Moslem army in 8 A.H. = 629 A.D.

To return to the posterity of Ismā'il through 'Adnān: the principal of their descendants who remained in the Hījāz were the Hudhayl, the Kināna, and the Quraysh. The last-named tribe must now engage our attention almost exclusively. During the century before Muḥammad we find them in undisputed possession of Mecca and acknowledged guardians of the Ka'ba—an office which they administered with a shrewd appreciation of its commercial value. Their rise to power is related as follows:—

Kilāb b. Murra, a man of Quraysh, had two sons, Zuhra and Zayd. The latter was still a young child when his father died, and soon afterwards his mother, Fāṭima, who had married again, left Mecca, taking Zayd with her, and went to live in her new husband's home beside the Syrian borders. Zayd grew up far from his native land, and for this reason he got the name of Quṣayy—i.e., 'Little Far-away.' When he reached man's estate and discovered his true origin he returned to Mecca, where the hegemony was wholly in the hands of the Khuzā'ites under their chieftain, Ḥulayl b. Ḥubshiyya, with the determination to procure the superintendence of the Ka'ba for his own people, the Quraysh, who as pure-blooded descendants of Ismā'il had the best right to that honour. By his marriage with Ḥubbā, the daughter of Ḥulayl, he hoped to inherit the privileges vested in his father-in-law, but Ḥulayl on his death-bed committed the keys of the Ka'ba to a

\* Ibn Hishām, p. 51, l. 7 sqq.



kinsman named Abú Ghubshán. Not to be baffled, Qusayy made the keeper drunk and persuaded him to sell the keys for a skin of wine—hence the proverbs “A greater fool than Abú Ghubshán” and “Abú Ghubshán’s bargain,” denoting a miserable fraud. Naturally the Khuzáites did not acquiesce in the results of this transaction; they took up arms, but Qusayy was prepared for the struggle and won a decisive victory. He was now master of Temple and Tówn and could proceed to the work of organisation. His first

step was to bring together the Quraysh, who had previously been dispersed over a wide area, into the Meccan valley—this earned for him the title of *al-Mujammi*’ (the Congregator)—so that each family had its allotted quarter. He built a House of Assembly (*Dáru ‘l-Nadwa*), where matters affecting the common weal were discussed by the Elders of the tribe. He also instituted and centred in himself a number of dignities in connection with the government of the Ka’ba and the administration of the Pilgrimage, besides others of a political and military character. Such was his authority that after his death, no less than during his life, all these ordinances were regarded by the Quraysh as sacred and inviolable.

The death of Qusayy may be placed in the latter half of the fifth century. His descendant, the Prophet Muḥammad, was

born about a hundred years afterwards, in 570 or 571 A.D. With one notable exception, to be mentioned immediately, the history of Mecca

during the period thus defined is a record of petty factions unbroken by any event of importance. The Prophet’s ancestors fill the stage and assume a commanding position, which in all likelihood they never possessed; the historical rivalry of the Umayyads and ‘Abbásids appears in the persons of their founders, Umayya and Háshim—and so forth. Meanwhile the influence of the Quraysh was steadily maintained and extended. The Ka’ba had become a great national rendezvous, and the crowds of pilgrims which it attracted from almost every Arabian clan not only raised the credit of the Quraysh, but also materially contributed to their commercial prosperity. It has already been related how Abraha, the Abyssinian viceroy of Yemen, resolved to march against

Mecca in the sixth century after Christ.

Mecca with the avowed purpose of avenging upon the Ka'ba a sacrilege committed by one of the Quraysh in the church at Şan'á. Something of that kind may have served as a pretext, but no doubt his real aim was to conquer Mecca and to gain control of her trade.

This memorable expedition<sup>\*</sup> is said by Moslem historians to have taken place in the year of Muḥammad's birth (about 570 A.D.), usually known as the Year of the

The Year of  
the Elephant.

Elephant—a proof that the Arabs were deeply impressed by the extraordinary spectacle of these huge animals, one or more of which accompanied the Abyssinian force. The report of Abraha's preparations filled the tribesmen with dismay. At first they endeavoured to oppose his march, regarding the defence of the Ka'ba as a sacred duty, but they soon lost heart, and Abraha, after defeating Dhú Nafar, a Ḥimyarite chieftain, encamped in the neighbourhood of Mecca without further resistance. He sent

The Abyssinians  
at Mecca.

the following message to 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib, the Prophet's grandfather, who was at that time the most influential personage in Mecca: "I have not come to wage war on you, but only to destroy the Temple. Unless you take up arms in its defence, I have no wish to shed your blood." 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib replied: "By God, we seek not war, for which we are unable. This is God's holy House and the House of Abraham, His Friend; it is for Him to protect His House and Sanctuary; if He abandons it, we cannot defend it."

Then 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib was conducted by the envoy to the Abyssinian camp, as Abraha had ordered. There he inquired after

'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭa-  
lib's interview  
with Abraha.

Dhú Nafar, who was his friend, and found him a prisoner. "O Dhú Nafar," said he, "can you do aught in that which has befallen us?" Dhú Nafar answered, "What can a man do who is a captive in the hands of a

<sup>\*</sup> In the account of Abraha's invasion given below I have followed Tabarí, i, 936, 9—945, 19 = Nöldeke's translation, pp. 206-220.



king, expecting day and night to be put to death? I can do nothing at all in the matter, but Unays, the elephant-driver, is my friend; I will send to him and press your claims on his consideration and ask him to procure you an audience with the king. Tell Unays what you wish: he will plead with the king in your favour if he can." So Dhû Nafar sent for Unays and said to him, "O Unays, 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib is lord of Quraysh and master of the caravans of Mecca. He feeds the people in the plain and the wild creatures on the mountain-tops. The king has seized two hundred of his camels. Now get him admitted to the king's presence and help him to the best of your power." Unays consented, and soon 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib stood before the king. When Abraha saw him he held him in too high respect to let him sit in an inferior place, but was unwilling that the Abyssinians should see the Arab chief, who was a large man and a comely, seated on a level with himself; he therefore descended from his throne and sat on his carpet and bade 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib sit beside him. Then he said to his dragoman, "Ask him what he wants of me." 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib replied, "I want the king to restore to me two hundred camels of mine which he has taken away." Abraha said to the dragoman, "Tell him: You pleased me when I first saw you, but now that you have spoken to me I hold you cheap. What! do you speak to me of two hundred camels which I have taken, and omit to speak of a temple venerated by you and your fathers which I have come to destroy?" Then said 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib: "The camels are mine, but the Temple belongs to another, who will defend it," and on the king exclaiming, "He cannot defend it from me," he said, "That is your affair; only give me back my camels."

As it is related in a more credible version, the tribes settled round Mecca sent ambassadors, of whom 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib was one, offering to surrender a third part of their possessions to Abraha on condition that he should spare the Temple, but he refused. Having recovered his camels, 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib returned to the Quraysh, told them what had happened, and bade them leave the city and take shelter in the mountains. Then he went to the Ka'ba, accompanied by several of the Quraysh, to pray for help against Abraha and his army. Grasping the ring of the door, he cried:—

*"O God, defend Thy neighbouring folk even as a man his gear<sup>\*</sup> defendeth!*

*Let not their Cross and guileful plans defeat the plans Thyself intendeth!*

*But if Thou make it so, 'tis well: according to Thy will it endeth."<sup>\*</sup>*

\* I read *ḥildlak*. See Glossary to Ṭabari.

\* Ṭabari, i, 940, 13.



Next morning, when Abraha prepared to enter Mecca, his elephant knelt down and would not budge, though they beat its head with an axe and thrust sharp stakes into its flanks; but when they turned it in the direction of Yemen, it rose up and trotted with alacrity. Then God sent from the sea a flock of birds like swallows every one of which carried three stones as large as a chick-pea or a lentil, one in its bill and one in each claw, and all who were struck by those stones perished.\*

Rout of the  
Abyssinians.

The rest fled in disorder, dropping down as they ran or wherever they halted to quench their thirst. Abraha himself was smitten with a plague so that his limbs rotted off piecemeal.\*

These details are founded on the 105th chapter of the Koran, entitled 'The Súra of the Elephant,' which may be freely rendered as follows:—

"Hast not thou seen the people of the Elephant, how dealt with them the Lord?

Did not He make their plot to end in ruin abhorred?—

When He sent against them birds, horde on horde,

And stones of baked clay upon them poured,

And made them as leaves of corn devoured." ]

The part played by 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib in the story is, of course, a pious fiction designed to glorify the Holy City and to claim for the Prophet's family fifty years before Islam a predominance which they did not obtain until long afterwards; but equally of course the legend reflects Muḥammadan belief, and may be studied with advantage as a characteristic specimen of its class.

"When God repulsed the Abyssinians from Mecca and smote them with His vengeance, the Arabs held the Quraysh

\* Another version says: "Whenever a man was struck sores and pustules broke out on that part of his body. This was the first appearance of the small-pox" (Tabari, i, 945, 2 sqq.). Here we have the historical fact—an outbreak of pestilence in the Abyssinian army—which gave rise to the legend related above.

\* There is trustworthy evidence that Abraha continued to rule Yemen for some time after his defeat.

in high respect and said, 'They are God's people: God hath fought for them and hath defended them against their enemy;' and made poems on this matter."<sup>1</sup> The following verses, according to Ibn Ishāq, are by Abu 'l-Ṣalt b. Abī Rabī'a of Thaqīf; others more reasonably ascribe them to his son Umayya, a well-known poet and monotheist (*Hanīf*) contemporary with Muḥammad:—

"Lo, the signs of our Lord are everlasting,  
None disputes them except the unbeliever.  
He created Day and Night: unto all men  
Is their Reckoning ordained, clear and certain.  
Gracious Lord! He illumines the daytime  
With a sun widely scattering radiance.  
He the Elephant stayed at Mughammas  
So that sore it limped as though it were hamstrung,  
Cleaving close to its halter, and down dropped,  
As one falls from the crag of a mountain.  
Gathered round it were princes of Kinda,  
Noble heroes, fierce hawks in the mellay.  
There they left it: they all fled together,  
Every man with his shank-bone broken.  
Vain before God is every religion,  
When the dead rise, except the *Hanīfite*."<sup>2</sup>

Verses by  
Umayya b. Abī  
'l-Ṣalt.

The patriotic feelings aroused in the Arabs of the Hījāz by the Abyssinian invasion—feelings which must have been shared to some extent by the Bedouins generally—received a fresh stimulus through events which occurred about forty years after this time on the other side of the peninsula. It will be remembered that the Lakhmite dynasty at Hīra came to an end with Nu'mān III, who was cruelly executed by Khusraw Parwēz (602 or 607 A.D.).<sup>3</sup> Before his death he had deposited his arms and other property with Hānī', a chieftain of the Banū Bakr. These were claimed by Khusraw, and as Hānī' refused to give them up, a Persian army was sent to Dhū Qār,

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Hishām, p. 38, l. 14 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 40, l. 12 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> See pp. 48–49 *supra*.

a place near Kúfa abounding in water and consequently a favourite resort of the Bakrites during the dry season. [A desperate conflict ensued, in which the Persians were completely routed.<sup>1</sup> Although the forces engaged were comparatively small,<sup>2</sup> this victory was justly regarded by the Arabs as marking the commencement of a new order of things; *e.g.*, it is related that Muḥammad said when the tidings reached him: "This is the first day on which the Arabs have obtained satisfaction from the Persians."] The desert tribes, hitherto overshadowed by the Sásanian Empire and held in check by the powerful dynasty of Hīra, were now confident and aggressive. They began to hate and despise the Colossus which they no longer feared, and which, before many years had elapsed, they trampled in the dust.

Battle of Dhū  
Qār (circa 620  
A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> Full details are given by Tabarī, i, 1016-1037 = Nöldeke's translation, pp. 311-345.

<sup>2</sup> A poet speaks of three thousand Arabs and two thousand Persians (Tabarī, i, 1036, 5-6).



## CHAPTER III

### PRE-ISLAMIC POETRY, MANNERS, AND RELIGION

"WHEN there appeared a poet in a family of the Arabs, the other tribes round about would gather together to that family and wish them joy of their good luck. Feasts would be got ready, the women of the tribe would join together in bands, playing upon lutes, as they were wont to do at bridals, and the men and boys would congratulate one another; for a poet was a defence to the honour of them all, a weapon to ward off insult from their good name, and a means of perpetuating their glorious deeds and of establishing their fame for ever. And they used not to wish one another joy but for three things—the birth of a boy, the coming to light of a poet, and the foaling of a noble mare."<sup>1</sup>

As far as extant literature is concerned—and at this time there was only a spoken literature, which was preserved by oral tradition, and first committed to writing long afterwards—the *Jāhiliyya* or [Pre-islamic Age covers scarcely more than a century, from about 500 A.D., when the oldest poems of which we have any record were composed, to the year of Muḥammad's Flight to Medīna (622 A.D.), which is the starting-point of a new era in Arabian history. The influence of these hundred and twenty years was great and lasting.

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Rashīq in Suyūṭī's *Muzhir* (Bulāq, 1282 A.H.), Part II, p. 236, l. 22 sqq. I quote the translation of Sir Charles Lyall in the Introduction to his *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 17, a most admirable work which should be placed in the hands of every one who is beginning the study of this difficult subject.

They saw the rise and incipient decline of a poetry which most Arabic-speaking Moslems have always regarded as a model of unapproachable excellence; a poetry rooted in the life of the people, that insensibly moulded their minds and fixed their character and made them morally and spiritually a nation long before Muḥammad welded the various conflicting groups into a single organism, animated, for some time at least, by a common purpose.) In those days poetry was no luxury for the cultured few, but the sole medium of literary expression. Every tribe had its poets, who freely uttered what they felt and thought. Their unwritten words "flew across the desert faster than arrows," and came home to the hearts and bosoms of all who heard them. Thus in the midst of outward strife and disintegration a unifying principle was at work. Poetry gave life and currency to an ideal of Arabian virtue (*muruwwa*), which, though based on tribal community of blood and insisting that only ties of blood were sacred, nevertheless became an invisible bond between diverse clans, and formed, whether consciously or not, the basis of a national community of sentiment.

In the following pages I propose to trace the origins of Arabian poetry, to describe its form, contents, and general features, to give some account of the most celebrated Pre-islamic poets and collections of Pre-islamic verse, and finally to show in what manner it was preserved and handed down.

(By the ancient Arabs the poet (*shā'ir*, plural *shu'arā*), as his name implies, was held to be a person endowed with supernatural knowledge, a wizard in league with spirits (*jinn*) or satans (*shayāṭin*) and dependent on them for the magical powers which he displayed.) This view of his personality, as well as the influential position which he occupied, are curiously indicated by the story of a certain youth who was refused the hand of his beloved on the ground that he was neither a poet

nor a soothsayer nor a water-diviner.<sup>1</sup> The idea of poetry as an art was developed afterwards; the pagan *shā'ir* is the oracle of his tribe, their guide in peace and their champion in war. It was to him they turned for counsel when they sought new pastures, only at his word would they pitch or strike their 'houses of hair,' and when the tired and thirsty wanderers found a well and drank of its water and washed themselves, led by him they may have raised their voices together and sung, like Israel—

"Spring up, O well, sing ye unto it."<sup>2</sup>

Besides fountain-songs, war-songs, and hymns to idols, other kinds of poetry must have existed in the earliest times—*e.g.*, the love-song and the dirge. The powers of the *shā'ir*, however, were chiefly exhibited in Satire (*hiǧā'*), which in the oldest known form "introduces and accompanies the tribal

feud, and is an element of war just as important  
Satire. as the actual fighting."<sup>3</sup> The menaces which he

hurled against the foe were believed to be inevitably fatal. His rhymes, often compared to arrows, had all the effect of a solemn curse spoken by a divinely inspired prophet or priest,<sup>4</sup> and their pronunciation was attended with peculiar ceremonies of a symbolic character, such as anointing the hair on one side of the head, letting the mantle hang down loosely, and wearing only one sandal.<sup>5</sup> Satire retained something of these ominous associations at a much later period when the magic utterance of the *shā'ir* had long given place to the lampoon

<sup>1</sup> Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. ii, p. 494.

<sup>2</sup> Numb. xxi, 17. Such well-songs are still sung in the Syrian desert (see Enno Littmann, *Neuarabische Volkspoesie*, in *Abhand. der Kön. Gesellsch. der Wissenschaften, Phil.-Hist. Klasse*, Göttingen, 1901), p. 92. In a specimen cited at p. 81 we find the words *willa yā dlēwēna*—i.e., "Rise, O bucket!" several times repeated.

<sup>3</sup> Goldziher, *Ueber die Vorgeschichte der Hiǧā'-Poesie* in his *Abhand. zur Arab. Philologie*, Part I (Leyden, 1896), p. 26.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. the story of Balak and Balaam, with Goldziher's remarks thereon, *ibid.*, p. 42 seq.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 46 seq.



by which the poet reviles his enemies and holds them up to shame.

The obscure beginnings of Arabian poetry, presided over by the magician and his familiar spirits, have left not a rack behind in the shape of literature, but the task of reconstruction is comparatively easy where we are dealing with a people so conservative and tenacious of antiquity as the Arabs. [Thus it may be taken for certain that the oldest form of poetical speech in Arabia was rhyme without metre (*Saj'*), or, as we should say, 'rhymed prose,' although the fact of Muhammad's adversaries calling him a poet because he used it in the Koran shows the light in which it was regarded even after the invention and elaboration of metre.] Later on, as we shall see, *Saj'* became a merely rhetorical ornament, the distinguishing mark of all eloquence whether spoken or written, but originally it had a deeper, almost religious, significance as the special form adopted by poets, soothsayers, and the like in their supernatural revelations and for conveying to the vulgar every kind of mysterious and esoteric lore.

Out of *Saj'* was evolved the most ancient of the Arabian metres, which is known by the name of *Rajaz*.<sup>1</sup> This is an irregular iambic metre usually consisting of four or six—an Arab would write 'two or three'—feet to the line; and it is a peculiarity of *Rajaz*, marking its affinity to *Saj'*, that all the lines rhyme with each other, whereas in the more artificial metres only the opening verse<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Rajaz* primarily means "a tremor (which is a symptom of disease) in the hind-quarters of a camel." This suggested to Dr. G. Jacob his interesting theory that the Arabian metres arose out of the camel-driver's song (*hidd*) in harmony with the varying paces of the animal which he rode (*Studien in arabischen Dichtern*, Heft III, p. 179 sqq.).

<sup>2</sup> The Arabic verse (*bayt*) consists of two halves or hemistichs (*miṣrā'*). It is generally convenient to use the word 'line' as a translation of *miṣrā'*, but the reader must understand that the 'line' is not, as in English poetry, an independent unit. *Rajaz* is the sole exception to this rule, there being here no division into hemistichs, but each line (verse) forming an unbroken whole and rhyming with that which precedes it.

is doubly rhymed. [A further characteristic of *Rajaz* is that it should be uttered extempore, a few verses at a time—commonly verses expressing some personal feeling, emotion, or experience, like those of the aged warrior Durayd b. Zayd b. Nahd when he lay dying :—

“The house of death\* is builded for Durayd to-day.  
 Could Time be worn out, sure had I worn Time away.  
 No single foe but I had faced and brought to bay.  
 The spoils I gathered in, how excellent were they !  
 The women that I loved, how fine was their array !”

Here would have been the proper place to give an account of the principal Arabian metres—the ‘Perfect’ (*Kāmil*), the ‘Ample’ (*Wāfir*), the ‘Long’ (*Ṭawīl*), the ‘Wide’ (*Basīṭ*), the ‘Light’ (*Khafīf*), and several more—but in order to save valuable space I must content myself with referring the reader to the extremely lucid treatment of this subject by Sir Charles Lyall in the Introduction to his *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, pp. xlv–lii. All the metres are quantitative, as in Greek and Latin. Their names and laws were unknown to the Pre-islamic bards : the rules of prosody were first deduced from the ancient poems and systematised by the grammarian, Khalīl b. Aḥmad († 791 A.D.), to whom the idea is said to have occurred as he watched a coppersmith beating time on the anvil with his hammer.

We have now to consider the form and matter of the oldest extant poems in the Arabic language. Between these highly developed productions and the rude doggerel of *Sajʿ* or *Rajaz* there lies an interval, the length of which it is impossible even to conjecture. The first poets are already consummate masters of the craft. “The number and complexity of the measures which they use, their established laws of quantity and rhyme, and the uniform

\* In Arabic ‘al-bayṭ,’ the tent, which is here used figuratively for the grave.

\* Ibn Qutayba, *Kitābu ‘l-Shiʿr wa-‘l-Shuʿarā*, p. 36, l. 3 sqq.



manner in which they introduce the subject of their poems,<sup>1</sup> notwithstanding the distance which often separated one composer from another, all point to a long previous study and cultivation of the art of expression and the capacities of their language, a study of which no record now remains."<sup>2</sup>

[It is not improbable that the dawn of the Golden Age of Arabian Poetry coincided with the first decade of the sixth century after Christ.] About that time the War of Basús, the chronicle of which has preserved a considerable amount of contemporary verse, was in full blaze; and the first Arabian ode was composed, according to tradition, by Muhallil b. Rabí'a the Taghlibite on the death of his brother, the chieftain Kulayb, which caused war to break out between Bakr and Taghlib. At any rate, during the next hundred years in almost every part of the peninsula we meet with a brilliant succession of singers, all using the same poetical dialect and strictly adhering to the same rules of composition. (The fashion which they set maintained itself virtually unaltered down to the end of the Umayyad period (750 A.D.), and though challenged by some daring spirits under the 'Abbásid Caliphate, speedily reasserted its supremacy, which at the present day is almost as absolute as ever.)

This fashion centres in the *Qaṣida*,<sup>3</sup> or Ode, the only form, or rather the only finished type of poetry that existed

<sup>1</sup> Already in the sixth century A.D. the poet 'Antara complains that his predecessors have left nothing new for him to say (*Mu'allaga*, v. 1).

<sup>2</sup> *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, Introduction, p. xvi.

<sup>3</sup> *Qaṣida* is explained by Arabian lexicographers to mean a poem with an artistic purpose, but they differ as to the precise sense in which 'purpose' is to be understood. Modern critics are equally at variance. Jacob (*Stud. in Arab. Dichtern*, Heft III, p. 203) would derive the word from the principal motive of these poems, namely, to gain a rich reward in return for praise and flattery. Ahlwardt (*Bemerkungen über die Aechtheit der alten Arab. Gedichte*, p. 24 seq.) connects it with *qaṣada*, to break, "because it consists of verses, every one of which is divided into two halves, with a common end-rhyme: thus the whole poem is broken, as it were, into two halves;" while in the *Rajaz* verses, as we have seen (p. 74 *supra*), there is no such break.



in what, for want of a better word, may be called the classical period of Arabic literature. The verses (*abyāt*, singular *bayt*)

of which it is built vary in number, but are seldom

The Qaṣīda. less than twenty-five or more than a hundred; and the arrangement of the rhymes is such that, while the two halves of the first verse rhyme together, the same rhyme is repeated once in the second, third, and every following verse to the end of the poem. Blank-verse is alien to the Arabs, who regard rhyme not as a pleasing ornament or a "troublesome bondage," but as a vital organ of poetry. The rhymes are usually feminine, *e.g.*, *sakhīnā*, *tulīnā*, *muhīnā*; *mukhlidī*, *yadī*, *'uwwadī*; *rijāmuḥā*, *sildamuḥā*, *ḥarāmuḥā*. To surmount the difficulties of the monorhyme demands great technical skill even in a language of which the peculiar formation renders the supply of rhymes extraordinarily abundant. The longest of the *Mu'allaqāt*, the so-called 'Long Poems,' is considerably shorter than Gray's *Elegy*. An Arabian Homer or Chaucer must have condescended to prose. With respect to metre the poet may choose any except *Rajaz*, which is deemed beneath the dignity of the Ode, but his liberty does not extend either to the choice of subjects or to the method of handling them: on the contrary, the course of his ideas is determined by rigid conventions which he durst not overstep.

"I have heard," says Ibn Qutayba, "from a man of learning that the composer of Odes began by mentioning the deserted dwelling-

Ibn Qutayba's account of the contents and divisions of the Ode. places and the relics and traces of habitation. Then he wept and complained and addressed the desolate encampment, and begged his companion to make a halt, in order that he might have occasion to speak

of those who had once lived there and afterwards departed; for the dwellers in tents were different from townsmen or villagers in respect of coming and going, because they moved from one water-spring to another, seeking pasture and searching out the places where rain had fallen. Then to this he linked the erotic prelude (*nasīb*), and bewailed the violence of his love and the anguish of separation from his mistress and the extremity of his passion and desire, so as to win the hearts of his hearers and divert

their eyes towards him and invite their ears to listen to him, since the song of love touches men's souls and takes hold of their hearts, God having put it in the constitution of His creatures to love dalliance and the society of women, in such wise that we find very few but are attached thereto by some tie or have some share therein, whether lawful or unpermitted. Now, when the poet had assured himself of an attentive hearing, he followed up his advantage and set forth his claim: thus he went on to complain of fatigue and want of sleep and travelling by night and of the noonday heat, and how his camel had been reduced to leanness. And when, after representing all the discomfort and danger of his journey, he knew that he had fully justified his hope and expectation of receiving his due meed from the person to whom the poem was addressed, he entered upon the panegyric (*madih*), and incited him to reward, and kindled his generosity by exalting him above his peers and pronouncing the greatest dignity, in comparison with his, to be little."\*)

Hundreds of Odes answer exactly to this description, which must not, however, be regarded as the invariable model. The erotic prelude is often omitted, especially in elegies; or if it does not lead directly to the main subject, it may be followed by a faithful and minute delineation of the poet's horse or camel which bears him through the wilderness with a speed like that of the antelope, the wild ass, or the ostrich: Bedouin poetry abounds in fine studies of animal life.\* The choice of a motive is left open. Panegyric, no doubt, paid better than any other, and was therefore the favourite; but in Pre-Islamic times the poet could generally please himself. The *qaṣīda* is no organic whole: rather its unity resembles that of a series of pictures by the same hand or, to employ an Eastern trope, of pearls various in size and quality threaded on a necklace.

The ancient poetry may be defined as an illustrative criti-

\* *Kitābu 'l-Shi'r wa-'l-Shu'arā*, p. 14, l. 10 sqq.

\* Nöldeke (*Fünf Mo'allaqāt*, i, p. 3 sqq.) makes the curious observation, which illustrates the highly artificial character of this poetry, that certain animals well known to the Arabs (e.g., the panther, the jerboa, and the hare) are seldom mentioned and scarcely ever described, apparently for no reason except that they were not included in the conventional repertory.



cism of Pre-islamic life and thought. Here the Arab has drawn himself at full length without embellishment or extenuation.

It is not mere chance that Abú Tammám's famous anthology is called the *Hamása*, i.e., 'Fortitude,' from the title of its first chapter, which occupies nearly a half of the book. 'Hamása' denotes the virtues most highly prized by the Arabs—bravery in battle, patience in misfortune, persistence in revenge, protection of the weak and defiance of the strong; the will, as Tennyson has said,

"To strive, to seek, to find, and not to yield."

As types of the ideal Arab hero we may take Shanfará of Azd and his comrade in foray, Ta'abbata Sharr<sup>m</sup>.

The ideal Arab hero. Both were brigands, outlaws, swift runners, and excellent poets. Of the former

"it is said that he was captured when a child from his tribe by the Banú Salámán, and brought up among them: he did not learn his origin until he had grown up, when he vowed vengeance against his captors, and returned to his own tribe. His oath was that he would slay a hundred men of Salámán; he slew ninety-eight, when an ambush of his enemies succeeded in taking him prisoner. In

Shanfará. the struggle one of his hands was hewn off by a sword stroke, and, taking it in the other, he flung it in the face of a man of Salámán and killed him, thus making ninety-nine. Then he was overpowered and slain, with one still wanting to make up his number. As his skull lay bleaching on the ground, a man of his enemies passed by that way and kicked it with his foot; a splinter of bone entered his foot, the wound mortified, and he died, thus completing the hundred."

The following passage is translated from Shanfará's splendid Ode named *Lámiyyatu 'l-'Arab* (the poem rhymed in *l* of the



Arabs), in which he describes his own heroic character and the hardships of a predatory life:—<sup>1</sup>

“And somewhere the noble find a refuge afar from scathe,  
The outlaw a lonely spot where no kin with hatred burn.  
Oh, never a prudent man, night-faring in hope or fear,  
Hard pressed on the face of earth, but still he hath room to  
turn.”

To me now, in your default, are comrades a wolf untired,  
A sleek leopard, and a fell hyena with shaggy mane:<sup>2</sup>  
True comrades: they ne'er let out the secret in trust with them,  
Nor basely forsake their friend because that he brought them  
bane.

And each is a gallant heart and ready at honour's call,  
Yet I, when the foremost charge, am bravest of all the brave;  
But if they with hands outstretched are seizing the booty won,  
The slowest am I whenas most quick is the greedy knave.

By naught save my generous will I reach to the height of worth  
Above them, and sure the best is he with the will to give.  
Yea, well I am rid of those who pay not a kindness back,  
Of whom I have no delight though neighbours to me they live.

Enow are companions three at last: an intrepid soul,  
A glittering trenchant blade, a tough bow of ample size,  
Loud-twanging, the sides thereof smooth-polished, a handsome  
bow

Hung down from the shoulder-belt by thongs in a comely wise,  
That groans, when the arrow slips away, like a woman crushed  
By losses, bereaved of all her children, who wails and cries.”

<sup>1</sup> Verses 3-13. I have attempted to imitate the 'Long' (*Tawil*) metre of the original, viz. :—

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

The Arabic text of the *Lamiyya*, with prose translation and commentary, is printed in De Sacy's *Chrestomathie Arabe* (2nd ed.), vol. ii\*, p. 134 sqq., and vol. ii, p. 337 sqq. It has been translated into English verse by G. Hughes (London, 1896). Other versions are mentioned by Nöldeke, *Beiträge zur Kenntniss d. Poesie d. alten Araber*, p. 200.

<sup>2</sup> The poet, apparently, means that his three friends are *like* the animals mentioned. Prof. Bevan remarks, however, that this interpretation is doubtful, since an Arab would scarcely compare his *friend* to a hyena.

On quitting his tribe, who cast him out when they were threatened on all sides by enemies seeking vengeance for the blood that he had spilt, Shanfará said :—

"Bury me not! Me you are forbidden to bury,  
But thou, O hyena, soon wilt feast and make merry,  
When foes bear away mine head, wherein is the best of me,  
And leave on the battle-field for thee all the rest of me.  
Here nevermore I hope to live glad—a stranger  
Accurst, whose wild deeds have brought his people in danger."<sup>1</sup>

Thábit b. Jábir b. Sufyán of Fahm is said to have got his nickname, Ta'abbata Sharr<sup>as</sup>, because one day his mother, who had seen him go forth from his tent with a sword under his arm, on being asked, "Where is Thábit?" replied, "I know not: he put a mischief under his arm-pit (*ta'abbata sharr<sup>as</sup>*) and departed." According to another version of the story, the 'mischief' was a Ghoul whom he vanquished and slew and carried home in this manner. The following lines, which he addressed to his cousin, Shams b. Málík, may be applied with equal justice to the poet himself :—

Ta'abbata  
Sharran.

"Little he complains of labour that befalls him; much he wills;  
Diverse ways attempting, mightily his purpose he fulfils.  
Through one desert in the sun's heat, through another in star-  
light,  
Lonely as the wild ass, rides he bare-backed Danger noon and  
night.  
He the foremost wind outpaceth, while in broken gusts it blows,  
Speeding onward, never slackening, never staying for repose.  
Prompt to dash upon the foeman, every minute watching well—  
Are his eyes in slumber lightly sealed, his heart stands sentinel.  
When the first advancing troopers rise to sight, he sets his  
hand  
From the scabbard forth to draw his sharp-edged, finely-mettled  
brand."

<sup>1</sup> *Hamása*, 242.

When he shakes it in the breast-bone of a champion of the foe,  
How the grinning Fates in open glee their flashing side-teeth  
show!

Solitude his chosen comrade, on he fares while overhead  
By the Mother of the mazy constellations he is led."<sup>1</sup>

These verses admirably describe the rudimentary Arabian virtues of courage, hardness, and strength. We must now take a wider survey of the moral ideas on which pagan society was built, and of which Pre-islamic poetry is at once the promulgation and the record. There was no written code, no legal or religious sanction—nothing, in effect, save the binding force of traditional sentiment and opinion, *i.e.*,  
The old Arabian points of honour. Honour. What, then, are the salient points of honour in which Virtue (*Muruwwa*), as it was understood by the heathen Arabs, consists?

Courage has been already mentioned. Arab courage is like that of the ancient Greeks, "dependent upon excitement and vanishing quickly before depression and delay."<sup>2</sup>

Courage. Hence the Arab hero is defiant and boastful, as he appears, *e.g.*, in the *Mu'allāqa* of 'Amr b. Kulthūm. When there is little to lose by flight he will ride off unashamed; but he will fight to the death for his womenfolk, who in serious warfare often accompanied the tribe and were stationed behind the line of battle.<sup>3</sup>

"When I saw the hard earth hollowed  
By our women's flying footprints,  
And Lamís her face uncovered  
Like the full moon of the skies,  
Showing forth her hidden beauties—  
Then the matter was grim earnest:  
I engaged their chief in combat,  
Seeing help no other wise."<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Ḥamāsa*, 41-43. This poem has been rendered in verse by Sir Charles Lyall, *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 16, and by the late Dr. A. B. Davidson, *Biblical and Literary Essays*, p. 263.

<sup>2</sup> Mahaffy, *Social Life in Greece*, p. 21.

<sup>3</sup> See pp. 59-60 *supra*.

<sup>4</sup> *Ḥamāsa*, 82-83. The poet is 'Amr b. Ma'dikarib, a famous heathen knight who accepted Islam and afterwards distinguished himself in the Persian wars.



The tribal constitution was a democracy guided by its chief men, who derived their authority from noble blood, noble character, wealth, wisdom, and experience. As a Bedouin poet has said in homely language—

"A folk that hath no chiefs must soon decay,  
And chiefs it hath not when the vulgar sway.  
Only with poles the tent is reared at last,  
And poles it hath not save the pegs hold fast.  
But when the pegs and poles are once combined,  
Then stands accomplished that which was designed."<sup>1</sup>

The chiefs, however, durst not lay commands or penalties on their fellow-tribesmen. Every man ruled himself, and was free to rebuke presumption in others. "*If you are our lord*" (i.e., if you act discreetly as a *sayyid* should), "*you will lord over us, but if you are a prey to pride, go and be proud!*" (i.e., we will have nothing to do with you).<sup>2</sup> Loyalty in the mouth of a pagan Arab did not mean allegiance to his superiors, but faithful devotion to his equals; and it was closely connected with the idea of kinship. The family and the tribe, which included strangers living in the tribe under a covenant of protection—to defend these, individually and collectively, was a sacred duty. Honour required that a man should stand by his own people through thick and thin.

"I am of Ghaziyya: if she be in error, then I will err;  
And if Ghaziyya be guided right, I go right with her!"

sang Durayd b. Šimma, who had followed his kin, against his better judgment, in a foray which cost the life of his brother 'Abdullāh.<sup>3</sup> If kinsmen seek help it should be given promptly, without respect to the merits of the case; if they do wrong

<sup>1</sup> Al-Afwah 'al-Awdi in Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 4, ll. 8-10. The poles and pegs represent lords and commons.

<sup>2</sup> *Hamāsa*, 122.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, 378.

it should be suffered as long as possible before resorting to violence.\* The utilitarian view of friendship is often emphasised, as in these verses :—

[ Take for thy brother whom thou wilt in the days of peace,  
But know that when fighting comes thy kinsman alone is near.  
Thy true friend thy kinsman is, who answers thy call for aid  
With good will, when deeply drenched in bloodshed are sword  
and spear.  
Oh, never forsake thy kinsman e'en tho' he do thee wrong,  
For what he hath marred he mends thereafter and makes  
sincere."\* ]

At the same time, notwithstanding their shrewd common sense, nothing is more characteristic of the Arabs—heathen and Muḥammadan alike—than the chivalrous devotion and disinterested self-sacrifice of which they are capable on behalf of their friends. In particular, the ancient poetry affords proof that they regarded with horror any breach of the solemn covenant plighted between patron and client or host and guest. This topic might be illustrated by many striking examples, but one will suffice :—

The Arabs say : "*Awfā minā 'l-Samaw'ali*"—"More loyal than al-Samaw'al"; or "*Wafā' ka-wafā'i 'l-Samaw'ali*"—"A loyalty like that of al-Samaw'al." These proverbs refer to Samaw'al b. 'Ādiyā, an Arab of Jewish descent and Jew by religion, who lived in his castle, called al-Ablaq (The Piebald), at Taymā, some distance north of Medīna. There he dug a well of sweet water, and would entertain the Arabs who used to alight beside it; and they supplied themselves with provisions from his castle and set up a market. It is related that the poet Imru'u 'l-Qays, while fleeing, hotly pursued by his enemies, towards Syria, took refuge with Samaw'al, and before proceeding on his way left in charge of his host five coats of mail which had been handed down as heirlooms by the princes of his family. Then he departed, and in due course arrived at Constantinople, where he besought the Byzantine emperor to help him to

\* Cf. the verses by al-Find, p. 58 *supra*.

\* Ḥamāsa, 327.

recover his lost kingdom. His appeal was not unsuccessful, but he died on the way home. Meanwhile his old enemy, the King of Ḥīra, sent an army under Ḥārith b. Zālim against Samaw'al, demanding that he should surrender the coats of mail. Samaw'al refused to betray the trust committed to him, and defended himself in his castle. The besiegers, however, captured his son, who had gone out to hunt. Ḥārith asked Samaw'al: "Dost thou know this lad?" "Yes, he is my son." "Then wilt thou deliver what is in thy possession, or shall I slay him?" Samaw'al answered: "Do with him as thou wilt. I will never break my pledge nor give up the property of my guest-friend." So Ḥārith smote the lad with his sword and clove him through the middle. Then he raised the siege. And Samaw'al said thereupon:—

*"I was true with the mail-coats of the Kindite,<sup>1</sup>  
I am true though many a one is blamed for treason.  
Once did 'Ādiyā, my father, exhort me:  
'O Samaw'al, ne'er destroy what I have builded.'  
For me built 'Ādiyā a strong-walled castle  
With a well where I draw water at pleasure;  
So high, the eagle slipping back is baffled.  
When wrong befalls me I endure not lamely."<sup>2</sup>*

[The Bedouin ideal of generosity and hospitality is personified in Ḥātim of Ṭayyī, of whom many anecdotes are told.] We may learn from the following one how extravagant are an Arab's notions on this subject:—

When Ḥātim's mother was pregnant she dreamed that she was asked, "Which dost thou prefer?—a generous son called Ḥātim, or ten like those of other folk, lions in the hour of battle, Ḥātim of Ṭayyī, brave lads and strong of limb?" and that she answered, "Ḥātim." Now, when Ḥātim grew up he was wont to take out his food, and if he found any one to share it he would eat, otherwise he threw it away. His father, seeing that

<sup>1</sup> Imru'ū 'l-Qays was one of the princes of Kinda, a powerful tribe in Central Arabia.

<sup>2</sup> *Aghāni*, xix, 99. The last two lines are wanting in the poem as there cited, but appear in the Selection from the *Aghāni* published at Beyrout in 1888, vol. ii, p. 18.



he wasted his food, gave him a slave-girl and a mare with her foal and sent him to herd the camels. On reaching the pasture, Hâtîm began to search for his fellows, but none was in sight; then he came to the road, but found no one there. While he was thus engaged he descried a party of riders on the road and went to meet them. "O youth," said they, "hast thou aught to entertain us withal?" He answered: "Do ye ask me of entertainment when ye see the camels?" Now, these riders were 'Abîd b. al-Abraş and Bishr b. Abî Khâzim and Nâbigha al-Dhubaynî, and they were on their way to King Nu'mân.\* Hâtîm slaughtered three camels for them, whereupon 'Abîd said: "We desired no entertainment save milk, but if thou must needs charge thyself with something more, a single young she-camel would have sufficed us." Hâtîm replied: "That I know, but seeing different faces and diverse fashions I thought ye were not of the same country, and I wished that each of you should mention what ye saw, on returning home." So they spoke verses in praise of him and celebrated his generosity, and Hâtîm said: "I wished to bestow a kindness upon you, but your bounty is greater than mine. I swear to God that I will hamstring every camel in the herd unless ye come forward and divide them among yourselves." The poets did as he desired, and each man received ninety-nine camels; then they proceeded on their journey to Nu'mân. When Hâtîm's father heard of this he came to him and asked, "Where are the camels?" "O my father," replied Hâtîm, "by means of them I have conferred on thee everlasting fame and honour that will cleave to thee like the ring of the ringdove, and men will always bear in mind some verse of poetry in which we are praised. This is thy recompense for the camels." On hearing these words his father said, "Didst thou with my camels thus?" "Yes." "By God, I will never dwell with thee again." So he went forth with his family, and Hâtîm was left alone with his slave-girl and his mare and the mare's foal.\*

We are told that Hâtîm's daughter was led as a captive before the Prophet and thus addressed him: "O Muḥammad, my sire is dead, and he who would have come to plead for me is gone. Release me, if it seem good to thee, and do not let the Arabs rejoice at my misfortune; for I am the daughter of the chieftain of my people. My father was wont to free the captive, and protect those near and dear to him, and entertain

\* See p. 45 sqq.

\* *Aghânî*, xvi, 98, ll. 5-22.

the guest, and satisfy the hungry, and console the afflicted, and give food and greeting to all; and never did he turn away any who sought a boon. I am Hātim's daughter before the Prophet. The Prophet (on whom be the blessing and peace of God) answered her: 'O maiden, the true believer is such as thou hast described. Had thy father been an Islamite, verily we should have said, "God have mercy upon him!" Let her go,' he continued, 'for her sire loved noble manners, and God loves them likewise.'"<sup>1</sup>

Hātim was a poet of some repute.<sup>2</sup> The following lines are addressed to his wife, Máwiyya:—

"O daughter of 'Abdullāh and Mālik and him who wore  
The two robes of Yemen stuff—the hero that rode the roan,  
When thou hast prepared the meal, entreat to partake thereof  
A guest—I am not the man to eat, like a churl, alone—:  
Some traveller thro' the night, or house-neighbour; for in  
sooth

I fear the reproachful talk of men after I am gone.

The guest's slave am I, 'tis true, as long as he bides with me,  
Although in my nature else no trait of the slave is shown."<sup>3</sup>

Here it will be convenient to make a short digression in order that the reader may obtain, if not a complete view, at least some glimpses of the position and influence of women in Pre-islamic society. [On the whole, their position was high and their influence great.

They were free to choose their husbands, and could return, if ill-treated or displeased, to their own people; in some cases

<sup>1</sup> *Aghāni*, xvi, 97, l. 5 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> His *Dīwān* has been edited with translation and notes by F. Schulthess (Leipzig, 1897).

<sup>3</sup> *Hamāsa*, 729. The hero mentioned in the first verse is 'Amir b. Uḡaymir of Bahdala. On a certain occasion, when envoys from the Arabian tribes were assembled at Hira, King Mundhir b. Mā' al-samā produced two pieces of cloth of Yemen and said, "Let him whose tribe is noblest rise up and take them." Thereupon 'Amir stood forth, and wrapping one piece round his waist and the other over his shoulders, carried off the prize unchallenged.



they even offered themselves in marriage and had the right of divorce. They were regarded not as slaves and chattels, but as equals and companions. They inspired the poet to sing and the warrior to fight. The chivalry of the Middle Ages is, perhaps, ultimately traceable to heathen Arabia. "Knight-errantry, the riding forth on horseback in search of adventures, the rescue of captive maidens, the succour rendered everywhere to women in adversity—all these were essentially Arabian ideas, as was the very name of *chivalry*, the connection of honourable conduct with the horse-rider, the man of noble blood, the cavalier."<sup>1</sup> But the nobility of the women is not only reflected in the heroism and devotion of the men; it stands recorded in song, in legend, and in history. Fátima, the daughter of Khurshub, was one of three noble matrons

Arabian  
heroines.

who bore the title *al-Munjibát*, 'the Mothers of Heroes.' She had seven sons, three of whom, viz., Rabī' and 'Umāra and Anas, were called 'the Perfect' (*al-Kamala*). One day Ḥamal b. Badr the Fazárite raided the Banú 'Abs, the tribe to which Fátima belonged, and made her his prisoner. As he led away the camel on which she was mounted at the time, she cried: "Man, thy wits are wandering. By God, if thou take me captive, and if we leave behind us this hill which is now

Fátima,  
daughter of  
Khurshub.

in front of us, surely there will never be peace between thee and the sons of Ziyád" (Ziyád was the name of her husband), "because people will say what they please, and the mere suspicion of evil is enough." "I will carry thee off," said he, "that thou mayest herd my camels." [When Fátima knew that she was certainly his prisoner she threw herself headlong from her camel and died; so did she fear to bring dishonour on her sons.<sup>2</sup>] Among the names which have become proverbial for loyalty we find

<sup>1</sup> Lady Anne and Mr. Wilfrid Blunt, *The Seven Golden Odes of Pagan Arabia*, Introduction, p. 14.

<sup>2</sup> *Aghání* xvi, 22, ll. 10-16.



those of two women, Fukayha and Umm Jamil. As to Fukayha, it is related that her clansmen, having been raided by the brigand Sulayk b. Sulaka, resolved to attack him; but since he was a famous runner, on the advice of one of their shaykhs they waited until he had gone down to the water and quenched his thirst, for they knew that he would then be unable to run. Sulayk, however, seeing himself caught, made for the nearest tents and sought refuge with Fukayha. She threw her smock over him, and stood with drawn sword between him and his pursuers; and as they still pressed on, she tore the veil from her hair and shouted for help. Then her brothers came and defended Sulayk, so that his life was saved.<sup>1</sup> Had space allowed, it would have been a pleasant task to make some further extracts from the long Legend of Noble Women. I have illustrated their keen sense of honour and loyalty, but I might equally well have chosen examples of gracious dignity and quick intelligence and passionate affection. Many among them had the gift of poetry, which they bestowed especially on the dead; it is a final proof of the high character and position of women in Pre-islamic Arabia that the hero's mother and sisters were deemed most worthy to mourn and praise him. The praise of living women by their lovers necessarily takes a different tone; the physical charms of the heroine are fully described, but we seldom find any appreciation of moral beauty. One notable exception to this rule occurs at the beginning of an ode by Shanfará. The passage defies translation. It is, to quote Sir Charles Lyall, with whose faithful and sympathetic rendering of the ancient poetry every student of Arabic literature should be acquainted, "the most lovely picture of womanhood which heathen Arabia has left us, drawn by the same hand that has given us, in the unrivalled *Lámiyah*, its highest ideal of heroic hardness and virile strength."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Agháni*, xviii, 137, ll. 5-10. Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. ii, p. 834.

<sup>2</sup> *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 81.

## UMAYMA.

"She charmed me, veiling bashfully her face,  
 Keeping with quiet looks an even pace;  
 Some lost thing seem to seek her downcast eyes:  
 Aside she bends not—softly she replies.  
 Ere dawn she carries forth her meal—a gift  
 To hungry wives in days of dearth and thrift.  
 No breath of blame up to her tent is borne,  
 While many a neighbour's is the house of scorn.  
 Her husband fears no gossip fraught with shame,  
 For pure and holy is Umayma's name.  
 Joy of his heart, to her he need not say  
 When evening brings him home—'Where passed the day?'  
 Slender and full in turn, of perfect height,  
 A very fay were she, if beauty might  
 Transform a child of earth into a fairy sprite!"\*]

Only in the freedom of the desert could the character thus exquisitely delineated bloom and ripen. These verses, taken by themselves, are a sufficient answer to any one who would maintain that Islam has increased the social influence of Arabian women, although in some respects it may have raised them to a higher level of civilisation.<sup>2</sup>

There is, of course, another side to all this. In a land where might was generally right, and where

"the simple plan  
 That he should take who has the power  
 And he should keep who can,"

was all but universally adopted, it would have been strange if the weaker sex had not often gone to the wall. The custom which prevailed in the *Jāhiliyya* of burying female infants alive, revolting as it appears to us, was due partly to the frequent famines with which Arabia is afflicted through lack of rain, and partly to a perverted sense of honour. Fathers

\* *Mufaḍḍaliyyāt*, ed. Thorbecke, p. 23.

<sup>2</sup> See Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part II, p. 295 sqq.

feared lest they should have useless mouths to feed, or lest they should incur disgrace in consequence of their daughters being made prisoners of war. Hence the birth of

Infanticide.

a daughter was reckoned calamitous, as we read in the Koran: "*They attribute daughters unto God—far be it from Him!—and for themselves they desire them not. When a female child is announced to one of them, his face darkens wrathfully: he hides himself from his people because of the bad news, thinking—‘Shall I keep the child to my disgrace or cover it away in the dust?’*"<sup>1</sup> It was said proverbially, "The despatch of daughters is a kindness" and "The burial of daughters is a noble deed."<sup>2</sup> Islam put an end to this barbarity, which is expressly forbidden by the Koran: "*Kill not your children in fear of impoverishment: we will provide for them and for you: verily their killing was a great sin.*"<sup>3</sup> Perhaps the most touching lines in Arabian poetry are those in which a father struggling with poverty wishes that his daughter may die before him and thus be saved from the hard mercies of her relatives:—

#### THE POOR MAN'S DAUGHTER.

"But for Umayma's sake I ne'er had grieved to want nor  
braved

Night's blackest horror to bring home the morsel that she  
craved.

Now my desire is length of days because I know too well  
The orphan girl's hard lot, with kin unkind enforced to dwell.  
I dread that some day poverty will overtake my child,  
And shame befall her when exposed to every passion wild."<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Koran, xvi, 59-61.

<sup>2</sup> Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. i, p. 229.

<sup>3</sup> Koran, xvii, 33. Cf. lxxxi, 8-9 (a description of the Last Judgment): "*When the girl buried alive shall be asked for what crime she was killed.*"

<sup>4</sup> Literally: "And tear the veil from (her, as though she were) flesh on a butcher's board," i.e., defenceless, abandoned to the first-comer.



She wishes me to live, but I must wish her dead, woe's me :  
 Death is the noblest wooer a helpless maid can see.  
 I fear an uncle may be harsh, a brother be unkind,  
 When I would never speak a word that rankled in her mind."<sup>2</sup>

And another says :—

“Were not my little daughters  
 Like soft chicks huddling by me,  
 Through earth and all its waters  
 To win 'bread would I roam free.  
 Our children among us going,  
 Our very hearts they be ;  
 The wind upon them blowing  
 Would banish sleep from me.”<sup>3</sup>

“Odi et amo” : these words of the poet might serve as an epitome of Bedouin ethics. For, if the heathen Arab was, as we have seen, a good friend to his friends, he had in the same degree an intense and deadly feeling of hatred towards his enemies. He who did not strike back when struck was regarded as a coward. No honourable man could forgive an injury or fail to avenge it. An Arab, smarting under the loss of some camels driven off by raiders, said of his kin who refused to help him :—

Treatment of  
 enemies.

“For all their numbers, they are good for naught,  
 My people, against harm however light :  
 They pardon wrong by evildoers wrought,  
 Malice with lovingkindness they requite.”<sup>3</sup>

The last verse, which would have been high praise in the

<sup>2</sup> *Hamāsa*, 140. Although these verses are not Pre-islamic, and belong in fact to a comparatively late period of Islam, they are sufficiently pagan in feeling to be cited in this connection. The author, Ishāq b. Khalaf, lived under the Caliph Ma'mūn (813-833 A.D.). He survived his adopted daughter—for Umayma was his sister's child—and wrote an elegy on her, which is preserved in the *Kāmil* of al-Mubarrad, p. 715, l. 7 sqq., and has been translated, together with the verses now in question, by Sir Charles Lyall, *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 26.

<sup>3</sup> *Hamāsa*, 142. Lyall, *op. cit.*, p. 28.

<sup>3</sup> *Hamāsa*, 7.

mouth of a Christian or Muḥammadan moralist, conveyed to those who heard it a shameful reproach. The approved method of dealing with an enemy is set forth plainly enough in the following lines :—

"Humble him who humbles thee, close tho' be your kindred-ship :

If thou canst not humble him, wait till he is in thy grip.

Friend him while thou must ; strike hard when thou hast him on the hip."<sup>1</sup>

Above all, blood called for blood. This obligation lay heavy on the conscience of the pagan Arabs. Vengeance, with them, was "almost a physical necessity,"  
*Blood-revenge.* which if it be not obeyed will deprive its subject of sleep, of appetite, of health." It was a tormenting thirst which nothing would quench except blood, a disease of honour which might be described as madness, although it rarely prevented the sufferer from going to work with coolness and circumspection. Vengeance was taken upon the murderer, if possible, or else upon one of his fellow-tribesmen. Usually this ended the matter, but in some cases it was the beginning of a regular blood-feud in which the entire kin of both parties were involved ; as, *e.g.*, the murder of Kulayb led to the Forty Years' War between Bakr and Taghlib.<sup>2</sup> The slain man's next of kin might accept a blood-wit (*diya*), commonly paid in camels—the coin of the country—as atonement for him. If they did so, however, it was apt to be cast in their teeth that they preferred milk (*i.e.*, she-camels) to blood.<sup>3</sup> [The true Arab feeling is expressed in verses like these :—

"With the sword will I wash my shame away,  
 Let God's doom bring on me what it may!"<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Hamāsa*, 321.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 55 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Rückert's *Hamāsa*, vol. i, p. 61 seq.

<sup>4</sup> *Hamāsa*, 30.

It was believed that until vengeance had been taken for the dead man, his spirit appeared above his tomb in the shape of an owl (*hāma* or *ṣadd*), crying "*Isquni*" ("Give me to drink"). But pagan ideas of vengeance were bound up with the Past far more than with the Future. The shadowy after-life counted for little or nothing beside the deeply-rooted memories of fatherly affection, filial piety, and brotherhood in arms.

Though liable to abuse, the rough-and-ready justice of the vendetta had a salutary effect in restraining those who would otherwise have indulged their lawless instincts without fear of punishment. From our point of view, however, its interest is not so much that of a primitive institution as of a pervading element in old Arabian life and literature. Full, or even adequate, illustration of this topic would carry me far beyond the limits of my plan. I have therefore selected from the copious material preserved in the *Book of Songs* a characteristic story which tells how Qays b. al-Khaṭīm took vengeance on the murderers of his father and his grandfather.\*

It is related on the authority of Abū 'Ubayda that 'Adī b. 'Amr, the grandfather of Qays, was slain by a man named Málík belonging to the Banū 'Amr b. 'Ámir b. Rabī'a b. 'Ámir b. Ṣa'sa'a; and his father, Khaṭīm b. 'Adī, by one of the Banū 'Abd al-Qays who were settled in Hajar.

The story of the vengeance of Qays b. al-Khaṭīm. Khaṭīm died before avenging his father, 'Adī, when Qays was but a young lad. The mother of Qays, fearing that he would sally forth to seek vengeance for the blood of his father and his grandfather and perish, went to a mound of dust beside the door of their dwelling and laid stones on it, and began to say to Qays, "This is the grave of thy father and thy grandfather;" and Qays never doubted but that it was so. (He grew up strong in the arms, and one day he had a tussle with a youth of the Banū Ṣafar, who said to him: "By God, thou would'st do better to turn the strength of thine arms against the slayers of thy father and grandfather instead of putting it forth upon me." "And who are their slayers?" "Ask thy mother, she will tell thee.") So Qays

\* *Aghānī*, ii, 160, l. 11-162, l. 1 = p. 13 sqq. of the Beyrout Selection.



took his sword and set its hilt on the ground and its edge between his two breasts, and said to his mother : " Who killed my father and my grandfather ? " " They died as people die, and these are their graves in the camping-ground. " " By God, verily thou wilt tell me who slew them or I will bear with my whole weight upon this sword until it cleaves through my back. " Then she told him, and Qays swore that he would never rest until he had slain their slayers. " O my son, " said she, " Málík, who killed thy grandfather, is of the same folk as Khidásh b. Zuhayr, and thy father once bestowed a kindness on Khidásh, for which he is grateful. Go, then, to him and take counsel with him touching thine affair and ask him to help thee. " So Qays set out immediately, and when he came to the garden where his water-camel was watering his date-palms, he smote the cord (of the bucket) with his sword and cut it, so that the bucket dropped into the well. Then he took hold of the camel's head, and loaded the beast with two sacks of dates, and said : " Who will care for this old woman " (meaning his mother) " in my absence ? If I die, let him pay her expenses out of this garden, and on her death it shall be his own ; but if I live, my property will return to me, and he shall have as many of its dates as he wishes to eat. " One of his folk cried, " I am for it, " so Qays gave him the garden and set forth to inquire concerning Khidásh. He was told to look for him at Marr al-Zahrán, but not finding him in his tent, he alighted beneath a tree, in the shade of which the guests of Khidásh used to shelter, and called to the wife of Khidásh, " Is there any food ? " Now, when she came up to him, she admired his comeliness—for he was exceeding fair of countenance—and said : " By God, we have no fit entertainment for thee, but only dates. " He replied, " I care not, bring out what thou hast. " So she sent to him dates in a large measure (*qubá'*), and Qays took a single date and ate half of it and put back the other half in the *qubá'*, and gave orders that the *qubá'* should be brought in to the wife of Khidásh ; then he departed on some business. When Khidásh returned and his wife told him the news of Qays, he said, " This is a man who would render his person sacred. " While he sat there with his wife eating fresh ripe dates, Qays returned on camel-back ; and Khidásh, when he saw the foot of the approaching rider, said to his wife, " Is this thy guest ? " " Yes. " " 'Tis as though his foot were the foot of

---

\* The Bedouins consider that any one who has eaten of their food or has touched the rope of their tent is entitled to claim their protection. Such a person is called *dakhil*. See Burckhardt, *Notes on the Bedouins and Waháby* (London, 1831), vol. i, p. 160 sqq. and 329 sqq.

my good friend, Khaṭīm the Yathribite." Qays drew nigh, and struck the tent-rope with the point of his spear, and begged leave to come in. Having obtained permission, he entered to Khidāsh and told his lineage and informed him of what had passed, and asked him to help and advise him in his affair. Khidāsh bade him welcome, and recalled the kindness which he had of his father, and said, "As to this affair, truly I have been expecting it of thee for some time. The slayer of thy grandfather is a cousin of mine, and I will aid thee against him. When we are assembled in our meeting-place, I will sit beside him and talk with him, and when I strike his thigh, do thou spring on him and slay him." Qays himself relates: "Accompanied by Khidāsh, I approached him until I stood over his head when Khidāsh sat with him, and as soon as he struck the man's thigh I smote his head with a sword named *Dhu 'l-Khurṣayn*" (the Two-ringed). "His folk rushed on me to slay me, but Khidāsh came between us, crying, 'Let him alone, for, by God, he has slain none but the slayer of his grandfather.' " Then Khidāsh called for one of his camels and mounted it, and started with Qays to find the 'Abdite who killed his father. And when they were near Hajar Khidāsh advised him to go and inquire after this man, and to say to him when he discovered him: "I encountered a brigand of thy people who robbed me of some articles, and on asking who was the chieftain of his people I was directed to thee. Go with me, then, that thou mayest take from him my property. If," Khidāsh continued, "he follow thee unattended, thou wilt gain thy desire of him; but should he bid the others go with thee, laugh, and if he ask why thou laughest, say, 'With us, the noble does not as thou dost, but when he is called to a brigand of his people, he goes forth alone with his whip, not with his sword; and the brigand when he sees him gives him everything that he took, in awe of him.' If he shall dismiss his friends, thy course is clear; but if he shall refuse to go without them, bring him to me nevertheless, for I hope that thou wilt slay both him and them." So Khidāsh stationed himself under the shade of a tree, while Qays went to the 'Abdite and addressed him as Khidāsh had prompted; and the man's sense of honour was touched to the quick, so that he sent away his friends and went with Qays. And when Qays came back to Khidāsh, the latter said to him, "Choose, O Qays! Shall I help thee or shall I take thy place?" Qays answered, "I desire neither of these alternatives, but if he slay me, let him not slay thee!" Then he rushed upon him and wounded him in the flank and drove his lance through the other side, and he fell dead on the spot. When Qays had finished with him, Khidāsh said, "If we flee just now, his folk



will pursue us ; but let us go somewhere not far off, for they will never think that thou hast slain him and stayed in the neighbourhood. No ; they will miss him and follow his track, and when they find him slain they will start to pursue us in every direction, and will only return when they have lost hope." So those two entered some hollows of the sand, and after staying there several days (for it happened exactly as Khidâsh had foretold), they came forth when the pursuit was over, and did not exchange a word until they reached the abode of Khidâsh. There Qays parted from him and returned to his own people.

The poems relating to blood-revenge show all that is best and much that is less admirable in the heathen Arab—on the one hand, his courage and resolution, his contempt of death and fear of dishonour, his single-minded devotion to the dead as to the living, his deep regard and tender affection for the men of his own flesh and blood ; on the other hand, his implacable temper, his perfidious cruelty and reckless ferocity in hunting down the slayers, and his savage, well-nigh inhuman exultation over the slain. The famous Song or Ballad of Vengeance that I shall now attempt to render in English verse is usually attributed to Ta'abbata Sharran,<sup>1</sup> although some pronounce it to be a forgery by Khalaf al-Ahmar, the reputed author of Shanfarâ's masterpiece, and beyond doubt a marvellously skilful imitator of the ancient bards. Be that as it may, the ballad is utterly pagan in tone and feeling. Its extraordinary merit was detected by Goethe, who, after reading it in a Latin translation, published a German rendering, with some fine criticism of the poetry, in his *West-östlicher Divan*.<sup>2</sup> I have endeavoured to suggest as far as possible the metre and rhythm of the original,

Song of  
Vengeance  
by Ta'abbata  
Sharran.

by Ta'abbata Sharran,<sup>1</sup> although some pronounce it to be a forgery by Khalaf al-Ahmar, the reputed author of Shanfarâ's masterpiece, and beyond doubt a marvellously skilful imitator of

the ancient bards. Be that as it may, the ballad is utterly pagan in tone and feeling. Its extraordinary merit was detected by Goethe, who, after reading it in a Latin translation, published a German rendering, with some fine criticism of the poetry, in his *West-östlicher Divan*.<sup>2</sup> I have endeavoured to suggest as far as possible the metre and rhythm of the original,

<sup>1</sup> See p. 81 *supra*.

<sup>2</sup> Stuttgart, 1819, p. 253 sqq. The other renderings in verse with which I am acquainted are those of Rückert (*Hamâsa*, vol. i, p. 299) and Sir Charles Lyall (*Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 48). I have adopted Sir Charles Lyall's arrangement of the poem, and have closely followed his masterly interpretation, from which I have also borrowed some turns of phrase that could not be altered except for the worse.



since to these, in my opinion, its peculiar effect is largely due. The metre is that known as the 'Tall' (*Madlā*), viz. :—

— — — — | — — — — | — — — —

Thus the first verse runs in Arabic :—

*Inna bīl-shi' | bi 'lladhi | 'inda Saī'm  
la-qatīl<sup>an</sup> | damuhū | mā yufallu.*

Of course, Arabic prosody differs radically from English, but *mutatis mutandis* several couplets in the following version (e.g. the third, eighth, and ninth) will be found to correspond exactly with their model. As has been said, however, my object was merely to suggest the abrupt metre and the heavy, emphatic cadences, so that I have been able to give variety to the verse, and at the same time to retain that artistic freedom without which the translator of poetry cannot hope to satisfy either himself or any one else.

The poet tells how he was summoned to avenge his uncle, slain by the tribesmen of Hudhayl: he describes the dead man's heroic character, the foray in which he fell, his former triumphs over the same enemy, and finally the terrible vengeance taken for him.<sup>1</sup>

“In the glen there a murdered man is lying—  
Not in vain for vengeance his blood is crying.  
He hath left me the load to bear and departed;  
I take up the load and bear it true-hearted.  
I, his sister's son, the bloodshed inherit,  
I whose knot none looses, stubborn of spirit;<sup>2</sup>  
Glowering darkly, shame's deadly out-wiper,  
Like the serpent spitting venom, the viper.

<sup>1</sup> The Arabic text will be found in the *Hamāsa*, p. 382 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> This and the following verse are generally taken to be a description not of the poet himself, but of his nephew. The interpretation given above does no violence to the language, and greatly enhances the dramatic effect.

Hard the tidings that befell us, heart-breaking ;  
 Little seemed thereby the anguish most aching.  
 Fate hath robbed me—still is Fate fierce and froward—  
 Of a hero whose friend ne'er called him coward :  
 As the warm sun was he in wintry weather,  
 'Neath the Dog-star shade and coolness together :  
 Spare of flank—yet this in him showed not meanness ;  
 Open-handed, full of boldness and keenness :  
 Firm of purpose, cavalier unaffrighted—  
 Courage rode with him and with him alighted :  
 In his bounty, a bursting cloud of rain-water ;  
 Lion grim when he leaped to the slaughter.  
 Flowing hair, long robe his folk saw aforetime,  
 But a lean-haunched wolf was he in war-time.  
 Savours two he had, untasted by no men :  
 Honey to his friends and gall to his foemen.]  
 Fear he rode nor recked what should betide him :  
 Save his deep-notched Yemen blade, none beside him.

Oh, the warriors girt with swords good for slashing,  
 Like the levin, when they drew them, outflashing !  
 Through the noonday heat they fared : then, benighted,  
 Farther fared, till at dawning they alighted.\*  
 Breaths of sleep they sipped ; and then, while they nodded,  
 Thou didst scare them : lo, they scattered and scudded.  
 Vengeance wreaked we upon them, unforgiving :  
 Of the two clans scarce was left a soul living.\*

Ay, if *they* bruised his glaive's edge 'twas in token  
 That by him many a time their own was broken.  
 Oft he made them kneel down by force and cunning—  
 Kneel on jags where the foot is torn with running.  
 Many a morn in shelter he took them napping ;  
 After killing was the rieving and rapine.

They have gotten of me a roasting—I tire not  
 Of desiring them till me they desire not.  
 First, of foemen's blood my spear deeply drinketh,  
 Then a second time, deep in, it sinketh.

\* In the original this and the preceding verse are transposed.

\* Although the poet's uncle was killed in this onslaught, the surprised party suffered severely. "The two clans" belonged to the great tribe of Hudhayl, which is mentioned in the penultimate verse.

Lawful now to me is wine, long forbidden :  
 Sore my struggle ere the ban was o'erridden.<sup>1</sup>  
 Pour me wine, O son of 'Amr ! I would taste it,  
 Since with grief for mine uncle I am wasted.  
 O'er the fallen of Hudhayl stands screaming  
 The hyena ; see the wolf's teeth gleaming !  
 Dawn will hear the flap of wings, will discover  
 Vultures treading corpses, too gorged to hover."<sup>2</sup>

All the virtues which enter into the Arabian conception of Honour were regarded not as personal qualities inherent or acquired, but as hereditary possessions which a man derived from his ancestors, and held in trust that he might transmit them untarnished to his descendants. It is the desire to uphold and emulate the fame of his forbears, rather than the hope of winning immortality for himself, that causes the Arab "to say the say and do the deeds of the noble." Far from sharing the sentiment of the Scots peasant—"a man's a man for a' that"—he looks askance at merit and renown unconsecrated by tradition.

Honour conferred by noble ancestry.

"The glories that have grown up with the grass  
 Can match not those inherited of old."<sup>3</sup>

Ancestral renown (*hasab*) is sometimes likened to a strong castle built by sires for their sons, or to a lofty mountain which defies attack.<sup>3</sup> The poets are full of boastings (*mafâkhir*) and revilings (*mathâlib*) in which they loudly proclaim the nobility of their own ancestors, and try to blacken those of their enemy without any regard to decorum.

It was my intention to add here some general remarks on Arabian poetry as compared with that of the Hebrews, the

<sup>1</sup> It was customary for the avenger to take a solemn vow that he would drink no wine before accomplishing his vengeance.

<sup>2</sup> *Hamâsa*, 679.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. the lines translated below from the *Mu'allâqa* of Hârith.



Persians, and our own, but since example is better than precept I will now turn directly to those celebrated odes which are well known by the title of *Mu'allaqât*, or 'Suspended Poems,' to all who take the slightest interest in Arabic literature.<sup>1</sup>

*Mu'allaqâ* (plural, *Mu'allaqât*) "is most likely derived from the word *'ilq*, meaning 'a precious thing or a thing held in high estimation,' either because one 'hangs on' tenaciously to it, or because it is 'hung up' in a place of honour, or in a conspicuous place, in a treasury or store-house."<sup>2</sup> In course of time the exact signification of *Mu'allaqâ* was forgotten, and it became necessary to find a plausible explanation.

The *Mu'allaqât*,  
or 'Suspended  
Poems.'

Hence arose the legend, which frequent repetition has made familiar, that the 'Suspended Poems' were so called from having been hung up in the Ka'ba on account of their merit; that this distinction was awarded by the judges at the fair of 'Ukâz, near Mecca, where poets met in rivalry and recited their choicest productions; and that the successful compositions, before being affixed to the door of the Ka'ba, were transcribed in letters of gold upon pieces of fine Egyptian linen.<sup>3</sup> Were these state-

<sup>1</sup> The best edition of the *Mu'allaqât* is Sir Charles Lyall's (*A Commentary on Ten Ancient Arabic Poems*, Calcutta, 1894), which contains in addition to the seven *Mu'allaqât* three odes by A'shâ, Nâbigha, and 'Abîd b. al-Abras. Nöldeke has translated five *Mu'allaqas* (omitting those of Imru' u' l-Qays and Tarafa) with a German commentary, *Sitzungsberichte der Kais. Akad. der Wissenschaften in Wien, Phil.-Histor. Klasse*, vols. 140-144 (1899-1901); this is by far the best translation for students. No satisfactory version in English prose has hitherto appeared, but I may call attention to the fine and original, though somewhat free, rendering into English verse by Lady Anne Blunt and Wilfrid Scawen Blunt (*The Seven Golden Odes of Pagan Arabia*, London, 1903).

<sup>2</sup> *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, Introduction, p. xlv. Many other interpretations have been suggested—e.g., 'The Poems written down from oral dictation' (Von Kremer), 'The richly bejewelled' (Ahlwardt), 'The Pendants,' as though they were pearls strung on a necklace (A. Müller).

<sup>3</sup> The belief that the *Mu'allaqât* were written in letters of gold seems to have arisen from a misunderstanding of the name *Mudhhabât* or *Mudhahhabât* (i.e., the Gilded Poems) which is sometimes given to them in token of their excellence, just as the Greeks gave the title χρυσῆα ἔπη

ments true, we should expect them to be confirmed by some allusion in the early literature. But as a matter of fact nothing of the kind is mentioned in the Koran or in religious tradition, in the ancient histories of Mecca, or in such works as the *Kitābu 'l-Aghāni*, which draw their information from old and trustworthy sources.<sup>1</sup> Almost the first authority who refers to the legend is the grammarian Ahmad al-Nahhās († 949 A.D.), and by him it is stigmatised as entirely groundless. Moreover, although it was accepted by scholars like Reiske, Sir W. Jones, and even De Sacy, it is incredible in itself. Hengstenberg, in the Prolegomena to his edition of the *Mu'allaga* of Imru'ū 'l-Qays (Bonn, 1823) asked some pertinent questions: Who were the judges, and how were they appointed? Why were only these seven poems thus distinguished? His further objection, that the art of writing was at that time a rare accomplishment, does not carry so much weight as he attached to it, but the story is sufficiently refuted by what we know of the character and customs of the Arabs in the sixth century and afterwards. Is it conceivable that the proud sons of the desert could have submitted a matter so nearly touching their tribal honour, of which they were jealous above all things, to external arbitration, or meekly acquiesced in the partial verdict of a court sitting in the neighbourhood of Mecca, which would certainly have shown scant consideration for competitors belonging to distant clans?<sup>2</sup>

However *Mu'allaga* is to be explained, the name is not contemporary with the poems themselves. In all probability they were so entitled by the person who first chose them

to a poem falsely attributed to Pythagoras. That some of the *Mu'allagāt* were recited at 'Ukāz is probable enough and is definitely affirmed in the case of 'Amr b. Kulthūm (*Aghāni*, ix, 182).

<sup>1</sup> The legend first appears in the *Iqd al-Farid* (ed. of Cairo, 1293 A.H., vol. iii, p. 116 seq.) of Ibn 'Abdi Rabbihi, who died in 940 A.D.

<sup>2</sup> See the Introduction to Nöldeke's *Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Poësie der alten Araber* (Hannover, 1864), p. xvii sqq., and his article 'Mo'allagāt' in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*.



out of innumerable others and embodied them in a separate collection. This is generally allowed to have been Ḥammád al-Ráwiya, a famous rhapsodist who flourished in the latter days of the Umayyad dynasty, and died about 772 A.D., in the reign of the 'Abbásid Caliph Maḥdī. What principle guided Ḥammád in his choice we do not know. Nöldeke conjectures that he was influenced by the fact that all the *Mu'allaqát* are long poems—they are sometimes called 'The Seven Long Poems' (*al-Sab' al-Tiwál*)—for in Ḥammád's time little of the ancient Arabian poetry survived in a state even of relative completeness.

It must be confessed that no rendering of the *Mu'allaqát* can furnish European readers with a just idea of the originals, a literal version least of all. They contain much that only a full commentary can make intelligible, much that to modern taste is absolutely incongruous with the poetic style. Their finest pictures of Bedouin life and manners often appear uncouth or grotesque, because without an intimate knowledge of the land and people it is impossible for us to see what the poet intended to convey, or to appreciate the truth and beauty of its expression; while the artificial framework, the narrow range of subject as well as treatment, and the frank realism of the whole strike us at once. In the following pages I shall give some account of the *Mu'allaqát* and their authors, and endeavour to bring out the characteristic qualities of each poem by selecting suitable passages for translation.<sup>1</sup>

(The oldest and most famous of the *Mu'allaqát* is that of Imru'ū 'l-Qays, who was descended from the ancient kings of Yemen.) His grandfather was King Ḥáarith of Kinda, the antagonist of Mundhir III, King of Ḥíra, by whom he was

<sup>1</sup> It is well known that the order of the verses in the *Mu'allaqát*, as they have come down to us, is frequently confused, and that the number of various readings is very large. I have generally followed the text and arrangement adopted by Nöldeke in his German translation.



defeated and slain.<sup>2</sup> On Hārith's death, the confederacy which he had built up split asunder, and his sons divided among themselves the different tribes of which it was composed. Imru'u 'l-Qays, the poet's father, ruled for some time over the Banú Asad in Central Arabia, but finally they revolted and put him to death. "The duty of avenging his murder fell upon Imru'u 'l-Qays, who is represented as the only capable prince of his family; and the few historical data which we have regarding him relate to his adventures while bent upon this vengeance."<sup>3</sup> They are told at considerable length in the *Kitābu 'l-Aghāni*, but need not detain us here. Suffice it to say that his efforts to punish the rebels, who were aided by Mundhir, the hereditary foe of his house, met with little success. He then set out for Constantinople, where he was favourably received by the Emperor Justinian, who desired to see the power of Kinda re-established as a thorn in the side of his Persian rivals. The emperor appointed him Phylarch of Palestine, but on his way thither he died at Angora (about 540 A.D.). He is said to have perished, like Nessus, from putting on a poisoned robe sent to him as a gift by Justinian, with whose daughter he had an intrigue. Hence he is sometimes called 'The Man of the Ulcers' (*Dhu 'l-Qurtūḥ*).

Many fabulous traditions surround the romantic figure of Imru'u 'l-Qays.<sup>3</sup> According to one story, he was banished by his father, who despised him for being a poet and was enraged by the scandals to which his love adventures gave rise. Imru'u 'l-Qays left his home and wandered from tribe to tribe with a company of outcasts like himself, leading a wild life, which caused him to be known as 'The Vagabond Prince' (*al-Malik al-Dillil*). When the news of his father's death

<sup>2</sup> See p. 42 *supra*.

<sup>3</sup> *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, p. 105.

<sup>3</sup> See the account of his life (according to the *Kitābu 'l-Aghāni*) in *Le Diwan d'Amro'lkais*, edited with translation and notes by Baron MacGuckin de Slane (Paris, 1837), pp. 1-51; and in *Amrilkais, der Dichter und König* by Friedrich Rückert (Stuttgart and Tübingen, 1843).

reached him he cried, "My father wasted my youth, and now that I am old he has laid upon me the burden of blood-revenge. Wine to-day, business to-morrow!" Seven nights he continued the carouse; then he swore not to eat flesh, nor drink wine, nor use ointment, nor touch woman, nor wash his head until his vengeance was accomplished. In the valley of Tabála, north of Najrán, there was an idol called Dhu 'l-Khalasa much revered by the heathen Arabs. Imru'u 'l-Qays visited this oracle and consulted it in the ordinary way, by drawing one of three arrows entitled 'the Commanding,' 'the Forbidding,' and 'the Waiting.' He drew the second, whereupon he broke the arrows and dashed them on the face of the idol, exclaiming with a gross imprecation, "If *thy* father had been slain, thou would'st not have hindered me!"

Imru'u 'l-Qays is almost universally reckoned the greatest of the Pre-islamic poets. Muḥammad described him as 'their leader to Hell-fire,' while the Caliphs 'Umar and 'Alī, *odium theologicum* notwithstanding, extolled his genius and originality.<sup>1</sup> Coming to the *Mu'allaqā* itself, European critics have vied with each other in praising its exquisite diction and splendid images, the sweet flow of the verse, the charm and variety of the painting, and, above all, the feeling by which it is inspired of the joy and glory of youth. The passage translated below is taken from the first half of the poem, in which love is the prevailing theme :—<sup>2</sup>

"Once, on the hill, she mocked at me and swore,  
'This hour I leave thee to return no more.'

<sup>1</sup> That he was not, however, the inventor of the Arabian *qaṣīda* as described above (p. 76 sqq.) appears from the fact that he mentions in one of his verses a certain Ibn Ḥumām or Ibn Khidhām who introduced, or at least made fashionable, the prelude with which almost every ode begins: a lament over the deserted camping-ground (Ibn Qutayba, *K. al-Shi'r wa-l-Shu'ard*, p. 52).

<sup>2</sup> The following lines are translated from Arnold's edition of the *Mu'allaqāt* (Leipsic, 1850), p. 9 sqq., vv. 18-35.

Soft ! if farewell is planted in thy mind,  
 Yet spare me, Fâtîma, disdain unkind.  
 Because my passion slays me, wilt thou part ?  
 Because thy wish is law unto mine heart ?  
 Nay, if thou so mislikest aught in me,  
 Shake loose my robe and let it fall down free.  
 But ah, the deadly pair, thy streaming eyes !  
 They pierce a heart that all in ruin lies.

How many a noble tent hath oped its treasure  
 To me, and I have ta'en my fill of pleasure,  
 Passing the warders who with eager speed  
 Had slain me, if they might but hush the deed,  
 What time in heaven the Pleiades unfold  
 A belt of orient gems distinct with gold.  
 I entered. By the curtain there stood she,  
 Clad lightly as for sleep, and looked on me.  
 'By God,' she cried, 'what reck's thee of the cost ?  
 I see thine ancient madness is not lost.'  
 I led her forth—she trailing as we go  
 Her brodered skirt, lest any footprint show—  
 Until beyond the tents the valley sank  
 With curving dunes and many a piled bank.  
 Then with both hands I drew her head to mine,  
 And lovingly the damsel did incline  
 Her slender waist and legs more plump than fine ;—  
 A graceful figure, a complexion bright,  
 A bosom like a mirror in the light ;  
 A white pale virgin pearl such lustre keeps,  
 Fed with clear water in untrodden deeps.  
 Now she bends half away : two cheeks appear,  
 And such an eye as marks the frightened deer  
 Beside her fawn ; and lo, the shapely neck  
 Not bare of ornament, else without a fleck ;  
 While from her shoulders in profusion fair,  
 Like clusters on the palm, hangs down her coal-dark hair."

In strange contrast with this tender and delicate idyll are the wild, hard verses almost immediately following, in which the poet roaming through the barren waste hears the howl of a starved wolf and hails him as a comrade:—



"Each one of us what thing he finds devours :  
Lean is the wretch whose living is like ours." \*

The noble qualities of his horse and its prowess in the chase are described, and the poem ends with a magnificent picture of a thunder-storm among the hills of Najd.)

Tarafa b. al-'Abd was a member of the great tribe of Bakr. The particular clan to which he belonged was settled in

Baḥrayn on the Persian Gulf. He early developed  
Tarafa.a talent for satire, which he exercised upon friend and foe indifferently; and after he had squandered his patrimony in dissolute pleasures, his family chased him away as though he were 'a mangy camel.' At length a reconciliation was effected. He promised to mend his ways, returned to his people, and took part, it is said, in the War of Basūs. In a little while his means were dissipated once more and he was reduced to tend his brother's herds. His *Mu'allāqa* composed at this time won for him the favour of a rich kinsman and restored him to temporary independence. On the conclusion of peace between Bakr and Taghlib the youthful poet turned his eyes in the direction of Hira, where 'Amr b. Hind had lately succeeded to the throne (554 A.D.). He was well received by the king, who attached him, along with his uncle, the poet Mutalammis, to the service of the heir-apparent. But Tarafa's bitter tongue was destined to cost him dear. Fatigued and disgusted by the rigid ceremony of the court, he improvised a satire in which he said—

"Would that we had instead of 'Amr  
A milch-ewe bleating round our tent!"

Shortly afterwards he happened to be seated at table opposite the king's sister. Struck with her beauty, he exclaimed—

\* The native commentators are probably right in attributing this and the three preceding verses (48-51 in Arnold's edition) to the brigand-poet, Ta'abbata Sharr<sup>as</sup>.

"Behold, she has come back to me,  
 My fair gazelle whose ear-rings shine;  
 Had not the king been sitting here,  
 I would have pressed her lips to mine!"

Amr b. Hind was a man of violent and implacable temper. Tarafa's satire had already been reported to him, and this new impertinence added fuel to his wrath. Sending for Tarafa and Mutalammis, he granted them leave to visit their homes, and gave to each of them a sealed letter addressed to the governor of Bahrayn. When they had passed outside the city the suspicions of Mutalammis were aroused. As neither he nor his companion could read, he handed his own letter to a boy of Hira<sup>1</sup> and learned that it contained orders to bury him alive. Thereupon he flung the treacherous missive into the stream and implored Tarafa to do likewise. Tarafa refused to break the royal seal. He continued his journey to Bahrayn, where he was thrown into prison and executed.

Thus perished miserably in the flower of his youth—according to some accounts he was not yet twenty—the passionate and eloquent Tarafa. In his *Mu'allaga* he has drawn a spirited portrait of himself. The most striking feature of the poem, apart from a long and, to us who are not Bedouins, painfully tedious description of the camel, is its insistence on sensual enjoyment as the sole business of life:—

"Canst thou make me immortal, O thou that blamest me so  
 For haunting the battle and loving the pleasures that fly?  
 If thou hast not the power to ward me from Death, let me go  
 To meet him and scatter the wealth in my hand, ere I die.

Save only for three things in which noble youth take delight,  
 I care not how soon rises o'er me the coronach loud:  
 Wine that foams when the water is poured on it, ruddy, not  
 bright,  
 Dark wine that I quaff stol'n away from the cavilling crowd;

<sup>1</sup> We have already (p. 39) referred to the culture of the Christian Arabs of Hira.

"And second, my charge at the cry of distress on a steed  
 Bow-legged like the wolf you have startled when thirsty he  
 cowers ;  
 And third, the day-long with a lass in her tent of goat's hair  
 To hear the wild rain and beguile of their slowness the  
 hours."<sup>1</sup>

Keeping, as far as possible, the chronological order, we have now to mention two *Mu'allaqas* which, though not directly related to each other,<sup>2</sup> are of the same period—the reign of 'Amr b. Hind, King of Hira (554–568 A.D.). Moreover, their strong mutual resemblance and their difference from the other *Mu'allaqas*, especially from typical *qasidas* like those of 'Antara and Labid, is a further reason for linking them together. Their distinguishing mark is the abnormal space devoted to the main subject, which leaves little room for the subsidiary motives.

'Amr b. Kulthūm belonged to the tribe of Taghlib. His mother was Laylā, a daughter of the famous poet and warrior Muhallil. That she was a woman of heroic mould appears from the following anecdote, which records a deed of prompt vengeance on the part of 'Amr that gave rise to the proverb, "Bolder in onset than 'Amr b. Kulthūm"<sup>3</sup> :—

One day 'Amr. b. Hind, the King of Hira, said to his boon-companions, "Do ye know any Arab whose mother would disdain to serve mine?" They answered, "Yes, the mother of 'Amr b.

<sup>1</sup> Vv. 54–59 (Lyall) ; 56–61 (Arnold).

<sup>2</sup> See Nöldeke, *Fünf Mu'allaqāt*, i, p. 51 seq. According to the traditional version (*Aghāni*, ix, 179), a band of Taghlibites went raiding, lost their way in the desert, and perished of thirst, having been refused water by a sept of the Banū Bakr. Thereupon Taghlib appealed to King 'Amr to enforce payment of the blood-money which they claimed, and chose 'Amr b. Kulthūm to plead their cause at Hira. So 'Amr recited his *Mu'allaqa* before the king, and was answered by Hārith on behalf of Bakr.

<sup>3</sup> Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. ii, p. 233.



Kulthúm." "Why so?" asked the king. "Because," said they, "her father is Muhalhil b. Rabí'a and her uncle is Kulayb b. Wá'il, the most puissant of the Arabs, and her husband is Kulthúm b. Málik, the knightliest, and her son is 'Amr, the chieftain of his tribe." Then the king sent to 'Amr b. Kulthúm, inviting him to pay a visit to himself, and asking him to bring his mother, Laylá, to visit his own mother, Hind. So 'Amr came to Híra with some men of Taghlib, and Laylá came attended by a number of their women; and while the king entertained 'Amr and his friends in a pavilion which he had caused to be erected between Híra and the Euphrates, Laylá found quarters with Hind in a tent adjoining. Now, the king had ordered his mother, as soon as he should call for dessert, to dismiss the servants, and cause Laylá to wait upon her. At the pre-arranged signal she desired to be left alone with her guest, and said, "O Laylá, hand me that dish." Laylá answered, "Let those who want anything rise up and serve themselves." Hind repeated her demand, and would take no denial. "O shame!" cried Laylá. "Help! Taghlib, help!" When 'Amr heard his mother's cry the blood flew to his cheeks. He seized a sword hanging on the wall of the pavilion—the only weapon there—and with a single blow smote the king dead.<sup>1</sup>

'Amr's *Mu'allāqa* is the work of a man who united in himself the ideal qualities of manhood as these were understood by a race which has never failed to value, even too highly, the display of self-reliant action and decisive energy. And if in 'Amr's poem these virtues are displayed with an exaggerated boastfulness which offends our sense of decency and proper reserve, it would be a grave error to conclude that all this sound and fury signifies nothing. The Bedouin poet deems it his bounden duty to glorify to the utmost himself, his family, and his tribe; the Bedouin warrior is never tired of proclaiming his unshakable valour and recounting his brilliant feats of arms: he hurls menaces and vaunts in the same breath, but it does not follow that he is a *Miles Gloriosus*. 'Amr certainly was not: his *Mu'allāqa* leaves a vivid impression of conscious and exultant strength. The first eight verses seem

<sup>1</sup> *Aghāni*, ix, 182.

to have been added to the poem at a very early date, for out of them arose the legend that 'Amr drank himself to death with unmixed wine. It is likely that they were included in the original collection of the *Mu'allaqât*, and they are worth translating for their own sake :—

"Up, maiden ! Fetch the morning-drink and spare not  
 The wine of Andarín,  
 Clear wine that takes a saffron hue when water  
 Is mingled warm therein.  
 The lover tasting it forgets his passion,  
 His heart is eased of pain ;  
 The stingy miser, as he lifts the goblet,  
 Regardeth not his gain."

Pass round from left to right ! Why let'st thou, maiden,  
 Me and my comrades thirst ?  
 Yet am I, whom thou wilt not serve this morning,  
 Of us three not the worst !  
 Many a cup in Baalbec and Damascus  
 And Qásirín I drained,  
 Howbeit we, ordained to death, shall one day  
 Meet death, to us ordained."<sup>1</sup>

In the next passage he describes his grief at the departure of his beloved, whom he sees in imagination arriving at her journey's end in distant Yamáma :—

"And oh, my love and yearning when at nightfall  
 I saw her camels haste,  
 Until sharp peaks uptowered like serried sword-blades,  
 And me Yamáma faced !  
 Such grief no mother-camel feels, bemoaning  
 Her young one lost, nor she,  
 The grey-haired woman whose hard fate hath left her  
 Of nine sons graves thrice three."<sup>2</sup>

Now the poet turns abruptly to his main theme. He

<sup>1</sup> Vv. 1-8 (Arnold) ; in Lyall's edition the penultimate verse is omitted.

<sup>2</sup> Vv. 15-18 (Lyall) ; 19-22 (Arnold).

addresses the King of Hira, 'Amr b. Hind, in terms of defiance, and warns the foes of Taghlib that they will meet more than their match :—

" Father of Hind,<sup>1</sup> take heed and ere thou movest  
 Rashly against us, learn  
 That still our banners go down white to battle  
 And home blood-red return.  
 And many a chief bediademed, the champion  
 Of the outlaws of the land,  
 Have we o'erthrown and stripped him, while around him  
 Fast-reined the horses stand.  
 Our neighbours lopped like thorn-trees, snarls in terror  
 Of us the demon-hound ;<sup>2</sup>  
 Never we try our hand-mill on the foemen  
 But surely they are ground.  
 We are the heirs of glory, all Ma'add knows,<sup>3</sup>  
 Our lances it defend,  
 And when the tent-pole tumbles in the foray,  
 Trust us to save our friend !<sup>4</sup>

O 'Amr, what mean'st thou ? Are we, we of Taghlib,  
 Thy princeling's retinue ?  
 O 'Amr, what mean'st thou, rating us and hearkening  
 To tale-bearers untrue ?  
 O 'Amr, ere thee full many a time our spear-shaft  
 Has baffled foes to bow ;<sup>5</sup>  
 Nipped in the vice it kicks like a wild camel  
 That will no touch allow—  
 Like a wild camel, so it creaks in bending  
 And splits the bender's brow !"<sup>6</sup>

The *Mu'allāqa* ends with a eulogy, superb in its extravagance, of the poet's tribe :—

<sup>1</sup> The Arabs use the term *kunya* to denote this familiar style of address in which a person is called, not by his own name, but 'father of So-and-so' (either a son or, as in the present instance, a daughter).

<sup>2</sup> *I.e.*, even the *jinn* (genies) stand in awe of us.

<sup>3</sup> Here Ma'add signifies the Arabs in general.

<sup>4</sup> Vv. 20-30 (Lyall), omitting vv. 22, 27, 28.

<sup>5</sup> This is a figurative way of saying that Taghlib has never been subdued.

<sup>6</sup> Vv. 46-51 (Lyall), omitting v. 48.



"Well wot, when our tents rise along their valleys,  
 The men of every clan  
 That we give death to them that durst attempt us,  
 To friends what food we can;  
 That staunchly we maintain a cause we cherish,  
 Camp where we choose to ride,  
 Nor will we aught of peace, when we are angered,  
 Till we be satisfied.  
 We keep our vassals safe and sound, but rebels  
 We soon force to their knees;  
 And if we reach a well, we drink pure water,  
 Others the muddy lees.  
 Ours is the earth and all thereon : when we strike,  
 There needs no second blow ;  
 Kings lay before the new-weaned boy of Taghlib  
 Their heads in homage low.)  
 We are called oppressors, being none, but shortly  
 A true name shall it be !  
 We have so filled the earth 'tis narrow for us,  
 And with our ships the sea !"

Less interesting is the *Mu'allāqa* of Hārith b. Hilliza of Bakr. Its inclusion among the *Mu'allāqāt* is probably due, as Nöldeke suggested, to the fact that Hammād, Hārith b. Hilliza himself a client of Bakr, wished to flatter his patrons by selecting a counterpart to the *Mu'allāqa* of 'Amr b. Kulthūm, which immortalised their great rivals, the Banú Taghlib. Hārith's poem, however, has some historical importance, as it throws light on feuds in Northern Arabia connected with the antagonism of the Roman and Persian Empires. Its purpose is to complain of unjust accusations made against the Banú Bakr by a certain group of the Banú Taghlib known as the Arāqim :—

\* *I.e.*, we will show our enemies that they cannot defy us with impunity. This verse, the 93rd in Lyall's edition, is omitted by Arnold.

\* Vv. 94-104 (Arnold), omitting vv. 100 and 101. If the last words are anything more than a poetic fiction, 'the sea' must refer to the River Euphrates.

"Our brothers the Aráqim let their tongues  
 Against us rail unmeasuredly.  
 The innocent with the guilty they confound :  
 Of guilt what boots it to be free ?  
 They brand us patrons of the vilest deed,  
 Our clients in each miscreant see."\*

A person whom Hárith does not name was 'blackening' the Banú Bakr before the King of Híra. The poet tells him not to imagine that his calumnies will have any lasting effect : often had Bakr been slandered by their foes, but (he finely adds) :—

"Maugre their hate we stand, by firm-based might  
 Exalted and by ancestry—  
 Might which ere now hath dazzled men's eyes : thence scorn  
 To yield and haughty spirit have we.  
 On us the Days beat as on mountain dark  
 That soars in cloudless majesty,  
 Compact against the hard calamitous shocks  
 And buffetings of Destiny."\*)

He appeals to the offenders not wantonly to break the peace which ended the War of Basús :—

"Leave folly and error ! If ye blind yourselves,  
 Just therein lies the malady.  
 Recall the oaths of Dhu 'l-Majáz<sup>3</sup> for which  
 Hostages gave security,  
 Lest force or guile should break them : can caprice  
 Annul the parchments utterly ?<sup>4</sup>

'Antara b. Shaddád, whose father belonged to the tribe of 'Abs, distinguished himself in the War of Dáhis.<sup>5</sup> In modern times it is not as a poet that he is chiefly remembered, but as a hero of romance—the Bedouin Achilles. Goddess-born, however, he could not be called by

\* Vv. 16-18.

\* Vv. 23-26.

<sup>3</sup> A place in the neighbourhood of Mecca.

<sup>4</sup> Vv. 40-42 (Lyall) ; 65-67 (Arnold).

<sup>5</sup> See 'Antarah, ein vorislamischer Dichter, by H. Thorbecke (Leipzig, 1867).

any stretch of imagination. His mother was a black slave, and he must often have been taunted with his African blood, which showed itself in a fiery courage that gained the respect of the pure-bred but generally less valorous Arabs. ['Antara loved his cousin 'Abla, and following the Arabian custom by which cousins have the first right to a girl's hand, he asked her in marriage. His suit was vain—the son of a slave mother being regarded as a slave unless acknowledged by his father—until on one occasion, while the 'Absites were hotly engaged with some raiders who had driven off their camels, 'Antara refused to join in the mêlée, saying, "A slave does not understand how to fight; his work is to milk the camels and bind their udders." "Charge!" cried his father, "thou art free." Though 'Antara uttered no idle boast when he sang—

"On one side nobly born and of the best  
Of 'Abs am I: my sword makes good the rest!"

his contemptuous references to 'jabbering barbarians,' and to 'slaves with their ears cut off, clad in sheepskins,' are characteristic of the man who had risen to eminence in spite of the stain on his scutcheon. He died at a great age in a foray against the neighbouring tribe of Ṭayyi'.] His *Mu'allāqa* is famous for its stirring battle-scenes, one of which is translated here:—

"Learn, Málík's daughter, how  
I rush into the fray,  
And how I draw back only  
At sharing of the prey.

I never quit the saddle,  
My strong steed nimbly bounds;  
Warrior after warrior  
Have covered him with wounds.

---

\* I have taken some liberties in this rendering, as the reader may see by referring to the verses (44 and 47-52 in Lyall's edition) on which it is based.



Full-armed against me stood  
 One feared of fighting men :  
 He fled not oversoon  
 Nor let himself be ta'en.

With straight hard-shafted spear  
 I dealt him in his side  
 A sudden thrust which opened  
 Two streaming gashes wide,

Two gashes whence outgurgled  
 His life-blood : at the sound  
 Night-roaming ravenous wolves  
 Flock eagerly around.

So with my doughty spear  
 I trussed his coat of mail—  
 For truly, when the spear strikes,  
 The noblest man is frail—

And left him low to banquet  
 The wild beasts gathering there ;  
 They have torn off his fingers,  
 His wrist and fingers fair !”

While ‘Antara’s poem belongs to the final stages of the War of Dāḥis, the *Mu‘allāqa* of his contemporary, Zuhayr b.

Zuhayr. Abí Sulmá, of the tribe of Muzayna, celebrates an act of private munificence which brought about the conclusion of peace. By the self-sacrificing intervention of two chiefs of Dhubyán, Harim b. Sinán and Ḥārith b. ‘Awf, the whole sum of blood-money to which the ‘Absites were entitled on account of the greater number of those who had fallen on their side, was paid over to them. Such an example of generous and disinterested patriotism—for Harim and Ḥārith had shed no blood themselves—was a fit subject for one of whom it was said that he never praised men but as they deserved :—

Noble pair of Ghayṣ ibn Murra,<sup>1</sup> well ye laboured to restore  
Ties of kindred hewn asunder by the bloody strokes of war.  
Witness now mine oath the ancient House in Mecca's hallowed  
bound,<sup>2</sup>

Which its builders of Quraysh and Jurhum solemnly went  
round,<sup>3</sup>

That in hard or easy issue never wanting were ye found !

[ Peace ye gave to 'Abs and Dhubyān when each fell by other's  
hand

And the evil fumes they pestled up between them filled the  
land." <sup>4</sup> ]

At the end of his panegyric the poet, turning to the lately  
reconciled tribesmen and their confederates, earnestly warns  
them against nursing thoughts of vengeance :—

" Will ye hide from God the guilt ye dare not unto Him dis-  
close ?

Verily, what thing soever ye would hide from God, He knows.  
Either it is laid up meantime in a scroll and treasured there  
For the day of retribution, or avenged all unaware.<sup>5</sup>

War ye have known and war have tasted: not by hearsay are  
ye wise.

[ Raise no more the hideous monster ! If ye let her raven, she  
cries

Ravenously for blood and crushes, like a mill-stone, all below,  
And from her twin-conceiving womb she brings forth woe on  
woe." <sup>6</sup> ]

After a somewhat obscure passage concerning the lawless  
deeds of a certain Ḥusayn b. Ḍamḍam, which had well-nigh

<sup>1</sup> Ghayṣ b. Murra was a descendant of Dhubyān and the ancestor of  
Harim and Hārith.

<sup>2</sup> The Ka'ba.

<sup>3</sup> This refers to the religious circumambulation (*tawāf*).

<sup>4</sup> Vv. 16-19 (Lyall).

<sup>5</sup> There is no reason to doubt the genuineness of this passage, which  
affords evidence of the diffusion of Jewish and Christian ideas in pagan  
Arabia. Ibn Qutayba observes that these verses indicate the poet's belief  
in the Resurrection (*K. al-Shi'r wa-l-Shu'arā*, p. 58, l. 12).

<sup>6</sup> Vv. 27-31.

caused a fresh outbreak of hostilities, Zuhayr proceeds, with a natural and touching allusion to his venerable age, to enforce the lessons of conduct and morality suggested by the situation :—

“ I am weary of life's burden : well a man may weary be  
 After eighty years, and this much now is manifest to me :  
 Death is like a night-blind camel stumbling on :—the smitten  
     die  
 But the others age and wax in weakness whom he passes by.  
 He that often deals with folk in unkind fashion, underneath  
 They will trample him and make him feel the sharpness of  
     their teeth.  
 He that hath enough and over and is niggard with his self  
 Will be hated of his people and left free to praise himself.  
 He alone who with fair actions ever fortifies his fame  
 Wins it fully : blame will find him out unless he shrinks from  
     blame.  
 He that for his cistern's guarding trusts not in his own stout  
     arm  
 Sees it ruined : he must harm his foe or he must suffer harm.  
 He that fears the bridge of Death across it finally is driven,  
 Though he span as with a ladder all the space 'twixt earth and  
     heaven.  
 He that will not take the lance's butt-end while he has the  
     chance  
 Must thereafter be contented with the spike-end of the lance.  
 He that keeps his word is blamed not ; he whose heart re-  
     paireth straight  
 To the sanctuary of duty never needs to hesitate.  
 He that hies abroad to strangers doth account his friends his  
     foes ;  
 He that honours not himself lacks honour wheresoe'er he goes.  
 Be a man's true nature what it will, that nature is revealed  
 To his neighbours, let him fancy as he may that 'tis con-  
     cealed.” \*

The ripe sententious wisdom and moral earnestness of Zuhayr's poetry are in keeping with what has been said

\* The order of these verses in Lyall's edition is as follows : 56, 57, 54, 50, 55, 53, 49, 47, 48, 52, 58.



above concerning his religious ideas and, from another point of view, with the tradition that he used to compose a *qaṣīda* in four months, correct it for four months, submit it to the poets of his acquaintance during a like period, and not make it public until a year had expired.

Of his life there is little to tell. Probably he died before Islam, though it is related that when he was a centenarian he met the Prophet, who cried out on seeing him, "O God, preserve me from his demon!"<sup>1</sup> The poetical gifts which he inherited from his uncle Bashāma he bequeathed to his son Ka'b, author of the famous ode, *Bānat Su'ād*.

Labīd b. Rabī'a, of the Banū 'Āmir b. Ṣaṣ'a, was born in the latter half of the sixth century, and is said to have died soon after Mu'āwiyā's accession to the Caliphate, which

Labīd

took place in A.D. 661. He is thus the youngest of the Seven Poets. On accepting Islam he abjured poetry, saying, "God has given me the Koran in exchange for it." Like Zuhayr, he had, even in his heathen days, a strong vein of religious feeling, as is shown by many passages in his *Diwān*.

Labīd was a true Bedouin, and his *Mu'allāqa*, with its charmingly fresh pictures of desert life and scenery, must be considered one of the finest examples of the Pre-Islamic *qaṣīda* that have come down to us. The poet owes something to his predecessors, but the greater part seems to be drawn from his own observation. [He begins in the conventional manner by describing the almost unrecognisable vestiges of the camping-ground of the clan to which his mistress belonged :—]

"Waste lies the land where once alighted and did wone  
The people of Miná : Rijām and Ghawl are lone.

<sup>1</sup> Reference has been made above to the old Arabian belief that poets owed their inspiration to the *jinn* (genii), who are sometimes called *shayḍīn* (satans). See Goldziher, *Abhand. zur arab. Philologie*, Part I, pp. 1-14.

The camp in Rayyân's vale is marked by relics dim  
 Like weather-beaten script engraved on ancient stone.  
 Over this ruined scene, since it was desolate,  
 Whole years with secular and sacred months had flown.  
 In spring 'twas blest by showers 'neath starry influence shed,  
 And thunder-clouds bestowed a scant or copious boon.  
 Pale herbs had shot up, ostriches on either slope  
 Their chicks had gotten and gazelles their young had thrown;  
 And large-eyed wild-cows there beside the new-born calves  
 Reclined, while round them formed a troop the calves half-  
 grown.

Torrents of rain had swept the dusty ruins bare,  
 Until, as writing freshly characterized, they shone,  
 Or like to curved tattoo-lines on a woman's arm,  
 With soot besprinkled so that every line is shown.  
 I stopped and asked, but what avails it that we ask  
 Dumb changeless things that speak a language all unknown?"

After lamenting the departure of his beloved the poet bids himself think no more about her: he will ride swiftly away from the spot. Naturally, he must praise his camel, and he introduces by way of comparison two wonderful pictures of animal life. In the former the onager is described racing at full speed over the backs of the hills when thirst and hunger drive him with his mate far from the barren solitudes into which they usually retire. [The second paints a wild-cow, whose young calf has been devoured by wolves, sleeping among the sand-dunes through a night of incessant rain. At daybreak "her feet glide over the firm wet soil." For a whole week she runs to and fro, anxiously seeking her calf, when suddenly she hears the sound of hunters approaching and makes off in alarm. Being unable to get within bowshot, the hunters loose their dogs, but she turns desperately upon them, wounding one with her needle-like horn and killing another.]

Then, once more addressing his beloved, the poet speaks complacently of his share in the feasting and revelling, on which a noble Arab plumes himself hardly less than on his bravery:—

\* Vv. 1-10 (Lyall), omitting v. 5.



[ " Know'st thou not, O Nawár, that I am wont to tie  
 The cords of love, yet also snap them without fear ?  
 That I abandon places when I like them not,  
 Unless Death chain the soul and straiten her career ?  
 Nay, surely, but thou know'st not I have passed in talk  
 Many a cool night of pleasure and convivial cheer,  
 And often to a booth, above which hung for sign  
 A banner, have resorted when old wine was dear.  
 For no light price I purchased many a dusky skin  
 Or black clay jar, and broached it that the juice ran clear ;  
 And many a song of shrill-voiced singing-girl I paid,  
 And her whose fingers made sweet music to mine ear." ]

Continuing, he boasts of dangerous service as a spy in the enemy's country, when he watched all day on the top of a steep crag ; of his fearless demeanour and dignified assertion of his rights in an assembly at Híra, to which he came as a delegate, and of his liberality to the poor. The closing verses are devoted, in accordance with custom, to matters of immediate interest and to a panegyric on the virtues of the poet's kin.

Besides the authors of the *Mu'allaqát* three poets may be mentioned, of whom the two first-named are universally acknowledged to rank with the greatest that Arabia has produced—Nábigha, A'shá, and 'Alqama.

Nábigha <sup>2</sup>—his proper name is Ziyád b. Mu'áwiya, of the tribe Dhubyán—lived at the courts of Ghassán and Híra during the latter half of the century before Islam. His chief patron was King Nu'mán b. Mundhir Abú Qábús of Híra. For many years he basked in the sunshine of royal favour, enjoying every privilege that Nu'mán bestowed on his most intimate friends. The occasion of their falling out is differently related. According to one story, the poet described the charms of

<sup>1</sup> Vv. 55-60 (Lyall).

<sup>2</sup> The term *nábigha* is applied to a poet whose genius is slow in declaring itself but at last " jets forth vigorously and abundantly " (*nabagha*).



Queen Mutajarrida, which Nu'mán had asked him to celebrate, with such charm and liveliness as to excite her husband's suspicion; but it is said—and Nábigha's own words make it probable—that his enemies denounced him as the author of a scurrilous satire against Nu'mán which had been forged by themselves. At any rate he had no choice but to quit Híra with all speed, and ere long we find him in Ghassán, welcomed and honoured, as the panegyrist of King 'Amr b. Hārith and the noble house of Jafna. But his heart was in Híra still. Deeply wounded by the calumnies of which he was the victim, he never ceased to affirm his innocence and to lament the misery of exile. The following poem, which he addressed to Nu'mán, is at once a justification and an appeal for mercy<sup>1</sup> :—

"They brought me word, O King, thou blamedst me;  
 For this am I o'erwhelmed with grief and care.  
 I passed a sick man's night: the nurses seemed,  
 Spreading my couch, to have heaped up briars there.  
 Now (lest thou cherish in thy mind a doubt)  
 Invoking our last refuge, God, I swear  
 That he, whoever told thee I was false,  
 Is the more lying and faithless of the pair.  
 Exiled perforce, I found a strip of land  
 Where I could live and safely take the air:  
 Kings made me arbiter of their possessions,  
 And called me to their side and spoke me fair—  
 Even as thou dost grace thy favourites  
 Nor deem'st a fault the gratitude they bear.<sup>2</sup>  
 O leave thine anger! Else, in view of men  
 A mangy camel, smeared with pitch, I were.  
 Seest thou not God hath given thee eminence  
 Before which monarchs tremble and despair?

<sup>1</sup> *Díwān*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 83; Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 96.

<sup>2</sup> He means to say that Nu'mán has no reason to feel aggrieved because he (Nábigha) is grateful to the Ghassánids for their munificent patronage; since Nu'mán does not consider that his own favourites, in showing gratitude to himself, are thereby guilty of treachery towards their former patrons.

All other kings are stars and thou a sun :  
 When the sun rises, lo, the heavens are bare !  
 A friend in trouble thou wilt not forsake ;  
 I may have sinned : in sinning all men share.  
 If I am wronged, thou hast but wronged a slave,  
 And if thou spar'st, 'tis like thyself to spare."

It is pleasant to record that Nábigha was finally reconciled to the prince whom he loved, and that Hīra again became his home. The date of his death is unknown, but it certainly took place before Islam was promulgated. Had the opportunity been granted to him he might have died a Moslem : he calls himself 'a religious man' (*dhū ummat<sup>m</sup>*),<sup>2</sup> and although the tradition that he was actually a Christian lacks authority, his long residence in Syria and 'Irāq must have made him acquainted with the externals of Christianity and with some, at least, of its leading ideas.

The grave and earnest tone characteristic of Nábigha's poetry seldom prevails in that of his younger contemporary, Maymún

A'shā.

b. Qays, who is generally known by his surname, al-A'shā—that is, 'the man of weak sight.' A professional troubadour, he roamed from one end of Arabia to the other, harp in hand, singing the praises of those who rewarded him; and such was his fame as a satirist that few ventured to withhold the bounty which he asked. By common consent he stands in the very first rank of Arabian poets. Abu 'l-Faraj, the author of the *Kitābu 'l-Aghāni*, declares him to be superior to all the rest, adding, however, "this opinion is not held unanimously as regards A'shā or any other." His

<sup>1</sup> *Dīwadn*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 76, ii, 21. In another place (p. 81, vi, 6) he says, addressing his beloved :—

"Wadd give thee greeting ! for dalliance with women is lawful to me  
 no more,

Since Religion has become a serious matter."

Wadd was a god worshipped by the pagan Arabs. Derenbourg's text has *rabbī*, i.e., Allah, but see Nöldeke's remarks in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. xli (1887), p. 708.



wandering life brought him into contact with every kind of culture then existing in Arabia. Although he was not an avowed Christian, his poetry shows to what an extent he was influenced by the Bishops of Najrán, with whom he was intimately connected, and by the Christian merchants of Híra who sold him their wine. He did not rise above the pagan level of morality.

[It is related that he set out to visit Muḥammad for the purpose of reciting to him an ode which he had composed in his honour. When the Quraysh heard of this, they feared lest their adversary's reputation should be increased by the panegyric of a bard so famous and popular. Accordingly, they intercepted him on his way, and asked whither he was bound. "To your kinsman," said he, "that I may accept Islam." "He will forbid and make unlawful to thee certain practices of which thou art fond." "What are these?" said A'shá. "Fornication," said Abú Sufyán. "I have not abandoned it," he replied, "but it has abandoned me. What else?" "Gambling." "Perhaps I shall obtain from him something to compensate me for the loss of gambling. What else?" "Usury." "I have never borrowed nor lent. What else?" "Wine." "Oh, in that case I will drink the water I have left stored at al-Míhrás." Seeing that A'shá was not to be deterred, Abú Sufyán offered him a hundred camels on condition that he should return to his home in Yamáma and await the issue of the struggle between Muḥammad and the Quraysh. "I agree," said A'shá. "O ye Quraysh," cried Abú Sufyán, "this is A'shá, and by God, if he becomes a follower of Muḥammad, he will inflame the Arabs against you by his poetry. Collect, therefore, a hundred camels for him."\*]

A'shá excels in the description of wine and wine-parties. [One who visited Manfúḥa in Yamáma, where the poet was buried, relates that revellers used to meet at his grave and pour out beside it the last drops that remained in their cups.] As an example of his style in this *genre* I translate a few lines from the most celebrated of his poems, which is included by some critics among the *Mu'allagát* :—

\* *Aghání*, viii, 85, last line-86, l. 10.



"Many a time I hastened early to the tavern—while there ran  
 At my heels a ready cook, a nimble, active serving-man—  
 'Midst a gallant troop, like Indian scimitars, of mettle high;  
 Well they know that every mortal, shod and bare alike, must  
 die.  
 Propped at ease I greet them gaily, them with myrtle-boughs I  
 greet,  
 Pass among them wine that gushes from the jar's mouth bitter-  
 sweet.  
 Emptying goblet after goblet—but the source may no man  
 drain—  
 Never cease they from carousing save to cry, 'Fill up again!'  
 Briskly runs the page to serve them: on his ears hang pearls:  
 below,  
 Tight the girdle draws his doublet as he bustles to and fro.  
 'Twas the harp, thou mightest fancy, waked the lute's respon-  
 sive note,  
 When the loose-robed chantress touched it and sang shrill with  
 quavering throat.  
 Here and there among the party damsels fair superbly glide:  
 Each her long white skirt lets trail and swings a wine-skin at  
 her side."\*)

Very little is known of the life of 'Alqama b. 'Abada, who  
 was surnamed *al-Fahl* (the Stallion). His most famous poem  
 is that which he addressed to the Ghassánid Hārith  
 'Alqama  
 al-A'raj after the Battle of Ḥalima, imploring him  
 to set free some prisoners of Tamīm—the poet's tribe—  
 among whom was his own brother or nephew, Shás. The  
 following lines have almost become proverbial:—

"Of women do ye ask me? I can spy  
 Their ailments with a shrewd physician's eye.  
 The man whose head is grey or small his needs  
 No favour wins of them but mocking words.  
 Are riches known, to riches they aspire,  
 And youthful bloom is still their heart's desire."\*)

\* Lyall, *Ten Ancient Arabic Poems*, p. 146 seq., vv. 25-31.

\* Ahlwardt, *The Divans*, p. 106, vv. 8-10.

In view of these slighting verses it is proper to observe that the poetry of Arabian women of the Pre-Islamic period is distinctly masculine in character. Their songs are seldom of Love, but often of Death. Elegy (*rithá* or *marthiya*) was regarded as their special province. The oldest form of elegy appears in the verses chanted on the death of Ta'abbata Sharr<sup>a</sup> by his sister :—

"O the good knight ye left low at Rakhmán,  
Thábit son of Jábir son of Sufyán !  
He filled the cup for friends and ever slew his man."<sup>1</sup>

"As a rule the Arabian dirge is very simple. The poetess begins with a description of her grief, of the tears that she cannot quench, and then she shows how worthy to be deeply mourned was he whom death has taken away. He is described as a pattern of the two principal Arabian virtues, bravery and liberality, and the question is anxiously asked, 'Who will now make high resolves, overthrow the enemy, and in time of want feed the poor and entertain the stranger ?' If the hero of the dirge died a violent death we find in addition a burning lust of revenge, a thirst for the slayer's blood, expressed with an intensity of feeling of which only women are capable."<sup>2</sup>

Among Arabian women who have excelled in poetry the place of honour is due to Khansá—her real name was Tumaḍīr—who flourished in the last years before Islam. By far the most famous of her elegies are those in which she bewailed her valiant brothers, Mu'āwiya and Ṣakhr, both of whom were struck down by sword or spear. It is impossible to translate the poignant and vivid emotion, the energy of passion and noble simplicity of style which distinguish the poetry of Khansá, but here are a few verses :—

<sup>1</sup> *Ḥamāsa*, p. 382, l. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Nöldeke, *Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Poesie der alten Araber*, p. 152.

Death's messenger cried aloud the loss of the generous one,  
So loud cried he, by my life, that far he was heard and wide.  
Then rose I, and scarce my soul could follow to meet the  
news,

For anguish and sore dismay and horror that Şakhr had died.  
In my misery and despair I seemed as a drunken man,  
Upstanding awhile—then soon his tottering limbs subside.”\*)

*Yudhakkirunî ŷulū'u 'l-shamsi Şakhr<sup>m</sup>  
wa-adhkuruhū likulli ghurūbi shamsi.*

“Sunrise awakes in me the sad remembrance  
Of Şakhr, and I recall him at every sunset.”)

To the poets who have been enumerated many might be added—e.g., Ḥassán b. Thábit, who was ‘retained’ by the Prophet and did useful work on his behalf; Ka‘b b. Zuhayr, author of the famous panegyric on Muḥammad beginning “*Bánat Su‘ád*” (Su‘ád has departed); Mutammim b. Nuwayra, who, like Khansá, mourned the loss of a brother; Abú Mihjan, the singer or wine, whose devotion to the forbidden beverage was punished by the Caliph ‘Umar with imprisonment and exile; and al-Ḥuṭay’a (the Dwarf), who was unrivalled in satire. All these belonged to the class of *Mukhaḍramūn*, i.e., they were born in the Pagan Age but died, if not Moslems, at any rate after the proclamation of Islam.

The grammarians of Baṣra and Kúfa, by whom the remains of ancient Arabian poetry were rescued from oblivion, arranged and collected their material according to various principles. Either the poems of an individual or those of a number of individuals belonging to the same tribe or class were brought together—such a collection was called *Díwān*, plural *Dawáwīn*; or, again, the compiler edited a certain number of *qaṣīdas* chosen for their fame or

The last poets  
born in the Age  
of Paganism.

Collections of  
ancient poetry.

\* Nöldeke, *ibid.*, p. 175.



excellence or on other grounds, or he formed an anthology of shorter pieces or fragments, which were arranged under different heads according to their subject-matter.

Among *Diwāns* mention may be made of *The Diwāns of the Six Poets*, viz. Nābigha, 'Antara, Ṭarafa, Zuhayr, 'Alqama, and Imru'u 'l-Qays, edited with a full commentary by the Spanish philologist al-A'lam (†1083 A.D.) and published in 1870 by Ahlwardt; and of *The Poems of the Hudhaylites* (*Ash'aru 'l-Hudhaliyyin*) collected by al-Sukkarī (†888 A.D.), which have been published by Kosegarten and Wellhausen.

The chief Anthologies, taken in the order of their composition, are :—

1. *The Mu'allaqāt*, which is the title given to a collection of seven odes by Imru'u 'l-Qays, Ṭarafa, Zuhayr, Labīd, 'Antara, 'Amr b. Kulthūm, and Ḥārith b. Ḥilliza; <sup>Anthologies</sup> 1. *The Mu'allaqāt* to these two odes by Nābigha and A'shā are sometimes added. The compiler was probably Ḥammād al-Rāwiyā, a famous rhapsodist of Persian descent, who flourished under the Umayyads and died in the second half of the eighth century of our era. As the *Mu'allaqāt* have been discussed above, we may pass on directly to a much larger, though less celebrated, collection dating from the same period, viz. :—

2. *The Mufaḍḍaliyyāt*,<sup>1</sup> by which title it is generally known after its compiler, Mufaḍḍal al-Ḍabbī († circa 786 A.D.), who made it at the instance of the Caliph Maṣṣūr for the instruction of his son and successor, Maḥdī. <sup>2. The Mufaḍḍaliyyāt</sup> It comprises 128 odes and is extant in two recensions, that of Anbārī († 916 A.D.), which derives from Ibnu 'l-A'rābī, the stepson of Mufaḍḍal, and that of Marzūqī (†1030 A.D.). About a third of the *Mufaḍḍaliyyāt* was pub-

<sup>1</sup> The original title is *al-Mukhtārāt* (The Selected Odes) or *al-Ikhtiyārāt* (The Selections).

lished in 1885 by Thorbecke, and Sir Charles Lyall has recently edited the complete text with Arabic commentary and English translation and notes.<sup>1</sup>

All students of Arabian poetry are familiar with—

3. The *Ḥamāsa* of Abū Tammām Ḥabīb b. Aws, himself a distinguished poet, who flourished under the Caliphs Ma'mūn and Mu'taṣim, and died about 850 A.D. Towards the end of his life he visited 'Abdullāh b. Ṭāhir, the powerful governor of Khurāsān, who was virtually an independent sovereign. It was on this journey, as Ibn Khallikān relates, that Abū Tammām composed the *Ḥamāsa*; for on arriving at Hamadhān (Ecbatana) the winter had set in, and as the cold was excessively severe in that country, the snow blocked up the road and obliged him to stop and await the thaw. During his stay he resided with one of the most eminent men of the place, who possessed a library in which were some collections of poems composed by the Arabs of the desert and other authors. Having then sufficient leisure, he perused those works and selected from them the passages out of which he formed his *Ḥamāsa*.<sup>2</sup> The work is divided into ten sections of unequal length, the first, from which it received its name, occupying (together with the commentary) 360 pages in Freytag's edition, while the seventh and eighth require only thirteen pages between them. These sections or chapters bear the following titles:—

- I. The Chapter of Fortitude (*Bābu 'l-Ḥamāsa*).
- II. The Chapter of Dirges (*Bābu 'l-Marāthi*).
- III. The Chapter of Good Manners (*Bābu 'l-Adab*).
- IV. The Chapter of Love-Songs (*Bābu 'l-Nasīb*).
- V. The Chapter of Satire (*Bābu 'l-Hijā*).
- VI. The Chapter of Guests (Hospitality) and Panegyric (*Bābu 'l-Adyāf wa'l-Madīḥ*).

<sup>1</sup> Oxford, 1918-21. The Indexes of personal and place-names, poetical quotations, and selected words were prepared by Professor Bevan and published in 1924 in the E. J. W. Gibb Memorial Series.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Khallikān, ed. by Wüstenfeld, No. 350 = De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 51.

- VII. The Chapter of Descriptions (*Bābu 'l-Ṣifāt*).
- VIII. The Chapter of Travel and Repose (*Bābu 'l-Sayr wa-'l-Nu'ās*).
- IX. The Chapter of Facetiæ (*Bābu 'l-Mulāḥ*).
- X. The Chapter of Vituperation of Women (*Bābu Madhammat 'l-Nisā*).

The contents of the *Ḥamāsa* include short poems complete in themselves as well as passages extracted from longer poems; of the poets represented, some of whom belong to the Pre-Islamic and others to the early Islamic period, comparatively few are celebrated, while many are anonymous or only known by the verses attached to their names. If the high level of excellence attained by these obscure singers shows, on the one hand, that a natural genius for poetry was widely diffused and that the art was successfully cultivated among all ranks of Arabian society, we must not forget how much is due to the fine taste of Abū Tammām, who, as the commentator Tibrizī has remarked, "is a better poet in his *Ḥamāsa* than in his poetry."

4. The *Ḥamāsa* of Buḥturī († 897 A.D.), a younger contemporary of Abū Tammām, is inferior to its model.<sup>1</sup> However convenient from a practical standpoint, the division into a great number of sections, each illustrating a narrowly defined topic, seriously impairs the artistic value of the work; moreover, Buḥturī seems to have had a less catholic appreciation of the beauties of poetry—he admired, it is said, only what was in harmony with his own style and ideas.

5. The *Ḥamharatu Ash'ari 'l-'Arab*, a collection of forty-nine odes, was put together probably about 1000 A.D. by Abū Zayd Muḥammad al-Qurashī, of whom we find no mention elsewhere.

<sup>1</sup> See Nöldeke, *Beiträge*, p. 183 sqq. There would seem to be comparatively few poems of Pre-Islamic date in Buḥturī's anthology.



Apart from the *Dīwāns* and anthologies, numerous Pre-islamic verses are cited in biographical, philological, and other works, *e.g.*, the *Kitābu 'l-Aghāni* by Abu 'l-Faraj of Iṣfahān († 967 A.D.), the *Kitābu 'l-Amālī* by Abū 'Alī al-Qāfī († 967 A.D.), the *Kāmil* of Mubarrad († 898 A.D.), and the *Khizānatu 'l-Adab* of 'Abdu 'l-Qādir of Baghdād († 1682 A.D.).

We have seen that the oldest existing poems date from the beginning of the sixth century of our era, whereas the art of writing did not come into general use among the Arabs until some two hundred years afterwards.

The tradition  
of Pre-Islamic  
poetry.

Pre-islamic poetry, therefore, was preserved by oral tradition alone, and the question arises, How was this possible? What guarantee have we that songs living on men's lips for so long a period have retained their original form, even approximately? No doubt many verses, *e.g.*, those which glorified the poet's tribe or satirised their enemies, were constantly being recited by his kin, and in this way short occasional poems or fragments of longer ones might be perpetuated. Of whole *qaṣidas* like the *Mu'allaqāt*, however, none or very few would have reached us if their survival had depended solely on their popularity. What actually saved them in the first place was an institution resembling that of the Rhapsodists in Greece. (Every professed poet

The *Rāwī*.

had his *Rāwī* (reciter), who accompanied him everywhere, committed his poems to memory, and handed them down, as well as the circumstances connected with them, to others. The characters of poet and *rāwī* were often combined; thus Zuhayr was the *rāwī* of his step-father, Aws b. Ḥajar, while his own *rāwī* was al-Ḥuṭay'a. If the tradition of poetry was at first a labour of love, it afterwards became a lucrative business, and the *Rāwīs*, instead of being attached to individual poets, began to form an independent class, carrying in their memories a prodigious

stock of ancient verse and miscellaneous learning. It is related, for example, that Ḥammād once said to the Caliph Walīd b. Yazīd: "I can recite to you, for each letter of the alphabet, one hundred long poems rhyming in that letter, without taking into count the short pieces, and all that composed exclusively by poets who lived before the promulgation of Islamism." He commenced and continued until the Caliph, having grown fatigued, withdrew, after leaving a person in his place to verify the assertion and hear him to the last. In that sitting he recited two thousand nine hundred *qaṣīdas* by poets who flourished before Muḥammad. Walīd, on being informed of the fact, ordered him a present of one hundred thousand dirhems.<sup>1</sup> Thus, towards the end of the first century after the Hijra, *i.e.*, about 700 A.D., when the custom of *writing* poetry began, there was much of Pre-islamic origin still in circulation, although it is probable that far more had already been irretrievably lost. Numbers of *Rāwīs* perished in the wars, or passed away in the course of nature, without leaving any one to continue their tradition. New times had brought new interests and other ways of life. The great majority of Moslems had no sympathy whatever with the ancient poetry, which represented in their eyes the unregenerate spirit of heathendom. They wanted nothing beyond the Koran and the Hadīth. But for reasons which will be stated in another chapter the language of the Koran and the Hadīth was rapidly becoming obsolete as a spoken idiom outside of the Arabian peninsula: the 'perspicuous Arabic' on which Muḥammad prided himself had ceased to be fully intelligible to the Moslems settled in 'Irāq and Khurāsān, in Syria, and in Egypt. It was essential that the Sacred Text should be explained, and this necessity gave birth to the sciences of Grammar and Lexi-

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikān, ed. by Wüstenfeld, No. 204 = De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 470.



cography. The Philologists, or, as they have been aptly designated, the Humanists of Baṣra and Kúfa, where these studies were prosecuted with peculiar zeal, naturally found their best material in the Pre-Islamic poems—a well of Arabic undefiled. At first the ancient poetry merely formed a basis for philological research, but in process of time a literary enthusiasm was awakened. The surviving *Ráwís* were eagerly sought out and induced to yield up their stores, the compositions of famous poets were collected, arranged, and committed to writing, and as the demand increased, so did the supply.\*

In these circumstances a certain amount of error was inevitable. Apart from unconscious failings of memory, there can be no doubt that in many cases the *Ráwís* acted with intent to deceive. The temptation to father their own verses, or centos which they pieced together from sources known only to themselves, upon some poet of antiquity was all the stronger because they ran little risk of detection. In knowledge of poetry and in poetical talent they were generally far more than a match for the philologists, who seldom possessed any critical ability, but readily took whatever came to hand. The stories which are told of Ḥammád al-Ráwiya, clearly show how unscrupulous he was in his methods, though we have reason to suppose that he was not a typical example of his class. His contemporary, Mufaddal al-Dabbí, is reported to have said that the corruption which poetry suffered through Ḥammád could never be repaired, “for,” he added, “Ḥammád is a man skilled in the language and poesy of the Arabs and in the styles and ideas of the poets, and he is always making verses in imitation of some

\* Many interesting details concerning the tradition of Pre-Islamic poetry by the *Ráwís* and the Philologists will be found in Ahlwardt's *Bemerkungen ueber die Aechtheit der alten Arabischen Gedichte* (Greifswald, 1872), which has supplied materials for the present sketch.



one and introducing them into genuine compositions by the same author, so that the copy passes everywhere for part of the original, and cannot be distinguished from it except by critical scholars—and where are such to be found?"<sup>1</sup> This art

Khalaf  
al-Aḥmar.

of forgery was brought to perfection by Khalaf al-Aḥmar († about 800 A.D.), who learned it in the school of Ḥammād. If he really composed the famous *Lamiyya* ascribed to Shanfarā, his own poetical endowments must have been of the highest order. In his old age he repented and confessed that he was the author of several poems which the scholars of Baṣra and Kúfa had accepted as genuine, but they laughed him to scorn, saying, "What you said then seems to us more trustworthy than your present assertion."

Besides the corruptions due to the *Riwaṭs*, others have been accumulated by the philologists themselves. As the Koran and the Ḥadīth were, of course, spoken and afterwards written in the dialect of Quraysh, to whom Muḥammad belonged, this dialect was regarded as the classical standard;<sup>2</sup> consequently the variations therefrom which occurred in the ancient poems were, for the most part, 'emended' and harmonised with it. Many changes were made under the influence of Islam, e.g., 'Allah' was probably often substituted for the pagan goddess 'al-Lāt.' Moreover, the structure of the *qaṣida*, its disconnectedness and want of logical cohesion, favoured the omission and transposition of whole passages or single verses. All these modes of depravation might be illustrated in detail, but from what has been said the reader can judge for himself how far the poems, as they now stand, are likely to have retained the form in which they were first uttered to the wild Arabs of the Pre-Islamic Age.

<sup>1</sup> *Aghānī*, v, 172, l. 16 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> This view, however, is in accordance neither with the historical facts nor with the public opinion of the Pre-Islamic Arabs (see Nöldeke, *Die Semitischen Sprachen*, p. 47).

Religion had so little influence on the lives of the Pre-islamic Arabs that we cannot expect to find much trace of it in their poetry. They believed vaguely in a supreme God, Allah, and more definitely in his three daughters—al-Lát, Manát, and al-'Uzzá—who were venerated all over Arabia and whose intercession was graciously accepted by Allah. There were also numerous idols enjoying high favour while they continued to bring good luck to their worshippers. Of real piety the ordinary Bedouin knew nothing. He felt no call to pray to his gods, although he often found them convenient to swear by. He might invoke Allah in the hour of need, as a drowning man will clutch at a straw; but his faith in superstitious ceremonies was stronger. He did not take his religion too seriously. Its practical advantages he was quick to appreciate. Not to mention baser pleasures, it gave him rest and security during the four sacred months, in which war was forbidden, while the institution of the Meccan Pilgrimage enabled him to take part in a national fête. Commerce went hand in hand with religion.

The Fair of  
'Ukáz.

Great fairs were held, the most famous being that of 'Ukáz, which lasted for twenty days.

These fairs were in some sort the centre of old Arabian social, political, and literary life. It was the only occasion on which free and fearless intercourse was possible between the members of different clans.\*

Plenty of excitement was provided by poetical and oratorical displays—not by athletic sports, as in ancient Greece and modern England. Here rival poets declaimed their verses and submitted them to the judgment of an acknowledged master. Nowhere else had rising talents such an opportunity of gaining wide reputation: what 'Ukáz said to-day all Arabia would repeat to-morrow. At 'Ukáz, we are told, the youthful Muḥammad listened, as though spellbound, to

\* See Wellhausen, *Reste Arab. Heidentums* (2nd ed.), p. 88 seq.



the persuasive eloquence of Quss b. Sá'ida, Bishop of Najrán ; and he may have contrasted the discourse of the Christian preacher with the brilliant odes chanted by heathen bards.

[The Bedouin view of life was thoroughly hedonistic. Love, wine, gambling, hunting, the pleasures of song and romance, the brief, pointed, and elegant expression of wit and wisdom—these things he knew to be good. Beyond them he saw only the grave.

“Roast meat and wine : the swinging ride  
On a camel sure and tried,  
Which her master speeds amain  
O'er low dale and level plain :  
Women marble-white and fair  
Trailing gold-fringed raiment rare :  
Opulence, luxurious ease,  
With the lute's soft melodies—  
Such delights hath our brief span ;  
Time is Change, Time's fool is Man.  
Wealth or want, great store or small,  
All is one since Death's are all.”<sup>1</sup>

It would be a mistake to suppose that these men always, or even generally, passed their lives in the aimless pursuit of pleasure. Some goal they had—earthly, no doubt—such as the accumulation of wealth or the winning of glory or the fulfilment of blood-revenge. “*God forbid*,” says one, “*that I should die while a grievous longing, as it were a mountain, weighs on my breast!*”<sup>2</sup> A deeper chord is touched by Imru' u 'l-Qays : “*If I strove for a bare livelihood, scanty means would suffice me and I would seek no more. But I strive for lasting renown, and 'tis men like me that sometimes attain lasting renown. Never, while life endures, does a man reach the summit of his ambition or cease from toil.*”<sup>3</sup> ]

<sup>1</sup> *Hamása*, 506.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, 237.

<sup>3</sup> *Diwān* of Imru' u 'l-Qays, ed. by De Slane, p. 22 of the Arabic text, l. 17 sqq. = No. 52, ll. 57-59 (p. 154) in Ahlwardt's *Diwāns of the Six Poets*.



These are noble sentiments nobly expressed. Yet one hears the sigh of weariness, as if the speaker were struggling against the conviction that his cause is already lost, and would welcome the final stroke of destiny. It was a time of wild uproar and confusion. Tribal and family feuds filled the land, as Zuhayr says, with evil fumes. No wonder that earnest and thoughtful minds asked themselves—What worth has our life, what meaning? Whither does it lead? Such questions paganism could not answer, but Arabia in the century before Muḥammad was not wholly abandoned to paganism. [Jewish colonists had long been settled in the Hījāz. Probably the earliest settlements date from the conquest of Palestine by Titus or Hadrian.] In

Judaism and  
Christianity in  
Arabia.

their new home the refugees, through contact with a people nearly akin to themselves, became fully Arabicised, as the few extant specimens of their poetry bear witness. They remained Jews, however, not only in their cultivation of trade and various industries, but also in the most vital particular—their religion. This, and the fact that they lived in isolated communities among the surrounding population, marked them out as the salt of the desert. In the Hījāz their spiritual predominance was not seriously challenged. It was otherwise in Yemen. We may leave out of account the legend according to which Judaism was introduced into that country from the Hījāz by the Tubba' As'ad Kāmil. What is certain is that towards the beginning of the sixth century it was firmly planted there side by side with Christianity, and that in the person of the Himyarite monarch Dhū Nuwās, who adopted the Jewish faith, it won a short-lived but sanguinary triumph over its rival. [But in Yemen, except among the highlanders of Najrān, Christianity does not appear to have flourished as it did in the extreme north and north-east, where the Roman and

With the last line, however, cf. the words of Qays b. al-Khaṭīm on accomplishing his vengeance: "*When this death comes, there will not be found any need of my soul that I have not satisfied*" (Hāmāsa, 87).

Persian frontiers were guarded by the Arab levies of Ghassán and Ḥíra. We have seen that the latter city contained a large

The 'Ibád  
of Ḥíra.

Christian population who were called distinctively 'Ibád, *i.e.*, Servants (of God). Through them the Aramaic culture of Babylonia was transmitted to all parts of the peninsula. They had learned the art of writing long before it was generally practised in Arabia, as is shown by the story of Ṭarafa and Mutalammis, and they produced the oldest *written* poetry in the Arabic language—a poetry very different in character from that which forms the main subject of this chapter. Unfortunately the bulk of it has perished, since the rhapsodists, to whom we owe the preservation of so much Pre-islamic verse, were devoted to the traditional models and would not burden their memories with anything new-fashioned. The most famous of the 'Ibádí poets is 'Adí b. Zayd, whose adventurous career as a politician has been sketched above. He is not reckoned by Muḥammadan critics among the *Fuḥúl* or poets of the first rank, because

'Adí b. Zayd.

he was a townsman (*qarawí*). In this connection the following anecdote is instructive. The poet al-'Ajjáj († about 709 A.D.) said of his contemporaries al-Ṭirimmáḥ and al-Kumayt: "They used to ask me concerning rare expressions in the language of poetry, and I informed them, but afterwards I found the same expressions wrongly applied in their poems, the reason being that they were townsmen who described what they had not seen and misapplied it, whereas I who am a Bedouin describe what I have seen and apply it properly." \* 'Adí is chiefly remembered for his wine-songs. Oriental Christianity has always been associated with the drinking and selling of wine. Christian ideas were carried into the heart of Arabia by 'Ibádí wine merchants, who are said to have taught their religion to the celebrated A'shá. 'Adí drank and was merry like the rest, but the underlying thought, 'for to-morrow we die,' repeatedly

\* *Aghání*, ii, 18, l. 23 sqq.



makes itself heard. He walks beside a cemetery, and the voices of the dead call to him—<sup>1</sup>

"Thou who seest us unto thyself shalt say,  
 'Soon upon me comes the season of decay.'  
 Can the solid mountains evermore sustain  
 Time's vicissitudes and all they bring in train?  
 Many a traveller lighted near us and abode,  
 Quaffing wine wherein the purest water flowed—  
 Strainers on each flagon's mouth to clear the wine,  
 Noble steeds that paw the earth in trappings fine!  
 For a while they lived in lap of luxury,  
 Fearing no misfortune, dallying lazily.  
 Then, behold, Time swept them all, like chaff, away:  
 Thus it is men fall to whirling Time a prey.  
 Thus it is Time keeps the bravest and the best  
 Night and day still plunged in Pleasure's fatal quest."

It is said that the recitation of these verses induced Nu'mán al-Akbar, one of the mythical pagan kings of Hira, to accept Christianity and become an anchorite. Although the story involves an absurd anachronism, it is *ben trovato* in so far as it records the impression which the graver sort of Christian poetry was likely to make on heathen minds.

The courts of Hira and Ghassán were well known to the wandering minstrels of the time before Muḥammad, who flocked thither in eager search of patronage and remuneration. We may be sure that men like Nábigha, Labíd, and A'shá did not remain unaffected by the culture around them, even if it seldom entered very deeply into their lives. That considerable traces of religious feeling are to be found in Pre-islamic poetry admits of no denial, but the passages in question were formerly explained as due to interpolation. This view no longer prevails. Thanks mainly to the arguments of Von Kremer, Sir Charles Lyall, and Wellhausen, it has come to be recognised (1) that in many cases the above-mentioned religious feeling is not Islamic in tone; (2) that the passages in which it occurs

Pre-islamic  
 poetry not ex-  
 clusively pagan  
 in sentiment.

<sup>1</sup> *Aghání*, ii, 34, l. 22 sqq.



are not of Islamic origin ; and (3) that it is the natural and necessary result of the widely spread, though on the whole superficial, influence of Judaism, and especially of Christianity.\* It shows itself not only in frequent allusions, *e.g.*, to the monk in his solitary cell, whose lamp serves to light belated travellers on their way, and in more significant references, such as that of Zuhayr already quoted, to the Heavenly Book in which evil actions are enrolled for the Day of Reckoning, but also in the tendency to moralise, to look within, to meditate on death, and to value the life of the individual rather than the continued existence of the family. [These things are not characteristic of old Arabian poetry, but the fact that they do appear at times is quite in accord with the other facts which have been stated, and justifies the conclusion that during the sixth century religion and culture were imperceptibly extending their sphere of influence in Arabia, leavening the pagan masses, and gradually preparing the way for Islam.]

\* See Von Kremer, *Ueber die Gedichte des Labyd* in *S.B.W.A., Phil.-Hist. Klasse* (Vienna, 1881), vol. 98, p. 555 sqq. Sir Charles Lyall, *Ancient Arabian Poetry*, pp. 92 and 119. Wellhausen, *Reste Arabischen Heidentums* (2nd ed.), p. 224 sqq.



## CHAPTER IV

### THE PROPHET AND THE KORAN

WITH the appearance of Muḥammad the almost impenetrable veil thrown over the preceding age is suddenly lifted and we find ourselves on the solid ground of historical tradition. In order that the reasons for this change may be understood, it is necessary to give some account of the principal sources from which our knowledge of the Prophet's life and teaching is derived.

There is first, of course, the Koran,<sup>1</sup> consisting "exclusively of the revelations or commands which Muḥammad professed, from time to time, to receive through Gabriel as a message direct from God; and which, under an alleged Divine direction, he delivered to those about him. [At the time of pretended inspiration, or shortly after, each passage was recited by Muḥammad before the Companions or followers who happened to be present, and was generally committed to writing by some one amongst them upon palm-leaves, leather, stones, or such other rude material as conveniently came to hand. These Divine messages continued throughout the three-and-twenty years of his prophetic life, so that the last portion did not appear till the year of his death. The canon was then closed; but the contents were

<sup>1</sup> I prefer to retain the customary spelling instead of Qur'ān, as it is correctly transliterated by scholars. Arabic words naturalised in English, like Koran, Caliph, Vizier, &c., require no apology

never, during the Prophet's lifetime, systematically arranged, or even collected together."<sup>1</sup> They were preserved, however, in fragmentary copies and, especially, by oral recitation until the sanguinary wars which followed Muḥammad's death had greatly diminished the number of those who could repeat them by heart. Accordingly, after the battle of Yamāma (633 A.D.) 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb came to Abū Bakr, who was then Caliph, and said: "I fear that slaughter may wax hot among the Reciters on other battle-fields, and that much of the Koran may be lost; so in my opinion it should be collected without delay." Abū Bakr agreed, and entrusted the task to Zayd b. Thābit, one of the Prophet's amanuenses, who collected the fragments with great difficulty "from bits of parchment, thin white stones, leafless palm-branches, and the bosoms of men." The manuscript thus compiled was deposited with Abū Bakr during the remainder of his life, then with 'Umar, on whose death it passed to his daughter Ḥafṣa. Afterwards, in the Caliphate of 'Uthmān, Ḥudhayfa b. al-Yamān, observing that the Koran as read in Syria was seriously at variance with the text current in 'Irāq, warned the Caliph to interfere, lest the Sacred Book of the Moslems should become a subject of dispute, like the Jewish and Christian scriptures. In the year 651 A.D. 'Uthmān ordered Zayd b. Thābit to prepare a Revised Version with the assistance of three Qurayshites, saying to the latter, "If ye differ from Zayd regarding any word of the Koran, write it in the dialect of Quraysh; for it was revealed in their dialect."<sup>2</sup> This has ever since remained the final and standard recension of the Koran. "Transcripts were multiplied and forwarded to the chief cities in the empire, and all previously existing copies were, by the Caliph's com-

<sup>1</sup> Muir's *Life of Mahomet*, Introduction, p. 2 seq. I may as well say at once that I entirely disagree with the view suggested in this passage that Muḥammad did not believe himself to be inspired.

<sup>2</sup> The above details are taken from the *Fihrist*, ed. by G. Flügel, p. 24, l. 14 seqq.



mand, committed to the flames." <sup>1</sup> In the text as it has come down to us the various readings are few and unimportant, and

its genuineness is above suspicion. [We shall see,

Value of the  
Koran as an  
authority.

moreover, that the Koran is an exceedingly human document, reflecting every phase of

Muhammad's personality and standing in close relation to the onward events of his life, so that here we have materials of unique and incontestable authority for tracing the origin and early development of Islam—such materials as do not exist in the case of Buddhism or Christianity or any other ancient religion. Unfortunately the arrangement of the Koran can only be described as chaotic. No chronological sequence is observed in the order of the *Súras* (chapters), which is determined simply by their length, the longest being placed first.<sup>2</sup> Again, the chapters themselves are sometimes made up of disconnected fragments having nothing in common except the rhyme; whence it is often impossible to discover the original context of the words actually spoken by the Prophet, the occasion on which they were revealed, or the period to which they belong. In these circumstances the Koran must be supplemented by reference to our second main source of information, namely, Tradition.

[Already in the last years of Muhammad's life (writes Dr. Sprenger) it was a pious custom that when two Moslems met, one should ask for news (*ḥadīth*) and the other

<sup>2</sup> Tradition  
(*Ḥadīth*).

should relate a saying or anecdote of the Prophet.

After his death this custom continued, and the name *Ḥadīth* was still applied to sayings and stories which were no longer new.<sup>3</sup> In the course of time an elaborate system of Tradition was built up, as the Koran—originally the sole criterion by which Moslems were guided alike in the

<sup>1</sup> Muir, *op. cit.*, Introduction, p. 14.

<sup>2</sup> With the exception of the Opening *Súra* (*al-Fātiḥa*), which is a short prayer.

<sup>3</sup> Sprenger, *Ueber das Traditionswesen bei den Arabern*, Z.D.M.G., vol. x, p. 2.

greatest and smallest matters of public and private interest—was found insufficient for the complicated needs of a rapidly extending empire.) Appeal was made to the sayings and practice (*sunna*) of Muḥammad, which now acquired “the force of law and some of the authority of inspiration.” The Prophet had no Boswell, but almost as soon as he began to preach he was a marked man whose *obiter dicta* could not fail to be treasured by his Companions, and whose actions were attentively watched. Thus, during the first century of Islam there was a multitude of living witnesses from whom traditions were collected, committed to memory, and orally handed down. Every tradition consists of two parts: the text (*matn*) and the authority (*sanad*, or *inād*), e.g., the relater says, “I was told by A, who was informed by B, who had it from C, that the Prophet (God bless him!) and Abū Bakr and ‘Umar used to open prayer with the words ‘Praise to God, the Lord of all creatures.’” Written records and compilations were comparatively rare in the early period. Ibn Ishāq († 768 A.D.) composed the oldest extant Biography of the Prophet, which

Biographies of  
Muḥammad.

we do not possess, however, in its original shape but only in the recension of Ibn Hishām († 833 A.D.). Two important and excellent works of the same kind are the *Kitābu 'l-Maghāzī* ('Book of the Wars') by Wāqidī († 822 A.D.) and the *Kitābu 'l-Ṭabaqāt al-Kabir* ('The Great Book of the Classes,' i.e., the different classes of Muḥammad's Companions and those who came after them) by Ibn Sa'd († 844 A.D.). Of miscellaneous traditions intended to serve the Faithful as a model and rule of life in every particular, and arranged in chapters according to the

General collec-  
tions.

subject-matter, the most ancient and authoritative collections are those of Bukhārī († 870 A.D.) and Muslim († 874 A.D.), both of which bear the same title, viz., *al-Ṣaḥīḥ*, 'The Genuine.' It only remains to speak of Commentaries on the Koran. Some passages were explained by Muḥammad himself, but the real founder of



Koranic Exegesis was 'Abdullāh b. 'Abbās, the Prophet's cousin. Although the writings of the early interpreters have entirely perished, the gist of their researches is embodied in the great commentary of Ṭabarī († 922 A.D.), a man of encyclopædic learning who absorbed the whole mass of tradition existing in his time. Subsequent commentaries are largely based on this colossal work, which has recently been published at Cairo in thirty volumes. That of Zamakhsharī († 1143 A.D.), which is entitled the *Kashshāf*, and that of Baydāwī († 1286 A.D.) are the best known and most highly esteemed in the Muḥammadan East. A work of wider scope is the *Itqān* of Suyūṭī († 1505 A.D.), which takes a general survey of the Koranic sciences, and may be regarded as an introduction to the critical study of the Koran.

While every impartial student will admit the justice of Ibn Qutayba's claim that no religion has such historical attestations as Islam—*laysa li-ummat<sup>m</sup> mina 'l-umami asnād<sup>m</sup> ka-asnādihim*<sup>1</sup>—he must at the same time cordially assent to the observation made by another Muḥammadan: "In nothing do we see pious men more given to falsehood than in Tradition" (*lam nara 'l-ṣḍliḥina fī shay<sup>m</sup> akdhaba minhum fī 'l-ḥadīth*).<sup>2</sup> Of this severe judgment the reader will find ample confirmation in the Second Part of Goldziher's *Muhammedanische Studien*.<sup>3</sup> [During the first century of Islam the forging of Traditions became a recognised political and religious weapon, of which all parties availed themselves.] Even men of the strictest piety practised this species of fraud (*tadlīs*), and maintained that the end justified the means. Their point of view is well expressed in the following words which are supposed to have been spoken by the Prophet: "You must compare the sayings attributed

<sup>1</sup> Quoted by Sprenger, *loc. cit.*, p. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Quoted by Nöldeke in the Introduction to his *Geschichte des Qorāns*, p. 22.

<sup>3</sup> See especially pp. 28-130.

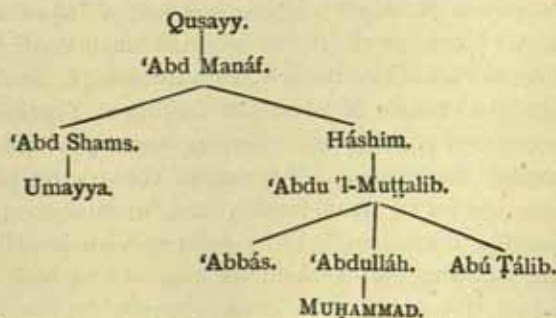


to me with the Koran ; what agrees therewith is from me, whether I actually said it or no ;" and again, " Whatever good saying has been said, I myself have said it." <sup>1</sup> As the result of such principles every new doctrine took the form of an Apostolic *Ḥadīth* ; every sect and every system defended itself by an appeal to the authority of Muḥammad. We may see how enormous was the number of false Traditions in circulation from the fact that when Bukhārī († 870 A.D.) drew up his collection entitled 'The Genuine' (*al-Ṣaḥīḥ*), he limited it to some 7,000, which he picked out of 600,000.

The credibility of Tradition, so far as it concerns the life of the Prophet, cannot be discussed in this place.<sup>2</sup> The oldest and best biography, that of Ibn Ishāq, undoubtedly contains a great deal of fabulous matter, but his narrative appears to be honest and fairly authentic on the whole.

[ If we accept the traditional chronology, Muḥammad, son of 'Abdullāh and Āmina, of the tribe of Quraysh, was born at Mecca on the 12th of Rabī' al-Awwal, in the Year of the Elephant (570-571 A.D.). His descent from Quṣayy is shown by the following

table :—



<sup>1</sup> *Muhamm. Studien*, Part II, p. 48 seq.

<sup>2</sup> The reader may consult Muir's Introduction to his *Life of Mahomet*, pp. 28-87.

Shortly after his birth he was handed over to a Bedouin nurse—Halima, a woman of the Banú Sa'd—so that until he was five years old he breathed the pure air and learned to speak the unadulterated language of the desert.) One marvellous event which is said to have happened to him at this time may perhaps be founded on fact :—

“ He and his foster-brother ” (so Halima relates) “ were among the cattle behind our encampment when my son came running to us and cried, ‘ My brother, the Qurayshite ! two men clad in white took him and laid him on his side and cleft his belly ; and they were stirring their hands in it.’ When my husband and I went out to him we found him standing with his face turned pale, and on our asking, ‘ What ails thee, child ? ’ he answered, ‘ Two men wearing white garments came to me and laid me on my side and cleft my belly and groped for something, I know not what.’ We brought him back to our tent, and my husband said to me, ‘ O Halima, I fear this lad has been smitten (*usiba*) ; so take him home to his family before it becomes evident.’ When we restored him to his mother she said, ‘ What has brought thee, nurse ? Thou wert so fond of him and anxious that he should stay with thee.’ I said, ‘ God has made him grow up, and I have done my part. I feared that some mischance would befall him, so I brought him back to thee as thou wishest.’ ‘ Thy case is not thus,’ said she ; ‘ tell me the truth,’ and she gave me no peace until I told her. Then she said, ‘ Art thou afraid that he is possessed by the Devil ? ’ I said, ‘ Yes.’ ‘ Nay, by God,’ she replied, ‘ the Devil cannot reach him ; my son hath a high destiny.’ ”

Other versions of the story are more explicit. The angels, it is said, drew forth Muhammad's heart, cleansed it, and removed the black clot—*i.e.*, the taint of original sin.<sup>2</sup> If these inventions have any basis at all beyond the desire to glorify the future Prophet, we must suppose that they refer

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Hishām, p. 105, l. 9 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> This legend seems to have arisen out of a literal interpretation of Koran, xciv, 1, “ *Did we not open thy breast ?* ”—*i.e.*, give thee comfort or enlightenment.

to some kind of epileptic fit. At a later period he was subject to such attacks, which, according to the unanimous voice of Tradition, often coincided with the revelations sent down from heaven.

'Abdullāh had died before the birth of his son, and when, in his sixth year, Muḥammad lost his mother also, the charge of the orphan was undertaken first by his grandfather, the aged 'Abdu 'l-Muṭṭalib, and then by his uncle, Abū Ṭālib, a poor but honourable man, who nobly fulfilled the duties of a guardian to the last hour of his life. Muḥammad's small patrimony was soon spent, and he was reduced to herding sheep—a despised employment which usually fell to the lot of women or slaves. In his twelfth year he accompanied Abū Ṭālib on a trading expedition to Syria, in the course of

His meeting  
with the  
monk Bahīrā.

which he is said to have encountered a Christian monk called Bahīrā, who discovered the Seal of Prophecy between the boy's shoulders, and hailed him as the promised apostle. Such anticipations deserve no credit whatever. The truth is that until Muḥammad assumed the prophetic rôle he was merely an obscure Qurayshite; and scarcely anything related of him anterior to that event can be deemed historical except his marriage to Khadija, an elderly widow of considerable fortune, which took place when he was about twenty-five years of age.

During the next fifteen years of his life Muḥammad was externally a prosperous citizen, only distinguished from those around him by an habitual expression of thoughtful melancholy. What was passing in his mind may be conjectured with some probability from his first utterances when he came forward as a preacher. It is certain, and he himself has acknowledged, that he formerly shared the idolatry of his countrymen. "*Did not He find thee astray and lead thee aright?*" (Kor. xciii, 7). When and how did the process of conversion begin? These questions cannot be answered, but it is natural to suppose that the all-important result, on which



Muhammad's biographers concentrate their attention, was preceded by a long period of ferment and immaturity. [The idea of monotheism was represented in Arabia by the Jews, who were particularly numerous in the Hijáz, and by several gnostic sects of an ascetic character—e.g., the Šábians<sup>1</sup> and the Rakúsians. Furthermore, "Islamic tradition knows of a number of religious thinkers before Muhammad who are described as Hanífs,"<sup>2</sup> and of whom the best known are

The Hanífs. Waraqa b. Nawfal of Quraysh; Zayd b. 'Amr

b. Nufayl, also of Quraysh; and Umayya b. Abi 'l-Šalt of Thaqlif. ] They formed no sect, as Sprenger imagined; and more recent research has demonstrated the baselessness of the same scholar's theory that there was in Pre-Islamic times a widely-spread religious movement which Muhammad organised, directed, and employed for his own ends. His Arabian precursors, if they may be so called, were merely a few isolated individuals. We are told by Ibn Ishák that Waraqa and Zayd, together with two other Qurayshites, rejected idolatry and left their homes in order to seek the true religion of Abraham, but whereas Waraqa is said to have become a Christian, Zayd remained a pious dissenter unattached either to Christianity or to Judaism; he abstained from idol-worship, from eating that which had died of itself, from blood, and from the flesh of animals offered in sacrifice to idols; he condemned the barbarous custom of burying female infants alive, and said,

<sup>1</sup> This name, which may signify 'Baptists,' was applied by the heathen Arabs to Muhammad and his followers, probably in consequence of the ceremonial ablutions which are incumbent upon every Moslem before the five daily prayers (see Wellhausen, *Reste Arab. Heid.*, p. 237).

<sup>2</sup> Sir Charles Lyall, *The Words 'Hanif' and 'Muslim,'* J.R.A.S. for 1903, p. 772. The original meaning of *hanif* is no longer traceable, but it may be connected with the Hebrew *hánéf*, 'profane.' In the Koran it generally refers to the religion of Abraham, and sometimes appears to be nearly synonymous with *Muslim*. Further information concerning the Hanífs will be found in Sir Charles Lyall's article cited above; Sprenger, *Das Leben und die Lehre des Mohammed*, vol. i, pp. 45-134; Wellhausen, *Reste Arab. Heid.*, p. 238 sqq.; Caetani, *Annali dell' Islam*, vol. i, pp. 181-192.

"I worship the Lord of Abraham."<sup>1</sup> As regards Umayya b. Abi 'l-Šalt, according to the notice of him in the *Aghāni*, he had inspected and read the Holy Scriptures; he wore sack-cloth as a mark of devotion, held wine to be unlawful, was inclined to disbelieve in idols, and earnestly sought the true religion. It is said that he hoped to be sent as a prophet to the Arabs, and therefore when Muḥammad appeared he envied and bitterly opposed him.<sup>2</sup> Umayya's verses, some of which have been translated in a former chapter,<sup>3</sup> are chiefly on religious topics, and show many points of resemblance with the doctrines set forth in the early Sūras of the Koran. With one exception, all the Ḥanīfs whose names are recorded belonged to the Ḥijāz and the west of the Arabian peninsula. No doubt Muḥammad, with whom most of them were contemporary, came under their influence, and he may have received his first stimulus from this quarter.<sup>4</sup> While they, however, were concerned only about their own salvation, Muḥammad, starting from the same position, advanced far beyond it. [His greatness lies not so much in the sublime ideas by which he was animated as in the tremendous force and enthusiasm of his appeal to the universal conscience of mankind.

In his fortieth year, it is said, Muḥammad began to dream dreams and see visions, and desire solitude above all things else.

He withdrew to a cave on Mount Ḥirā, near Mecca, and engaged in religious austerities (*taḥannuth*). One night in the month of Ramaḍān<sup>5</sup> the Angel<sup>6</sup> appeared to him and said, "Read!" (*iqrā'*). He

Muḥammad's  
vision.

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Hishām, p. 143, l. 6 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Aghāni*, iii, 187, l. 17 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 69 *supra*.

<sup>4</sup> Tradition associates him especially with Warāqa, who was a cousin of his first wife, Khadija, and is said to have hailed him as a prophet while Muḥammad himself was still hesitating (Ibn Hishām, p. 153, l. 14 sqq.).

<sup>5</sup> This is the celebrated 'Night of Power' (*Laylatu 'l-Qadr*) mentioned in the Koran, xcvi, 1.

<sup>6</sup> The Holy Ghost (*Rūḥu'l-Quds*), for whom in the Medina Sūras Gabriel (*Jibrīl*) is substituted.



answered, "I am no reader" (*mā ana bi-qāri'*).<sup>1</sup> Then the Angel seized him with a strong grasp, saying, "Read!" and, as Muḥammad still refused to obey, gripped him once more and spoke as follows:—

#### THE SÚRA OF COAGULATED BLOOD (XCVI).

- (1) Read in the name of thy Lord\* who created,
- (2) Who created Man of blood coagulated.
- (3) Read! Thy Lord is the most beneficent,
- (4) Who taught by the Pen,<sup>2</sup>
- (5) Taught that which they knew not unto men.]

On hearing these words Muḥammad returned, trembling, to Khadīja and cried, "Wrap me up! wrap me up!" and remained covered until the terror passed away from him.<sup>4</sup> Another tradition relating to the same event makes it clear

\* But another version (Ibn Hishām, p. 152, l. 9 sqq.) represents Muḥammad as replying to the Angel, "What am I to read?" (*mā aqra'u* or *mā dhā aqra'u*). Professor Bevan has pointed out to me that the tradition in this form bears a curious resemblance, which can hardly be accidental, to the words of Isaiah xl. 6: "The voice said, Cry. And he said, What shall I cry?" The question whether the Prophet could read and write is discussed by Nöldeke (*Geschichte des Qorāns*, p. 7 sqq.), who leaves it undecided. According to Nöldeke (*loc. cit.*, p. 10), the epithet *ummi*, which is applied to Muḥammad in the Koran, and is commonly rendered by 'illiterate,' does not signify that he was ignorant of reading and writing, but only that he was unacquainted with the ancient Scriptures; cf. 'Gentile.' However this may be, it appears that he wished to pass for illiterate, with the object of confirming the belief in his inspiration: "Thou" (Muḥammad) "didst not use to read any book before this" (the Koran) "nor to write it with thy right hand; else the liars would have doubted" (Koran, xxix, 47).

\* The meaning of these words (*iqra' bismi rabbika*) is disputed. Others translate, "Preach in the name of thy Lord" (Nöldeke), or "Proclaim the name of thy Lord" (Hirschfeld). I see no sufficient grounds for abandoning the traditional interpretation supported by verses 4 and 5. Muḥammad dreamed that he was commanded to read the Word of God inscribed in the Heavenly Book which is the source of all Revelation.

<sup>2</sup> Others render, "who taught (the use of) the Pen."

<sup>4</sup> This account of Muḥammad's earliest vision (Bukhārī, ed. by Krehl, vol. iii, p. 380, l. 2 sqq.) is derived from 'Ā'isha, his favourite wife, whom he married after the death of Khadīja.



that the revelation occurred in a dream.<sup>1</sup> "I awoke," said the Prophet, "and methought it was written in my heart." If we take into account the notions prevalent among the Arabs of that time on the subject of inspiration,<sup>2</sup> it will not appear surprising that Muḥammad at first believed himself to be possessed, like a poet or soothsayer, by one of the spirits called collectively *finn*. Such was his anguish of mind that he even meditated suicide, but Khadīja comforted and reassured him, and finally he gained the unalterable conviction that he was not a prey to demoniacal influences, but a prophet divinely inspired. For some time he received no further revelation.<sup>3</sup> Then suddenly, as he afterwards related, he saw the Angel seated on a throne between earth and heaven. Awe-stricken, he ran into his house and bade them wrap his limbs in a warm garment (*dithār*). While he lay thus the following verses were revealed:—

#### THE SÚRA OF THE ENWRAPPED (LXXIV).

- (1) O thou who enwrapped dost lie!
- (2) Arise and prophesy,<sup>4</sup>
- (3) And thy Lord magnify,
- (4) And thy raiment purify,
- (5) And the abomination fly!<sup>5</sup>

Muḥammad no longer doubted that he had a divinely ordained mission to preach in public. His feelings of relief and thankfulness are expressed in several Súras of this period, *e.g.*—

#### THE SÚRA OF THE MORNING (XCIII).

- (1) By the Morning bright
- (2) And the softly falling Night,
- (3) Thy Lord hath not forsaken thee, neither art thou hateful in His sight.

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Hishām, p. 152, l. 9 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> This interval is known as the *Fatra*.

<sup>3</sup> 'The abomination' (*al-rujs*) probably refers to idolatry.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 72 *supra*.

<sup>5</sup> Literally, 'warn.'

- (4) Verily, the Beginning is hard unto thee, but the End shall be light.<sup>1</sup>  
 (5) Thou shalt be satisfied, the Lord shall thee requite.  
 (6) Did not He shelter thee when He found thee in orphan's plight?  
 (7) Did not He find thee astray and lead thee aright?  
 (8) Did not He find thee poor and make thee rich by His might?  
 (9) Wherefore, the orphan betray not,  
 (10) And the beggar turn away not,  
 (11) And tell of the bounty of thy Lord.)

According to his biographers, an interval of three years elapsed between the sending of Muḥammad and his appearance as a public preacher of the faith that was in him. Naturally, he would first turn to his own family and friends, but it is difficult to accept the statement that he made no proselytes openly during so long a period. The contrary is asserted in an ancient tradition related by al-Zuhri († 742 A.D.), where we read that the Prophet summoned the people to embrace Islam<sup>2</sup> both in private and public; and that those who responded to his appeal were, for the most part, young men belonging to the poorer class.<sup>3</sup> He found, however, some influential adherents. Besides Khadija, who was

The first  
Muslims.

the first to believe, there were his cousin 'Alī, his adopted son, Zayd b. Ḥāritha, and, most important of all, Abū Bakr b. Abī Quḥāfa, a leading merchant of the Quraysh, universally respected and beloved for his integrity, wisdom, and kindly disposition.) At the outset Muḥammad seems to have avoided everything calculated to offend the heathens, confining himself to moral and religious generalities,

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "The Last State shall be better for thee than the First," referring either to Muḥammad's recompense in the next world or to the ultimate triumph of his cause in this world.

<sup>2</sup> *Islām* is a verbal noun formed from *Aslama*, which means 'to surrender' and, in a religious sense, 'to surrender one's self to the will of God.' The participle, *Muslim* (Moslem), denotes one who thus surrenders himself.

<sup>3</sup> Sprenger, *Leben des Mohammad*, vol. i, p. 356.



so that many believed, and the Meccan aristocrats themselves regarded him with good-humoured toleration as a harmless oracle-monger. "Look!" they said as he passed by, "there goes the man of the Banú 'Abd al-Muttalib who tells of heaven." But no sooner did he begin to emphasise the Unity of God, to fulminate against idolatry, and to preach the Resurrection of the dead, than his followers melted away in face of the bitter antagonism which these doctrines excited amongst the Quraysh, who saw in the Ka'ba and its venerable cult the mainspring of their commercial prosperity, and were irritated by the Prophet's declaration that their ancestors were burning in hell-fire. The authority of Abú Tálíb secured the personal safety of Muḥammad; of the little band who remained faithful some were protected by the strong family feeling characteristic of old Arabian society, but many were poor and friendless; and these, especially the slaves, whom the levelling ideas of Islam had attracted in large numbers, were subjected to cruel persecution.<sup>1</sup> Nevertheless Muḥammad continued to preach. "I will not forsake this cause" (thus he is said to have answered Abú Tálíb, who informed him of the threatening attitude of the Quraysh and begged him not to lay on him a greater burden than he could bear) "until God shall make it prevail or until I shall perish therein—not though they should set the sun on my right hand and the moon on my left!"<sup>2</sup> But progress

<sup>1</sup> It must be remembered that this branch of Muḥammadan tradition derives from the pietists of the first century after the Flight, who were profoundly dissatisfied with the reigning dynasty (the Umayyads), and revenged themselves by painting the behaviour of the Meccan ancestors of the Umayyads towards Muḥammad in the blackest colours possible. The facts tell another story. It is significant that hardly any case of real persecution is mentioned in the Koran. Muḥammad was allowed to remain at Mecca and to carry on, during many years, a religious propaganda which his fellow-citizens, with few exceptions, regarded as detestable and dangerous. We may well wonder at the moderation of the Quraysh, which, however, was not so much deliberate policy as the result of their indifference to religion and of Muḥammad's failure to make appreciable headway in Mecca.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Hishám, p. 168, l. 9. sqq.



was slow and painful : the Meccans stood obstinately aloof, deriding both his prophetic authority and the Divine chastisement with which he sought to terrify them. Moreover, they used every kind of pressure short of actual violence in order to seduce his followers, so that many recanted, and in the fifth year of his mission he saw himself driven to the necessity of

Emigration to  
Abyssinia.

commanding a general emigration to the Christian kingdom of Abyssinia, where the Moslems would be received with open arms<sup>1</sup> and would be with-

drawn from temptation.<sup>2</sup> About a hundred men and women went into exile, leaving their Prophet with a small party of staunch and devoted comrades to persevere in a struggle that was daily becoming more difficult. In a moment of weakness

Temporary  
reconciliation  
with the  
Quraysh.

Muhammad resolved to attempt a compromise with his countrymen. One day, it is said, the chief men of Mecca, assembled in a group beside

the Ka'ba, discussed as was their wont the affairs of the city, when Muhammad appeared and, seating himself by them in a friendly manner, began to recite in their hearing the 53rd Súra of the Koran. When he came to the verses (19-20)—

"Do ye see Al-Lát and Al-'Uzzá, and Manát, the third and last?"

Satan prompted him to add :—

"These are the most exalted Cranes (or Swans),  
And verily their intercession is to be hoped for."

The Quraysh were surprised and delighted with this acknowledgment of their deities ; and as Muhammad wound up the Súra with the closing words—

"Wherefore bow down before God and serve Him,"

<sup>1</sup> At this time Muhammad believed the doctrines of Islam and Christianity to be essentially the same.

<sup>2</sup> Tabarí, i, 1180, 8 sqq. Cf. Caetani, *Annali dell' Islam*, vol. i, p. 267 sqq.

the whole assembly prostrated themselves with one accord on the ground and worshipped.<sup>2</sup> But scarcely had Muḥammad returned to his house when he repented of the sin into which he had fallen. He cancelled the idolatrous verses and revealed in their place those which now stand in the Koran—

"Shall yours be the male and his the female?"

This were then an unjust division!

They are naught but names which ye and your fathers have named."

We can easily comprehend why Ibn Hishām omits all mention of this episode from his Biography, and why the fact itself is denied by many Moslem theologians.<sup>3</sup> The Prophet's friends were scandalised, his enemies laughed him to scorn. It was probably no sudden lapse, as tradition represents, but a calculated endeavour to come to terms with the Quraysh; and so far from being immediately annulled, the reconciliation seems to have lasted long enough for the news of it to reach the emigrants in Abyssinia and induce some of them to return to Mecca. While putting the best face on the matter, Muḥammad felt keenly both his own disgrace and the public discredit. It speaks well for his sincerity that, as soon as he perceived any compromise with idolatry to be impossible—to be, in fact, a surrender of the great principle by which he was inspired—he frankly confessed his error and delusion.

<sup>2</sup> Muir, *Life of Mahomet*, vol. ii, p. 151.

<sup>3</sup> We have seen (p. 91 *supra*) that the heathen Arabs disliked female offspring, yet they called their three principal deities the daughters of Allah.

<sup>4</sup> It is related by Ibn Ishāq (Ṭabarī, i, 1192, 4 sqq.). In his learned work, *Annali dell' Islam*, of which the first volume appeared in 1905, Prince Caetani impugns the authenticity of the tradition and criticises the narrative in detail (p. 279 sqq.), but his arguments do not touch the main question. As Muir says, "it is hardly possible to conceive how the tale, if not founded in truth, could ever have been invented."



Henceforth he "wages mortal strife with images in every shape"—there is no god but Allah.

The further course of events which culminated in Muḥammad's Flight to Medīna may be sketched in a few words. Persecution now waxed hotter than ever, as the Prophet, rising from his temporary vacillation like a giant refreshed, threw his whole force into the denunciation of idolatry. The conversion of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, the future Caliph, a man of 'blood and iron,' gave the signal for open revolt. "The Moslems no longer concealed their worship within their own dwellings, but with conscious strength and defiant attitude assembled in companies about the Ka'ba, performed their rites of prayer and compassed the Holy House. Their courage rose. Dread and uneasiness seized the Quraysh." The latter retaliated by cutting off all relations with the Hāshimites, who were pledged to defend their kinsman, whether they recognised him as a prophet or no. This ban or boycott secluded them in an outlying quarter of the city, where for more than two years they endured the utmost privations, but it only cemented their loyalty to Muḥammad, and ultimately dissensions among the Quraysh themselves caused it to be removed. Shortly afterwards the Prophet suffered a double bereavement—the death of his wife, Khadīja, was followed by that of the noble Abū Tālib, who, though he never accepted Islam, stood firm to the last in defence of his brother's son. Left alone to protect himself, Muḥammad realised that he must take some decisive step. The situation was critical. Events had shown that he had nothing to hope and everything to fear from the Meccan aristocracy. He had warned them again and again of the wrath to come, yet they gave no heed. He was now convinced that they would not and could not believe, since God in His inscrutable wisdom had predestined them to eternal damnation. Consequently he resolved on a bold and, according to Arab ways of thinking, abominable expedient,

Death of  
of Khadīja and  
Abū Tālib.



namely, to abandon his fellow-tribesmen and seek aid from strangers.<sup>1</sup> Having vainly appealed to the inhabitants of Tâ'if, he turned to Medína, where, among a population largely composed of Jews, the revolutionary ideas of Islam might more readily take root and flourish than in the Holy City of Arabian heathendom. This time he was not disappointed. A strong party in Medína hailed him as the true Prophet, eagerly embraced his creed, and swore to defend him at all hazards. In the spring of the year 622 A.D. the Moslems of Mecca quietly left their homes and journeyed northward. A few months later (September, 622) Muḥammad himself, eluding the vigilance of the Quraysh, entered Medína in triumph amidst the crowds and acclamations due to a conqueror.

This is the celebrated Migration or Hegira (properly *Hijra*) which marks the end of the Barbaric Age (*al-ġāhiliyya*) and the beginning of the Muḥammadan Era. It also marks a new epoch in the Prophet's history; but before attempting to indicate the nature of the change it will be convenient, in order that we may form a juster conception of his character, to give some account of his early teaching and preaching as set forth in that portion of the Koran which was revealed at Mecca.

The *Hijra* or  
Migration to  
Medína  
(622 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> The Meccan view of Muḥammad's action may be gathered from the words uttered by Abū Jahl on the field of Badr—"O God, bring woe upon him who more than any of us hath severed the ties of kinship and dealt dishonourably!" (Tabarī, i, 1322, l. 8 seq.). Alluding to the Moslems who abandoned their native city and fled with the Prophet to Medína, a Meccan poet exclaims (Ibn Hishām, p. 519, ll. 3-5):—

*They (the Quraysh slain at Badr) fell in honour. They did not sell their  
kinsmen for strangers living in a far land and of remote lineage;  
Unlike you, who have made friends of Ghassán (the people of Medína), taking  
them instead of us—O, what a shameful deed!  
Tis an impiety and a manifest crime and a cutting of all ties of blood:  
your iniquity therein is discerned by men of judgment and under-  
standing.*

Koran (Qur'án) is derived from the Arabic root *qara'a*, 'to read,' and means 'reading aloud' or 'chanting.' This

The Koran.

term may be applied either to a single Revelation or to several recited together or, in its usual acceptation, to the whole body of Revelations which are thought by Moslems to be, actually and literally, the Word of God; so that in quoting from the Koran they say *qāla 'llāhu*, i.e., 'God said.' Each Revelation forms a separate *Súra* (chapter)<sup>1</sup> composed of verses of varying length which have no metre but are generally rhymed. Thus, as regards its external features, the style of the Koran is modelled upon the *Saj'*,<sup>2</sup> or rhymed prose, of the pagan soothsayers, but with such freedom that it may fairly be described as original. Since it was not in Muḥammad's power to create a form that should be absolutely new, his choice lay between *Saj'* and poetry, the only forms of elevated style then known to the Arabs. He himself declared that he was no poet,<sup>3</sup> and this is true in the sense that he may have lacked the technical accomplishment of verse-making. It must, however, be borne in

Was Muḥammad poet?

mind that his disavowal does not refer primarily to the poetic art, but rather to the person and character of the poets themselves. He, the divinely inspired Prophet, could have nothing to do with men who owed their inspiration to demons and gloried in the ideals of paganism which he was striving to overthrow. "*And the poets do those follow who go astray! Dost thou not see that they wander distraught in every vale? and that they say that which they do not?*" (Kor. xxvi, 224-226). Muḥammad was not of these; although he was not so unlike them as he pretended. His kinship with the pagan *Shā'ir* is clearly shown, for example, in the 113th and 114th *Súras*, which are charms against magic and *diablerie*, as well as in the solemn imprecation calling down destruction upon the head of his uncle, 'Abdu 'l-'Uzzá, nicknamed Abú Lahab (Father of Flame).

<sup>1</sup> *Súra* is properly a row of stones or bricks in a wall.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 74 *supra*.

<sup>3</sup> Koran, lix, 41.



## THE SÚRA OF ABÚ LAHAB (CXI).

- (1) Perish the hands of Abú Lahab and perish he!
- (2) His wealth shall not avail him nor all he hath gotten in fee.
- (3) Burned in blazing fire he shall be!
- (4) And his wife, the faggot-bearer, also she.
- (5) Upon her neck a cord of fibres of the palm-tree.

If, then, we must allow that Muḥammad's contemporaries had some justification for bestowing upon him the title of poet against which he protested so vehemently, still less can his plea be accepted by the modern critic, whose verdict will be that the Koran is not poetical as a whole; that it contains many pages of rhetoric and much undeniable prose; but that, although Muḥammad needed "heaven-sent moments for this skill," in the early Meccan Súras frequently, and fitfully elsewhere, his genius proclaims itself by grand lyrical outbursts which could never have been the work of a mere rhetorician.

"Muhammad's single aim in the Meccan Súras," says Nöldeke, "is to convert the people, by means of persuasion, from their false gods to the One God. To whatever point the discourse is directed, this always remains the ground-thought; but instead of seeking to convince the reason of his hearers by logical proofs, he employs the arts of rhetoric to work upon their minds through the imagination. Thus he glorifies God, describes His working in Nature and History, and ridicules on the other hand the impotence of the idols. Especially important are the descriptions of the everlasting bliss of the pious and the torments of the wicked: these, particularly the latter, must be regarded as one of the mightiest factors in the propagation of Islam, through the impression which they make on the imagination of simple men who have not been hardened, from their youth up, by similar theological ideas. The Prophet often attacks his heathen adversaries personally and threatens them with eternal punishment; but while he is living among heathens alone, he seldom assails the Jews who stand much nearer to him, and the Christians scarcely ever."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Nöldeke, *Geschichte des Qorâns*, p. 56.



The preposterous arrangement of the Koran, to which I have already adverted, is mainly responsible for the opinion almost unanimously held by European readers that it is obscure, tiresome, uninteresting; a farrago of long-winded narratives and prosaic exhortations, quite unworthy to be named in the same breath with the Prophetical Books of the Old Testament. One may, indeed, peruse the greater part of the volume, beginning with the first chapter, and find but a few passages of genuine enthusiasm to relieve the prevailing dulness. It is in the short Sûras placed at the end of the Koran that we must look for evidence of Muḥammad's prophetic gift. These are the earliest of all; in these the flame of inspiration burns purely and its natural force is not abated. The following versions, like those which have preceded, imitate the original form as closely, I think, as is possible in English. They cannot, of course, do more than faintly suggest the striking effect of the sonorous Arabic when read aloud. The Koran was designed for oral recitation, and it must be *heard* in order to be justly appraised.

## THE SÚRA OF THE SEVERING (LXXXII).

- (1) When the Sky shall be severed,
- (2) And when the Stars shall be shiverèd,
- (3) And when the Seas to mingle shall be sufferèd,
- (4) And when the Graves shall be uncoverèd—
- (5) A soul shall know that which it hath deferred or deliverèd.<sup>1</sup>
- (6) O Man, what beguiled thee against thy gracious Master to rebel,
- (7) Who created thee and fashioned thee right and thy frame did fairly build?
- (8) He composed thee in whatever form He willed.
- (9) Nay, but ye disbelieve in the Ordeal!<sup>2</sup>
- (10) Verily over you are Recorders honourable,
- (11) Your deeds inscribing without fail:<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *I.e.*, what it has done or left undone.

<sup>2</sup> The Last Judgment.

<sup>3</sup> Moslems believe that every man is attended by two Recording Angels who write down his good and evil actions.

- (12) What ye do they know well.
- (13) Surely the pious in delight shall dwell,
- (14) And surely the wicked shall be in Hell,
- (15) Burning there on the Day of Ordeal;
- (16) And evermore Hell-fire they shall feel!
- (17) What shall make thee to understand what is the Day of Ordeal?
- (18) Again, what shall make thee to understand what is the Day of Ordeal?—
- (19) A Day when one soul shall not obtain anything for another soul, but the command on that Day shall be with God alone.)

#### THE SÚRA OF THE SIGNS (LXXXV).

- (1) By the Heaven in which Signs are set,
- (2) By the Day that is promised,
- (3) By the Witness and the Witnessed :—
- (4) Cursèd be the Fellows of the Pit, they that spread
- (5) The fire with fuel fed,
- (6) When they sate by its head
- (7) And saw how their contrivance against the Believers sped ;\*
- (8) And they punished them not save that they believed on God, the Almighty, the Glorified,
- (9) To whom is the Kingdom of Heaven and Earth, and He seeth every thing beside.
- (10) Verily, for those who afflict believing men and women and repent not, the torment of Gehenna and the torment of burning is prepared.
- (11) Verily, for those who believe and work righteousness are Gardens beneath which rivers flow : this is the great Reward.
- (12) Stern is the vengeance of thy Lord.
- (13) He createth the living and reviveth the dead :
- (14) He doth pardon and kindly entreat :
- (15) The majestic Throne is His seat :
- (16) That he willeth He doeth indeed.
- (17) Hath not word come to thee of the multitude
- (18) Of Pharaoh, and of Thamúd ?\*

---

\* This is generally supposed to refer to the persecution of the Christians of Najrán by Dhú Nuwás (see p. 26 *supra*). Geiger takes it as an allusion to the three men who were cast into the fiery furnace (Daniel, ch. iii).

\* See above, p. 3.

- (19) Nay, the infidels cease not from falsehood,
- (20) But God encompasseth them about.
- (21) Surely, it is a Sublime Koran that ye read,
- (22) On a Table inviolate.\*

## THE SŪRA OF THE SMITING (CI).

- (1) The Smiting! What is the Smiting?
- (2) And how shalt thou be made to understand what is the Smiting?
- (3) The Day when Men shall be as flies scatterèd,
- (4) And the Mountains shall be as shreds of wool tatterèd.
- (5) One whose Scales are heavy, a pleasing life he shall spend,
- (6) But one whose Scales are light, to the Abyss he shall descend.
- (7) What that is, how shalt thou be made to comprehend?
- (8) Scorching Fire without end!

## THE SŪRA OF THE UNBELIEVERS (CIX).

- (1) Say: 'O Unbelievers,
- (2) I worship not that which ye worship,
- (3) And ye worship not that which I worship.
- (4) Neither will I worship that which ye worship,
- (5) Nor will ye worship that which I worship.
- (6) Ye have your religion and I have my religion.'

[To summarise the cardinal doctrines preached by Muḥammad during the Meccan period :—

1. There is no god but God.

The teaching of  
Muḥammad at  
Mecca.

2. Muḥammad is the Apostle of God, and the Koran is the Word of God revealed to His Apostle.

3. The dead shall be raised to life at the Last Judgment, when every one shall be judged by his actions in the present life.

4. The pious shall enter Paradise and the wicked shall go down to Hell.)

Taking these doctrines separately, let us consider a little more in detail how each of them is stated and by what arguments it is enforced. The time had not yet come for drawing

\* According to Muḥammadan belief, the archetype of the Koran and of all other Revelations is written on the Guarded Table (*al-Lawḥ al-Mahfûz*) in heaven.



the sword : Muḥammad repeats again and again that he is only a warner (*nadhīr*) invested with no authority to compel where he cannot persuade.

1. The Meccans acknowledged the supreme position of Allah, but in ordinary circumstances neglected him in favour of their idols, so that, as Muḥammad complains,

The Unity of God. "When danger befalls you on the sea, the gods whom ye invoke are forgotten except Him alone ; yet when He brought you safe to land, ye turned your backs on Him, for Man is ungrateful."<sup>1</sup> They were strongly attached to the cult of the Ka'ba, not only by self-interest, but also by the more respectable motives of piety towards their ancestors and pride in their traditions. Muḥammad himself regarded Allah as Lord of the Ka'ba, and called upon the Quraysh to worship him as such (Kor. cvi, 3). When they refused to do so on the ground that they were afraid lest the Arabs should rise against them and drive them forth from the land, he assured them that Allah was the author of all their prosperity (Kor. xxviii, 57). His main argument, however, is drawn from the weakness of the idols, which cannot create even a fly, contrasted with the wondrous manifestations of Divine power and providence in the creation of the heavens and the earth and all living things.<sup>2</sup>

It was probably towards the close of the Meccan period that Muḥammad summarised his Unitarian ideas in the following emphatic formula :—

#### THE SŪRA OF PURIFICATION (CXII).<sup>3</sup>

- (1) Say : 'God is One ;
- (2) God who liveth on ;
- (3) Without father and without son ;
- (4) And like to Him there is none !'

<sup>1</sup> Koran, xvii, 69.

<sup>2</sup> See, for example, the passages translated by Lane in his *Selections from the Kur-an* (London, 1843), pp. 100–113.

<sup>3</sup> *Ikhldz* means 'purifying one's self of belief in any god except Allah.'

2. We have seen that when Muḥammad first appeared as a prophet he was thought by all except a very few to be *majnūn*, i.e., possessed by a *jinni*, or genie, if I may use a word which will send the reader back to his *Arabian Nights*. The heathen Arabs regarded such persons—soothsayers, diviners, and poets—with a certain respect; and if Muḥammad's 'madness' had taken a normal course, his claim to inspiration would have passed unchallenged. What moved the Quraysh to oppose him was not disbelief in his inspiration—it mattered little to them whether he was under the spell of Allah or one of the *Jinn*—but the fact that he preached doctrines which wounded their sentiments, threatened their institutions, and subverted the most cherished traditions of old Arabian life. But in order successfully to resist the propaganda for which he alleged a Divine warrant, they were obliged to meet him on his own ground and to maintain that he was no prophet at all, no Apostle of Allah, as he asserted, but "an insolent liar," "a schooled madman," "an infatuated poet," and so forth; and that his Koran, which he gave out to be the Word of Allah, was merely "old folks' tales" (*asātīru 'l-awwālīn*), or the invention of a poet or a sorcerer. "Is not he," they cried, "a man like ourselves, who wishes to domineer over us? Let him show us a miracle, that we may believe." Muḥammad could only reiterate his former assertions and warn the infidels that a terrible punishment was in store for them either in this world or the next. Time after time he compares himself to the ancient prophets—Noah, Abraham, Moses, and their successors—who are represented as employing exactly the same arguments and receiving the same answers as Muḥammad; and bids his people hearken to him lest they utterly perish like the ungodly before them. The truth of the Koran is proved, he says, by the Pentateuch and the Gospel, all being Revelations of the One God, and therefore identical in substance. He is no mercenary soothsayer, he seeks no

Muḥammad, the  
Apostle of  
God.



personal advantage: his mission is solely to preach. The demand for a miracle he could not satisfy except by pointing to his visions of the Angel and especially to the Koran itself, every verse of which was a distinct sign or miracle (*dyat*).<sup>1</sup> If he has forged it, why are his adversaries unable to produce anything similar? "Say: 'If men and genies united to bring the like of this Koran, they could not bring the like although they should back each other up'" (Kor. xvii, 90).

3. Such notions of a future life as were current in Pre-islamic Arabia never rose beyond vague and barbarous superstition, e.g., the fancy that the dead man's tomb was haunted by his spirit in the shape of a screeching owl.<sup>2</sup> No wonder, then, that the ideas of Resurrection and Retribution, which are enforced by threats and arguments on almost every page of the Koran, appeared to the Meccan idolaters absurdly ridiculous and incredible. "Does Ibn Kabsha promise us that we shall live?" said one of their poets. "How can there be life for the *šadd* and the *hâma*? Dost thou omit to ward me from death, and wilt thou revive me when my bones are rotten?"<sup>3</sup> God provided His Apostle with a ready answer to these gibes: "Say: 'He shall revive them who produced them at first, for He knoweth every

Resurrection  
and  
Retribution.

<sup>1</sup> The Prophet's confession of his inability to perform miracles did not deter his followers from inventing them after his death. Thus it was said that he caused the infidels to see "the moon cloven asunder" (Koran, liv, 1), though, as is plain from the context, these words refer to one of the signs of the Day of Judgment.

<sup>2</sup> I take this opportunity of calling the reader's attention to a most interesting article by my friend and colleague, Professor A. A. Bevan, entitled *The Beliefs of Early Mohammedans respecting a Future Existence* (*Journal of Theological Studies*, October, 1904, p. 20 sqq.), where the whole subject is fully discussed.

<sup>3</sup> *Šhaddâd* b. al-Aswad al-Laythî, quoted in the *Risâlatu 'l-Ghufrân* of Abu 'l-'Alâ al-Ma'arrî (see my article in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1902, pp. 94 and 818); cf. Ibn Hishâm, p. 530, last line. Ibn (Abî) Kabsha was a nickname derisively applied to Muḥammad. *Šaddâ* and *hâma* refer to the death-bird which was popularly supposed to utter its shriek from the skull (*hâma*) of the dead, and both words may be rendered by 'soul' or 'wraith.'



creation" (Kor. xxxvi, 79). This topic is eloquently illustrated, but Muḥammad's hearers were probably less impressed by the creative power of God as exhibited in Nature and in Man than by the awful examples, to which reference has been made, of His destructive power as manifested in History. To Muḥammad himself, at the outset of his mission, it seemed an appalling certainty that he must one day stand before God and render an account; the overmastering sense of his own responsibility goaded him to preach in the hope of saving his countrymen, and supplied him, weak and timorous as he was, with strength to endure calumny and persecution. As Nöldeke has remarked, the grandest Súras of the whole Koran are those in which Muḥammad describes how all Nature trembles and quakes at the approach of the Last Judgment. "It is as though one actually saw the earth heaving, the mountains crumbling to dust, and the stars hurled hither and thither in wild confusion." <sup>1</sup> Súras lxxxii and ci, which have been translated above, are specimens of the true prophetic style.<sup>2</sup>

4. There is nothing spiritual in Muḥammad's pictures of Heaven and Hell. His Paradise is simply a glorified pleasure-garden, where the pious repose in cool shades, quaffing spicy wine and diverting themselves with the Houris (*Hūr*), lovely dark-eyed damsels like pearls hidden in their shells.<sup>3</sup> This was admirably calculated to allure his hearers by reminding them of one of their chief enjoyments—the gay drinking parties which occasionally broke the monotony of Arabian life, and which are often described in Pre-islamic poetry; indeed, it is highly probable that Muḥammad drew a good deal of his Paradise from this source. The gross and sensual character of the Muḥammadan Afterworld is commonly thought to betray a particular weak-

The  
Muḥammadan  
Paradise.

<sup>1</sup> Nöldeke, *Geschichte des Korâns*, p. 78.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. also Koran, xviii, 45-47; xx, 102 sqq.; xxxix, 67 sqq.; lxix, 13-37.

<sup>3</sup> The famous freethinker, Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arri, has cleverly satirised Muḥammadan notions on this subject in his *Risâlatu 'l-Ghufrân* (*J.R.A.S.* for October, 1900, p. 637 sqq.).

ness of the Prophet or is charged to the Arabs in general, but as Professor Bevan has pointed out, "the real explanation seems to be that at first the idea of a future retribution was absolutely new both to Muhammad himself and to the public which he addressed. Paradise and Hell had no traditional associations, and the Arabic language furnished no religious terminology for the expression of such ideas; if they were to be made comprehensible at all, it could only be done by means of precise descriptions, of imagery borrowed from earthly affairs." <sup>1</sup>

Muhammad was no mere visionary. Ritual observances, vigils, and other austerities entered largely into his religion, endowing it with the formal and ascetic character which it retains to the present day. Prayer was introduced soon after the first Revelations: in one of the oldest (Sūra lxxxvii, 14-15) we read, "*Prosperous is he who purifies himself (or gives alms) and repeats the name of his Lord and prays.*" Although the five daily prayers obligatory upon every true believer are nowhere mentioned in the Koran, the opening chapter (*Sūratu 'l-Fātiha*), which answers to our Lord's Prayer, is constantly recited on these occasions, and is seldom omitted from any act of public or private devotion. Since the *Fātiha* probably belongs to the latest Meccan period, it may find a place here.

#### THE OPENING SŪRA (I).

- (1) In the name of God, the Merciful, who forgiveth aye!
- (2) Praise to God, the Lord of all that be,
- (3) The Merciful, who forgiveth aye,
- (4) The King of Judgment Day!
- (5) Thee we worship and for Thine aid we pray.
- (6) Lead us in the right way,
- (7) The way of those to whom thou hast been gracious, against whom thou hast not waxed wroth, and who go not astray!

<sup>1</sup> *Journal of Theological Studies* for October, 1904, p. 22.



About the same time, shortly before the Migration, Muḥammad dreamed that he was transported from the Ka'ba to the Temple at Jerusalem, and thence up to the seventh heaven. The former part of the vision is indicated in the Koran (xvii, 1): "*Glory to him who took His servant a journey by night from the Sacred Mosque to the Farthest Mosque, the precinct whereof we have blessed, to show him of our signs!*" Tradition has wondrously embellished the *Mi'raj*, by which name the Ascension of the Prophet is generally known throughout the East; while in Persia and Turkey it has long been a favourite theme for the mystic and the poet. According to the popular belief, which is also held by the majority of Moslem divines, Muḥammad was transported in the body to his journey's end, but he himself never countenanced this literal interpretation, though it seems to have been current in Mecca, and we are told that it caused some of his incredulous followers to abandon their faith.

The Night  
journey and  
Ascension  
of Muḥammad.

Possessed and inspired by the highest idea of which man is capable, fearlessly preaching the truth revealed to him, leading almost alone what long seemed to be a forlorn hope against the impregnable stronghold of superstition, yet facing these tremendous odds with a calm resolution which yielded nothing to ridicule or danger, but defied his enemies to do their worst—Muḥammad in the early part of his career presents a spectacle of grandeur which cannot fail to win our sympathy and admiration. At Medína, whither we must now return, he appears in a less favourable light: the days of pure religious enthusiasm have passed away for ever, and the Prophet is overshadowed by the Statesman. The Migration was undoubtedly essential to the establishment of Islam. (It was necessary that Muḥammad should cut himself off from his own people in order that he might found a community in which not blood but religion formed the sole bond that was recognised. This task he

Muḥammad at  
Medína.



accomplished with consummate sagacity and skill, though some of the methods which he employed can only be excused by his conviction that whatever he did was done in the name of Allah. As the supreme head of the Moslem theocracy both in spiritual and temporal matters—for Islam allows no distinction between Church and State—he exercised absolute authority, and he did not hesitate to justify by Divine mandate acts of which the heathen Arabs, cruel and treacherous as they were, might have been ashamed to be guilty. We need not inquire how much was due to belief in his inspiration and how much to deliberate policy. If it revolts us to see God Almighty introduced in the rôle of special pleader, we ought to remember that Muḥammad, being what he was, could scarcely have considered the question from that point of view.

The conditions prevailing at Medína were singularly adapted to his design. Ever since the famous battle of Bu'âth (about

Medína  
predisposed to  
welcome  
Muḥammad as  
Legislator and  
Prophet.

615 A.D.), in which the Banú Aws, with the help of their Jewish allies, the Banú Qurayza and the Banú Nadîr, inflicted a crushing defeat upon the Banú Khazraj, the city had been divided into two hostile camps; and if peace had hitherto been preserved, it was only because both factions were too exhausted to renew the struggle. Wearied and distracted by earthly calamities, men's minds willingly admit the consolations of religion. We find examples of this tendency at Medína even before the Migration. Abú 'Ámir, whose ascetic life gained for him the title of 'The Monk' (*al-Rdhib*), is numbered among the *Hanifs*.<sup>1</sup> He fought in the ranks of the Quraysh at Uḥud, and finally went to Syria, where he died an outlaw. Another Pre-islamic monotheist of Medína, Abú Qays b. Abí Anas, is said to have turned Moslem in his old age.<sup>2</sup>

"The inhabitants of Medína had no material interest in idol-worship and no sanctuary to guard. Through uninterrupted contact with the Jews of the city and neighbourhood, as also with the Christian tribes settled in the extreme north of Arabia on

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Hishâm, p. 411, l. 6 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 347.

the confines of the Byzantine Empire, they had learned, as it were instinctively, to despise their inherited belief in idols and to respect the far nobler and purer faith in a single God ; and lastly, they had become accustomed to the idea of a Divine revelation by means of a special scripture of supernatural origin, like the Pentateuch and the Gospel. From a religious standpoint paganism in Medína offered no resistance to Islam : as a faith, it was dead before it was attacked ; none defended it, none mourned its disappearance. The pagan opposition to Muḥammad's work as a reformer was entirely political, and proceeded from those who wished to preserve the anarchy of the old heathen life, and who disliked the dictatorial rule of Muḥammad." \*

There were in Medína four principal parties, consisting of those who either warmly supported or actively opposed the Prophet, or who adopted a relatively neutral attitude, viz., the Emigrants (*Muhájirín*), the Helpers (*Anṣár*), the Hypocrites (*Munāfiqín*), and the Jews (*Yahúd*).

Parties in  
Medína.

The Emigrants were those Moslems who left their homes at Mecca and accompanied the Prophet in his Migration (*Hijra*)—whence their name, *Muhájirín*—to Medína in the year 622. Inasmuch as they had lost everything except the hope of victory and vengeance, he could count upon their fanatical devotion to himself.

The Emigrants.

The Helpers were those inhabitants of Medína who had accepted Islam and pledged themselves to protect Muḥammad in case of attack. Together with the Emigrants they constituted a formidable and ever-increasing body of true believers, the first champions of the Church militant.

The Helpers.

"Many citizens of Medína, however, were not so well disposed towards Muḥammad, and neither acknowledged him as a Prophet nor would submit to him as their Ruler ; but since they durst not come forward against him openly on account of the multitude of his enthusiastic adherents, they met him with a passive resistance which more than once thwarted his plans

The Hypocrites.

\* L. Caetani, *Annali dell' Islam*, vol. i, p. 389.



their influence was so great that he, on his part, did not venture to take decisive measures against them, and sometimes even found it necessary to give way."<sup>1</sup>

These are the Hypocrites whom Muḥammad describes in the following verses of the Koran :—

#### THE SÚRA OF THE HEIFER (II).

- (7) And there are those among men who say, ' We believe in God and in the Last Day ' ; but they do not believe.
- (8) They would deceive God and those who do believe ; but they deceive only themselves and they do not perceive.
- (9) In their hearts is a sickness, and God has made them still more sick, and for them is grievous woe because they lied.<sup>2</sup>

Their leader, 'Abdulláh b. Ubayy, an able man but of weak character, was no match for Muḥammad, whom he and his partisans only irritated, without ever becoming really dangerous.

The Jews, on the other hand, gave the Prophet serious trouble. At first he cherished high hopes that they would accept the new Revelation which he brought to them, and which he maintained to be the original Word of God as it was formerly revealed to Abraham and Moses ; but when the Jews, perceiving the absurdity of this idea, plied him with all sorts of questions and made merry over his ignorance, Muḥammad, keenly alive to the damaging effect of the criticism to which he had exposed himself, turned upon his tormentors, and roundly accused them of having falsified and corrupted their Holy Books. Henceforth he pursued them with a deadly hatred against which their political disunion rendered them helpless. A few sought refuge in Islam ; the rest were either slaughtered or driven into exile.

It is impossible to detail here the successive steps by which

<sup>1</sup> Nöldeke, *Geschichte des Qoráns*, p. 122.

<sup>2</sup> Translated by E. H. Palmer.



Muhammad in the course of a few years overcame all opposition and established the supremacy of Islam from one end of Arabia to the other. I shall notice the outstanding events very briefly in order to make room for matters which are more nearly connected with the subject of this History.

( Muhammad's first care was to reconcile the desperate factions within the city and to introduce law and order among the heterogeneous elements which have been described. "He drew up in writing a charter between the Emigrants and the Helpers, in which charter he embodied a covenant with the Jews, confirming them in the exercise of their religion and in the possession of their properties, imposing upon them certain obligations, and granting to them certain rights."<sup>1</sup> This remarkable document is extant in Ibn Hishām's *Biography of Muhammad*, pp. 341-344. Its contents have been analysed in masterly fashion by Wellhausen,<sup>2</sup> who observes with justice that it was no solemn covenant, accepted and duly ratified by representatives of the parties concerned, but merely a decree of Muhammad based upon conditions already existing which had developed since his arrival in Medina. At the same time no one can study it without being impressed by the political genius of its author. Ostensibly a cautious and tactful reform, it was in reality a revolution. Muhammad durst not strike openly at the independence of the tribes, but he destroyed it, in effect, by shifting the centre of power from the tribe to the community; and although the community included Jews and pagans as well as Moslems, he fully recognised, what his opponents failed to foresee, that the Moslems were the active, and must soon be the predominant, partners in the newly founded State.)

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Hishām, p. 341, l. 5.

<sup>2</sup> *Muhammad's Gemeindeordnung von Medina in Skizzen und Vorarbeiten*, Heft IV, p. 67 sqq.

[All was now ripe for the inevitable struggle with the Quraysh, and God revealed to His Apostle several verses of the Koran in which the Faithful are commanded to wage a Holy War against them]: "*Permission is given to those who fight because they have been wronged,—and verily God to help them has the might,—who have been driven forth from their homes undeservedly, only for that they said, 'Our Lord is God'*" (xxii, 40-41). "*Kill them wherever ye find them, and drive them out from whence they drive you out*" (ii, 187). "*Fight them that there be no sedition and that the religion may be God's*" (ii, 189). [In January, 624 A.D., the Moslems, some three hundred strong, won a glorious victory at Badr over a greatly superior force which had marched out from Mecca to relieve a rich caravan that Muḥammad threatened to cut off.) The Quraysh fought bravely, but were borne down by the irresistible onset of men who had learned discipline in the mosque and looked upon death as a sure passport to Paradise. Of the Moslems only fourteen fell; the Quraysh lost forty-nine killed and about the same number of prisoners. But the importance of Muḥammad's success cannot be measured by the material damage which he inflicted. Considering the momentous issues involved, we must allow that Badr, like Marathon, is one of the greatest and most memorable battles in all history. Here, at last, was the miracle which the Prophet's enemies demanded of him: "*Ye have had a sign in the two parties who met; one party fighting in the way of God, the other misbelieving; these saw twice the same number as themselves to the eyesight, for God aids with His help those whom He pleases. Verily in that is a lesson for those who have perception*" (Kor. iii, 11). And again, "*Ye slew them not, but God slew them*" (Kor. viii, 17). The victory of Badr turned all eyes upon Muḥammad. However little the Arabs cared for his religion, they could not but respect the man who had humbled the lords of Mecca. He was now a power in the land—

Battle of Badr,  
January, 624 A.D.



"Muhammad, King of the Hijáz."\* In Medína his cause flourished mightily. The zealots were confirmed in their faith, the waverers convinced, the disaffected overawed. He sustained a serious, though temporary, check in the following year at Uhud, where a Moslem army was routed

Battle of Uhud,  
625 A.D.

by the Quraysh under Abú Sufyán, but the victors were satisfied with having taken vengeance for Badr and made no attempt to follow up their advantage; while Muhammad, never resting on his laurels, never losing sight of the goal, proceeded with remorseless calculation to crush his adversaries one after the other, until in January, 630 A.D., the Meccans themselves, seeing the futility of

Submission of  
Mecca, 630 A.D.

further resistance, opened their gates to the Prophet and acknowledged the omnipotence of Allah.) The submission of the Holy City left Muhammad without a rival in Arabia. His work was almost done. Deputations from the Bedouin tribes poured into Medína, offering allegiance to the conqueror of the Quraysh, and reluctantly subscribing to a religion in which they saw nothing so agreeable as the prospect of plundering its enemies.

(Muhammad died, after a brief illness, on the 8th of June, 632 A.D. He was succeeded as head of the Moslem community by his old friend and ever-loyal supporter,

Death of  
Muhammad,  
632 A.D.

Abú Bakr, who thus became the first *Khalifa*, or Caliph.) It only remains to take up our survey of the Koran, which we have carried down to the close of the Meccan period, and to indicate the character and contents of the Revelation during the subsequent decade.

The Medína Sûras faithfully reflect the marvellous change in Muhammad's fortunes, which began with his flight from Mecca. He was now recognised as the Prophet and Apostle of God, but this recognition made him an earthly potentate and turned his religious activity into secular channels. One

\* Ibn Hishâm, p. 763, l. 12.



who united in himself the parts of prince, legislator, politician, diplomatist, and general may be excused if he sometimes neglected the Divine injunction to arise and preach, or at any rate interpreted it in a sense very different from that which he formerly attached to it.

The Medina  
Súras.

The Revelations of this time deal, to a large extent, with matters of legal, social, and political interest; they promulgate religious ordinances—*e.g.*, fasting, alms-giving, and pilgrimage—expound the laws of marriage and divorce, and comment upon the news of the day; often they serve as bulletins or manifestoes in which Muḥammad justifies what he has done, urges the Moslems to fight and rebukes the laggards, moralises on a victory or defeat, proclaims a truce, and says, in short, whatever the occasion seems to require. Instead of the Meccan idolaters, his opponents in Medina—the Jews and Hypocrites—have become the great rocks of offence; the Jews especially are denounced in long passages as a stiff-necked generation who never hearkened to their own prophets of old. However valuable historically, the Medina Súras do not attract the literary reader. In their flat and tedious style they resemble those of the later Meccan period. Now and again the ashes burst into flame, though such moments of splendour are increasingly rare, as in the famous ‘Throne-verse’ (*Áyat al-Kursi*):—

“God, there is no god but He, the living, the self-subsistent. Slumber takes Him not, nor sleep. His is what is in the heavens and what is in the earth. Who is it that intercedes with Him save by His permission? He knows what is before them and what behind them, and they comprehend not aught of His knowledge but of what He pleases. His throne extends over the heavens and the earth, and it tires Him not to guard them both, for He is high and grand.”<sup>1</sup>

The ‘Throne-  
verse.’

The Islam which Muḥammad brought with him to Medina was almost entirely derived by oral tradition from Christianity

<sup>1</sup> Koran, ii, 256, translated by E. H. Palmer.

and Judaism, and just for this reason it made little impression on the heathen Arabs, whose religious ideas were generally of the most primitive kind. Notwithstanding its foreign character and the absence of anything which appealed to Arabian national sentiment, it spread rapidly in Medīna, where, as we have seen, the soil was already prepared for it; but one may well doubt whether it could have extended its sway over the peninsula unless the course of events had determined Muḥammad to associate the strange doctrines of Islam with the ancient heathen sanctuary at Mecca, the Ka'ba, which was held in universal veneration by the Arabs and formed the centre of a worship that raised no difficulties in their minds.) Before he had lived many months

The nationalisation of Islam.

in Medīna the Prophet realised that his hope of converting the Jews was doomed to disappointment. Accordingly he instructed his followers that they should no longer turn their faces in prayer towards the Temple at Jerusalem, as they had been accustomed to do since the Flight, but towards the Ka'ba; while, a year or two later, he incorporated in Islam the superstitious ceremonies of the pilgrimage, which were represented as having been originally prescribed to Abraham, the legendary founder of the Ka'ba, whose religion he professed to restore.

These concessions, however, were far from sufficient to reconcile the free-living and free-thinking people of the desert to a religion which restrained their pleasures, forced them to pay taxes and perform prayers, and stamped with the name of barbarism all the virtues they held most dear. (The teaching of Islam ran directly counter to the ideals and traditions of heathendom, and, as Goldziher has remarked, its originality lies not in its doctrines, which are Jewish and Christian, but in the fact that it was Muḥammad who first maintained these doctrines with persistent energy against the Arabian view of life.<sup>1</sup>) While we must refer the reader to Dr.

<sup>1</sup> *Muhamm. Studien*, Part I, p. 12.



Goldziher's illuminating pages for a full discussion of the conflict between the new Religion (*Dīn*) and the old Virtue (*Muruwwa*), it will not be amiss to summarise the chief points at which they clashed with each other.<sup>\*</sup> In the first place, the fundamental idea of Islam was foreign and unintelligible to the Bedouins. "It was not the destruction of their idols that they opposed so much as the spirit of devotion which it was sought to implant in them: the determination of their whole lives by the thought of God and of His pre-ordaining and retributive omnipotence, the prayers and fasts, the renouncement of coveted pleasures, and the sacrifice of money and property which was demanded of them in God's name." In spite of the saying, *Lā dīna illā bi 'l-muruwwati* ("There is no religion without virtue"), the Bedouin who accepted Islam had to unlearn the greater part of his unwritten moral code. As a pious Moslem he must return good for evil, forgive his enemy, and find balm for his wounded feelings in the assurance of being admitted to Paradise (Kor. iii, 128). Again, the social organisation of the heathen Arabs was based on the tribe, whereas that of Islam rested on the equality and fraternity of all believers. The religious bond cancelled all distinctions of rank and pedigree; it did away, theoretically, with clannish feuds, contests for honour, pride of race—things that lay at the very root of Arabian chivalry. "*Lo*," cried Muḥammad, "*the noblest of you in the sight of God is he who most doth fear Him*" (Kor. xlix, 13). Against such doctrine the conservative and material instincts of the desert people rose in revolt; and although they became Moslems *en masse*, the majority of them neither believed in Islam nor knew what it meant. Often their motives were frankly utilitarian: they expected that Islam would bring them luck; and so long as they were sound in body, and their mares had fine foals, and

<sup>\*</sup> See Goldziher's introductory chapter entitled *Muruwwa und Dīn* (*ibid.*, pp. 1-39).



their wives bore well-formed sons, and their wealth and herds multiplied, they said, "We have been blessed ever since we adopted this religion," and were content; but if things went ill they blamed Islam and turned their backs on it.<sup>1</sup> That these men were capable of religious zeal is amply proved by the triumphs which they won a short time afterwards over the disciplined armies of two mighty empires; but what chiefly inspired them, apart from love of booty, was the conviction, born of success, that Allah was fighting on their side.

We have sketched, however barely and imperfectly, the progress of Islam from Muḥammad's first appearance as a preacher to the day of his death. In these twenty years the seeds were sown of almost every development which occurs in the political and intellectual history of the Arabs during the ages to come. More than any man that has ever lived, Muḥammad shaped the destinies of his people; and though they left him far behind as they moved along the path of civilisation, they still looked back to him for guidance and authority at each step. This is not the place to attempt an estimate of his character, which has been so diversely judged. Personally, I feel convinced that he was neither a shameless impostor nor a neurotic degenerate nor a socialistic reformer, but in the beginning, at all events, a sincere religious enthusiast, as truly inspired as any prophet of the Old Testament.

"We find in him," writes De Goeje, "that sober understanding which distinguished his fellow-tribesmen: dignity, tact, and equilibrium; qualities which are seldom found in people of morbid constitution: self-control in no small degree. Circumstances changed him from a Prophet to a Legislator and a Ruler, but for himself he sought nothing beyond the acknowledgment that he was Allah's Apostle, since this acknow-

Character of  
Muḥammad.

<sup>1</sup> Bayḍāwī on Koran, xxii, 11.

ledgment includes the whole of Islam. He was excitable, like every true Arab, and in the spiritual struggle which preceded his call this quality was stimulated to an extent that alarmed even himself; but that does not make him a visionary. He defends himself, by the most solemn asseveration, against the charge that what he had seen was an illusion of the senses. Why should not we believe him?"\*

---

\* *Die Berufung Mohammed's*, by M. J. de Goeje in *Nöldeke-Festschrift* (Giessen, 1906), vol. i, p. 5.

## CHAPTER V

### THE ORTHODOX CALIPHATE AND THE Umayyad DYNASTY

THE Caliphate—*i.e.*, the period of the Caliphs or Successors of Muḥammad—extends over six centuries and a quarter (632–1258 A.D.), and falls into three clearly-marked divisions of very unequal length and diverse character.

The first division begins with the election of Abū Bakr, the first Caliph, in 632, and comes to an end with the assassination of 'Alī, the Prophet's son-in-law and fourth successor, in 661. These four Caliphs are known as the Orthodox (*al-Rāshidūn*), because they trod faithfully in the footsteps of the Prophet and ruled after his example in the holy city of Medīna, with the assistance of his leading Companions, who constituted an informal Senate.

The second division includes the Caliphs of the family of Umayya, from the accession of Mu'āwiya in 661 to the great battle of the Zāb in 750, when Marwān II, the last of his line, was defeated by the 'Abbāsids, who claimed the Caliphate as next of kin to the Prophet. According to Moslem notions the Umayyads were kings by right, Caliphs only by courtesy. They had, as we shall see, no spiritual title, and little enough religion of any sort. This dynasty, which had been raised and was upheld by the Syrian Arabs, transferred the seat of government from Medina to Damascus.

The Orthodox  
Caliphate (632–  
661 A.D.).

The Umayyad  
Caliphate (661–  
750 A.D.).



The third division is by far the longest and most important. Starting in 750 with the accession of Abu 'l-'Abbás al-Saffáh, it presents an unbroken series of thirty-seven Caliphs of the same House, and culminates, after the lapse of half a millennium, in the sack of Baghdád, their magnificent capital, by the Mongol Húlágú (January, 1258). The 'Abbásids were no less despotic than the Umayyads, but in a more enlightened fashion ; for, while the latter had been purely Arab in feeling, the 'Abbásids owed their throne to the Persian nationalists, and were imbued with Persian ideas, which introduced a new and fruitful element into Moslem civilisation.

The 'Abbásid  
Caliphate (750-  
1258 A.D.)

From our special point of view the Orthodox and Umayyad Caliphates, which form the subject of the present chapter, are somewhat barren. The simple life of the pagan Arabs found full expression in their poetry. The many-sided life of the Moslems under 'Abbásid rule may be studied in a copious literature which exhibits all the characteristics of the age ; but of contemporary documents illustrating the intellectual history of the early Islamic period comparatively little has been preserved, and that little, being for the most part anti-Islamic in tendency, gives only meagre information concerning what excites interest beyond anything else—the religious movement, the rise of theology, and the origin of those great parties and sects which emerge, at various stages of development, in later literature.

Early Islamic  
Literature.

Since the Moslem Church and State are essentially one, it is impossible to treat of politics apart from religion, nor can religious phenomena be understood without continual reference to political events. The following brief sketch of the Orthodox Caliphate will show how completely this unity was realised, and what far-reaching consequences it had.

Unity of Church  
and State.

That Muḥammad left no son was perhaps of less moment than his neglect or refusal to nominate a successor. The

Arabs were unfamiliar with the hereditary descent of kingly power, while the idea had not yet dawned of a Divine right resident in the Prophet's family. It was thoroughly in accord with Arabian practice that the Moslem community should elect its own leader, just as in heathen days the tribe chose its own chief. The likeliest men—all three belonged to Quraysh—were Abū Bakr, whose daughter 'Ā'isha had been Muḥammad's favourite wife, 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, and 'Alī, Abū Ṭālib's son and Fāṭima's husband, who was thus connected with the Prophet by blood as well as by marriage. Abū Bakr

Abū Bakr  
elected Caliph  
(June, 632 A.D.).

was the eldest, he was supported by 'Umar, and on him the choice ultimately fell, though not without an ominous ebullition of party strife. A

man of simple tastes and unassuming demeanour, he had earned the name *al-Ṣiddīq*, i.e., the True, by his unquestioning faith in the Prophet; naturally gentle and merciful, he stood firm when the cause of Islam was at stake, and crushed with iron hand the revolt which on the news of Muḥammad's death spread like wildfire through Arabia. False prophets arose, and the Bedouins rallied round them, eager to throw off the burden

Musaylima the  
Liar.

of tithes and prayers. In the centre of the peninsula, the Banū Ḥanīfa were led to battle by Musaylima, who imitated the early style of the

Koran with ludicrous effect, if we may judge from the sayings ascribed to him, e.g., "The elephant, what is the elephant, and who shall tell you what is the elephant? He has a poor tail, and a long trunk: and is a trifling part of the creations of thy God." Moslem tradition calls him the Liar (*al-Kaḏhdhāb*), and represents him as an obscene miracle-monger, which can hardly be the whole truth. It is possible that he got some of his doctrines from Christianity, as Professor Margoliouth has suggested,<sup>1</sup> but we know too little about them to arrive at any conclusion. After a desperate struggle Musaylima was defeated

<sup>1</sup> *On the Origin and Import of the Names Muslim and Hanif* (J.R.A.S. for 1903, p. 491).



and slain by 'the Sword of Allah,' Khálid b. Walíd. The Moslem arms were everywhere victorious. Arabia bowed in sullen submission.

Although Muir and other biographers of Muḥammad have argued that Islam was originally designed for the Arabs alone, and made no claim to universal acceptance, their assertion is contradicted by the unequivocal testimony of the Koran itself. In one of the oldest Revelations (lxviii, 51-52), we read: "*It wanteth little but that the unbelievers dash thee to the ground with their looks (of anger) when they hear the Warning (i.e., the Koran); and they say, 'He is assuredly mad': but it (the Koran) is no other than a WARNING UNTO ALL CREATURES*" (*dhikr<sup>um</sup> li'l-'damln*).<sup>1</sup> The time had now come when this splendid dream was to be, in large measure, fulfilled. [The great wars of

Islam a world-religion.

Conquest of Persia and Syria (633-643 A.D.).

conquest were inspired by the Prophet's missionary zeal and justified by his example. Pious duty coincided with reasons of state. "It was certainly good policy to turn the recently subdued tribes of the wilderness towards an external aim in which they might at once satisfy their lust for booty on a grand scale, maintain their warlike feeling, and strengthen themselves in their attachment to the new faith."<sup>2</sup> The story of their achievements cannot be set down here. Suffice it to say that within twelve years after the Prophet's death the Persian Empire had been reduced to a tributary province, and Syria, together with Egypt, torn away from Byzantine rule.] It must not be supposed that the fol-

Moslem toleration.

lowers of Zoroaster and Christ in these countries were forcibly converted to Islam. Thousands embraced it of free will, impelled by various motives which we have no space to enumerate; those who clung to the religion in which they had been brought up

<sup>1</sup> See T. W. Arnold's *The Preaching of Islam*, p. 23 seq., where several passages of like import are collected.

<sup>2</sup> Nöldeke, *Sketches from Eastern History*, translated by J. S. Black, p. 73.



secured protection and toleration by payment of a capitation-tax (*jizya*).<sup>1</sup>

The tide of foreign conquest, which had scarce begun to flow before the death of Abú Bakr, swept with amazing rapidity over Syria and Persia in the Caliphate of <sup>The Caliph</sup> 'Umar (634-644 <sup>A.D.</sup>), and continued to advance, though with diminished fury, under the Prophet's third successor, 'Uthmán. We may dwell for a little on the noble figure of 'Umar, who was regarded by good Moslems in after times as an embodiment of all the virtues which a Caliph ought to possess. Probably his character has been idealised, but in any case the anecdotes related of him give an admirable picture of the man and his age. Here are a few, taken almost at random from the pages of Ṭabarí.

One said : " I saw 'Umar coming to the Festival. He walked with bare feet, using both hands (for he was ambidextrous) to draw round him a red embroidered cloth. He towered above the people, as though he were on horseback." <sup>His simple manners.</sup> A client of (the Caliph) 'Uthmán b. 'Affán relates that he mounted behind his patron and they rode together to the enclosure for the beasts which were delivered in payment of the poor-tax. It was an exceedingly hot day and the simoom was blowing fiercely. They saw a man clad only in a loin-cloth

and a short cloak (*ridá*), in which he had wrapped his head, driving the camels into the enclosure. 'Uthmán said to his companion, " Who is this, think you ? " When they came up to him, behold, it was 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭáb. " By God," said 'Uthmán, " this is *the strong, the trusty*." <sup>1</sup>—'Umar used to go round the markets and recite the Koran and judge between disputants wherever he found them. When Ka'bu 'l-Aḥbár, a well-known Rabbin of Medina, asked how he could obtain access to the Commander of the Faithful, <sup>2</sup> he received this answer : " There

<sup>1</sup> See Professor Browne's *Literary History of Persia*, vol. i, p. 200 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Ṭabarí, i, 2729, l. 15 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, i, 2736, l. 5 sqq. The words in italics are quoted from Koran, xxviii, 26, where they are applied to Moses.

<sup>4</sup> 'Umar was the first to assume this title (*Amiru 'l-Mu'minin*), by which the Caliphs after him were generally addressed.

is no door nor curtain to be passed ; he performs the rites of prayer, then he takes his seat, and any one that wishes may speak to him."

'Umar said in one of his public orations : "By Him who sent Muhammad with the truth, were a single camel to die of neglect on the bank of the Euphrates, I should fear lest God should call the family of al-Khattāb" (meaning

*His sense of personal responsibility.*

himself) "to account therefor."—"If I live," he is reported to have said on another occasion, "please God, I will assuredly spend a whole year in travelling among my subjects, for I know they have wants which are cut short ere they reach my ears : the governors do not bring the wants of the people before me, while the people themselves do not attain to me." So I will journey to Syria and remain there two months, then to Mesopotamia and remain there two months, then to Egypt and remain there two months, then to Baḥrayn and remain there two months, then to Kúfa and remain there two months, then to Baṣra and remain there two months ; and by God, it will be a year well spent!"—One night he came to the house of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán b. 'Awf and knocked at the door, which was opened by 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán's wife. "Do not enter," said she, "until I go back and sit in my place ;" so he waited. Then she bade him come in, and on his asking, "Have you anything in the house?" she fetched him some food. Meanwhile 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán was standing by, engaged in prayer. "Be quick, man!" cried 'Umar. 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán immediately pronounced the final salaam, and turning to the Caliph said : "O Commander of the Faithful, what has brought you here at this hour?" 'Umar replied : "A party of travellers who alighted in the neighbourhood of the market : I was afraid that the thieves of Medina might fall upon them. Let us go and keep watch." So he set off with 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán, and

*The Caliph as a policeman.*

when they reached the market-place they seated themselves on some high ground and began to converse. Presently they descried, far away, the light of a lamp. "Have not I forbidden lamps after bedtime?"<sup>2</sup> exclaimed the Caliph. They went to the spot and found a company drinking wine. "Begone," said 'Umar to 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán ; "I know him." Next morning he sent for the culprit and said, addressing him by name, "Last night you were drinking wine with your friends." "O Commander of the Faithful, how did

<sup>2</sup> Tabarī, i, 2738, 7 sqq.    <sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, i, 2739, 4 sqq.    <sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, i, 2737, 4 sqq.

<sup>4</sup> It is explained that 'Umar prohibited lamps because rats used to take the lighted wick and set fire to the house-roofs, which at that time were made of palm-branches



you ascertain that?" "I saw it with my own eyes." "Has not God forbidden you to play the spy?" 'Umar made no answer and pardoned his offence.—When 'Umar ascended the pulpit for the purpose of warning the people that they must not do something, he gathered his family and said to them: "I have forbidden the people to do so-and-so. Now, the people look at you as birds look at flesh, and I swear by God that if I find any one of you doing this thing, I will double the penalty against him."—Whenever he appointed a governor he used to draw up in writing a certificate of investiture, which he caused to be witnessed by some of the Emigrants or Helpers. It contained the following instructions: That he must not ride on horseback, nor eat white bread, nor wear fine clothes, nor set up a door between himself and those who had aught to ask of him.<sup>1</sup>—It was 'Umar's custom to go forth with his governors, on their appointment, to bid them farewell. "I have not appointed you," he would say, "over the people of Muḥammad (God bless him and grant him peace!) that you may drag them by their hair and scourge their skins, but in order that you may lead them in prayer and judge between them with right and divide (the public money) amongst them with equity. I have not made you lords of their skin and hair. Do not flog the Arabs lest you humiliate them, and do not keep them long on foreign service lest you tempt them to sedition, and do not neglect them lest you render them desperate. Confine yourselves to the Koran, write few Traditions of Muḥammad (God bless him and grant him peace!), and I am your ally." He used to permit retaliation against his governors. On receiving a complaint about any one of them he confronted him with the accuser, and punished him if his guilt were proved.<sup>2</sup>

It was 'Umar who first made a Register (*Dīwān*) of the Arabs in Islam and entered them therein according to their tribes and assigned to them their stipends. The following account of its institution is extracted from the charming history entitled *al-Fakhri*:—

In the fifteenth year of the Hijra (636 A.D.) 'Umar, who was then Caliph, seeing that the conquests proceeded without interruption

<sup>1</sup> Tabari, i, 2742, 13 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, i, 2747, 7 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, i, 2745, 15 sqq.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, i, 2740, last line and foll.



and that the treasures of the Persian monarchs had been taken as spoil, and that load after load was being accumulated of gold and silver and precious jewels and splendid raiment, resolved to enrich the Moslems by distributing all this wealth amongst them; but he did not know how he should manage it. Now there was a Persian satrap (*marzubán*) at Medina who, when he saw 'Umar's bewilderment, said to him, "O Commander of the Faithful, the Persian kings have a thing they call a *Diwán*, in which is kept the whole of their revenues and expenditures without exception; and therein those who receive stipends are arranged in classes, so that no confusion occurs." 'Umar's attention was aroused. He bade the satrap describe it, and on comprehending its nature, he drew up the registers and assigned the stipends, appointing a specified allowance for every Moslem; and he allotted fixed sums to the wives of the Apostle (on whom be God's blessing and peace!) and to his concubines and next-of-kin, until he exhausted the money in hand. He did not lay up a store in the treasury. Some one came to him and said: "O Commander of the Faithful, you should have left something to provide for contingencies." 'Umar rebuked him, saying, "The devil has put these words into your mouth. May God preserve me from their mischief! for it were a temptation to my successors. Come what may, I will provide naught except obedience to God and His Apostle. That is our provision, whereby we have gained that which we have gained." Then, in respect of the stipends, he deemed it right that precedence should be according to priority of conversion to Islam and of service rendered to the Apostle on his fields of battle.\*

Affinity to Muhammad was also considered. "By God," exclaimed 'Umar, "we have not won superiority in this world, nor do we hope for recompense for our works from

The aristocracy of Islam.

God hereafter, save through Muhammad (God bless him and grant him peace!). He is our title to nobility, his tribe are the noblest of the Arabs, and after them those are the nobler that are nearer to him in blood. Truly, the Arabs are ennobled by God's Apostle. Peradventure some of them have many ancestors in common with him, and we ourselves are only removed by a few forbears from his line of descent, in which we accompany him back to Adam. Notwith-

"Tis only noble to be good."

standing this, if the foreigners bring good works and we bring none, by God, they are nearer to Muhammad on the day of Resurrection than we. Therefore let no man regard affinity, but let him work for that which is in God's

\* *Al-Fakhri*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 116, l. 1 to p. 117, l. 3.

hands to bestow. He that is retarded by his works will not be sped by his lineage." \*

It may be said of 'Umar, not less appropriately than of Cromwell, that he

"cast the kingdoms old  
Into another mould ;"

and he too justified the poet's maxim—

"The same arts that did gain  
A power, must it maintain."

Under the system which he organised Arabia, purged of infidels, became a vast recruiting-ground for the standing armies of Islam : the Arabs in the conquered territories formed an exclusive military class, living in great camps and supported by revenues derived from the non-Muḥammadan population. Out of such camps arose two cities destined to make their mark in literary history—Baṣra (Bassora) on the delta of the Tigris and Euphrates, and Kúfa, which was founded about the same time on the western branch of the latter stream, not far from Híra.

Foundation of  
Baṣra and Kúfa  
(638 A.D.).

'Umar was murdered by a Persian slave named Fíróz while leading the prayers in the Great Mosque. With his death the military theocracy and the palmy days of the Patriarchal Caliphate draw to a close. The broad lines of his character appear in the anecdotes translated above, though many details might be added to complete the picture. Simple and frugal ; doing his duty without fear or favour ; energetic even to harshness, yet capable of tenderness towards the weak ; a severe judge of others and especially of himself, he was a born ruler and every inch a man. Looking back on

Death of 'Umar  
(644 A.D.)

\* Ṭabarí, i, 275f, 9 sqq.



the turmoils which followed his death one is inclined to agree with the opinion of a saintly doctor who said, five centuries afterwards, that "the good fortune of Islam was shrouded in the grave-clothes of 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb."<sup>1</sup>

When the Meccan aristocrats accepted Islam, they only yielded to the inevitable. They were now to have an opportunity of revenging themselves. 'Uthmān b.

<sup>'Uthmān elected Caliph (644 A.D.).</sup>

'Affān, who succeeded 'Umar as Caliph, belonged to a distinguished Meccan family, the Umayyads or descendants of Umayya, which had always taken a leading part in the opposition to Muhammad; though 'Uthmān himself was among the Prophet's first disciples. He was a pious, well-meaning old man—an easy tool in the hands of his ambitious kinsfolk. They soon climbed into all the most lucrative and important offices and lived on the fat of the land, while too often their ungodly behaviour gave point to the question whether these converts of the eleventh hour were not still heathens at

heart. Other causes contributed to excite a general discontent. The rapid growth of luxury and immorality in the Holy Cities as well as in the

<sup>General disaffection.</sup>

new settlements was an eyesore to devout Moslems. The true Islamic aristocracy, the Companions of the Prophet, headed by 'Alī, Ṭalḥa, and Zubayr, strove to undermine the rival nobility which threatened them with destruction. The factious soldiery were ripe for revolt against Umayyad arrogance and greed. Rebellion broke out, and finally the

<sup>'Uthmān murdered (656 A.D.).</sup>

aged Caliph, after enduring a siege of several weeks, was murdered in his own house. This event marks an epoch in the history of the Arabs. The ensuing civil wars rent the unity of Islam from top to bottom, and the wound has never healed.

'Alī, the Prophet's cousin and son-in-law, who had hitherto

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikān (ed. by Wüstenfeld), No. 68, p. 96, l. 3; De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 152.



remained in the background, was now made Caliph. Although the suspicion that he was in league with the murderers may be put aside, he showed culpable weakness in leaving 'Uthmán to his fate without an effort to save him. But 'Alí had almost every virtue except those of the ruler: energy, decision, and foresight. He was a gallant warrior, a wise counsellor, a true friend, and a generous foe.

'Alí elected Caliph (656 A.D.). He excelled in poetry and in eloquence; his verses and sayings are famous throughout the Muḥammadan East, though few of them can be considered authentic. A fine spirit worthy to be compared with Montrose and Bayard, he had no talent for the stern realities of statecraft, and was overmatched by unscrupulous rivals who knew that "war is a game of deceit." Thus his career was in one sense a failure: his authority as Caliph was never admitted, while he lived, by the whole community. On the other hand, he has exerted, down to

Character of 'Alí. the present day, a posthumous influence only second to that of Muḥammad himself. Within a century of his death he came to be regarded as the Prophet's successor *jure divino*; as a blessed martyr, sinless and infallible; and by some even as an incarnation of God. The 'Alí of Shi'ite legend is not an historical figure glorified: rather does he symbolise, in purely mythical fashion, the religious aspirations and political aims of a large section of the Moslem world.

His apotheosis. To return to our narrative. No sooner was 'Alí proclaimed Caliph by the victorious rebels than Mu'áwiya b.

'Alí against Mu'áwiya. Abí Sufyán, the governor of Syria, raised the cry of vengeance for 'Uthmán and refused to take the oath of allegiance. As head of the Umayyad family, Mu'áwiya might justly demand that the murderers of his kinsman should be punished, but the con-

test between him and 'Alī was virtually for the Caliphate. A great battle was fought at Šiffin, a village on the Euphrates. 'Alī had well-nigh gained the day when Mu'āwiya bethought him of a stratagem.

*Battle of Šiffin*  
(657 A.D.).

He ordered his troops to fix Korans on the points of their lances and to shout, "Here is the Book of God: let it decide between us!" The miserable trick succeeded. In 'Alī's army there were many pious fanatics to whom the proposed arbitration by the Koran appealed with irresistible force. They now sprang forward clamorously, threatening to betray their leader unless he would submit his cause to the Book. Vainly did 'Alī remonstrate with the mutineers, and warn them of the trap into which they were driving him, and this too at the moment when victory was within their grasp. He

*Arbitration.*

had no choice but to yield and name as his umpire a man of doubtful loyalty, Abū Músá al-Ash'arī, one of the oldest surviving Companions of the Prophet. Mu'āwiya on his part named 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ, whose cunning had prompted the decisive manœuvre. When the umpires came forth to give judgment, Abū Músá rose and in accordance with what had been arranged at the preliminary conference pronounced that both 'Alī

*The award.*

and Mu'āwiya should be deposed and that the people should elect a proper Caliph in their stead. "Lo," said he, laying down his sword, "even thus do I depose 'Alī b. Abī Ṭālib." Then 'Amr advanced and spoke as follows: "O people! ye have heard the judgment of my colleague. He has called you to witness that he deposes 'Alī. Now I call you to witness that I confirm Mu'āwiya, even as I make fast this sword of mine," and suiting the action to the word, he returned it to its sheath. It is characteristic of Arabian notions of morality that this impudent fraud was hailed by Mu'āwiya's adherents as a diplomatic triumph which gave him a colourable pretext



for assuming the title of Caliph. Both sides prepared to renew the struggle, but in the meanwhile 'Alī found his hands full nearer home. A numerous party among his troops, including the same zealots who had forced arbitration upon him, now cast him off because he had accepted it, fell out from the ranks, and raised the standard of revolt. These 'Outgoers,' or

The Khārijites  
revolt against  
'Alī.

Khārijites, as they were called, maintained their theocratic principles with desperate courage, and though often defeated took the field again and again.

'Alī's plans for recovering Syria were finally abandoned in 660, when he concluded peace with Mu'āwiya, and shortly afterwards he was struck down in the Mosque at Kūfa, which he had made his capital, by Ibn Muljam, a Khārijite conspirator.

Alī assassinated  
(661 A.D.).

With 'Alī's fall our sketch of the Orthodox Caliphate may fitly end. It was necessary to give some account of these years so vital in the history of Islam, even at the risk of wearying the reader, who will perhaps wish that less space were devoted to political affairs.

The Umayyads came into power, but, except in Syria and Egypt, they ruled solely by the sword. As descendants and representatives of the pagan aristocracy, which

The Umayyad  
dynasty.

strove with all its might to defeat Muḥammad, they were usurpers in the eyes of the Moslem community which they claimed to lead as his successors.\* We shall see, a little further on, how this opposition expressed itself in two great parties: the Shī'ites or followers of 'Alī, and the radical sect of the Khārijites, who have been mentioned above; and how it was gradually reinforced by the non-Arabian Moslems until it overwhelmed

\* Mu'āwiya himself said: "I am the first of the kings" (Ya'qúbí, ed. by Houtsma, vol. ii, p. 276, l. 14).



the Umayyad Government and set up the 'Abbāsids in their place. In estimating the character of the Umayyads one must bear in mind that the epitaph on the fallen dynasty was composed by their enemies, and can

Moslem tradition hostile to the Umayyads.

no more be considered historically truthful than the lurid picture which Tacitus has drawn of the Emperor Tiberius. Because they kept the revolutionary forces in check with ruthless severity, the Umayyads pass for blood-thirsty tyrants; whereas the best of them at any rate were strong and singularly capable rulers, bad Moslems and good men of the world, seldom cruel, plain livers if not high thinkers; who upon the whole stand as much above the 'Abbāsids in morality as below them in culture and intellect. Mu'āwīya's clemency was proverbial, though he too could be stern on occasion. When members of the house of 'Alī came to visit him at Damascus, which was now the capital of the Muḥammadan Empire, he gave them honourable lodging and entertainment and was anxious to

Mu'āwīya's clemency.

do what they asked; but they (relates the historian approvingly) used to address him in the rudest terms and affront him in the vilest manner: sometimes he would answer them with a jest, and another time he would feign not to hear, and he always dismissed them with splendid presents and ample donations.<sup>1</sup>

"I do not employ my sword," he said, "when my whip suffices me, nor my whip when my tongue suffices me; and were there but a single hair (of friendship) between me and my subjects, I would not let it be snapped."<sup>2</sup> After the business of the day he sought relaxation in books.

His hours of study.

"He consecrated a third part of every night to the history of the Arabs and their famous battles; the history of foreign peoples, their kings, and their government; the biographies of monarchs, including their wars

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Fakhri*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 145

<sup>2</sup> *Ya'qūbī*, vol. ii, p. 283, l. 8 seq.

and stratagems and methods of rule; and other matters connected with Ancient History."<sup>1</sup>

Mu'awiya's chief henchman was Ziyád, the son of Sumayya (Sumayya being the name of his mother), or, as he is generally called, Ziyád ibn Abihí, *i.e.*, 'Ziyád his father's son,' for none knew who was his sire, though rumour pointed to Abú Sufyán; in which case Ziyád would have been Mu'awiya's half-brother. Mu'awiya, instead of disavowing the scandalous imputation, acknowledged him as such, and made him governor of Baṣra, where he ruled the Eastern provinces with a rod of iron.

Mu'awiya was a crafty diplomatist—he has been well compared to Richelieu—whose profound knowledge of human nature enabled him to gain over men of moderate opinions in all the parties opposed to him. Events were soon to prove the hollowness of this outward reconciliation. Yazíd, who succeeded his father, was the son of Maysún, a Bedouin woman whom Mu'awiya married before he rose to be Caliph. [The luxury of Damascus had no charm for her wild spirit, and she gave utterance to her feeling of homesickness in melancholy verse:—

"A tent with rustling breezes cool  
Delights me more than palace high,  
And more the cloak of simple wool  
Than robes in which I learned to sigh.

The crust I ate beside my tent  
Was more than this fine bread to me;  
The wind's voice where the hill-path went  
Was more than tambourine can be.

And more than purr of friendly cat  
I love the watch-dog's bark to hear;  
And more than any lubbard fat  
I love a Bedouin cavalier."<sup>2</sup> )

<sup>1</sup> Mas'údí, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab* (ed. by Barbier de Meynard), vol. v. p. 77

<sup>2</sup> Nöldeke's *Dolectus*, p. 25, l. 3 sqq., omitting l. 8.



Mu'āwiya, annoyed by the contemptuous allusion to himself, took the dame at her word. She returned to her own family, and Yazīd grew up as a Bedouin, with the instincts and tastes which belong to the Bedouins—love of pleasure, hatred of piety, and reckless disregard for the laws of religion. The beginning of his reign was marked by an event of which even now few Moslems can speak without a thrill of horror and dismay. [The facts are briefly these: In the autumn of the year 680 Ḥusayn, the son of 'Alī, claiming to be the rightful Caliph in virtue of his descent from the Prophet, quitted Mecca with his whole family and a number of devoted friends, and set out for Kúfa, where he expected the population, which was almost entirely Shī'ite, to rally to his cause. It was a foolhardy adventure.

Ḥusayn  
marches on  
Kúfa.

The poet Farazdaq, who knew the fickle temper of his fellow-townsmen, told Ḥusayn that although their hearts were with him, their swords would be with the Umayyads; but his warning was given in vain. Meanwhile 'Ubaydullāh b. Ziyād, the governor of Kúfa, having overawed the insurgents in the city and beheaded their leader, Muslim b. 'Aqīl, who was a cousin of Ḥusayn, sent a force of cavalry with orders to bring the arch-rebel to a stand. Retreat was still open to him. But his followers cried out that the blood of Muslim must be avenged, and Ḥusayn could not hesitate. Turning northward along the Euphrates, he encamped at Karbalā with his little band, which, including the women and children, amounted to some two hundred souls. In this hopeless situation he offered terms which might have been accepted if Shamir b. Dhi 'l-Jawshan, a name for ever infamous and accursed, had not persuaded 'Ubaydullāh to insist on unconditional surrender. The demand was refused, and Ḥusayn drew up his comrades—a handful of men and boys—for battle against the host which surrounded them. All the harrowing details invented by grief and passion can scarcely



heighten the tragedy of the closing scene. It would appear that the Umayyad officers themselves shrank from the odium of a general massacre, and hoped to take the Prophet's grandson alive. Shamir, however, had no such scruples. Chafing at delay, he urged his soldiers to the assault. The unequal struggle was soon over. Husayn fell, pierced by an arrow, and his brave followers were cut down beside him to the last man.)

Massacre of  
Husayn and his  
followers at  
Karbala (10th  
Muharram,  
61 A.H. = 10th  
October, 680  
A.D.).

Muhammadan tradition, which with rare exceptions is uniformly hostile to the Umayyad dynasty, regards Husayn as a martyr and Yazid as his murderer; while modern historians, for the most part, agree with Sir W. Muir, who points out that Husayn, "having yielded himself to a treasonable, though

Differing views  
of Muhammadan  
and European  
writers.

impotent design upon the throne, was committing an offence that endangered society and demanded swift suppression." This was naturally the view of the party in power, and the reader must form his own conclusion as to how far it justifies the action which they took. For Moslems the question is decided by the relation of the Umayyads to

The Umayyads  
judged  
by Islam.

Islam. Violators of its laws and spurners of its ideals, they could never be anything but tyrants; and being tyrants, they had no right to slay believers who rose in arms against their usurped authority. The so-called verdict of history, when we come to examine it, is seen to be the verdict of religion, the judgment of theocratic Islam on Arabian Imperialism. On this ground the Umayyads are justly condemned, but it is well to remember that in Moslem eyes the distinction between

Character of  
Yazid.

Church and State does not exist. Yazid was a bad Churchman: therefore he was a wicked tyrant; the one thing involves the other. From our unprejudiced standpoint, he was an amiable prince who inherited his mother's poetic talent, and infin-

itely preferred wine, music, and sport to the drudgery of public affairs. The Syrian Arabs, who recognised the Umayyads as legitimate, thought highly of him: "Jucundissimus," says a Christian writer, "et cunctis nationibus regni ejus subditis vir gratissime habitus, qui nullam unquam, ut omnibus moris est, sibi regalis fastigii causa gloriam appetivit, sed communis cum omnibus civiliter vixit."<sup>1</sup> He deplored the fate of the women and children of Ḥusayn's family, treated them with every mark of respect, and sent them to Medīna, where their account of the tragedy added fresh fuel to the hatred and indignation with which its authors were generally regarded.

The Umayyads had indeed ample cause to rue the day of Karbalá. It gave the Shī'ite faction a rallying-cry—"Vengeance for Ḥusayn!"—which was taken up on all sides, and especially by the Persian *Mawálí*, or Clients, who longed for deliverance from the Arab yoke. Their amalgamation with the Shī'a—a few years later they flocked in thousands to the standard of Mukhtár—was an event of the utmost historical importance, which will be discussed when we come to speak of the Shī'ites in particular.

The slaughter of Ḥusayn does not complete the tale of Yazīd's enormities. Medīna, the Prophet's city, having expelled its Umayyad governor, was sacked by a Syrian army, while Mecca itself, where 'Abdullāh b. Zubayr had set up as rival Caliph, was besieged, and the Ka'ba laid in ruins. These outrages, shocking to Moslem sentiment, kindled a flame of rebellion. Ḥusayn was avenged by Mukhtár, who seized Kúta and executed some three hundred of the guilty citizens, including the miscreant Shamir. His troops defeated and slew 'Ubaydullāh b. Ziyād, but he himself was slain, not long afterwards, by

Medina and  
Mecca  
desecrated  
(682-3 A.D.).

Rebellion of  
Mukhtár  
(685-6 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> The *Continuatio* of Isidore of Hispalis, § 27, quoted by Wellhausen, *Das Arabische Reich und sein Sturz*, p. 105.



Muṣ'ab, the brother of Ibn Zubayr, and seven thousand of his followers were massacred in cold blood. On Yazíd's death (683) the Umayyad Empire threatened to fall to pieces. As a contemporary poet sang—

[ "Now loathed of all men is the Fury blind  
Which blazeth as a fire blown by the wind.  
They are split in sects: each province hath its own  
Commander of the Faithful, each its throne." ]

Fierce dissensions broke out among the Syrian Arabs, the backbone of the dynasty. The great tribal groups of Kalb and

Civil war  
renewed.

Qays, whose coalition had hitherto maintained the Umayyads in power, fought on opposite sides at Marj Ráhiṭ (684), the former for Marwán and the latter for Ibn Zubayr. Marwán's victory secured the allegiance of Syria, but henceforth Qays and Kalb were always at daggers drawn.<sup>2</sup> This was essentially a feud between the Northern and the Southern Arabs—a feud which rapidly extended and developed into a permanent racial enmity.

Rivalry of  
Northern and  
Southern Arabs.

They carried it with them to the farthest ends of the world, so that, for example, after the conquest of Spain precautions had to be taken against civil war by providing that Northerners and Southerners should not settle in the same districts. The literary history of this antagonism has been sketched by Dr. Goldziher with his wonted erudition and acumen.<sup>3</sup> Satire was, of course, the

<sup>1</sup> *Hamasa*, 226. The word translated 'throne' is in Arabic *minbar*, i.e., the pulpit from which the Caliph conducted the public prayers and addressed the congregation.

<sup>2</sup> Kalb was properly one of the Northern tribes (see Robertson Smith's *Kinship and Marriage*, 2nd ed., p. 8 seq.—a reference which I owe to Professor Bevan), but there is evidence that the Kalbites were regarded as 'Yemenite' or 'Southern' Arabs at an early period of Islam. Cf. Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 83, l. 3 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> *Muhammedanische Studien*, i, 78 sqq.



principal weapon of both sides. Here is a fragment by a Northern poet which belongs to the Umayyad period:—

"Negroes are better, when they name their sires,  
Than Qaḥṭān's sons,\* the uncircumcised cowards:  
A folk whom thou mayst see, at war's outflame,  
More abject than a shoe to tread in baseness;  
Their women free to every lecher's lust,  
Their clients spoil for cavaliers and footmen."\*

Thus the Arab nation was again torn asunder by the old tribal pretensions which Muḥammad sought to abolish. That they ultimately proved fatal to the Umayyads is no matter for surprise; the sorely pressed dynasty was already tottering, its enemies were at its gates. By good fortune it produced at this crisis an exceptionally able and vigorous ruler, 'Abdu 'l-Malik b. Marwān, who not only saved his house from destruction, but re-established its supremacy and inaugurated a more brilliant epoch than any that had gone before.

'Abdu 'l-Malik succeeded his father in 685, but required seven years of hard fighting to make good his claim to the Caliphate. When his most formidable rival, Ibn Zubayr, had fallen in battle (692), the eastern provinces were still overrun by rebels, who offered a desperate resistance to the governor of 'Irāq, the iron-handed Ḥajjāj. But enough of bloodshed. Peace also had her victories during the troubled reign of 'Abdu 'l-Malik and the calmer sway of his successors. Four of the next five Caliphs were his own sons—Walīd (705-715), Sulaymān (715-717), Yazīd II (720-724), and Hishām (724-743); the fifth, 'Umar II, was the son of his brother, 'Abdu 'l-'Azīz. For the greater part of this time the Moslem lands enjoyed a well-earned interval of repose and prosperity, which mitigated, though it could not undo, the frightful devastation wrought by

'Abdu 'l-Malik  
and his  
successors.

\* Qaḥṭān is the legendary ancestor of the Southern Arabs.

\* *Aghānī*, xiii, 51, cited by Goldziher, *ibid.*, p. 82.

twenty years of almost continuous civil war. Many reforms were introduced, some wholly political in character, while others inspired by the same motives have, none the less, a direct bearing on literary history. 'Abdu 'l-Malik

Reforms of  
'Abdu 'l-Malik.

organised an excellent postal service, by means of relays of horses, for the conveyance of despatches and travellers; he substituted for the Byzantine and Persian coins, which had hitherto been in general use, new gold and silver pieces, on which he caused sentences from the Koran to be engraved; and he made Arabic, instead of Greek or Persian, the official language of financial administration. Steps were taken, moreover, to improve the extremely defective Arabic script, and in this way to provide a sound basis for the study and interpretation of the Koran as well as for the collection of *ḥadīths* or sayings of the Prophet, which form an indispensable supplement thereto. The Arabic

The writing of  
Arabic.

alphabet, as it was then written, consisted entirely of consonants, so that, to give an illustration from English, *bnd* might denote *band, bend, bind, or bond*; *crt* might stand for *cart, carat, curt*, and so on. To an Arab this ambiguity mattered little; far worse confusion arose from the circumstance that many of the consonants themselves were exactly alike: thus, *e.g.*, it was possible to read the same combination of three letters as *bnt, nbt, byt, tnb, ntb, nyb*, and in various other ways. Considering the difficulties of the Arabic language, which are so great that a European aided by scientific grammars and unequivocal texts will often find himself puzzled even when he has become tolerably familiar with it, one may imagine that the Koran was virtually a sealed book to all but a few among the crowds of foreigners who accepted Islam after the early conquests. 'Abdu'l-Malik's viceroy in 'Irāq, the famous Ḥajjāj, who began life as a school-master, exerted himself to promote the use of vowel-marks (borrowed from the Syriac) and of the diacritical points placed above or below similar consonants. This extraordinary man



deserves more than a passing mention. A stern disciplinarian, who could be counted upon to do his duty without any regard to public opinion, he was chosen by 'Abdu 'l-Malik <sup>Hajjāj b. Yūsuf (†714 A.D.).</sup> to besiege Mecca, which Ibn Zubayr was holding as anti-Caliph. Hajjāj bombarded the city, defeated the Pretender, and sent his head to Damascus. Two years afterwards he became governor of 'Irāq. Entering the Mosque at Kūfa, he mounted the pulpit and introduced himself to the assembled townsmen in these memorable words :—

"I am he who scattereth the darkness and climbeth o'er the summits.

When I lift the turban from my face, ye will know me."

O people of Kūfa ! I see heads that are ripe for cutting, and I am the man to do it ; and methinks, I see blood between the turbans and beards."<sup>2</sup> The rest of his speech was in keeping with the commencement. He used no idle threats, as the malcontents soon found out. Rebellion, which had been rampant before his arrival, was rapidly extinguished. "He restored order in 'Irāq and subdued its people."<sup>3</sup> For twenty years his despotic rule gave peace and security to the Eastern world. Cruel he may have been, though the tales of his bloodthirstiness are beyond doubt grossly exaggerated,

<sup>His service to literature.</sup>

but it should be put to his credit that he established and maintained the settled conditions which afford leisure for the cultivation of learning. Under his protection the Koran and Traditions were diligently studied both in Kūfa and Baṣra, where many Companions of the Prophet had made their home : hence arose in Baṣra the science of Grammar, with which, as we shall see in a subsequent page, the name of that city is peculiarly associated.

<sup>1</sup> A verse of the poet Suḥaym b. Wathīl.

<sup>2</sup> The *Kāmil* of al-Mubarrad, ed. by W. Wright, p. 215, l. 14 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> Ibn Qutayba, *Kitābu 'l-Ma'ārif*, p. 202.



Hajjáj shared the literary tastes of his sovereign ; he admired the old poets and patronised the new ; he was a master of terse eloquence and plumed himself on his elegant Arabic style. The most hated man of his time, he lives in history as the savage oppressor and butcher of God-fearing Moslems. He served the Umayyads well and faithfully, and when he died in 714 A.D. he left behind him nothing but his Koran, his arms, and a few hundred pieces of silver.

It was a common saying at Damascus that under Walíd people talked of fine buildings, under Sulaymán of cookery and the fair sex, while in the reign of 'Umar b. <sup>Walíd</sup> 'Abd al-'Azíz the Koran and religion formed <sup>(705-715 A.D.)</sup> favourite topics of conversation.<sup>1</sup> Of Walíd's

passion for architecture we have a splendid monument in the Great Mosque of Damascus (originally the Cathedral of St. John), which is the principal sight of the city to this day. He spoke Arabic very incorrectly, and though his father rebuked him, observing that "in order to rule the Arabs one must be proficient in their language," he could never learn to express himself with propriety.<sup>2</sup> The unbroken peace which now prevailed within the Empire enabled Walíd to resume the work of conquest. In the East his armies invaded Transoxania, captured Bokhárá and Samarcand, and pushed forward to the Chinese frontier. Another

<sup>Moslem conquests in the East.</sup> force crossed the Indus and penetrated as far as Múltán, a renowned centre of pilgrimage in the Southern Punjab, which fell into the hands of the Moslems after a prolonged siege. But the most brilliant advance, and the richest in its results, was that in the extreme West, which decided the fate of Spain. Although the Moslems had obtained a footing in Northern Africa some thirty years before this time, their position was always precarious, until in 709 Músá

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Fakhri*, p. 173 ; Ibnu 'l-Athír, ed. by Tornberg, v, 5.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 174. Cf. Mas'údí, *Murúfu l-Dhahab*, v, 412.

b. Nuṣayr completely subjugated the Berbers, and extended not only the dominion but also the faith of Islam to the Atlantic Ocean. Two years later his freedman Ṭāriq crossed the straits and took possession of the commanding height, called by the ancients Calpe, but henceforth known as Jabal Ṭāriq (Gibraltar). Roderic, the last of the West Gothic dynasty, gathered an army in defence of his kingdom, but there were traitors in the camp, and, though he himself fought valiantly, their defection turned the fortunes of the day. The king fled, and it was never ascertained what became of him. Ṭāriq, meeting with feeble resistance, marched rapidly on Toledo, while Músá, whose jealousy was excited by the triumphal progress of his lieutenant, now joined in the campaign, and, storming city after city, reached the Pyrenees. The conquest of Spain, which is told by Moslem historians with many romantic circumstances, marks the nearest approach that the Arabs ever made to World-Empire. Their advance on French soil was finally hurled back by Charles the Hammer's great victory at Tours (732 A.D.).

Conquest of  
Spain  
(711-713 A.D.).

Before taking leave of the Umayyads we must not forget to mention 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azíz, a ruler who stands out in singular contrast with his predecessors, and whose brief reign is regarded by many Moslems as the sole bright spot in a century of godless and blood-stained tyranny. There had been nothing like it since the days of his illustrious namesake and kinsman,<sup>\*</sup> 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭáb, and we shall find nothing like it in the future history of the Caliphate. Plato desired that every king should be a philosopher: according to Muḥammadan theory every Caliph ought to be a saint. 'Umar satisfied these aspirations. When he came to the throne the following dialogue is said to have occurred between him and one of his favourites, Sálím al-Suddí :—

'Umar b. 'Abd  
al-'Azíz  
(717-720 A.D.).

\* His mother, Umm 'Āsim, was a granddaughter of 'Umar I.



'Umar: "Are you glad on account of my accession, or sorry?"

Sálim: "I am glad for the people's sake, but sorry for yours."

'Umar: "I fear that I have brought perdition upon my soul."

Sálim: "If you are afraid, very good. I only fear that you may cease to be afraid."

'Umar: "Give me a word of counsel."

Sálim: "Our father Adam was driven forth from Paradise because of one sin."<sup>1</sup>

Poets and orators found no favour at his court, which was thronged by divines and men of ascetic life.<sup>2</sup> He warned his governors that they must either deal justly or go. He would not allow political considerations to interfere with his ideal of righteousness, but, as Wellhausen points out, he had practical ends in view: his piety made him anxious for the common weal no less than for his own salvation. Whether he administered the State successfully is a matter of dispute. It has been generally supposed that his financial reforms were Utopian in character and disastrous to the Exchequer.<sup>3</sup> However this may be, he showed wisdom in seeking to bridge the menacing chasm between Islam and the Imperial house. Thus, *e.g.*, he did away with the custom which had long prevailed of cursing 'Alí from the pulpit at Friday prayers. The policy of conciliation was tried too late, and for too short a space, to be effective; but it was not entirely fruitless. When, on the overthrow of the Umayyad dynasty, the tombs of the hated 'tyrants' were defiled and their bodies disinterred, 'Umar's grave alone was respected, and Mas'údi

<sup>1</sup> Mas'údi, *Murijū 'l-Dhahab*, v, 419 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Ibnu 'l-Athir, ed. by Tornberg, v, 46. Cf. *Aghāni*, xx, p. 119, l. 23. 'Umar made an exception, as Professor Bevan reminds me, in favour of the poet Jarir. See Brockelmann's *Gesch. der Arab. Litteratur*, vol. i, p. 57.

<sup>3</sup> The exhaustive researches of Wellhausen, *Das Arabische Reich und sein Sturz* (pp. 169-192) have set this complicated subject in a new light. He contends that 'Umar's reform was not based on purely ideal grounds, but was demanded by the necessities of the case, and that, so far from introducing disorder into the finances, his measures were designed to remedy the confusion which already existed.



(† 956 A.D.) tells us that in his time it was visited by crowds of pilgrims.

The remaining Umayyads do not call for particular notice. Hishām ranks as a statesman with Mu‘āwiya and ‘Abdu ‘l-Malik : the great ‘Abbāsīd Caliph, Maṣṣūr, is said to have admired and imitated his methods of government.<sup>1</sup> Walīd II was an incorrigible libertine, whose songs celebrating the forbidden delights of wine have much merit. The eminent poet and freethinker, Abu ‘l-‘Alā al-Ma‘arrī, quotes these verses by him<sup>2</sup> :—

Hishām and  
Walīd II.

Verses by  
Walīd II  
(743-4 A.D.).

“The Imām Walīd am I ! In all my glory  
Of trailing robes I listen to soft lays.  
When proudly I sweep on towards her chamber,  
I care not who inveighs.

There’s no true joy but lending ear to music,  
Or wine that leaves one sunk in stupor dense,  
Houris in Paradise I do not look for :  
Does any man of sense ?”

Let us now turn from the monarchs to their subjects.

In the first place we shall speak of the political and religious parties, whose opposition to the Umayyad House gradually undermined its influence and in the end brought about its fall. Some account will be given of the ideas for which these parties fought and of the causes of their discontent with the existing régime. Secondly, a few words must be said of the theological and more purely religious sects—the Mu‘tazilites, Murjites, and Šūffis ; and, lastly, of the extant literature, which is almost exclusively poetical, and its leading representatives.

Political and  
religious move-  
ments of the  
period.

<sup>1</sup> Maṣ‘ūdī, *Murāju ‘l-Dhahab*, v, 479.

<sup>2</sup> The Arabic text and literal translation of these verses will be found in my article on Abu ‘l-‘Alā’s *Risālatu ‘l-Ghufrān* (*J.R.A.S.* for 1902, pp. 829 and 342).

The opposition to the Umayyads was at first mainly a question of politics. Mu'áwiya's accession announced the triumph of Syria over 'Irâq, and Damascus, instead of Kúfa, became the capital of the Empire. As Wellhausen observes, "the most powerful risings against the Umayyads proceeded from 'Irâq, not from any special party, but from the whole mass of the Arabs settled there, who were united in resenting the loss of their independence (*Selbſtherrlichkeit*) and in hating those into whose hands it had passed."<sup>1</sup> At the same time these feelings took a religious colour and identified themselves with the cause of Islam. The new government fell lamentably short of the theocratic standard by which it was judged. Therefore it was evil, and (according to the Moslem's conception of duty) every right-thinking man must work for its destruction.

The Arabs of 'Irâq.

Among the myriads striving for this consummation, and so far making common cause with each other, we can distinguish four principal classes.

Parties opposed to the Umayyad government.

(1) The religious Moslems, or Pietists, in general, who formed a wing of the Orthodox Party.<sup>2</sup>

(2) The Khárijites, who may be described as the Puritans and extreme Radicals of theocracy.

(3) The Shí'ites, or partisans of 'Alí and his House.

(4) The Non-Arabian Moslems, who were called *Mawallí* (Clients).

It is clear that the Pietists—including divines learned in the law, reciters of the Koran, Companions of the Prophet and

<sup>1</sup> Wellhausen, *Das Arabische Reich und sein Sturz*, p. 38.

<sup>2</sup> I.e., the main body of Moslems—*Sunnís*, followers of the *Sunna*, as they were afterwards called—who were neither Shí'ites nor Khárijites, but held (1) that the Caliph must be elected by the Moslem community, and (2) that he must be a member of Quraysh, the Prophet's tribe. All these parties arose out of the struggle between 'Alí and Mu'áwiya, and their original difference turned solely on the question of the Caliphate.



their descendants—could not but abominate the secular authority which they were now compelled to obey. The conviction that Might, in the shape of the tyrant and his minions, trampled on Right as represented by the Koran and the *Sunna* (custom of Muḥammad) drove many into active rebellion: five thousand are said to have perished in the sack of Medína alone. Others again, like Ḥasan of Baṣra, filled with profound despair, shut their eyes on the world, and gave themselves up to asceticism, a tendency which had important consequences, as we shall see.

When ‘Alī, on the field of Šiffin, consented that the claims of Mu‘āwiya and himself to the Caliphate should be decided by arbitration, a large section of his army accused him of having betrayed his trust. He, the duly elected Caliph—so they argued—should have maintained the dignity of his high office inviolate at all costs. On the homeward march the malcontents, some twelve thousand in number, broke away and encamped by themselves at Ḥarūrā, a village near Kúfa. Their cry was, “God alone can decide” (*lā ḥukma illā lillāhi*): in these terms they protested against the arbitration. ‘Alī endeavoured to win them back, but without any lasting success. They elected a Caliph from among themselves, and gathered at Nahrawán, four thousand strong. On the appearance of ‘Alī with a vastly superior force many of the rebels dispersed, but the remainder—about half—preferred to die for their faith. Nahrawán was to the Khárijites what Karbalá afterwards became to the Shī‘ites, who from this day were regarded by the former as their chief enemies. Frequent Khárijite risings took place during the early Umayyad period, but the movement reached its zenith in the years of confusion which followed Yazīd’s death. The Azraqites, so called after their leader, Nāfi‘ b. al-Azraq, overran ‘Irāq and Southern Persia, while another sect, the Najdites, led by

The Pietists.

The Khárijites.

Battle of Nahrawán (658 A.D.).

Khárijite risings.



Najda b. 'Āmir, reduced the greater part of Arabia to submission. The insurgents held their ground for a long time against 'Abdu 'l-Malik, and did not cease from troubling until the rebellion headed by Shabīb was at last stamped out by Ḥajjāj in 697.

It has been suggested that the name *Khārijī* (plural, *Khawārij*) refers to a passage in the Koran (iv, 101) where mention is made of "those who go forth (*yakhruj*) from their homes as emigrants (*muhājir*<sup>1</sup>) to God and His Messenger"; so that 'Khārijite' means 'one who leaves his home among the unbelievers for God's sake,' and corresponds to the term *Muhājir*, which was applied to the Meccan converts who accompanied the Prophet in his migration to Medina.<sup>2</sup> Another name by which they are often designated is likewise Koranic in origin, viz., *Shurāt* (plural of *Shār*<sup>3</sup>): literally 'Sellers'—that is to say, those who sell their lives and goods in return for Paradise.<sup>4</sup> The Khārijites were mostly drawn from the Bedouin soldiery who settled in Baṣra and Kūfa after the Persian wars. Civil life wrought little change in their unruly temper. Far from acknowledging the peculiar sanctity of a Qurayshite, they desired a chief of their own blood whom they might obey, in Bedouin fashion, as long as he did not abuse or exceed the powers conferred upon him.<sup>5</sup> The mainspring of the movement, however, was pietistic, and can be traced, as Wellhausen has shown, to the Koran-readers who made it a matter of conscience that 'All should avow his contrition for the fatal error which their own temporary and deeply regretted infatuation had forced him to commit. They cast off 'All for the same

Meaning of  
'Khārijite.'

Their political  
theories.

<sup>1</sup> Brünnow, *Die Charidschiten unter den ersten Omayyaden* (Leiden, 1884), p. 28. It is by no means certain, however, that the Khārijites called themselves by this name. In any case, the term implies *secession* (*khurīj*) from the Moslem community, and may be rendered by 'Seceder' or 'Nonconformist.'

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Koran, ix, 112.

<sup>3</sup> Brünnow, *op. cit.*, p. 8.

reason which led them to strike at 'Uthman: in both cases they were maintaining the cause of God against an unjust Caliph.<sup>2</sup> (It is important to remember these facts in view of the cardinal Khárijite doctrines (1) that every free Arab was eligible as Caliph,<sup>3</sup> and (2) that an evil-doing Caliph must be deposed and, if necessary, put to death.) Mustawrid b. 'Ullifa, the Khárijite 'Commander of the Faithful,' wrote to Simák b. 'Ubayd, the governor of Ctesiphon, as follows: "We call you to the Book of God Almighty and Glorious, and to the *Sunna* (custom) of the Prophet—on whom be peace!—and to the administration of Abú Bakr and 'Umar—may God be well pleased with them!—and to renounce 'Uthmán and 'Alí because they corrupted the true religion and abandoned the authority of the Book."<sup>3</sup> From this it appears that the Khárijite programme was simply the old Islam of equality and fraternity, which had never been fully realised and was now irretrievably ruined. Theoretically, all devout Moslems shared in the desire for its restoration and condemned the existing Government no less cordially than did the Khárijites. What distinguished the latter party was the remorseless severity with which they carried their principles into action. To them it was absolutely vital that the Imám, or head of the com-

<sup>2</sup> Wellhausen, *Die religiös-politischen Oppositionsparteien im alten Islam* (*Abhandlungen der Königl. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, Phil.-Hist. Klasse*, 1901), p. 8 sqq. The writer argues against Brünnow that the oldest Khárijites were not true Bedouins (*A'rābi*), and were, in fact, even further removed than the rest of the military colonists of Kúfa and Baṣra from their Bedouin traditions. He points out that the extreme piety of the Readers—their constant prayers, vigils, and repetitions of the Koran—exactly agrees with what is related of the Khárijites, and is described in similar language. Moreover, among the oldest Khárijites we find mention made of a company clad in long cloaks (*bardnis*, pl. of *burnus*), which were at that time a special mark of asceticism. Finally, the earliest authority (Abú Mikhnaḥ in Ṭabarí, i, 3330, l. 6 sqq.) regards the Khárijites as an offshoot from the Readers, and names individual Readers who afterwards became rabid Khárijites.

<sup>3</sup> Later, when many non-Arab Moslems joined the Khárijite ranks the field of choice was extended so as to include foreigners and even slaves.

<sup>3</sup> Ṭabarí, ii, 40, 13 sqq.



munity, should rule in the name and according to the will of God : those who followed any other sealed their doom in the next world : eternal salvation hung upon the choice of a successor to the Prophet. Moslems who refused to execrate 'Uthmán and 'Alí were the worst of infidels ; it was the duty of every true believer to take part in the Holy War against such, and to kill them, together with their wives and children. These atrocities recoiled upon the insurgents, who soon found themselves in danger of extermination. Milder counsels began to prevail. Thus the Ibádites (followers of 'Abdulláh b. Ibád) held it lawful to live amongst the Moslems and mix with them on terms of mutual tolerance. But compromise was in truth incompatible with the *raison d'être* of the Khárijites, namely, to establish the kingdom of God upon the earth. This meant virtual anarchy : "their unbending logic shattered every constitution which it set up." As 'Alí remarked, "they say, 'No government' (*lá imárah*), but there must be a government, good or bad."<sup>1</sup> Nevertheless, it was a noble ideal for which they fought in pure devotion, having, unlike the other political parties, no worldly interests to serve.)

The same fierce spirit of fanaticism moulded their religious views, which were gloomy and austere, as befitted the chosen few in an ungodly world. Shahrastání, speaking of the original twelve thousand who rebelled against 'Alí, describes them as 'people of fasting and prayer' (*ahlu ṣiyám wa-ṣalát*).<sup>2</sup> The Koran ruled their lives and possessed their imaginations, so that the history of the early Church, the persecutions, martyrdoms, and triumphs of the Faith became a veritable drama which was being enacted by themselves. The fear of hell kindled in them an inquisitorial zeal for righteousness. They scrupulously examined their own belief as well as that of their neighbours, and woe to him that was found wanting ! A

<sup>1</sup> Shahrastání, ed. by Cureton, Part I, p. 88, l. 12.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 86, l. 3 from foot.



single false step involved excommunication from the pale of Islam, and though the slip might be condoned on proof of sincere repentance, any Moslem who had once committed a mortal sin (*kabîra*) was held, by the stricter Khárijites at least, to be inevitably damned with the infidels in everlasting fire.

Much might be written, if space allowed, concerning the wars of the Khárijites, their most famous chiefs, the points on which they quarrelled, and the sects into which they split. Here we can only attempt to illustrate the general character of the movement. We have touched on its political and religious aspects, and shall now conclude with some reference to its literary side. The Khárijites did not produce a Milton or a Bunyan, but as Arabs of Bedouin stock they had a natural gift of song, from which they could not be weaned; although, according to the strict letter of the Koran, poetry is a devilish invention improper for the pious Moslem to meddle with. But these are poems of a different order from the pagan odes, and breathe a stern religious enthusiasm that would have gladdened the Prophet's heart. Take, for example, the following verses, which were made by a Khárijite in prison:—<sup>1</sup>

Khárijite  
poetry.

"'Tis time, O ye Sellers, for one who hath sold himself  
To God, that he should arise and saddle amain.  
Fools! in the land of miscreants will ye abide,  
To be hunted down, every man of you, and to be slain?  
O would that I were among you, armed in mail,  
On the back of my stout-ribbed galloping war-horse again!  
And would that I were among you, fighting your foes,  
That me, first of all, they might give death's beaker to drain!  
It grieves me sore that ye are startled and chased  
Like beasts, while I cannot draw on the wretches profane  
My sword, nor see them scattered by noble knights  
Who never yield an inch of the ground they gain,

<sup>1</sup> Tabarî, ii, 36, ll. 7, 8, 11-16.

But where the struggle is hottest, with keen blades hew  
 Their strenuous way and deem 'twere base to refrain.  
 Ay, it grieves me sore that ye are oppressed and wronged,  
 While I must drag in anguish a captive's chain."

Qaṭarī b. al-Fujā'a, the intrepid Khārijite leader who routed army after army sent against him by Ḥajjāj, sang almost as well as he fought. The verses rendered below are included in the *Ḥamḍa*<sup>1</sup> and cited by Ibn Khallikān, who declares that they would make a brave man of the greatest coward in the world. "I know of nothing on the subject to be compared with them; they could only have proceeded from a spirit that scorned disgrace and from a truly Arabian sentiment of valour."<sup>2</sup>

Qaṭarī b.  
 al-Fujā'a.

"I say to my soul dismayed—  
 'Courage! Thou canst not achieve,  
 With praying, an hour of life  
 Beyond the appointed term.  
 Then courage on death's dark field,  
 Courage! Impossible 'tis  
 To live for ever and aye.  
 Life is no hero's robe  
 Of honour: the dastard vile  
 Also doffs it at last.'"

The murder of 'Uthmān broke the Moslem community, which had hitherto been undivided, into two *shī'as*, or parties—one for 'Alī and the other for Mu'āwiya. When the latter became Caliph he was no longer a party leader, but head of the State, and his *shī'a* ceased to exist. Henceforth 'the Shī'a' *par excellence* was the party of 'Alī, which regarded the House of the Prophet as the legitimate heirs to the succession.) Not content, however, with uphold-

<sup>1</sup> *Ḥamḍa*, 44.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Khallikān, ed. by Wüstenfeld, No. 555, p. 55, l. 4 seq.; De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 523.

ing 'Alī, as the worthiest of the Prophet's Companions and the duly elected Caliph, against his rival, Mu'āwīya, the bolder spirits took up an idea, which emerged about this time, that the Caliphate belonged to 'Alī and his descendants by Divine right. Such is the distinctive doctrine of the Shī'ites to the present day. It is generally thought to have originated in Persia, where the Sāsānian kings used to assume the title of 'god' (*Pahlavī bagh*) and were looked upon as successive incarnations of the Divine majesty.]

The theory of  
Divine Right.

"Although the Shī'ites," says Dozy, "often found themselves under the direction of Arab leaders, who utilised them in order to gain some personal end, they were nevertheless a Persian sect at bottom; and it is precisely here that the difference most clearly showed itself between the Arab race, which loves liberty, and the Persian race, accustomed to slavish submission. For the Persians, the principle of electing the Prophet's successor was something unheard of and incomprehensible. The only principle which they recognised was that of inheritance, and since Muḥammad left no sons, they thought that his son-in-law 'Alī should have succeeded him, and that the sovereignty was hereditary in his family. Consequently, all the Caliphs except 'Alī—i.e., Abū Bakr, 'Umar, and 'Uthmān, as well as the Umayyads—were in their eyes usurpers to whom no obedience was due.) The hatred which they felt for the Government and for Arab rule confirmed them in this opinion; at the same time they cast covetous looks on the wealth of their masters. Habituated, moreover, to see in their kings the descendants of the inferior divinities, they transferred this idolatrous veneration to 'Alī and his posterity. Absolute obedience to the Imām of 'Alī's House was in their eyes the most important duty; if that were fulfilled all the rest might be interpreted allegorically and violated without scruple. For them the Imām was everything; he was God made man. A servile submission accompanied by immorality was the basis of their system."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Dozy, *Essai sur l'histoire de l'Islamisme* (French translation by Victor Chauvin), p. 219 sqq.



Now, the Shī'ite theory of Divine Right certainly harmonised with Persian ideas, but was it also of Persian origin? On the contrary, it seems first to have

The Saba'ites.

arisen among an obscure Arabian sect, the Saba'ites, whose founder, 'Abdullāh b. Sabā (properly, Saba'), was a native of Ṣan'ā in Yemen, and is said to have been a Jew.<sup>1</sup> In 'Uthmān's time he turned Moslem and became, apparently, a travelling missionary. "He went from place to place," says the historian, "seeking to lead the Moslems into error."<sup>2</sup> We hear of him in the Ḥijāz, then in Baṣra and Kūfa, then in Syria. Finally he settled in Egypt, where he preached the doctrine of palingenesis (*raj'a*). "It is strange indeed," he

Doctrine of  
Ibn Sabā.

exclaimed, "that any one should believe in the return of Jesus (as Messiah), and deny the return of Muḥammad, which God has announced (Kor. xxviii, 85).<sup>3</sup> Furthermore, there are a thousand Prophets, every one of whom has an executor (*waṣī*), and the executor of Muḥammad is 'Alī.<sup>4</sup> (Muḥammad is the last of the Prophets, and 'Alī is the last of the executors.)" Ibn Sabā, therefore, regarded Abū Bakr, 'Umar, and 'Uthmān as usurpers. He set on foot a widespread conspiracy in favour of 'Alī, and carried on a secret correspondence with the disaffected in various provinces of the Empire.<sup>5</sup> According

<sup>1</sup> Wellhausen thinks that the dogmatics of the Shī'ites are derived from Jewish rather than from Persian sources. See his account of the Saba'ites in his most instructive paper, to which I have already referred, *Die religiös-politischen Oppositionsparteien im alten Islam* (Abh. der Königl. Ges. der Wissenschaften zu Göttingen, Phil.-Hist. Klasse, 1901), p. 89 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Ṭabarī, i, 2942, 2.

<sup>3</sup> "Verily, He who hath ordained the Koran for thee (i.e., for Muḥammad) will bring thee back to a place of return" (i.e., to Mecca). The ambiguity of the word meaning 'place of return' (*ma'ād*) gave some colour to Ibn Sabā's contention that it alluded to the return of Muḥammad at the end of the world. The descent of Jesus on earth is reckoned by Moslems among the greater signs which will precede the Resurrection.

<sup>4</sup> This is a Jewish idea. 'Alī stands in the same relation to Muḥammad as Aaron to Moses.

<sup>5</sup> Ṭabarī, *loc. cit.*

to Shahrastānī, he was banished by 'Alī for saying, "Thou art thou" (*anta anta*), i.e., "Thou art God."<sup>1</sup> This refers to the doctrine taught by Ibn Sabā and the extreme Shī'ites (*Ghulāt*) who derive from him, that the Divine Spirit which dwells in every prophet and passes successively from one to another was transfused, at Muḥammad's death, into 'Alī, and from 'Alī into his descendants who succeeded him in the Imāmate. [The Saba'ites also held that the Imām might suffer a temporary occultation (*ghayba*), but that one day he would return and fill the earth with justice.] They believed the millennium to be near at hand, so that the number of Imāms was at first limited to four. Thus the poet Kuthayyir († 723 A.D.) says:—

<p>" Four complete are the Imāms 'Alī and his three good sons, One was faithful and devout ; One, until with waving flags</p>	<p>of Quraysh, the lords of Right : each of them a shining light. Karbala' hid one from sight ; his horsemen he shall lead to fight, Dwells on Mount Raḍwā, concealed : honey he drinks and water bright." *</p>
---	--

The Messianic idea is not peculiar to the Shī'ites, but was brought into Islam at an early period by Jewish and Christian converts, and soon established itself as a part of Muḥammadan belief. [Traditions ascribed to the Prophet began to circulate, declaring that the approach of the Last Judgment would be heralded by a time of tumult and confusion, by the return of Jesus, who would slay the Antichrist (*al-Dajjāl*), and finally by the coming of the Mahdī, i.e., 'the God-guided one,' who would fill the earth with justice even as it was then filled with violence and iniquity.] This expectation of a Deliverer descended from the

<sup>1</sup> Shahrastānī, ed. by Cureton, p. 132, l. 15.

\* *Aghānī*, viii, 32, l. 17 sqq. The three sons of 'Alī are Ḥasan, Ḥusayn, and Muḥammad Ibnu 'l-Ḥanafīyya.



Prophet runs through the whole history of the Shī'a. As we have seen, their supreme religious chiefs were the Imáms of 'Alī's House, each of whom transmitted his authority to his successor. In the course of time disputes arose as to the succession. One sect acknowledged only seven legitimate Imáms, while another carried the number to twelve. The last Imám of the 'Seveners' (*al-Sab'iyya*), who are commonly called Ismá'ílīs, was Muḥammad b. Ismá'íl, and of the 'Twelvers' (*al-Ithná-'ashariyya*) Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan.<sup>1</sup> Both those personages vanished mysteriously about 770 and 870 A.D., and their respective followers, refusing to believe that they were dead, asserted that their Imám had withdrawn himself for a season from mortal sight, but that he would surely return at last as the promised Mahdī. It would take a long while to enumerate all the pretenders and fanatics who have claimed this title.<sup>2</sup> Two of them founded the Fāṭimid and Almohade dynasties, which we shall mention elsewhere, but they generally died on the gibbet or the battle-field. The ideal which they, so to speak, incarnated did not perish with them. Mahdiism, the faith in a divinely appointed revolution which will sweep away the powers of evil and usher in a Golden Age of justice and truth such as the world has never known, is a present and inspiring fact which deserves to be well weighed by those who doubt the possibility of an Islamic Reformation.

The Shī'a began as a political faction, but it could not remain so for any length of time, because in Islam politics always tend to take religious ground, just as the successful religious reformer invariably becomes a ruler. The Saba'ites furnished the Shī'ite movement with a theological basis; and

<sup>1</sup> Concerning the origin of these sects see Professor Browne's *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. i, p. 295 seq.

<sup>2</sup> See Darmesteter's interesting essay, *Le Mahdi depuis les origines de l'Islam jusqu'à nos jours* (Paris, 1885). The subject is treated more scientifically by Snouck Hurgronje in his paper *Der Mahdi*, reprinted from the *Revue coloniale internationale* (1886).



the massacre of Ḥusayn, followed by Mukhtār's rebellion, supplied the indispensable element of enthusiasm. Within a few years after the death of Ḥusayn his grave at Karbalā was already a place of pilgrimage for the Shi'ite gatherings at Karbalā. When the 'Penitents' (*al-Tawwābln*) revolted in 684 they repaired thither and lifted their voices simultaneously in a loud wail, and wept, and prayed God that He would forgive them for having deserted the Prophet's grandson in his hour of need. "O God!" exclaimed their chief, "have mercy on Ḥusayn, the Martyr and the son of a Martyr, the Mahdī and the son of a Mahdī, the Šiddīq and the son of a Šiddīq! O God! we bear witness that we follow their religion and their path, and that we are the foes of their slayers and the friends of those who love them."<sup>2</sup> Here is the germ of the *ta'ziyas*, or Passion Plays, which are acted every year on the 10th of Muḥarram, wherever Shi'ites are to be found.

But the Moses of the Shi'a, the man who showed them the way to victory although he did not lead them to it, is undoubtedly Mukhtār. He came forward in the name of 'Alī's son, Muḥammad, generally known as Ibnu 'l-Ḥanafiyya after his mother. Thus he gained the support of the Arabian Shi'ites, properly so called, who were devoted to 'Alī and his House, and laid no stress upon the circumstance of descent from the Prophet, whereas the Persian adherents of the Shi'a made it a vital matter, and held accordingly that only the sons of 'Alī by his wife Fāṭima were fully qualified Imāms. Raising the cry of vengeance for Ḥusayn, Mukhtār carried this party also along with him. In 686 he found himself master of Kūfa. Neither the result of his triumph nor the rapid overthrow of his power concerns us

<sup>1</sup> *Šiddīq* means 'veracious.' Professor Bevan remarks that in this root the notion of 'veracity' easily passes into that of 'endurance,' 'fortitude.'

<sup>2</sup> Tabarī, ii, 546. These 'Penitents' were free Arabs of Kūfa, a fact which, as Wellhausen has noticed, would seem to indicate that the *ta'ziya* is Semitic in origin.

here, but something must be said about the aims and character of the movement which he headed.

"More than half the population of Kúfa was composed of *Mawdli* (Clients), who monopolised handicraft, trade, and commerce. They were mostly Persians in race and language; they had come to Kúfa as prisoners of war and had there passed over to Islam: then they were manumitted by their owners and received as clients into the Arab tribes, so that they now occupied an ambiguous position (*Zwitterstellung*), being no longer slaves, but still very dependent on their patrons; needing their protection, bound to their service, and forming their retinue in peace and war. In these *Mawdli*, who were entitled by virtue of Islam to more than the 'dominant Arabism' allowed them, the hope now dawned of freeing themselves from clientship and of rising to full and direct participation in the Moslem state."<sup>1</sup>

The *Mawdli*  
of Kúfa.

Mukhtár, though himself an Arab of noble family, trusted the *Mawdli* and treated them as equals, a proceeding which was bitterly resented by the privileged class. "You have taken away our clients who are the booty which God bestowed upon us together with this country. We emancipated them, hoping to receive the Divine recompense and reward, but you would not rest until you made them sharers in our booty."<sup>2</sup> Mukhtár was only giving the *Mawdli* their due—they were Moslems and had the right, as such, to a share in the revenues. To the haughty Arabs, however, it appeared a monstrous thing that the despised foreigners should be placed on the same level with themselves. (Thus Mukhtár was thrown into the arms of the *Mawdli*, and the movement now became not so much anti-Umayyad as anti-Arabian. Here is the turning-point in the history of the Shi'a.) Its ranks were swelled by thousands of Persians imbued with the extreme doctrines of the Saba'ites which have been

Mukhtár and  
the *Mawdli*.

Persian influence  
on the Shi'a.

<sup>1</sup> Wellhausen, *Die religiös-politischen Oppositionsparteien*, p. 79.

<sup>2</sup> Ṭabarī, ii, 650, l. 7 sqq.



sketched above, and animated by the intense hatred of a down-trodden people towards their conquerors and oppressors. Consequently the Shí'a assumed a religious and enthusiastic character, and struck out a new path which led it farther and farther from the orthodox creed. The doctrine of 'Interpretation' (*Ta'wíl*) opened the door to all sorts of extravagant ideas. One of the principal Shí'ite sects, the Hášimiyya, held that "there is an esoteric side to everything external, a spirit to every form, a hidden meaning (*ta'wíl*) to every revelation, and to every similitude in this world a corresponding reality in the other world; that 'Alí united in his own person the knowledge of all mysteries and communicated it to his son Muḥammad Ibnu 'l-Ḥanafiyya, who passed it on to his son Abú Hášim; and that the possessor of this universal knowledge is the true Imám."¹ So, without ceasing to be Moslems in name, the Shí'ites transmuted Islam into whatever shape they pleased by virtue of a mystical interpretation based on the infallible authority of the House of Muḥammad, and out of the ruins of a political party there gradually arose a great religious organisation in which men of the most diverse opinions could work together for deliverance from the Umayyad yoke. The first step towards this development was made by Mukhtár, a versatile genius who seems to have combined the parts of political adventurer, social reformer, prophet, and charlatan. He was crushed and his Persian allies were decimated, but the seed which he had sown bore an abundant harvest when, sixty years later, Abú Muslim unfurled the black standard of the 'Abbásids in Khurásán.)

Concerning the origin of the oldest theological sects in Islam, the Murjites and the Mu'tazilites, we possess too little contemporary evidence to make a positive statement. It is probable that the latter at any rate arose, as Von Kremer has suggested, under the influence of Greek theologians,

¹ Shahrastání, Haarbrücker's translation, Part I, p. 169.



especially John of Damascus and his pupil, Theodore Abucara (Abú Qurra), the Bishop of Ḥarrán.<sup>1</sup> Christians were freely admitted to the Umayyad court. The Christian al-Akḥṭal was poet-laureate, while many of his co-religionists held high offices in the Government. Moslems and Christians exchanged ideas in friendly discussion or controversially. Armed with the hair-splitting weapons of Byzantine theology, which they soon learned to use only too well, the Arabs proceeded to try their edge on the dogmas of Islam.

The leading article of the Murjite creed was this, that no one who professed to believe in the One God could be declared an infidel, whatever sins he might commit, until God Himself had given judgment against him.<sup>2</sup> The Murjites were so called because they deferred (*arja'a* = to defer) their decision in such cases and left the sinner's fate in suspense, so long as it was doubtful.<sup>3</sup> This principle they applied in different ways. For example, they refused to condemn 'Alī and 'Uthmān outright, as the Khārijites did. "Both 'Alī and 'Uthmān," they said, "were servants of God, and by God alone must they be judged; it is not for us to pronounce either of them an infidel, notwithstanding that they rent the Moslem people asunder."<sup>4</sup> On the other hand, the Murjites equally rejected the pretensions

<sup>1</sup> Von Kremer, *Culturgeschichte. Streifzüge*, p. 2 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> The best account of the early Murjites that has hitherto appeared is contained in a paper by Van Vloten, entitled *Irdjā* (*Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 45, p. 161 sqq.). The reader may also consult Shahrastānī, *Haarbrücker's* trans., Part I, p. 156 sqq.; Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part II, p. 89 sqq.; Van Vloten, *La domination Arabe*, p. 31 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> Van Vloten thinks that in the name 'Murjite' (*murji*) there is an allusion to Koran, ix, 107: "And others are remanded (*murjawna*) until God shall decree; whether He shall punish them or take pity on them—for God is knowing and wise."

<sup>4</sup> Cf. the poem of Thābit Quṭna (*Z.D.M.G.*, loc. cit., p. 162), which states the whole Murjite doctrine in popular form. The author, who was himself a Murjite, lived in Khurāsān during the latter half of the first century A.H.

made by the Shīʿites on behalf of ʿAlī and by the Umayyads on behalf of Muʿāwīya. For the most part they maintained a neutral attitude towards the Umayyad Government: they were passive resisters, content, as Wellhausen puts it, "to stand up for the impersonal Law." Sometimes, however, they turned the principle of toleration against their rulers. Thus Hārith b. Surayj and other Arabian Murjites joined the oppressed *Mawālī* of Khurāsān to whom the Government denied those rights which they had acquired by conversion.<sup>1</sup> According to the Murjite view, these Persians, having professed Islam, should no longer be treated as tax-paying infidels. The Murjites brought the same tolerant spirit into religion. They set faith above works, emphasised the love and goodness of God, and held that no Moslem would be damned everlastingly. Some, like Jahm b. Ṣafwān, went so far as to declare that faith (*īmān*) was merely an inward conviction: a man might openly profess Christianity or Judaism or any form of unbelief without ceasing to be a good Moslem, provided only that he acknowledged Allah with his heart.<sup>2</sup> The moderate school found their most illustrious representative in Abū Ḥanīfa († 767 A.D.), and through this great divine—whose followers to-day are counted by millions—their liberal doctrines were diffused and perpetuated.

During the Umayyad period Baṣra was the intellectual capital of Islam, and in that city we find the first traces of a sect which maintained the principle that thought must be free in the search for truth. The origin of the Muʿtazilites (*al-Muʿtazila*), as they are generally called, takes us back to the famous divine and ascetic, Ḥasan of Baṣra († 728 A.D.). One day he was asked to give his opinion on a point regarding which the Murjites and the Khārijites held opposite views, namely, whether those who had committed

<sup>1</sup> Van Vloten, *La domination Arabe*, p. 29 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Ḥazm, cited in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 45, p. 169, n. 7. Jahm († about 747 A.D.) was a Persian, as might be inferred from the boldness of his speculations.



a great sin should be deemed believers or unbelievers. While Ḥasan was considering the question, one of his pupils, Wāṣil b. 'Aṭā (according to another tradition, 'Amr b. 'Ubayd) replied that such persons were neither believers nor unbelievers, but should be ranked in an intermediate state. He then turned aside and began to explain the grounds of his assertion to a group which gathered about him in a different part of the mosque. Ḥasan said: "Wāṣil has separated himself from us" (*i'tazala 'annā*); and on this account the followers of Wāṣil were named 'Mu'tazilites,' i.e., Schismatics. Although the story may not be literally true, it is probably safe to assume that the new sect originated in Baṣra among the pupils of Ḥasan,<sup>1</sup> who was the life and soul of the religious movement of the first century A.H. The Mu'tazilite heresy, in its earliest form, is connected with the doctrine of Predestination. On this subject the Koran speaks with two voices. Muḥammad was anything but a logically exact and consistent thinker. He was guided by the impulse of the moment, and neither he nor his hearers perceived, as later Moslems did, that the language of the Koran is often contradictory. [Thus in the present instance texts which imply the moral responsibility of man for his actions—e.g., "*Every soul is in pledge (with God) for what it hath wrought*"<sup>2</sup>; "*Whoso does good benefits himself, and whoso does evil does it against himself*"<sup>3</sup>—stand side by side with others which declare that God leads men aright or astray, as He pleases; that the hearts of the wicked are sealed and their ears made deaf to the truth; and that they are certainly doomed to perdition. This fatalistic view prevailed in the first century of Islam, and the dogma of Predestination was almost universally accepted.] Ibn Qutayba,

<sup>1</sup> Ḥasan himself inclined for a time to the doctrine of free-will, but afterwards gave it up (Ibn Qutayba, *Kitābu 'l-Ma'drif*, p. 225). He is said to have held that everything happens by fate, except sin (*Al-Mu'tazilah*, ed. by T. W. Arnold, p. 12, l. 3 from foot). See, however, Shahrastānī, Haarbrücker's trans., Part I, p. 46.

<sup>2</sup> Koran, lxxiv, 41.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, xli, 46.



however, mentions the names of twenty-seven persons who held the opinion that men's actions are free.<sup>1</sup> Two among them, Ma'bad al-Juhani and Abú Marwán Ghaylân, who were put to death by 'Abdu 'l-Malik and his son Hishâm, do not appear to have been condemned as heretics, but rather as enemies of the Umayyad Government.<sup>2</sup> The real founder of the Mu'tazilites was Wâsil b. 'Aṭā († 748 A.D.),<sup>3</sup> who added a second cardinal doctrine to that of free-will. He denied the existence of the Divine attributes—Power, Wisdom, Life, &c.—on the ground that such qualities, if conceived as eternal, would destroy the Unity of God. Hence the Mu'tazilites called themselves 'the partisans of Unity and Justice' (*Ahlul-tawḥīd wa-'l-'adl*): of Unity for the reason which has been explained, and of Justice, because they held that God was not the author of evil and that He would not punish His creatures except for actions within their control. The further development of these Rationalistic ideas belongs to the 'Abbásid period and will be discussed in a subsequent chapter.

The founder of Islam had too much human nature and common sense to demand of his countrymen such mortifying austerities as were practised by the Jewish Essenes and the Christian monks. His religion was not without ascetic features, *e.g.*, the Fast of Ramaḍân, the prohibition of wine, and the ordinance of the pilgrimage, but these can scarcely be called unreasonable. On the other hand Muḥammad condemned celibacy not only by his personal

Growth of  
asceticism.

<sup>1</sup> *Kitābu 'l-Ma'drif*, p. 301. Those who held the doctrine of free-will were called the Qadarites (*al-Qadariyya*), from *qadar* (power), which may denote (1) the power of God to determine human actions, and (2) the power of man to determine his own actions. Their opponents asserted that men act under compulsion (*jabr*); hence they were called the Jabarites (*al-Jabariyya*).

<sup>2</sup> As regards Ghaylân see *Al-Mu'tazilah*, ed. by T. W. Arnold, p. 15, l. 16 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> Ibn Khallikān, De Slane's translation, vol. iii, p. 642; Shahrastānī, trans. by Haarbrücker, Part I, p. 44.

example but also by precept. "There is no monkery in Islam," he is reported to have said, and there was in fact nothing of the kind for more than a century after his death. During this time, however, asceticism made great strides. It was the inevitable outcome of the Muḥammadan conception of Allah, in which the attributes of mercy and love are overshadowed by those of majesty, awe, and vengeance. The terrors of Judgment Day so powerfully described in the Koran were realised with an intensity of conviction which it is difficult for us to imagine. As Goldziher has observed, an exaggerated consciousness of sin and the dread of Divine punishment gave the first impulse to Moslem asceticism. Thus we read that Tamīm al-Dārī, one of the Prophet's Companions, who was formerly a Christian, passed the whole night until daybreak, repeating a single verse of the Koran (xlv, 20)—*"Do those who work evil think that We shall make them even as those who believe and do good, so that their life and death shall be equal? Ill do they judge!"*<sup>1</sup> [Abu 'l-Dardā, another of the Companions, used to say: "If ye knew what ye shall see after death, ye would not eat food nor drink water from appetite, and I wish that I were a tree which is lopped and then devoured."<sup>2</sup>] There were many who shared these views, and their determination to renounce the world and to live solely for God was strengthened by their disgust with a tyrannical and impious Government, and by the almost uninterrupted spectacle of bloodshed, rapine, and civil war. Ḥasan of Baṣra (†728)—we have already met him in connection with the Mu'tazilites—is an outstanding figure in this early ascetic movement, which proceeded on orthodox lines.<sup>3</sup> Fear of God seized on him so mightily that, in the words of his biographer, "it seemed

<sup>1</sup> Sha'rānī, *Lawāqihu 'l-Anwār* (Cairo, 1299 A.H.), p. 31.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>3</sup> See Von Kremer, *Herrschende Ideen*, p. 52 sqq.; Goldziher, *Materialien zur Entwicklungsgesch. des Sufismus* (Vienna Oriental Journal, vol. 13, p. 35 sqq.).



as though Hell-fire had been created for him alone."<sup>1</sup> All who looked on his face thought that he must have been recently overtaken by some great calamity.<sup>2</sup> One day a friend saw him weeping and asked him the cause. "I weep," he replied, "for fear that I have done something unwittingly and unintentionally, or committed some fault, or spoken some word which is displeasing to God: then He may have said, 'Begone, for now thou hast no more honour in My court, and henceforth I will not receive anything from thee.'"<sup>3</sup> Al-Mubarrad relates that two monks, coming from Syria, entered Basra and looked at Ḥasan, whereupon one said to the other, "Let us turn aside to visit this man, whose way of life appears like that of the Messiah." So they went, and they found him supporting his chin on the palm of his hand, while he was saying—"How I marvel at those who have been ordered to lay in a stock of provisions and have been summoned to set out on a journey, and yet the foremost of them stays for the hindermost! Would that I knew what they are waiting for!"<sup>4</sup> The following utterances are characteristic:—

"God hath made fasting a hippodrome (place or time of training) for His servants, that they may race towards obedience to Him.<sup>5</sup> Some come in first and win the prize, while others are left behind and return disappointed; and by my life, if the lid were removed, the well-doer would be diverted by his well-doing, and the evil-doer by his evil-doing, from wearing new garments or from anointing his hair."<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sha'rānī, *Lawāqih*, p. 38.

<sup>2</sup> Qushayrī's *Risāla* (1287 A.H.), p. 77, l. 10.

<sup>3</sup> *Tadhkiratu 'l-Awliyā* of Farīdu'ddīn 'Aṭṭār, Part I, p. 37, l. 8 of my edition.

<sup>4</sup> *Kāmil* (ed. by Wright), p. 57, l. 16.

<sup>5</sup> The point of this metaphor lies in the fact that Arab horses were put on short commons during the period of training, which usually began forty days before the race.

<sup>6</sup> *Kāmil*, p. 57, last line.



"You meet one of them with white skin and delicate complexion, speeding along the path of vanity: he shaketh his hips and clappeth his sides and saith, 'Here am I, recognise me!' Yes, we recognise thee, and thou art hateful to God and hateful to good men."<sup>1</sup>

"The bounties of God are too numerous to be acknowledged unless with His help, and the sins of Man are too numerous for him to escape therefrom unless God pardon them."<sup>2</sup>

"The wonder is not how the lost were lost, but how the saved were saved."<sup>3</sup>

"Cleanse ye these hearts (by meditation and remembrance of God), for they are quick to rust; and restrain ye these souls, for they desire eagerly, and if ye restrain them not, they will drag you to an evil end."<sup>4</sup>

The Sūfīs, concerning whom we shall say a few words presently, claim Ḥasan as one of themselves, and with justice in so far as he attached importance to spiritual righteousness, and was not satisfied with merely external acts of devotion. "A grain of genuine piety," he declared, "is better than a thousandfold weight of fasting and prayer."<sup>5</sup> But although some of his sayings which are recorded in the later biographies lend colour to the fiction that he was a full-blown Sūfī, there can be no doubt that his mysticism—if it deserves that name—was of the most moderate type, entirely lacking the glow and exaltation which we find in the saintly woman, Rābī'a al-ʿAdawiyya, with whom legend associates him.<sup>6</sup>

Ḥasan of Başra  
not a genuine  
Sūfī.

The origin of the name 'Sūfī' is explained by the Sūfīs themselves in many different ways, but of the derivations

<sup>1</sup> *Kāmil*, p. 58, l. 14.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 67, l. 9.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 91, l. 14.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 120, l. 4.

<sup>5</sup> Qushayrī's *Risāla*, p. 63, last line.

<sup>6</sup> It is noteworthy that Qushayrī († 1073 A.D.), one of the oldest authorities on Sūfism, does not include Ḥasan among the Sūfī Shaykhs whose biographies are given in the *Risāla* (pp. 8–35), and hardly mentions him above half a dozen times in the course of his work. The sayings of Ḥasan which he cites are of the same character as those preserved in the *Kāmil*.

which have been proposed only three possess any claim to consideration, viz., those which connect it with σοφός (wise) or with *ṣafā* (purity) or with *ṣūf* (wool).<sup>1</sup> The first two are inadmissible on linguistic grounds, into which we need not enter, though it may be remarked that the derivation from *ṣafā* is consecrated by the authority of the Ṣūfī Saints, and is generally accepted in the East.<sup>2</sup> The reason for this preference appears in such definitions as "The Ṣūfī is he who keeps his heart pure (*ṣāfi*) with God,"<sup>3</sup> "Ṣūfism is 'the being chosen for purity' (*iṭṭifā*): whoever is thus chosen and made pure from all except God is the true Ṣūfī."<sup>4</sup> Understood in this sense, the word had a lofty significance which commended it to the elect. Nevertheless it can be tracked to a quite humble source. Woollen garments were frequently worn by men of ascetic life in the early times of Islam in order (as Ibn Khaldūn says) that they might distinguish themselves from those who affected a more luxurious fashion of dress. Hence the name 'Ṣūfī,' which denotes in the first instance an ascetic clad in wool (*ṣūf*), just as the Capuchins owed their designation to the hood (*cappuccio*) which they wore. According to Qushayrī, the term came into common use before the end of the second century of the Hijra (=815 A.D.). By this time, however, the ascetic movement in Islam had to some extent assumed a new character, and the meaning of 'Ṣūfī,' if the word already existed, must have undergone a corresponding change. It seems to me not unlikely that the epithet in question marks the point of

<sup>1</sup> See Nöldeke's article, 'Ṣūfī,' in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 48, p. 45.

<sup>2</sup> An allusion to *ṣafā* occurs in thirteen out of the seventy definitions of Ṣūfī and Ṣūfism (*Ṭaṣawwuf*) which are contained in the *Tadhkiratu 'l-Awliyā*, or 'Memoirs of the Saints,' of the well-known Persian mystic, Farīdu'ddīn 'Aṭṭār († circa 1230 A.D.), whereas *ṣūf* is mentioned only twice.

<sup>3</sup> Said by Bishr al-Hāfi (the bare-footed), who died in 841-842 A.D.

<sup>4</sup> Said by Junayd of Baghdād († 909-910 A.D.), one of the most celebrated Ṣūfī Shaykhs.



departure from orthodox asceticism and that, as Jámí states, it was first applied to Abú Hášim of Kúfa (*ob.* before 800 A.D.), who founded a monastery (*khánaqádh*) for Šúfis at Ramla in Palestine. Be that as it may, the distinction between asceticism (*zuhd*) and Šúfism—a distinction which answers, broadly speaking, to the *via purgativa* and the *via illuminativa* of Western mediæval mysticism—begins to show itself before the close of the Umayyad period, and rapidly develops in the early ‘Abbásid age under the influence of foreign ideas and, in particular, of Greek philosophy. Leaving this later development to be discussed in a subsequent chapter, we shall now briefly consider the origin of Šúfism properly so called and the first manifestation of the peculiar tendencies on which it is based.

As regards its origin, we cannot do better than quote the observations with which Ibn Khaldún († 1406 A.D.) introduces the chapter on Šúfism in the Prolegomena to his great historical work :—

“This is one of the religious sciences which were born in Islam. The way of the Šúfis was regarded by the ancient Moslems and their illustrious men—the Companions of the Prophet (*al-Šaḥába*), the Successors (*al-Tábi‘ín*), and the generation which came after them—as the way of Truth and Salvation. To be assiduous in piety, to give up all else for God’s sake, to turn away from worldly gauds and vanities, to renounce pleasure, wealth, and power, which are the general objects of human ambition, to abandon society and to lead in seclusion a life devoted solely to the service of God—these were the fundamental principles of Šúfism which prevailed among the Companions and the Moslems of old time. When, however, in the second generation and afterwards worldly tastes became widely spread, and men no longer shrank from such contamination, those who made piety their aim were distinguished by the title of *Šúfis* or *Mutašawwifa* (aspirants to Šúfism).<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khaldún’s *Muqaddima* (Beyrout, 1900), p. 467 = vol. iii, p. 85 seq. of the French translation by De Slane. The same things are said at greater



From this it is clear that Šúfism, if not originally identical with the ascetic revolt of which, as we have seen, Ḥasan of Bašra was the most conspicuous representative, at any rate arose out of that movement. It was not a speculative system, like the Mu'tazilite heresy, but a practical religion and rule of life. "We derived Šúfism," said Junayd, "from fasting and taking leave of the world and breaking familiar ties and renouncing what men deem good; not from disputation" (*qil wa-qdl*).<sup>1</sup> [The oldest Šúfis were ascetics and hermits, but they were also something more. They brought out the spiritual and mystical element in Islam, or brought it in, if they did not find it there already.]

"Šúfism," says Suhrawardī,<sup>2</sup> "is neither 'poverty' (*faqr*) nor asceticism (*zuhd*), but a term which comprehends the ideas of both, together with something besides. Without these superadded qualities a man is not a Šúfī, though he may be an ascetic (*zāhid*) or a fakīr (*faqīr*). It is said that, notwithstanding the excellence of 'poverty,' the end thereof is only the beginning of Šúfism." A little further on he explains the difference thus:—

"The fakīr holds fast to his 'poverty' and is profoundly convinced of its superior merit. He prefers it to riches because he longs for the Divine recompense of which his faith assures him . . . and whenever he contemplates the everlasting reward, he abstains from the fleeting joys of this world and embraces poverty and indigence and fears that if he should cease to be 'poor' he will lose both the merit and the prize. Now this is absolutely unsound according to the doctrine of the Šúfis, because he hopes for recompense and renounces the world on that account, whereas the Šúfī does not renounce it for the sake of promised rewards but, on the contrary,

length by Suhrawardī in his *ʿAwārifu 'l-Ma'ārif* (printed on the margin of Ghazālī's *Ihyā*, Cairo, 1289 A.H.), vol. i, p. 172 *et seqq.* Cf. also the passage from Qushayrī translated by Professor E. G. Browne on pp. 297-298 of vol. i. of his *Literary History of Persia*.

<sup>1</sup> Suhrawardī, *loc. cit.*, p. 136 *seq.*

<sup>2</sup> *Loc. cit.*, p. 145.

for the sake of present 'states,' for he is the 'son of his time.' . . . 'The theory that 'poverty' is the foundation of Šūfiism signifies that the diverse stages of Šūfiism are reached by the road of 'poverty'; it does not imply that the Šūfi is essentially a fakīr."

[The keynote of Šūfiism is disinterested, selfless devotion, in a word, Love. Though not wholly strange, this idea was very far from being familiar to pious Muḥammadans, who were more deeply impressed by the power and vengeance of God than by His goodness and mercy. The Koran generally represents Allah as a stern, unapproachable despot, requiring utter submission to His arbitrary will, but infinitely unconcerned with human feelings and aspirations.] Such a Being could not satisfy the religious instinct, and the whole history of Šūfiism is a protest against the unnatural divorce between God and Man which this conception involves. Accordingly, I do not think that we need look beyond Islam for the origin of the Šūfi doctrines, although it would be a mistake not to recognise the part which Christian influence must have had in shaping their early development. The speculative character with which they gradually became imbued, and which in the course of time completely transformed them, was more or less latent during the Umayyad period and for nearly a century after the accession of the House of 'Abbās. [The early Šūfis are still on orthodox ground: their relation to Islam is not unlike that of the mediæval Spanish mystics to the Roman Catholic Church. They attach extraordinary value to certain points in Muḥammad's teaching and emphasise them so as to leave the others almost a dead letter.] They do not indulge in profound dialectic, but confine themselves to matters bearing on practical theology. Self-abandonment, rigorous self-mortification, fervid piety, and quietism carried to the verge of apathy form the main features of their creed.

<sup>1</sup> *I.e.*, he yields himself unreservedly to the spiritual 'states' (*aḥwāl*) which pass over him, according as God wills.



A full and vivid picture of early Šūfiism might be drawn from the numerous biographies in Arabic and Persian, which supply abundant details concerning the manner of life of these Muḥammadan Saints, and faithfully record their austerities, visions, miracles, and sayings. Here we have only space to add a few lines about the most important members of the group—Ibrāhīm b. Adham, Abū ‘Alī Shāqīq, Fuḍayl b. ‘Iyād, and Rābi‘a—all of whom died between the middle and end of the second century after the Hijra (767–815 A.D.). Ibrāhīm belonged to the royal family of Balkh. Forty scimitars of gold and forty maces of gold were borne in front of him and behind. One day, while hunting, he heard a voice which cried, “Awake! wert thou created for this?” He exchanged his splendid robes for the humble garb and felt cap of a shepherd, bade farewell to his kingdom, and lived for nine years in a cave near Naysābūr.<sup>1</sup> His customary prayer was, “O God, uplift me from the shame of disobedience to the glory of submission unto Thee!”

“O God!” he said, “Thou knowest that the Eight Paradises are little beside the honour which Thou hast done unto me, and beside Thy love, and beside Thy giving me intimacy with the praise of Thy name, and beside the peace of mind which Thou hast given me when I meditate on Thy majesty.” And again: “You will not attain to righteousness until you traverse six passes (*‘aqābāt*): the first is that you shut the door of pleasure and open the door of hardship; the second, that you shut the door of eminence and open the door of abasement; the third, that you shut the door of ease and open the door of affliction; the fourth, that you shut the door of sleep and open the door of wakefulness; the fifth, that you shut the door of riches and open the door of poverty; and the sixth, that you shut the door of expectation and open the door of making yourself ready for death.”

---

<sup>1</sup> Possibly Ibrāhīm was one of the *Shikaftiyya* or ‘Cave-dwellers’ of Khurāsān (*shikaft* means ‘cave’ in Persian), whom the people of Syria called *al-ḡūḡiyya*, i.e., ‘the Fasters.’ See Suhrawardī, *loc. cit.*, p. 171.



Shaqīq, also of Balkh, laid particular stress on the duty of leaving one's self entirely in God's hands (*tawakkul*), a term which is practically synonymous with

Shaqīq of  
Balkh.

passivity; e.g., the *mutawakkil* must make no effort to obtain even the barest livelihood, he

must not ask for anything, nor engage in any trade: his business is with God alone. [One of Shaqīq's sayings was,

"Nine-tenths of devotion consist in flight from mankind, the remaining tenth in silence." Similarly,

Fuḍayl b. 'Iyād.

Fuḍayl b. 'Iyād, a converted captain of banditti,

declared that "to abstain for men's sake from doing anything is hypocrisy, while to do anything for men's sake is idolatry." It may be noticed as an argument against

the Indian origin of Šufiism that although the three Šufīs who have been mentioned were natives of Khurāsān or Transoxania, and therefore presumably in touch with Buddhistic ideas, no trace can be found in their sayings of the doctrine of dying to self (*fana*), which plays a great part in subsequent Šufiism, and which Von Kremer and others have identified with *Nirvāṇa*. We now come to a more

interesting personality, in whom the ascetic and quietistic type of Šufiism is transfigured by emotion and begins clearly to reveal the direction of its next advance. Every one knows that women have borne a distinguished part in the annals of European mysticism: St. Teresa, Madame Guyon, Catharine of Siena, and Juliana of Norwich, to mention but a few names at random. And notwithstanding the intellectual death to which the majority of Moslem women are condemned by their Prophet's ordinance, the Šufīs, like the Roman Catholics, can boast a goodly number of female saints. (The oldest of these, and by

Rābi'a  
al-'Adawiyya.

far the most renowned, is Rābi'a, who belonged to the tribe of 'Adī, whence she is generally

called Rābi'a al-'Adawiyya.) She was a native of Baṣra and died at Jerusalem, probably towards the end of the

second century of Islam: her tomb was an object of pilgrimage in the Middle Ages, as we learn from Ibn Khallikán († 1282 A.D.). Although the sayings and verses attributed to her by Šúfi writers may be of doubtful authenticity, there is every reason to suppose that they fairly represent the actual character of her devotion, which resembled that of all feminine mystics in being inspired by tender and ardent feeling. She was asked: "Do you love God Almighty?" "Yes." "Do you hate the Devil?" "My love of God," she replied, "leaves me no leisure to hate the Devil. I saw the Prophet in a dream. He said, 'O Rábi'a, do you love me?' I said, 'O Apostle of God, who does not love thee?—but love of God hath so absorbed me that neither love nor hate of any other thing remains in my heart.'" (Rábi'a is said to have spoken the following verses:—

"Two ways I love Thee: selfishly,  
And next, as worthy is of Thee.  
'Tis selfish love that I do naught  
Save think on Thee with every thought;  
'Tis purest love when Thou dost raise  
The veil to my adoring gaze.  
Not mine the praise in that or this,  
Thine is the praise in both, I wis."<sup>1</sup>

Whether genuine or not, these lines, with their mixture of devotion and speculation—the author distinguishes the illuminative from the contemplative life and manifestly regards the latter as the more excellent way—serve to mark the end of the ascetic school of Šúfiism and the rise of a new theosophy which, under the same name and still professing to be in full accord with the Koran and the *Sunna*, was founded to some extent upon ideas of extraneous origin—ideas irreconcilable with any revealed religion, and

<sup>1</sup> Ghazáli, *Iḥyá* (Cairo, 1289 A.H.), vol. iv, p. 298.



directly opposed to the severe and majestic simplicity of the Muhammadan articles of faith.]

The opening century of Islam was not favourable to literature. At first conquest, expansion, and organisation, then civil strife absorbed the nation's energies; then, under the Umayyads, the old pagan spirit asserted itself once more. Consequently the

Umayyad  
literature.

literature of this period consists almost exclusively of poetry, which bears few marks of Islamic influence. I need scarcely refer to the view which long prevailed in Europe that Muhammad corrupted the taste of his countrymen by setting up the Koran as an incomparable model of poetic style, and by condemning the admired productions of the heathen bards and the art of poetry itself; nor remind my readers that in the first place the Koran is not poetical in form (so

The decline of  
Arabian poetry  
not due to  
Muhammad.

that it could not serve as a model of this kind), and secondly, according to Muhammadan belief, is the actual Word of God, therefore *sui generis* and beyond imitation. Again, the poets

whom the Prophet condemned were his most dangerous opponents: he hated them not as poets but as propagators and defenders of false ideals, and because they ridiculed his teaching, while on the contrary he honoured and rewarded those who employed their talents in the right way. If the nomad minstrels and cavaliers who lived, as they sang, the free life of the desert were never equalled by the brilliant laureates of imperial Damascus and Baghdád, the causes of the decline cannot be traced to Muhammad's personal attitude, but are due to various circumstances for which he is only responsible in so far as he founded a religious and political system that revolutionised Arabian society. [The poets of the period with which we are now dealing follow slavishly in the footsteps of the ancients, as though Islam had never been. Instead of celebrating the splendid victories



and heroic deeds of Moslem warriors, the bard living in a great city still weeps over the relics of his beloved's encampment in the wilderness, still rides away through the sandy waste on the peerless camel, whose fine points he particularly describes; and if he should happen to be addressing the Caliph, it is ten to one that he will credit that august personage with all the virtues of a Bedouin Shaykh. "Fortunately the imitation of the antique *qaṣīda*, at any rate with the greatest Umayyad poets, is to some extent only accessory to another form of art that excites our historical interest in a high degree: namely, the occasional poems (very numerous in almost all these writers), which are suggested by the mood of the moment and can shed a vivid light on contemporary history." \*

The Umayyad  
poets.

The conquests made by the successors of the Prophet brought enormous wealth into Mecca and Medina, and when the Umayyad aristocracy gained the upper hand in 'Uthmān's Caliphate, [these towns developed a voluptuous and dissolute life which broke through every restriction that Islam had imposed. The increase of luxury produced a corresponding refinement of the poetic art. Although music was not unknown to the pagan Arabs, it had hitherto been cultivated chiefly by foreigners, especially Greek and Persian singing-girls. But in the first century after the Hijra we hear of several Arab singers,<sup>2</sup> natives of Mecca and Medina, who set favourite passages to music: henceforth the words and the melody are inseparably united, as we learn from the *Kitābu 'l-Aghāni* or 'Book of Songs,' where hundreds of examples are to be found.] Amidst the gay throng of pleasure-seekers women naturally played a prominent part, and love, which had

Music and song  
in the  
Holy Cities.

\* Brockelmann, *Gesch. d. Arab. Litteratur*, vol. i, p. 45.

<sup>2</sup> E.g., Ma'bad, Ghariq, Ibn Surayj, Tuways, and Ibn 'A'isha.

hitherto formed in most cases merely the conventional prelude to an ode, now began to be sung for its own sake. In this Peninsular school, as it may be named in contrast with the bold and masculine strain of the great Provincial poets whom we are about to mention, the palm unquestionably belongs to ‘Umar b. Abí Rabí‘a († 719 A.D.), the son of a rich Meccan merchant. He passed the best part of his life in the pursuit of noble dames, who alone inspired him to sing. His poetry was so seductive that it was regarded by devout Moslems as “the greatest crime ever committed against God,” and so charming withal that ‘Abdulláh b. ‘Abbás, the Prophet’s cousin and a famous authority on the Koran and the Traditions, could not refrain from getting by heart some erotic verses which ‘Umar recited to him.\* The Arabs said, with truth, that the tribe of Quraysh had won distinction in every field save poetry, but we must allow that ‘Umar b. Abí Rabí‘a is a clear exception to this rule. His diction, like that of Catullus, has all the unaffected ease of refined conversation. Here are a few lines :—

‘Umar b. Abí  
Rabí‘a.

“Blame me no more, O comrades ! but to-day  
Quietly with me beside the howdahs stay.  
Blame not my love for Zaynab, for to her  
And hers my heart is pledged a prisoner.  
Ah, can I ever think of how we met  
Once at al-Khayf, and feel no fond regret?  
My song of other women was but jest :  
She reigns alone, eclipsing all the rest.  
Hers is my love sincere, ’tis she the flame  
Of passion kindles—so, a truce to blame !”•)

We have no space to dwell on the minor poets of the same school, al-‘Arjî (a kinsman of the Umayyads), al-Aḥwas, and many others. It has been pointed out by Dr. C. Brockelmann

\* *Kāmil* of Mubarrad, p. 570 sqq.

• *Aghāni*, i, 43, l. 15 sqq. ; Nöldeke’s *Delectus*, p. 17, last line and foll.

that the love-poetry of this epoch is largely of popular origin; e.g., the songs attributed to Jamīl, in which Buthayna is addressed, and to Majnūn—the hero of countless Persian and Turkish romances which celebrate his love for Laylā—are true folk-songs such as occur in the *Arabian Nights*, and may be heard in the streets of Beyrout or on the banks of the Tigris at the present day. Many of them are extremely beautiful. I take the following verses from a poem which is said to have been composed by Jamīl:—

“Oh, might it flower anew, that youthful prime,  
And restore to us, Buthayna, the bygone time!  
And might we again be blest as we wont to be,  
When thy folk were nigh and grudged what thou gavest me!

Shall I ever meet Buthayna alone again,  
Each of us full of love as a cloud of rain?  
Fast in her net was I when a lad, and till  
This day my love is growing and waxing still.

I have spent my lifetime, waiting for her to speak,  
And the bloom of youth is faded from off my cheek;  
But I will not suffer that she my suit deny,  
My love remains undying, though all things die!”

The names of al-Akhtal, al-Farazdaq, and Jarīr stand out pre-eminently in the list of Umayyad poets. They were men of a very different stamp from the languishing Minnesingers and carpet-knights who, like Jamīl, refused to battle except on the field of love. It is noteworthy that all three were born and bred in Mesopotamia. The motherland was exhausted; her ambitious and enterprising youth poured into the provinces, which now become the main centres of intellectual activity.

Farazdaq and Jarīr are intimately connected by a peculiar rivalry—“*Arcades ambo—id est, blackguards both.*” For many years they engaged in a public scolding-match (*muhājāt*), and

\* Nöldeke's *Delectus*, p. 9, l. 11 sqq., omitting l. 13.



as neither had any scruples on the score of decency, the foulest abuse was bandied to and fro between them—abuse, however, which is redeemed from vulgarity by its literary excellence, and by the marvellous skill which the satirists display in manipulating all the vituperative resources of the Arabic language. Soon these ‘Flytings’ (*Naqā'id*)

The *Naqā'id* of  
Jarīr and  
Farazdaq.

were recited everywhere, and each poet had thousands of enthusiastic partisans who maintained that he was superior to his rival.<sup>1</sup> One day Muhallab b. Abī Šufra, the governor of Khurāsān, who was marching against the Azāriqa, a sect of the Khārijites, heard a great clamour and tumult in the camp. On inquiring its cause, he found that the soldiers had been fiercely disputing as to the comparative merits of Jarīr and Farazdaq, and desired to submit the question to his decision. “Would you expose me,” said Muhallab, “to be torn in pieces by these two dogs? I will not decide between them, but I will point out to you those who care not a whit for either of them. Go to the Azāriqa! They are Arabs who understand poetry and judge it aright.”

General interest  
in poetry.

Next day, when the armies faced each other, an Azraqite named ‘Abīda b. Hilāl stepped forth from the ranks and offered single combat. One of Muhallab’s men accepted the challenge, but before fighting he begged his adversary to inform him which was the better poet—Farazdaq or Jarīr? “God confound you!” cried ‘Abīda, “do you ask me about poetry instead of studying the Koran and the Sacred Law?” Then he quoted a verse by Jarīr and gave judgment in his favour.<sup>2</sup> This incident affords a striking proof that the taste for poetry, far from being confined to literary circles, was diffused throughout the whole nation, and was cultivated

<sup>1</sup> An edition of the *Naqā'id* by Professor A. A. Bevan has been published at Leyden.

<sup>2</sup> *Aghāni*, vii, 55, l. 12 sqq.

even amidst the fatigues and dangers of war. Parallel instances occur in the history of the Athenians, the most gifted people of the West, and possibly elsewhere, but imagine British soldiers discussing questions of that kind over the camp-fires!

Akhṭal joined in the fray. His sympathies were with Farazdaq, and the *naqd'id* which he and Jarīr composed against each other have come down to us. All these poets, like their Post-islamic brethren generally, were professional encomiasts, greedy, venal, and ready to revile any one who would not purchase their praise. Some further account of them may be interesting to the reader, especially as the anecdotes related by their biographers throw many curious sidelights on the manners of the time.

The oldest of the trio, Akhṭal (Ghiyāth b. Ghawth) of Taghlib, was a Christian, like most of his tribe—they had long been settled in Mesopotamia—and remained in that faith to the end of his life, though the Caliph 'Abdu'l-Malik is said to have offered him a pension and 10,000 dirhems in cash if he would turn Moslem. His religion, however, was less a matter of principle than of convenience, and to him the supreme virtue of Christianity lay in the licence which it gave him to drink wine as often as he pleased. The stories told of him suggest grovelling devoutness combined with very easy morals, a phenomenon familiar to the student of mediæval Catholicism. It is related by one who was touring in Syria that he found Akhṭal confined in a church at Damascus, and pleaded his cause with the priest. The latter stopped beside Akhṭal and raising the staff on which he leaned—for he was an aged man—exclaimed: "O enemy of God, will you again defame people and satirise them and calumniate chaste women?" while the poet humbled himself and promised never to repeat the offence. When asked how it was that he, who was honoured by the Caliph and feared by all, behaved so



submissively to this priest, he answered, "It is religion, it is religion."<sup>1</sup> On another occasion, seeing the Bishop pass, he cried to his wife who was then pregnant, "Run after him and touch his robe." The poor woman only succeeded in touching the tail of the Bishop's ass, but Akhtal consoled her with the remark, "He and the tail of his ass, there's no difference!"<sup>2</sup> It is characteristic of the anti-Islamic spirit which appears so strongly in the Umayyads that their chosen laureate and champion should have been a Christian who was in truth a lineal descendant of the pagan bards. Pious Moslems might well be scandalised when he burst unannounced into the Caliph's presence, sumptuously attired in silk and wearing a cross of gold which was suspended from his neck by a golden chain, while drops of wine trickled from his beard,<sup>3</sup> but their protests went unheeded at the court of Damascus, where nobody cared whether the author of a fine verse was a Moslem or a Christian, and where a poet was doubly welcome whose religion enabled him to serve his masters without any regard to Muḥammadan sentiment; so that, for example, when Yazīd I wished to take revenge on the people of Medīna because one of their poets had addressed amatory verses to his sister, he turned to Akhtal, who branded the *Anṣār*, the men who had brought about the triumph of Islam, in the famous lines—

"Quraysh have borne away all the honour and glory,  
And baseness alone is beneath the turbans of the Anṣār."<sup>4</sup>

We must remember that the poets were leaders of public opinion; their utterances took the place of political pamphlets or of party oratory for or against the Government of the day.

<sup>1</sup> *Aghānī*, vii, 182, l. 25 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 178, l. 1 seq.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, vii, 183, l. 6 sqq.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, xiii, 148, l. 23.



On hearing Akḥṭal's ode in praise of the Umayyad dynasty,<sup>1</sup> 'Abdu 'l-Malik ordered one of his clients to conduct the author through the streets of Damascus and to cry out, "Here is the poet of the Commander of the Faithful! Here is the best poet of the Arabs!"<sup>2</sup> No wonder that he was a favourite at court and such an eminent personage that the great tribe of Bakr used to invite him to act as arbitrator whenever any controversy arose among them.<sup>3</sup> (Despite the luxury in which he lived, his wild Bedouin nature pined for freedom, and he frequently left the capital to visit his home in the desert, where he not only married and divorced several wives, but also threw himself with ardour into the feuds of his clan.) We have already noticed the part which he played in the literary duel between Jarīr and Farazdaq. From his deathbed he sent a final injunction to Farazdaq not to spare their common enemy.

Akḥṭal is commended by Arabian critics for the number and excellence of his long poems, as well as for the purity, polish, and correctness of his style. Abū 'Ubayda put him first among the poets of Islam, while the celebrated collector of Pre-Islamic poetry, Abū 'Amr b. al-'Alā, declared that if Akḥṭal had lived a single day in the Pagan Age he would not have preferred any one to him. His supremacy in panegyric was acknowledged by Farazdaq, and he himself claims to have surpassed all competitors in three styles, viz., panegyric, satire, and erotic poetry; but there is more justification for the boast that his satires might be recited *virginibus*—he does not add *puerisque*—without causing a blush.<sup>4</sup>

Hammām b. Ghālib, generally known as Farazdaq, belonged to the tribe of Tamīm, and was born at Baṣra towards the end of 'Umar's Caliphate. His grandfather, Ṣa'ṣa'a, won renown

<sup>1</sup> *Encomium Omayyadarum*, ed. by Houtsma (Leyden, 1878).

<sup>2</sup> *Aghānī*, vii, 172, l. 27 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 179, l. 25 sqq.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 178, l. 26 seq.

in Pre-islamic times by ransoming the lives of female infants whom their parents had condemned to die (on account of

which he received the title, *Muhyi 'l-Maw'uddt*, Farazdaq. 'He who brings the buried girls to life'), and his father was likewise imbued with the old Bedouin traditions of liberality and honour, which were rapidly growing obsolete among the demoralised populace of 'Irâq. Farazdaq was a *mauvais sujet* of the type represented by François Villon, reckless, dissolute, and thoroughly unprincipled: apart from his gift of vituperation, we find nothing in him to admire save his respect for his father's memory and his constant devotion to the House of 'Alî, a devotion which he scorned to conceal; so that he was cast into prison by the Caliph Hishâm for reciting in his presence a glowing panegyric on 'Alî's grandson, Zaynu 'l-'Âbidîn. (The tragic fate of Ḥusayn at Karbalâ affected him deeply, and he called on his compatriots to acquit themselves like men—

"If ye avenge not him, the son of the best of you,  
Then fling, fling the sword away and naught but the spindle  
ply."\*)

While still a young man, he was expelled from his native city in consequence of the lampoons which he directed against a noble family of Baṣra, the Banû Nahshal. Thereupon he fled to Medîna, where he plunged into gallantry and dissipation until a shameless description of one of his intrigues again drew upon him the sentence of banishment. His poems contain many references to his cousin Nawâr, whom, by means of a discreditable trick, he forced to marry him when she was on the point of giving her hand to another. The pair were ever quarrelling, and at last Farazdaq consented to an irrevocable divorce, which was witnessed by Ḥasan of Baṣra, the famous theologian. No sooner was

\* *Aghânî*, xix, 34, l. 18.

the act complete than Farazdaq began to wish it undone, and he spoke the following verses :—<sup>1</sup>

“ I feel repentance like al-Kusa’i,<sup>2</sup>  
 Now that Nawár has been divorced by me,  
 She was my Paradise which I have lost,  
 Like Adam when the Lord’s command he crossed.  
 I am one who wilfully puts out his eyes,  
 Then dark to him the shining day doth rise ! ” )

‘The repentance of Farazdaq,’ signifying bitter regret or disappointment, passed into a proverb. He died a few months before Jarír in 728 A.D., a year also made notable by the deaths of two illustrious divines, Ḥasan of Baṣra and Ibn Sírín.

Jarír b. ‘Aṭiyya belonged to Kulayb, a branch of the same tribe, Tamím, which produced Farazdaq. He was the court-poet of Ḥajjáj, the dreaded governor of ‘Iráq, and

Jarír.

eulogised his patron in such extravagant terms as to arouse the jealousy of the Caliph ‘Abdu ‘l-Malik, who consequently received him, on his appearance at Damascus, with marked coldness and hauteur. But when, after several repulses, he at length obtained permission to recite a poem which he had composed in honour of the prince, and came to the verse—

“ Are not ye the best of those who on camel ride,  
 More open-handed than all in the world beside ? ”—

the Caliph sat up erect on his throne and exclaimed : “ Let

<sup>1</sup> *Kámil* of Mubarrad. p. 70, l. 17 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Al-Kusa’i broke an excellent bow which he had made for himself. See *The Assemblies of Ḥariri*, trans. by Chenery, p. 351. Professor Bevan remarks that this half-verse is an almost verbal citation from a verse ascribed to ‘Adí b. Maríná of Ḥíra, an enemy of ‘Adí b. Zayd the poet (*Aghání*, ii, 24, l. 5).



us be praised like this or in silence !”<sup>1</sup> Jarír’s fame as a satirist stood so high that to be worsted by him was reckoned a greater distinction than to vanquish any one else. The blind poet, Bashshár b. Burd († 783 A.D.), said : “I satirised Jarír, but he considered me too young for him to notice. Had he answered me, I should have been the finest poet in the world.”<sup>2</sup> The following anecdote shows that vituperation launched by a master like Jarír was a deadly and far-reaching weapon which degraded its victim in the eyes of his contemporaries, however he might deserve their esteem, and covered his family and tribe with lasting disgrace.

There was a poet of repute, well known by the name of Rá’í ‘l-ibil (Camel-herd), who loudly published his opinion that Farazdaq was superior to Jarír, although the latter had lauded his tribe, the Banú Numayr, whereas Farazdaq had made verses against them. One day Jarír met him and expostulated with him but got no reply. Rá’í was riding a mule and was accompanied by his son, Jandal, who said to his father : “Why do you halt before this dog of the Banú Kulayb, as though you had anything to hope or fear from him ?” At the same time he gave the mule a lash with his whip. The animal started violently and kicked Jarír, who was standing by, so that his cap fell to the ground. Rá’í took no heed and went on his way. Jarír picked up the cap, brushed it, and replaced it on his head. Then he exclaimed in verse :—

*“O Jandal ! what will say Numayr of you  
When my dishonouring shaft has pierced thy sire ?”*

He returned home full of indignation, and after the evening prayer, having called for a jar of date-wine and a lamp, he set about his work. An old woman in the house heard him muttering, and mounted the stairs to see what ailed him. She found him crawling naked on his bed, by reason of that which was within him ; so she ran down, crying “He is mad,” and described what she had seen to the people of the house. “Get thee gone,” they said, “we know

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikán (ed. by Wüstenfeld), No. 129; De Slane’s translation vol. i, p. 298.

<sup>2</sup> *Aghānī*, iii, 23, l. 13.

what he is at." By daybreak Jarir had composed a satire of eighty verses against the Banu Numayr. When he finished the poem, he shouted triumphantly, "*Allah Akbar!*" and rode away to the place where he expected to find Rā'ī 'l-ibil and Farazdaq and their friends. He did not salute Rā'ī but immediately began to recite. While he was speaking Farazdaq and Rā'ī bowed their heads, and the rest of the company sat listening in silent mortification. When Jarir uttered the final words—

*"Cast down thine eyes for shame! for thou art of  
Numayr—no peer of Ka'b nor yet Kildāb"—*

Rā'ī rose and hastened to his lodging as fast as his mule could carry him. "Saddle! Saddle!" he cried to his comrades; "you cannot stay here longer, Jarir has disgraced you all." They left Baṣra without delay to rejoin their tribe, who bitterly reproached Rā'ī for the ignominy which he had brought upon Numayr; and hundreds of years afterwards his name was still a byword among his people.<sup>1</sup>

Next, but next at a long interval, to the three great poets of this epoch comes Dhu 'l-Rumma (Ghaylān b. 'Uqba), who imitated the odes of the desert Arabs with tiresome and monotonous fidelity. The philologists of the following age delighted in his antique and difficult style, and praised him far above his merits. It was said that poetry began with Imru'ū 'l-Qays and ended with Dhu 'l-Rumma; which is true in the sense that he is the last important representative of the pure Bedouin school.

Concerning the prose writers of the period we can make only a few general observations, inasmuch as their works have almost entirely perished.<sup>2</sup> In this branch of literature the same secular, non-Muḥammadan spirit prevailed which has been mentioned as characteristic of the poets who flourished under the Umayyad dynasty, and of the dynasty itself. [Historical studies

Prose writers of  
the Umayyad  
period.

<sup>1</sup> *Aghāni*, vii, 49, l. 8 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> The following account is mainly derived from Goldziher's *Muhamm. Studien*, Part II, p. 203 sqq.



were encouraged and promoted by the court of Damascus. We have referred elsewhere to 'Abd b. Sharya, a native of Yemen, whose business it was to dress up the old legends and purvey them in a readable form to the public. Another Yemenite of Persian descent, Wahb b. Munabbih, is responsible for a great deal of the fabulous lore belonging to the domain of *Awd'il* (Origins) which Moslem chroniclers commonly prefix to their historical works.) There seems to have been an eager demand for narratives of the Early Wars of Islam (*maghāzī*). It is related that the Caliph 'Abdu 'l-Malik, seeing one of these books in the hands of his son, ordered it to be burnt, and enjoined him to study the Koran instead. This anecdote shows on the part of 'Abdu 'l-Malik a pious feeling with which he is seldom credited,<sup>1</sup> but it shows also that histories of a legendary and popular character preceded those which were based, like the *Maghāzī* of Músá b. 'Uqba († 758 A.D.) and Ibn Ishāq's *Biography of the Prophet*, upon religious tradition. No work of the former class has been preserved. The strong theological influence which asserted itself in the second century of the Hijra was unfavourable to the development of an Arabian prose literature on national lines. In the meantime, however, learned doctors of divinity began to collect and write down the *Ḥadīths*. We have a solitary relic of this sort in the *Kitābu 'l-Zuhd* (Book of Asceticism) by Asad b. Músá († 749 A.D.). The most renowned traditionist of the Umayyad age is Muḥammad b. Muslim b. Shihāb al-Zuhrí († 742 A.D.), who distinguished himself by accepting judicial office under the tyrants; an act of complaisance to which his more stiff-necked and conscientious brethren declined to stoop.

It was the lust of conquest even more than missionary zeal that caused the Arabs to invade Syria and Persia and to settle

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Browne's *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. i, p. 230.



on foreign soil, where they lived as soldiers at the expense of the native population whom they inevitably regarded as an inferior race. If the latter thought to win

The non-Arabian  
Moslems.

respect by embracing the religion of their conquerors, they found themselves sadly mistaken.

The new converts were attached as clients (*Mawāllī*, sing. *Mawlā*) to an Arab tribe: they could not become Moslems on any other footing. [Far from obtaining the equal rights which they coveted, and which, according to the principles of Islam, they should have enjoyed, the *Mawāllī* were treated by their aristocratic patrons with contempt, and had to submit to every kind of social degradation, while instead of being exempted from the capitation-tax paid by non-Moslems, they still remained liable to the ever-increasing exactions of Government officials.] And these 'Clients,' be it remembered, were not ignorant serfs, but men whose culture was acknowledged by the Arabs themselves—men who formed the backbone of the influential learned class and ardently prosecuted those studies, Divinity and Jurisprudence, which were then held in highest esteem. Here was a situation full of danger. Against Shī'ites and Khārijites the Umayyads might claim with some show of reason to represent the cause of law and order, if not of Islam; against the bitter cry of the oppressed *Mawāllī* they had no argument save the sword.

We have referred above to the universal belief of Moslems in a Messiah and to the extraordinary influence of that belief on their religious and political history. No

Presages of the  
Revolution.

wonder that in this unhappy epoch thousands of people, utterly disgusted with life as they found it, should have indulged in visions of 'a good time coming,' which was expected to coincide with the end of the first century of the Hijra. Mysterious predictions, dark sayings attributed to Muḥammad himself, prophecies of war and deliverance floated to and fro. Men pored over apocry-

phal books, and asked whether the days of confusion and slaughter (*al-harj*), which, it is known, shall herald the appearance of the Mahdí, had not actually begun.

The final struggle was short and decisive. When it closed, the Umayyads and with them the dominion of the Arabs had passed away. Alike in politics and literature, the Persian race asserted its supremacy. We shall now relate the story of this Revolution as briefly as possible, leaving the results to be considered in a new chapter.

While the Shí'ite missionaries (*du'dt*, sing. *dd't*) were actively engaged in canvassing for their party, which, as we have seen, recognised in 'Alí and his descendants

The 'Abbásids.

the only legitimate successors to Muḥammad, another branch of the Prophet's family—the 'Abbásids—had entered the field with the secret intention of turning the labours of the 'Alids to their own advantage. From their ancestor, 'Abbás, the Prophet's uncle, they inherited those qualities of caution, duplicity, and worldly wisdom which ensure success in political intrigue. 'Abdulláh, the son of 'Abbás, devoted his talents to theology and interpretation of the Koran. He "passes for one of the strongest pillars of religious tradition; but, in the eyes of unprejudiced European research, he is only a crafty liar." His descendants "lived in deep retirement in Ḥumayma, a little place to the south of the Dead Sea, seemingly far withdrawn from the world, but which, on account of its proximity to the route by which Syrian pilgrims went to Mecca, afforded opportunities for communication with the remotest lands of Islam. From this centre they carried on

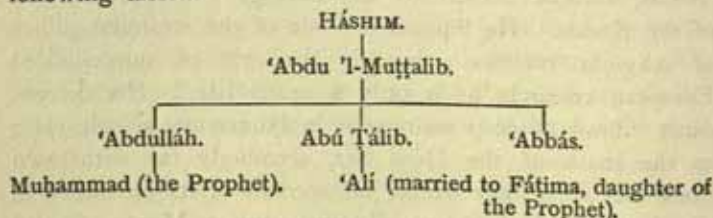
'Abbásid  
propaganda in  
Khurásán.

the propaganda in their own behalf with the utmost skill. They had genius enough to see that the best soil for their efforts was the distant Khurásán—that is, the extensive north-eastern provinces of the old Persian Empire." \* These countries were inhabited by a

\* Nöldeke, *Sketches from Eastern History*, tr. by J. S. Black, p. 108 seq.



brave and high-spirited people who in consequence of their intolerable sufferings under the Umayyad tyranny, the devastation of their homes and the almost servile condition to which they had been reduced, were eager to join in any desperate enterprise that gave them hope of relief. Moreover, the Arabs in Khurásán were already to a large extent Persianised: they had Persian wives, wore trousers, drank wine, and kept the festivals of Nawrúz and Mihrgán; while the Persian language was generally understood and even spoken among them.<sup>1</sup> Many interesting details as to the methods of the 'Abbásid emissaries will be found in Van Vloten's admirable work.<sup>2</sup> Starting from Kúfa, the residence of the Grand Master who directed the whole agitation, they went to and fro in the guise of merchants or pilgrims, cunningly adapting their doctrine to the intelligence of those whom they sought to enlist. Like the Shí'ites, they canvassed for 'the House of the Prophet,' an ambiguous expression which might equally well be applied to the descendants of 'Alí or of 'Abbás, as is shown by the following table:—



It was, of course, absolutely essential to the 'Abbásids that they should be able to count on the support of the powerful Shí'ite organisation, which, ever since the abortive rebellion headed by Mukhtár (see p. 218 *supra*) had drawn vast numbers of Persian *Mawáli* into its ranks. Now, of the two main parties of the Shí'a,

The Shí'ites  
join hands with  
the 'Abbásids.

<sup>1</sup> Wellhausen, *Das Arabische Reich*, p. 307.

<sup>2</sup> *Recherches sur la domination Arabe*, p. 46 sqq.



viz., the Hāshimites or followers of Muḥammad Ibnu 'l-Ḥanafiyya, and the Imāmites, who pinned their faith to the descendants of the Prophet through his daughter Fāṭima, the former had virtually identified themselves with the 'Abbāsids, inasmuch as the Imām Abū Hāshim, who died in 716 A.D., bequeathed his hereditary rights to Muḥammad b. 'Alī, the head of the House of 'Abbās. It only remained to hoodwink the Imāmites. Accordingly the 'Abbásid emissaries were instructed to carry on their propaganda in the name of Hāshim, the common ancestor of 'Abbās and 'Alī. By means of this ruse they obtained a free hand in Khurāsān, and made such progress that the governor of that province, Naṣr b. Sayyār, wrote to the Umayyad Caliph, Marwān, asking for reinforcements, and informing him that two hundred thousand men had sworn allegiance to Abū Muslim, the principal 'Abbásid agent. At the foot of his letter he added these lines:—

"I see the coal's red glow beneath the embers,  
And 'tis about to blaze!  
The rubbing of two sticks enkindles fire,  
And out of words come frays.  
'Oh! is Umayya's House awake or sleeping?'  
I cry in sore amaze."\*

We have other verses by this gallant and loyal officer in which he implores the Arab troops stationed in Khurāsān, who were paralysed by tribal dissensions, to turn their swords against "a mixed rabble without religion or nobility":—

"'Death to the Arabs'—that is all their creed."

These warnings, however, were of no avail, and on June 9th, A.D. 747, Abū Muslim displayed the black banner

\* Dīnawari, ed. by Guirgass, p. 356.

\* *Ibid.*, p. 360, l. 15. The whole poem has been translated by Professor Browne in his *Literary History of Persia*, vol. i, p. 242.

of the 'Abbásids at Siqadanj, near Merv, which city he occupied a few months later. The triumphant advance of the armies of the Revolution towards Damascus recalls the celebrated campaign of Cæsar, when after crossing the Rubicon he marched on Rome. Nor is Abú Muslim, though a freed-man of obscure parentage—he was certainly no Arab—unworthy to be compared with the great patrician. "He united," says Nöldeke, "with an agitator's adroitness and perfect unscrupulosity in the choice of means the energy and clear outlook of a general and statesman, and even of a monarch."<sup>1</sup> Grim, ruthless, disdaining the pleasures of ordinary men, he possessed the faculty in which Cæsar excelled of inspiring blind obedience and enthusiastic devotion. To complete the parallel, we may mention here that Abú Muslim was treacherously murdered by Manşúr, the second Caliph of the House which he had raised to the throne, from motives exactly resembling those which Shakespeare has put in the mouth of Brutus—

"So Cæsar may :

Then, lest he may, prevent. And since the quarrel  
Will bear no colour for the thing he is,  
Fashion it thus : that what he is, augmented,  
Would run to these and these extremities ;  
And therefore think him as a serpent's egg  
Which, hatched, would as his kind grow mischievous,  
And kill him in the shell."

The downfall of the Umayyads was hastened by the perfidy and selfishness of the Arabs on whom they relied : the old feud between Muḍar and Yemen broke out afresh, and while the Northern group remained loyal to the dynasty, those of Yemenite stock more or less openly threw in their lot with the Revolution. We need not attempt to trace the course

<sup>1</sup> *Sketches from Eastern History*, p. 111.

of the unequal contest. Everywhere the Arabs, disheartened and divided, fell an easy prey to their adversaries, and all was lost when Marwán, the last Umayyad Caliph, sustained a crushing defeat on the River Záb in Babylonia (January, A.D. 750). Meanwhile Abu 'l-'Abbás, the head of the rival House, had already received homage as Caliph (November, 749 A.D.). In the inaugural address which he delivered in the great Mosque of Kúfa, he called himself *al-Saffáh*, i.e., 'the Blood-shedder,'\* and this title has deservedly stuck to him, though it might have been assumed with no less justice by his brother Manşúr and other members of his family. All Umayyads were remorselessly hunted down and massacred in cold blood—even those who surrendered only on the strength of the most solemn pledges that they had nothing to fear. A small remnant made their escape, or managed to find shelter until the storm of fury and vengeance, which spared neither the dead nor the living,<sup>2</sup> had blown over. (One stripling, named 'Abdu 'l-Rahmán, fled to North Africa, and after meeting with many perilous adventures founded a new Umayyad dynasty in Spain.)

Accession of  
Abu 'l-'Abbás  
al-Saffáh.

\* Professor Bevan, to whose kindness I owe the following observations, points out that this translation of *al-Saffáh*, although it has been generally adopted by European scholars, is very doubtful. According to Professor De Goeje, *al-Saffáh* means 'the munificent' (literally, 'pouring out' gifts, &c.). In any case it is important to notice that the name was given to certain Pre-islamic chieftains. Thus Salama b. Khálid, who commanded the Banú Taghlib at the first battle of al-Kuláb (Ibnu 'l-Athir, ed. by Tornberg, vol. i, p. 406, last line), is said to have been called *al-Saffáh* because he 'emptied out' the skin bottles (*mazda*) of his army before a battle (Ibn Durayd, ed. by Wüstenfeld, p. 203, l. 16); and we find mention of a poet named al-Saffáh b. 'Abd Manát (*ibid.*, p. 277, penult. line).

\* See p. 205.



## CHAPTER VI

### THE CALIPHS OF BAGHDÁD

THE annals of the 'Abbásid dynasty from the accession of Saffáh (A.D. 749) to the death of Musta'sim, and the destruction of Baghdád by the Mongols (A.D. 1258) make a round sum of five centuries. I propose to sketch the history of this long period in three chapters, of which the first will offer a general view of the more important literary and political developments so far as is possible in the limited space at my command; the second will be devoted to the great poets, scholars, historians, philosophers, and scientists who flourished in this, the Golden Age of Muḥammadan literature; while in the third some account will be given of the chief religious movements and of the trend of religious thought.

The empire founded by the Caliph 'Umar and administered by the Umayyads was essentially, as the reader will have gathered, a military organisation for the benefit of the paramount race. In theory, no doubt, all Moslems were equal, but in fact the Arabs alone ruled—a privilege which national pride conspired with personal interest to maintain. We have seen how the Persian Moslems asserted their right to a share in the government. The Revolution which enthroned the 'Abbásids marks the beginning of a Moslem, as opposed to an Arabian, Empire. The new dynasty, owing its rise to the people of Persia, and especially of Khurásán, could exist only by

Political results  
of the  
Revolution.

establishing a balance of power between Persians and Arabs. That this policy was not permanently successful will surprise no one who considers the widely diverse characteristics of the two races, but for the next fifty years the rivals worked together in tolerable harmony, thanks to the genius of Mañşúr and the conciliatory influence of the Barmecides, by whose overthrow the alliance was virtually dissolved. In the ensuing civil war between the sons of Hárún al-Rashíd the Arabs fought on the side of Amín while the Persians supported Ma'mún, and henceforth each race began to follow an independent path. The process of separation, however, was very gradual, and long before it was completed the religious and intellectual life of both nationalities had become inseparably mingled in the full stream of Moslem civilisation.

The centre of this civilisation was the province of 'Irâq (Babylonia), with its renowned metropolis, Baghdád, 'the City of Peace' (*Madīnatu 'l-Salâm*). Only here

The choice of a new capital.

could the 'Abbásids feel themselves at home. "Damascus, peopled by the dependants of the

Omayyads, was out of the question. ( On the one hand it was too far from Persia, whence the power of the Abbasids was chiefly derived; on the other hand it was dangerously near the Greek frontier, and from here, during the troublous reigns of the last Omayyads, hostile incursions on the part of the Christians had begun to avenge former defeats. It was also beginning to be evident that the conquests of Islam would, in the future, lie to the eastward towards Central Asia, rather than to the westward at the further expense of the Byzantines. Damascus, on the highland of Syria, lay, so to speak, dominating the Mediterranean and looking westward, but the new capital that was to supplant it must face east, be near Persia, and for the needs of commerce have water communication with the sea. ) Hence everything pointed to a

site on either the Euphrates or the Tigris, and the Abbasids were not slow to make their choice.”<sup>1</sup> After carefully examining various sites, the Caliph Manşūr fixed on a little Persian village, on the west bank of the Tigris, called Baghdad, which, being interpreted, means ‘given (or ‘founded’) by God’; and in A.D. 762 the walls of the new city began to rise. Manşūr laid the first brick with his own hand, and the work was pushed forward with astonishing rapidity under his personal direction by masons, architects, and surveyors, whom he gathered out of different countries, so that ‘the Round City,’ as he planned it, was actually finished within the short space of four years.

The same circumstances which caused the seat of empire to be transferred to Baghdad brought about a corresponding change in the whole system of government. Whereas the Umayyads had been little more than heads of a turbulent Arabian aristocracy, their successors reverted to the old type of Oriental despotism with which the Persians had been familiar since the days of Darius and Xerxes. Surrounded by a strong bodyguard of troops from Khurāsān, on whose devotion they could rely, the ‘Abbāsids ruled with absolute authority over the lives and properties of their subjects, even as the Sāsānian monarchs had ruled before them. Persian fashions were imitated at the court, which was thronged with the Caliph’s relatives and freedmen (not to mention his womenfolk), besides a vast array of uniformed and decorated officials. Chief amongst these latter stood two personages who figure prominently in the *Arabian Nights*—the Vizier and the Executioner. The office of Vizier is probably of Persian origin, although in Professor De Goeje’s opinion the word itself is Arabic.<sup>2</sup> The first

Foundation of  
Baghdād.

Despotic  
character of  
‘Abbāsīd rule.

<sup>1</sup> G. Le Strange, *Baghdad under the Abbasid Caliphate*, p. 4 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Professor De Goeje has kindly given me the following references:—Tabarī, ii, 78, l. 10, where Ziyād is called the *Wazīr* of Mu‘āwiya; Ibn



who bore this title in 'Abbásid times was Abú Salama, the minister of Saffāh: he was called *Waziru 'Alī Muḥammad*\*,

The Vizier. 'the Vizier of Muḥammad's Family.' It

was the duty of the Vizier to act as intermediary between the omnipotent sovereign and his people, to counsel him in affairs of State, and, above all, to keep His Majesty in good humour. He wielded enormous power, but was exposed to every sort of intrigue, and never knew when he might be interned in a dungeon or despatched in the twinkling of an eye by the grim functionary presiding over the *naḥ*†, or circular carpet of leather, which lay beside the throne and served as a scaffold.

We can distinguish two periods in the history of the 'Abbásid House: one of brilliant prosperity inaugurated by Maṣṣūr and including the reigns of Maḥdī, Hārūn al-Rashīd, Ma'mūn, Mu'tasim, and Wāthiq—that is to say, nearly a hundred years in all (754–847 A.D.); the other, more than four times as long, commencing with Mutawakkil (847–861 A.D.)—a period of decline rapidly sinking, after a brief interval which gave promise of better things, into irremediable decay.\*

Two periods  
of 'Abbásid  
history.

Sa'd, iii, 121, l. 6 (Abú Bakr the *Wazir* of the Prophet). The word occurs in Pre-islamic poetry (Ibn Qutayba, *K. al-Shi'r wa-l-Shu'arā*, p. 414, l. 1). Professor De Goeje adds that the 'Abbásid Caliphs gave the name *Wazir* as title to the minister who was formerly called *Katib* (Secretary). Thus it would seem that the Arabic *Wazir* (literally 'burden-bearer'), who was at first merely a 'helper' or 'hENCHMAN,' afterwards became the representative and successor of the *Dafir* (official scribe or secretary) of the Sásánian kings.

\* This division is convenient, and may be justified on general grounds. In a strictly political sense, the period of decline begins thirty years earlier with the Caliphate of Ma'mūn (813–833 A.D.). The historian Abu 'l-Maḥásin († 1469 A.D.) dates the decline of the Caliphate from the accession of Muktafi in 902 A.D. (*al-Nujūm al-Zdhira*, ed. by Juynboll, vol. ii, p. 134).

Cruel and treacherous, like most of his family, Abú Ja'far Mañsúr was perhaps the greatest ruler whom the 'Abbásids produced.<sup>1</sup> He had to fight hard for his throne.

Reign of Mañsúr (754-775 A.D.). The 'Alids, who deemed themselves the true

heirs of the Prophet in virtue of their descent from Fátima, rose in rebellion against the usurper, surprised him in an unguarded moment, and drove him to such straits that during seven weeks he never changed his dress except for public prayers. But once more the 'Alids proved incapable of grasping their opportunity. The leaders, Muḥammad, who was known as 'The Pure Soul' (*al-Nafs al-zakiyya*), and his brother Ibráhm, fell on the battle-field. Under Maḥdí and Hárún members of the House of 'Alí continued to 'come out,' but with no better success. In Eastern Persia, where strong national feelings interwove themselves with Pre-Muḥammadan religious ideas, those of Mazdak and Zoroaster in particular, the 'Abbásids encountered a formidable opposition which proclaimed its vigour and tenacity by the successive revolts of Sinbádh the Magian (755-756 A.D.), Ustádhís (766-768), Muqanna', the 'Veiled Prophet of Khurásán' (780-786), and Bábak the Khurramite (816-838).<sup>2</sup>

Outbreaks in Persia.

Mañsúr said to his son Maḥdí, "O Abú 'Abdalláh, when you sit in company, always have divines to converse with you; for Muḥammad b. Shiháb al-Zuhrí said, 'The word *ḥadīth* (Apostolic Tradition) is masculine: only virile men love it, and only effeminate men dislike it'; and he spoke the truth."<sup>3</sup>

Mañsúr's advice to Maḥdí.

On one occasion a poet came to Maḥdí, who was then heir-apparent, at Rayy, and recited a panegyric in his honour.

<sup>1</sup> See Nöldeke's essay, *Caliph Mañsúr*, in his *Sketches from Eastern History*, trans. by J. S. Black, p. 107 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Professor Browne has given an interesting account of these ultra-Shi'ite insurgents in his *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. i, ch. ix.

<sup>3</sup> Tabarí, iii, 404, l. 5 sqq.



The prince gave him 20,000 dirhems. Thereupon the postmaster of Rayy informed Manşúr, who wrote to his son reproaching him for such extravagance. "What you should have done," he said, "was to let him wait a year at your door, and after that time bestow on him 4,000 dirhems." He then caused the poet to be arrested and brought into his presence. "You went to a heedless youth and cajoled him?" "Yes, God save the Commander of the Faithful, I went to a heedless, generous youth and cajoled him, and he suffered himself to be cajoled." "Recite your eulogy of him." The poet obeyed, not forgetting to conclude his verses with a compliment to Manşúr. "Bravo!" cried the Caliph, "but they are not worth 20,000 dirhems. Where is the money?" On its being produced he made him a gift of 4,000 dirhems and confiscated the remainder.\*

Notwithstanding irreconcilable parties—'Alids, Persian extremists, and (we may add) Khárijites—the policy of *rapprochement* was on the whole extraordinarily effective. In carrying it out the Caliphs received powerful assistance from a noble and ancient Persian family, the celebrated Barmakites or Barmecides. According to Mas'údí,<sup>2</sup> Barmak was originally a title borne by the High Priest (*sáddín*) of the great Magian fire-temple at Balkh. Khálid, the son of one of these dignitaries—whence he and his descendants were called Barmakites (*Barámika*)—held the most important offices of state under Saffáh and Manşúr. Yahyá, the son of Khálid, was entrusted with the education of Hárún al-Rashíd, and on the accession of the young prince he was appointed Grand Vizier. "My dear father!" said the Caliph, "it is through the blessings and the good fortune which attend you, and through your excellent management, that I am seated on the

\* Tabarí, iii, 406, l. 1 seq.

<sup>2</sup> *Murúju 'l-Dhahab*, ed. by Barbier de Meynard, vol. iv, p. 47 seq.



throne;<sup>1</sup> so I commit to you the direction of affairs." He then handed to him his signet-ring. Yahyá was distinguished (says the biographer) for wisdom, nobleness of mind, and elegance of language.<sup>2</sup> Although he took a truly Persian delight in philosophical discussion, for which purpose free-thinking scholars and eminent heretics used often to meet in his house, he was careful to observe the outward forms of piety. It may be said of the 'Abbásids generally that, whatever they might do or think in private, they wore the official badge of Islam ostentatiously on their sleeves. The following verses which Yahyá addressed to his son Faql are very characteristic :— 3

"Seek glory while 'tis day, no effort spare,  
And patiently the loved one's absence bear;  
But when the shades of night advancing slow  
O'er every vice a veil of darkness throw,  
Beguile the hours with all thy heart's delight:  
The day of prudent men begins at night.  
Many there be, esteemed of life austere,  
Who nightly enter on a strange career.  
Night o'er them keeps her sable curtain drawn,  
And merrily they pass from eve to dawn.  
Who but a fool his pleasures would expose  
To spying rivals and censorious foes?"

For seventeen years Yahyá and his two sons, Faql and Ja'far, remained deep in Hárún's confidence and virtual rulers of the State until, from motives which have been variously explained, the Caliph resolved to rid himself of the whole family. The story is too well known to need repetition.<sup>4</sup> Ja'far alone was put to death: we may conclude, therefore, that he had specially

Fall of the  
Barmecides  
(803 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> When the Caliph Hádi wished to proclaim his son Ja'far heir-apparent instead of Hárún, Yahyá pointed out the danger of this course and dissuaded him (*al-Fakhrí*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 281).

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Khallikán, *De Slane's translation*, vol. iv, p. 105.

<sup>3</sup> Mas'údí, *Murúju 'l-Dhahab*, vol. vi, p. 364.

<sup>4</sup> See, for example, *Haroun Alraschid*, by E. H. Palmer, in the New Plutarch Series, p. 81 sqq.

excited the Caliph's anger; and those who ascribe the catastrophe to his romantic love-affair with Hārūn's sister, 'Abbāsa, are probably in the right.<sup>1</sup> Hārūn himself seems to have recognised, when it was too late, how much he owed to these great Persian barons whose tactful administration, unbounded generosity, and munificent patronage of literature have shed immortal lustre on his reign. Afterwards, if any persons spoke ill of the Barmecides in his presence, he would say (quoting the verse of Ḥuṭay'a):—<sup>2</sup>

"O slanderers, be your sire of sire bereft!<sup>3</sup>  
Give o'er, or fill the gap which they have left."

Hārūn's orthodoxy, his liberality, his victories over the Byzantine Emperor Nicephorus, and last but not least the literary brilliance of his reign have raised him in popular estimation far above all the other Caliphs: he is the Charlemagne of the East, while the entrancing pages of the *Thousand and One Nights* have made his name a household word in every country of Europe. Students of Moslem history will soon discover that "the good Haroun Alraschid" was

Hārūn al-Rashid  
(786–809 A.D.).

in fact a perfidious and irascible tyrant, whose fitful amiability and real taste for music and letters hardly entitle him to be described either as a great monarch or a good man. We must grant, however, that he thoroughly understood the noble art of patronage. The poets Abū Nuwās, Abū 'l-'Atāhiya, Di'bīl, Muslim b. Walīd, and 'Abbās b. Aḥnaf; the musician Ibrāhīm of Mosul and his son Ishāq; the philologists Abū 'Ubayda, Aṣma'ī, and Kisā'ī; the preacher Ibnu 'l-Sammāk; and the historian Wāqidī—these are but a few names in the galaxy of talent which he gathered around him at Baghdād.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. A. Müller, *Der Islam*, vol. i, p. 481 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Khallikān, *De Slane's translation*, vol. iv, p. 112.

<sup>3</sup> Literally, "No father to your father!" a common form of imprecation.



The fall of the Barmecides revived the spirit of racial antagonism which they had done their best to lay, and an open rupture was rendered inevitable by the short-sighted policy of Hárún with regard to the succession. He had two grown-up sons, Amín, by his wife and cousin Zubayda, and Ma'mún, whose mother was a Persian slave. It was arranged that the Caliphate should pass to Amín and after him to his brother, but that the Empire should be divided between them. Amín was to receive 'Iráq and Syria, Ma'mún the eastern provinces, where the people would gladly welcome a ruler of their own blood. The struggle for supremacy which began almost immediately on the death of Hárún was in the main one of Persians against Arabs, and by Ma'mún's triumph the Barmecides were amply avenged.

Amin and  
Ma'mún  
(809-833 A.D.).

The new Caliph was anything but orthodox. He favoured the Shí'ite party to such an extent that he even nominated the 'Alid, 'Alí b. Músá b. Ja'far al-Ridá, as heir-apparent—a step which alienated the members of his own family and led to his being temporarily deposed. He also adopted the opinions of the Mu'tazilite sect and established an Inquisition to enforce them. Hence the Sunnite historian, Abu 'l-Mahásin, enumerates three principal heresies of which Ma'mún was guilty: (1) His wearing of the Green (*labu 'l-Khudra*)<sup>1</sup> and courting the 'Alids and repulsing the 'Abbásids; (2) his affirming that the Koran was created (*al-qawl bi-Khalqi 'l-Qur'án*); and (3) his legalisation of the *mut'a*, a loose form of marriage prevailing amongst the Shí'ites.<sup>2</sup> We shall see in due course how keenly and with what fruitful results Ma'mún interested himself in literature and science. Nevertheless, it cannot escape our attention that in this splendid reign there appear ominous signs of political decay. In 822 A.D. Táhir, one of Ma'mún's generals, who

Ma'mún's  
heresies.

<sup>1</sup> Green was the party colour of the 'Alids, black of the 'Abbásids.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Nujúm al-Záhira*, ed. by Juynboll, vol. i, p. 631.



had been appointed governor of Khurásán, omitted the customary mention of the Caliph's name from the Friday sermon (*khutba*), thus founding the Tahirid dynasty, which, though professing allegiance to the Caliphs, was practically independent. Tahir was only the first of a long series of ambitious governors and bold adventurers who profited by the weakening authority of the Caliphs to carve out kingdoms for themselves. Moreover, the Moslems of 'Irâq had lost their old warlike spirit: they were fine scholars and merchants, but poor soldiers. So it came about that Ma'mún's successor, the Caliph Mu'tasim (833-842 A.D.), took the fatal step of surrounding himself with a Prætorian Guard chiefly composed of Turkish recruits from Transoxania.

Rise of  
independent  
dynasties.

Turkish  
mercenaries  
introduced.

At the same time he removed his court from Baghdád sixty miles further up the Tigris to Sámarrá, which suddenly grew into a superb city of palaces and barracks—an Oriental Versailles.<sup>1</sup> Here we may close our brief review of the first and flourishing period of the 'Abbásid Caliphate. During the next four centuries the Caliphs come and go faster than ever, but for the most part their authority is precarious, if not purely nominal. Meanwhile, in the provinces of the Empire petty dynasties arise, only to eke out an obscure and troubled existence, or powerful states are formed, which carry on the traditions of Muḥammadan culture, it may be through many generations, and in some measure restore the blessings of peace and settled government to an age surfeited with anarchy and bloodshed. Of these provincial empires we have now principally to speak, confining our view, for the most part, to the political outlines, and reserving the literary and religious aspects of the period for fuller consideration elsewhere.

Decline of the  
Caliphate.

<sup>1</sup> The court remained at Sámarrá for fifty-six years (836-892 A.D.). The official spelling of Sámarrá was *Surra-man-ra'd*, which may be freely rendered 'The Spectator's Joy.'

The reigns of Mutawakkil (847-861 A.D.) and his immediate successors exhibit all the well-known features of Prætorian rule.

Enormous sums were lavished on the Turkish soldiery, who elected and deposed the Caliph just as they pleased, and enforced their insatiable demands by mutiny and assassination.) For a short time (869-907 A.D.) matters improved under the able and energetic Muhtadī and the four Caliphs who followed him; but the Turks soon regained the upper hand. From this date every vestige of real power is centred in the Generalissimo (*Amīru 'l-Umarā'*) who stands at the head of the army, while the once omnipotent Caliph must needs be satisfied with the empty honour of having his name stamped on the coinage and celebrated in the public prayers. The terrorism of the Turkish bodyguard was broken by the Buwayhids, a Persian dynasty, who ruled in Baghdād from 945 to 1055 A.D. Then the Seljūq supremacy began with Tughril Beg's entry into the capital and lasted a full century until the death of Sanjar (1157 A.D.). The Mongols who captured Baghdād in 1258 A.D. brought the pitiable farce of the Caliphate to an end.

"The empire of the Caliphs at its widest," as Stanley Lane-Poole observes in his excellent account of the Muḥammadan dynasties, "extended from the Atlantic to the Indus, and from the Caspian to the cataracts of the Nile. So vast a dominion could not long be held together. The first step towards its disintegration began in Spain, where 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān, a member of the suppressed Umayyad family, was acknowledged as an independent sovereign in A.D. 755, and the 'Abbāsīd Caliphate was renounced for ever. Thirty years later Idrīs, a great-grandson of the Caliph 'Alī, and therefore equally at variance with 'Abbāsīds and Umayyads, founded an 'Alid dynasty in Morocco. The rest of the North African coast was practically lost to the Caliphate when the Aghlabid governor established his authority at Qayrawān in A.D. 800."

Amongst the innumerable kingdoms which supplanted the



decaying Caliphate only a few of the most important can be singled out for special notice on account of their literary or religious interest.<sup>1</sup> To begin with Persia: in

Dynasties of the Second Period. 872 A.D. Khurásán, which was then held by the Táhírids, fell into the hands of Ya'qúb b. Layth the Coppersmith (*al-Şaffár*), founder of the Şaffárids, who for thirty years stretched their sway over a great part of Persia, until they were dispossessed by the Sámánids.

The Sámánids (874-999 A.D.). The latter dynasty had the seat of its power in Transoxania, but during the first half of the tenth century practically the whole of Persia submitted to the authority of Ismá'íl and his famous successors, Naşr II and Núh I. Not only did these princes warmly encourage and foster the development, which had already begun, of a national literature in the Persian language—it is enough to recall here the names of Rúdagí, the blind minstrel and poet; Daqlíqí, whose fragment of a Persian Epic was afterwards incorporated by Firdawsí in his *Sháhnáma*; and Bal'amí, the Vizier of Manşúr I, who composed an abridgment of Tabarí's great history, which is one of the oldest prose works in Persian that have come down to us—but they extended the same favour to poets and men of learning who (though, for the most part, of Persian extraction) preferred to use the Arabic language. Thus the celebrated Rhazes (Abú Bakr al-Rází) dedicated to the Sámánid prince Abú Şálih Manşúr b. Isháq a treatise on medicine, which he entitled *al-Kitáb al-Manşúrí* (the Book of Manşúr) in honour of his patron. The great physician and philosopher, Abú 'Alí b. Síná (Avicenna) relates that, having been summoned to Bukhárá by King Núh, the second of that name (976-997 A.D.), he obtained permission to visit the

<sup>1</sup> My account of these dynasties is necessarily of the briefest and barest character. The reader will find copious details concerning most of them in Professor Browne's *Literary History of Persia*: Şaffárids and Sámánids in vol. i, p. 346 sqq.; Fátimids in vol. i, pp. 391-400 and vol. ii, p. 196 sqq.; Ghaznevíd in vol. ii, chap. ii; and Seljúqs, *ibid.*, chaps. iii to v.



royal library. "I found there," he says, "many rooms filled with books which were arranged in cases row upon row. One room was allotted to works on Arabic philology and poetry; another to jurisprudence, and so forth, the books on each particular science having a room to themselves. I inspected the catalogue of ancient Greek authors and looked for the books which I required: I saw in this collection books of which few people have heard even the names, and which I myself have never seen either before or since."<sup>1</sup>

The power of the Sámánids quickly reached its zenith, and about the middle of the tenth century they were confined to

The Buwayhids  
(932-1055 A.D.).

Khurásán and Transoxania, while in Western Persia their place was taken by the Buwayhids. Abú Shujá' Buwayh, a chieftain of Daylam, the mountainous province lying along the southern shores of the Caspian Sea, was one of those soldiers of fortune whom we meet with so frequently in the history of this period. His three sons, 'Alí, Aḥmad, and Ḥasan, embarked on the same adventurous career with such energy and success, that in the course of thirteen years they not only subdued the provinces of Fárs and Khúzistán, but in 945 A.D. entered Baghdád at the head of their Daylamite troops and assumed the supreme command, receiving from the Caliph Mustakfi the honorary titles of 'Imádu 'l-Dawla, Mu'izzu 'l-Dawla, and Ruknu 'l-Dawla. Among the princes of this House, who reigned over Persia and 'Iráq during the next hundred years, the most eminent was 'Aḍudu 'l-Dawla, of whom it is said by Ibn Khallikán that none of the Buwayhids, notwithstanding their great power and authority, possessed so extensive an empire and held sway over so many kings and kingdoms as he. The chief poets of the day, including Mutanabbí, visited his court at Shíráz and celebrated his praises in magnificent odes. He also built a great hospital in Baghdád, the Bímáristán al-'Aḍudí, which

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Abí Uṣaybi'a, *Ṭabaqātu 'l-A'fíbbá*, ed. by A. Müller, vol. ii, p. 4, l. 4 sqq. Avicenna was at this time scarcely eighteen years of age.

was long famous as a school of medicine. The Viziers of the Buwayhid family contributed in a quite unusual degree to its literary renown. Ibnu 'l-'Amīd, the Vizier of Ruknu 'l-Dawla, surpassed in philology and epistolary composition all his contemporaries; hence he was called 'the second Jāhiz,' and it was a common saying that "the art of letter-writing began with 'Abdu 'l-Hamīd and ended with Ibnu 'l-'Amīd."<sup>1</sup> His friend, the Šāhib Ismā'il b. 'Abbād, Vizier to Mu'ayyidu 'l-Dawla and Fakhru 'l-Dawla, was a distinguished savant, whose learning was only eclipsed by the liberality of his patronage. In the latter respect Sábūr b. Ardashīr, the prime minister of Abū Naṣr Bahā'u 'l-Dawla, vied with the illustrious Šāhib. He had so many encomiasts that Tha'ālibī devotes to them a whole chapter of the *Yatima*. The Academy which he founded at Baghdād, in the Karkh quarter, and generously endowed, was a favourite haunt of literary men, and its members seem to have enjoyed pretty much the same privileges as belong to the Fellows of an Oxford or Cambridge College.<sup>2</sup>

Like most of their countrymen, the Buwayhids were Shī'ites in religion. We read in the Annals of Abu 'l-Mahāsīn under the year 341 A.H. = 952 A.D. :—

"In this year the Vizier al-Muhallabī arrested some persons who held the doctrine of metempsychosis (*tanāsukh*). Among them were a youth who declared that the spirit of 'Alī b. Abī Tālib had passed into his body, and a woman who claimed that the spirit of Fāṭima was dwelling in her; while another man pretended to be Gabriel. On being flogged, they excused themselves by alleging their relationship to the Family of the Prophet, whereupon Mu'izzu 'l-Dawla ordered them to be set free. This he did because of his attachment to

<sup>1</sup> 'Abdu 'l-Hamīd flourished in the latter days of the Umayyad dynasty. See Ibn Khallikān, De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 173; Mas'ūdi, *Murāju 'l-Dhahab*, vol. vi, p. 81.

<sup>2</sup> See Professor Margoliouth's Introduction to the *Letters of Abu 'l-'Alā al-Ma'arri*, p. xxiv.



Shí'ism. It is well known," says the author in conclusion, "that the Buwayhids were Shí'ites and Ráfiqites."<sup>1</sup>

Three dynasties contemporary with the Buwayhids have still to be mentioned: the Ghaznevids in Afghanistan, the Ĥamdánids in Syria, and the Fátimids in Egypt.

The Ghaznevids  
(976-1186 A.D.).

Sabuktagín, the founder of the first-named dynasty, was a Turkish slave. His son, Maḥmúd, who succeeded to the throne of Ghazna in 998 A.D., made short work of the already tottering Sámánids, and then sweeping far and wide over Northern India, began a series of conquests which, before his death in 1030 A.D., reached from Lahore to Samarcand and Iṣfahán. Although the Persian and Transoxanian provinces of his huge empire were soon torn away by the Seljúqs, Maḥmúd's invasion of India, which was undertaken with the object of winning that country for Islam, permanently established Muḥammadan influence, at any rate in the Panjáb. As regards their religious views, the Turkish Ghaznevids stand in sharp contrast with the Persian houses of Sámán and Buwayh. It has been well said that the true genius of the Turks lies in action, not in speculation. When Islam came across their path, they saw that it was a simple and practical creed such as the soldier requires; so they accepted it without further parley. The Turks have always remained loyal to Islam, the Islam of Abú Bakr and 'Umar, which is a very different thing from the Islam of Shí'ite Persia. Maḥmúd proved his orthodoxy by banishing the Mu'tazilites of Rayy and burning their books together with the philosophical and astronomical works that fell into his hands; but on the same occasion he carried off a hundred camel-loads of presumably harmless literature to his capital. That he had no deep enthusiasm for letters is shown, for

<sup>1</sup> Abu 'l-Maḥásin, *al-Nujúm al-Zákira*, ed. by Juynboll, vol. ii, p. 333. The original Ráfiqites were those schismatics who rejected (*rafaqa*) the Caliphs Abú Bakr and 'Umar, but the term is generally used as synonymous with Shí'ite.



example, by his shabby treatment of the poet Firdawsí. Nevertheless, he ardently desired the glory and prestige accruing to a sovereign whose court formed the rallying-point of all that was best in the literary and scientific culture of the day, and such was Ghazna in the eleventh century. Besides the brilliant group of Persian poets, with Firdawsí at their head, we may mention among the Arabic-writing authors who flourished under this dynasty the historians al-'Utbí and al-Bíruní.

While the Eastern Empire of Islam was passing into the hands of Persians and Turks, we find the Arabs still holding their own in Syria and Mesopotamia down to the end of the tenth century. These Arab and generally nomadic dynasties were seldom of much account. The Ḥamdánids of Aleppo alone deserve to be noticed here, and that chiefly for the sake of the peerless Sayfu 'l-Dawla, a worthy descendant of the tribe of Taghlib, which in the days of heathendom produced the poet-warrior, 'Amr b. Kulthúm. 'Abdulláh b. Ḥamdán was appointed governor of Mosul and its dependencies by the Caliph Muktafi in 905 A.D., and in 942 his sons Ḥasan and 'Alí received the complimentary titles of Násiru 'l-Dawla (Defender of the State) and Sayfu 'l-Dawla (Sword of the State). Two years later Sayfu 'l-Dawla captured Aleppo and brought the whole of Northern Syria under his dominion. During a reign of twenty-three years he was continuously engaged in harrying the Byzantines on the frontiers of Asia Minor, but although he gained some glorious victories, which his laureate Mutanabbí has immortalised, the fortune of war went in the long run steadily against him, and his successors were unable to preserve their little kingdom from being crushed between the Byzantines in the north and the Fátimids in the south. The Ḥamdánids have an especial claim on our sympathy, because they revived for a time the fast-decaying and already almost broken spirit of Arabian nationalism. It is this spirit that

The Ḥamdánids  
(929-1003 A.D.).

speaks with a powerful voice in Mutanabbí and declares itself, for example, in such verses as these :—<sup>1</sup>

"Men from their kings alone their worth derive,  
But Arabs ruled by aliens cannot thrive :  
Boors without culture, without noble fame,  
Who know not loyalty and honour's name.  
Go where thou wilt, thou seest in every land  
Folk driven like cattle by a servile band."

The reputation which Sayfu 'l-Dawla's martial exploits and his repeated triumphs over the enemies of Islam richly earned for him in the eyes of his contemporaries was enhanced by the conspicuous energy and munificence with which he cultivated the arts of peace. Considering the brevity of his reign and the relatively small extent of his resources, we may well be astonished to contemplate the unique assemblage of literary talent then mustered in Aleppo. There was, first of all, Mutanabbí, in the opinion of his countrymen the greatest of Moslem poets ; there was Sayfu 'l-Dawla's cousin, the chivalrous Abú Firás, whose war-songs are relieved by many a touch of tender and true feeling ; there was Abu 'l-Faraj of Işfahán, who on presenting to Sayfu 'l-Dawla his *Kitábu 'l-Aghání*, one of the most celebrated and important works in all Arabic literature, received one thousand pieces of gold accompanied with an expression of regret that the prince was obliged to remunerate him so inadequately ; there was also the great philosopher, Abú Naşr al-Farábí, whose modest wants were satisfied by a daily pension of four dirhems (about two shillings) from the public treasury. Surely this is a record not easily surpassed even in the heyday of 'Abbásid patronage. As for the writers of less note whom Sayfu 'l-Dawla attracted to Aleppo, their name is legion. Space must be found for the poets Sarí al-Raffá, Abu 'l-'Abbás al-Námí, and Abu 'l-Faraj al-Babbaghá :

<sup>1</sup> Mutanabbí, ed. by Dieterici, p. 148, last line and foll.



for the preacher (*khaṭīb*) Ibn Nubāta, who would often rouse the enthusiasm of his audience while he urged the duty of zealously prosecuting the Holy War against Christian Byzantium; and for the philologist Ibn Khālawayh, whose lectures were attended by students from all parts of the Muḥammadan world. The literary renaissance which began at this time in Syria was still making its influence felt when Thaʿālibī wrote his *Yatīma*, about thirty years after the death of Sayfu 'l-Dawla, and it produced in Abu 'l-ʿAlā al-Maʿarrī (born 973 A.D.) an original and highly interesting personality, to whom we shall return on another occasion.

The dynasties hitherto described were political in their origin, having generally been founded by ambitious governors or vassals. These upstarts made no pretensions to the nominal authority, which they left in the hands of the Caliph even while they forced him at the sword's point to recognise their political independence. The Sāmānids and Buwayhids, Shīʿites as they were, paid the same homage to the Caliph in Baghdād as did the Sunnite Ghaznevids. (But in the beginning of the tenth century there arose in Africa a great Shīʿite power, that of the Fāṭimids, who took for themselves the title and prerogatives of the Caliphate, which they asserted to be theirs by right Divine.) This event was only the climax of a deep-laid and skilfully organised plot—one of the most extraordinary in all history. It had been put in train half a century earlier by a certain ʿAbdullāh the son of Maymūn, a Persian oculist (*qaddāh*) belonging to Aḥwāz. Filled with a fierce hatred of the Arabs and with a free-thinker's contempt for Islam, ʿAbdullāh b. Maymūn conceived the idea of a vast secret society which should be all things to all men, and which, by playing on the strongest passions and tempting the inmost weaknesses of human nature, should unite malcontents of every description in a

The Fāṭimids  
(909-1171 A.D.).



conspiracy to overthrow the existing régime. Modern readers may find a parallel for this romantic project in the pages of Dumas, although the Aramis of *Twenty Years After* is a simpleton beside 'Abdulláh. He saw that the movement, in order to succeed, must be started on a religious basis, and he therefore identified himself with an obscure Shí'ite sect, the Ismá'ílís, who were so called because they regarded Muḥammad, son of Ismá'il, son of Ja'far al-Šádiq, as the Seventh Imám. Under 'Abdulláh the Ismá'ílís developed their mystical and antinomian doctrines, of which an excellent account has been given by Professor Browne in the first volume of his *Literary History of Persia* (p. 405 sqq.). Here we can only refer to the ingenious and fatally insidious methods which he devised for gaining proselytes on a gigantic scale, and with such amazing success that from this time until the Mongol invasion—a period of almost four centuries—the Ismá'ílites (Fátimids, Carmathians, and Assassins) either ruled or ravaged a great part of the Muḥammadan Empire. It is unnecessary to discuss the question whether 'Abdulláh b. Maymún was, as Professor Browne thinks, primarily a religious enthusiast, or whether, according to the view commonly held, his real motives were patriotism and personal ambition. The history of Islam shows clearly enough that the revolutionist is nearly always disguised as a religious leader, while, on the other hand, every founder of a militant sect is potentially the head of a state. 'Abdulláh may have been a fanatic first and a politician afterwards; more probably he was both at once from the beginning. His plan of operations was briefly as follows:—

The Ismá'ílite  
propaganda.

The *dā'i* or missionary charged with the task of gaining adherents for the Hidden Imám (see p. 216 seq.), in whose name allegiance was demanded, would settle in some place, representing himself to be a merchant, Šúfí, or the like. By renouncing worldly pleasures, making a show of strict piety, and performing apparent miracles, it was easy for him to pass as a saint with the common folk. As soon

as he was assured of his neighbours' confidence and respect, he began to raise doubts in their minds. He would suggest difficult problems of theology or dwell on the mysterious significance of certain passages of the Koran. May there not be (he would ask) in religion itself a deeper meaning than appears on the surface? Then, having excited the curiosity of his hearers, he suddenly breaks off. When pressed to continue his explanation, he declares that such mysteries cannot be communicated save to those who take a binding oath of secrecy and obedience and consent to pay a fixed sum of money in token of their good faith. If these conditions were accepted, the neophyte entered upon the second of the nine degrees of initiation. He was taught that mere observance of the laws of Islam is not pleasing to God, unless the true doctrine be received through the Imáms who have it in keeping. These Imáms (as he next learned) are seven in number, beginning with 'Alí; the seventh and last is Muḥammad, son of Ismá'il. On reaching the fourth degree he definitely ceased to be a Moslem, for here he was taught the Ismá'ilite system of theology in which Muḥammad b. Ismá'il supersedes the founder of Islam as the greatest and last of all the Prophets. Comparatively few initiates advanced beyond this grade to a point where every form of positive religion was allegorised away, and only philosophy was left. "It is clear what a tremendous weapon, or rather machine, was thus created. Each man was given the amount of light which he could bear and which was suited to his prejudices, and he was made to believe that the end of the whole work would be the attaining of what he regarded as most desirable."<sup>1</sup> Moreover, the Imám Muḥammad b. Ismá'il having disappeared long ago, the veneration which sought a visible object was naturally transferred to his successor and representative on earth, viz., 'Abdulláh b. Maymún, who filled the same office in relation to him as Aaron to Moses and 'Alí to Muḥammad.

About the middle of the ninth century the state or the Moslem Empire was worse, if possible, than it had been in the latter days of Umayyad rule. The peasantry of 'Iráq were impoverished by the desolation into which that flourishing province was beginning to fall in consequence of the frequent and prolonged civil wars. In 869 A.D. the negro slaves (*Zanj*) employed in the saltpetre industry, for which Basra was famous, took up arms at the call of an 'Alid Messiah, and

<sup>1</sup> D. B. Macdonald, *Muslim Theology*, p. 43 seq.



during fourteen years carried fire and sword through Khúzistán and the adjacent territory. We can imagine that all this misery and discontent was a godsend to the Ismá'ílites. The old cry, "A deliverer of the Prophet's House," which served the 'Abbásids so well against the Umayyads, was now raised with no less effect against the 'Abbásids themselves.

'Abdulláh b. Maymún died in 875 A.D., but the agitation went on, and rapidly gathered force. One of the leading spirits was Hamdán Qarmat, who gave his name to the Carmathian branch of the Ismá'íls. These Carmathians (*Qardmiya*, sing. *Qirmi*) spread over Southern Persia and Yemen, and in the tenth century they threatened Baghdád, repeatedly waylaid the pilgrim-caravans, sacked Mecca and bore away the Black Stone as a trophy; in short, established a veritable reign of terror. We must return, however, to the main Ismá'ílite faction headed by the descendants of 'Abdulláh b. Maymún. Their emissaries discovered a promising field of work in North Africa among the credulous and fanatical Berbers. When all was ripe, Sa'íd b. Husayn, the grandson of 'Abdulláh b. Maymún, left Salámya in Syria, the centre from which the wires had hitherto been pulled, and crossing over to Africa appeared as the long-expected Mahdí under the name of 'Ubaydu'lláh. He gave himself out to be a great-grandson of the Imám Muḥammad b. Ismá'íl and therefore in the direct line of descent from 'Alí b. Abí Tálíb and

The Fátimid  
dynasty founded  
by the Mahdí  
'Ubaydu'lláh  
(909 A.D.).

Fátima the daughter of the Prophet. We need not stop to discuss this highly questionable genealogy from which the Fátimid dynasty derives its name. In 910 A.D. 'Ubaydu'lláh entered Raqqáda in triumph and assumed the title of Commander of the Faithful. Tunis, where the Aghlabites had ruled since 800 A.D., was the cradle of Fátimid power, and here they built their capital, Mahdiyya, near the ancient Thapsus. Gradually advancing eastward, they conquered Egypt and Syria as far as Damascus (969-970 A.D.). (At this



time the seat of government was removed to the newly-founded city of Cairo (*al-Qāhira*), which remained for two centuries the metropolis of the Fāṭimid Empire.<sup>1</sup>

The Shīʿite Anti-Caliphs maintained themselves in Egypt until 1171 A.D., when the famous Saladin (Ṣalāḥu 'l-Dīn b. Ayyūb) took possession of that country and restored the Sunnite faith.<sup>2</sup> He soon added Syria to his dominions, and "the fall of Jerusalem (in 1187) roused Europe to undertake the Third Crusade." The Ayyūbids were strictly orthodox, as behoved the champions of Islam against Christianity. They built and endowed many theological colleges. The Ṣūfī pantheist, Shihābu 'l-Dīn Yaḥyá al-Suhrawardī, was executed at Aleppo by order of Saladin's son, Malik al-Zāhir, in 1191 A.D.

The two centuries preceding the extinction of the 'Abbásid Caliphate by the Mongols witnessed the rise and decline of the Seljūq Turks, who "once more re-united Muḥammadan Asia from the western frontier of Afghanistan to the Mediterranean under one sovereign."<sup>3</sup> Seljūq b. Tuqāq was a Turcoman chief. Entering Transoxania, he settled near Bukhárá and went over with his whole people to Islam. His descendants, Ṭughril Beg and Chagar Beg, invaded Khurásán, annexed the western provinces of the Ghaznevid Empire, and finally absorbed the remaining dominions of the Buwayhids. Baghdád was occupied by Ṭughril Beg in 1055 A.D. It has been said that the Seljūqs contributed almost nothing to culture, but this perhaps needs some qualification. Although Alp Arslán, who succeeded Ṭughril, and his son Malik Sháh devoted their energies in the first place to military affairs, the

<sup>1</sup> I regret that lack of space compels me to omit the further history of the Fāṭimids. Readers who desire information on this subject may consult Stanley Lane-Poole's *History of Egypt in the Middle Ages*; Wüstenfeld's *Geschichte der Fāṭimiden-Califen* (Göttingen, 1881); and Professor Browne's *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. ii, p. 196 sqq.

latter at least was an accomplished and enlightened monarch. "He exerted himself to spread the benefits of civilisation: he dug numerous canals, walled a great number of cities, built bridges, and constructed *ribāṭs* in the desert places."<sup>1</sup> He was deeply interested in astronomy, and scientific as well as theological studies received his patronage. [Any shortcomings of Alp Arslān and Malik Shāh in this respect were amply repaired by their famous minister, Ḥasan b. 'Alī, the Nizāmu 'l-Mulk or 'Constable of the Empire,' to give him the title which he has made his own. Like so many great Viziers, he was a Persian, and his achievements must not detain us here, but it may be mentioned that he founded in Baghdād and Naysābūr the two celebrated academies which were called in his honour al-Nizāmiyya.)

We have now taken a general, though perforce an extremely curtailed and disconnected, view of the political conditions which existed during the 'Abbāsid period in most parts of the Muḥammadan Empire except Arabia and Spain. [The motherland of Islam had long sunk to the level of a minor province: leaving the Holy Cities out of consideration, one might compare its inglorious destiny under the Caliphate to that of Macedonia in the empire which Alexander bequeathed to his successors, the Ptolemies and Seleucids.] As regards the political history of Spain a few words will conveniently be said in a subsequent chapter, where the literature produced by Spanish Moslems will demand our attention. In the meantime we shall pass on to the characteristic literary developments of this period, which correspond more or less closely to the historical outlines.

The first thing that strikes the student of mediæval Arabic literature is the fact that a very large proportion of the leading writers are non-Arabs, or at best semi-Arabs, men whose fathers

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikān, De Siane's translation, vol. iv, p. 441.



or mothers were of foreign, and especially Persian, race. They wrote in Arabic, because down to about 1000 A.D. that language was the sole medium of literary expression in the Muḥammadan world, a monopoly which it retained in scientific compositions until the Mongol Invasion of the thirteenth century. I have already referred to the question whether such men as Bashshār b. Burd, Abū Nuwās, Ibn Qutayba, Ṭabarī, Ghazālī, and hundreds of others should be included in a literary history of the Arabs, and have given reasons, which I need not repeat in this place, for considering their admission to be not only desirable but fully justified on logical grounds.\* The absurdity of treating them as Persians—and there is no alternative, if they are not to be reckoned as Arabs—appears to me self-evident.

"It is strange," says Ibn Khaldūn, "that most of the learned among the Moslems who have excelled in the religious or intellectual sciences are non-Arabs (*ʿAjām*) with rare exceptions; and even those savants who claimed Arabian descent spoke a foreign language, grew up in foreign lands, and studied under foreign masters, notwithstanding that the community to which they belonged was Arabian and the author of its religion an Arab." The historian proceeds to explain the cause of this singular circumstance in an interesting passage which may be summarised as follows:—

The first Moslems were entirely ignorant of art and science, all their attention being devoted to the ordinances of the Koran, which they "carried in their breasts," and to the practice (*sunna*) of the Prophet. At that time the Arabs knew nothing of the way by which learning is taught, of the art of composing books, and of the means whereby knowledge is enregistered. Those, however, who could repeat the Koran and relate the Traditions of Muḥammad were called Readers (*qurrā*). This oral transmission continued until the reign of Hārūn al-Rashīd, when the need of

Ibn Khaldūn's explanation of the fact that learning was chiefly cultivated by the Persian Moslems.

\* See the Introduction.



securing the Traditions against corruption or of preventing their total loss caused them to be set down in writing; and in order to distinguish the genuine Traditions from the spurious, every *isnād* (chain of witnesses) was carefully scrutinised. Meanwhile the purity of the Arabic tongue had gradually become impaired: hence arose the science of grammar; and the rapid development of Law and Divinity brought it about that other sciences, e.g., logic and dialectic, were professionally cultivated in the great cities of the Muhammadan Empire. The inhabitants of these cities were chiefly Persians, freedmen and tradesmen, who had been long accustomed to the arts of civilisation. Accordingly the most eminent of the early grammarians, traditionists, and scholastic theologians, as well as of those learned in the principles of Law and in the interpretation of the Koran, were Persians by race or education, and the saying of the Prophet was verified—“*If Knowledge were attached to the ends of the sky, some amongst the Persians would have reached it.*” Amidst all this intellectual activity the Arabs, who had recently emerged from a nomadic life, found the exercise of military and administrative command too engrossing to give them leisure for literary avocations which have always been disdained by a ruling caste. They left such studies to the Persians and the mixed race (*al-muwalladūn*), which sprang from intermarriage of the conquerors with the conquered. They did not entirely look down upon the men of learning but recognised their services—since after all it was Islam and the sciences connected with Islam that profited thereby.\*

Even in the Umayyad period, as we have seen, the maxim that Knowledge is Power was strikingly illustrated by the immense social influence which Persian divines exerted in the Muhammadan community.<sup>2</sup> Nevertheless, true Arabs of the old type regarded these *Mawallā* and their learning with undisguised contempt. To the great majority of Arabs, who prided themselves on their noble lineage and were content to know nothing beyond the glorious traditions of heathendom and the virtues practised by their sires, all literary culture seemed petty and degrading. Their overbearing attitude

\* Ibn Khaldūn, *Muqaddīma* (Beyrout, 1900), p. 543 seq. = De Slane, *Prolegomena*, vol iii, p. 296 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Goldziher, *Muhamm. Studien*, Part I, p. 114 seq.

towards the *Mawāll*, which is admirably depicted in the first part of Goldziher's *Muhammedanische Studien*, met with a vigorous response. Non-Arabs and Moslem pietists alike appealed to the highest authority—the Koran; and since they required a more definite and emphatic pronouncement than was forthcoming from that source, they put in the mouth of the Prophet sayings like these: "He that speaks Arabic is thereby an Arab"; "whoever of the people of Persia accepts Islam is (as much an Arab as) one of Quraysh." This doctrine made no impression upon the Arabian aristocracy, but with the downfall of the Umayyads the political and social equality of the *Mawāll* became an accomplished fact. Not that the Arabs were at all disposed to abate their pretensions. They bitterly resented the favour which the foreigners enjoyed and the influence which they exercised. The national indignation finds a voice in many poems of the early 'Abbásid period, e.g. :—

"See how the asses which they used to ride  
They have unsaddled, and sleek mules bestride !  
No longer kitchen-herbs they buy and sell,<sup>\*</sup>  
But in the palace and the court they dwell ;  
Against us Arabs full of rage and spleen,  
Hating the Prophet and the Moslem's *dín*.<sup>\*</sup>

The side of the non-Arabs in this literary quarrel was vehemently espoused by a party who called themselves the *Shu'úbites* (*al-Shu'úbíyya*),<sup>3</sup> while their opponents gave them

<sup>\*</sup> Read *mashárdti 'l-buqúl* (beds of vegetables), not *mushárdt* as my rendering implies. The change makes little difference to the sense, but *mashárdt*, being an Aramaic word, is peculiarly appropriate here.

<sup>2</sup> *Aghání*, xii, 177, l. 5 sqq; Von Kremer, *Culturgesch. Streifzüge*, p. 32. These lines are aimed, as has been remarked by S. Khuda Bukhsh (*Contributions to the History of Islamic Civilisation*, Calcutta, 1905, p. 92), against Nabaṭæans who falsely claimed to be Persians.

<sup>3</sup> The name is derived from Koran, xlix, 13: "O Men, We have created you of a male and a female and have made you into peoples (*shu'úb*<sup>an</sup>) and tribes, that ye might know one another. Verily the noblest of you in



the name of Levellers (*Ahlu 'l-Taswiya*), because they contended for the equality of all Moslems without regard to distinctions of race. I must refer the reader who seeks information concerning the history of the movement to Goldziher's masterly study,<sup>1</sup> where the controversial methods adopted by the Shu'úbites are set forth in ample detail. He shows how the bolder spirits among them, not satisfied with claiming an *equal* position, argued that the Arabs were absolutely inferior to the Persians and other peoples. The question was hotly debated, and many eminent writers took part in the fray. On the Shu'úbite side Abú 'Ubayda, Bírúní, and Ḥamza of Iṣfahán deserve mention. Jáhiz and Ibn Durayd were the most notable defenders of their own Arabian nationality, but the 'pro-Arabs' also included several men of Persian origin, such as Ibn Qutayba, Baládhurí, and Zamakhsharí. The Shu'úbites directed their attacks principally against the racial pride of the Arabs, who were fond of boasting that they were the noblest of all mankind and spoke the purest and richest language in the world. Consequently the Persian genealogists and philologists lost no opportunity of bringing to light scandalous and discreditable circumstances connected with the history of the Arab tribes or of particular families. Arabian poetry, especially the vituperative pieces (*mathalib*), furnished abundant matter of this sort, which was adduced by the Shu'úbites as convincing evidence that the claims of the Arabs to superior nobility were absurd. At the same time the national view as to the unique and incomparable excellence of the Arabic language received some rude criticism.

So acute and irreconcilable were the racial differences between Arabs and Persians that one is astonished to see how thoroughly the latter became Arabicised in the course of a

*the sight of God are they that do most fear Him.*" Thus the designation 'Shu'úbite' emphasises the fact that according to Muḥammad's teaching the Arab Moslems are no better than their non-Arab brethren.

<sup>1</sup> *Muhamm. Studien*, Part I, p. 147 sqq.



few generations. As clients affiliated to an Arab tribe, they assumed Arabic names and sought to disguise their foreign extraction by fair means or foul. Many provided themselves with fictitious pedigrees, on the strength of which they passed for Arabs. Such a pretence could have deceived nobody if it had not been supported by a complete assimilation in language, manners, and even to some extent in character. On the neutral ground of Muhammadan science animosities were laid aside, and men of both races laboured enthusiastically for the common cause. When at length, after a century of bloody strife and engrossing political agitation, the great majority of Moslems found themselves debarred from taking part in public affairs, it was only natural that thousands of ardent and ambitious souls should throw their pent-up energies into the pursuit of wealth or learning. We are not concerned here with the marvellous development of trade under the first 'Abbásid Caliphs, of which Von Kremer has given a full and entertaining description in his *Culturgeschichte des Orients*. It may be recalled, however, that many commercial terms, *e.g.*, tariff, names of fabrics (muslin, tabby, &c.), occurring in English as well as in most European languages are of Arabic origin and were brought to Europe by merchants from Baghdád, Mosul, Basra, and other cities of Western Asia. This material expansion was accompanied by an outburst of intellectual activity such as the East had never witnessed before. It seemed as if all the world from the Caliph down to the humblest citizen suddenly became students, or at least patrons, of literature. In quest of knowledge men travelled over three continents and returned home, like bees laden with honey, to impart the precious stores which they had accumulated to crowds of eager disciples, and to compile with incredible industry those works of encyclopædic range and erudition from which modern Science, in the widest sense of the word, has derived far more than is generally supposed.

Assimilation of  
Arabs and  
Persians.

Enthusiasm for  
learning in the  
early 'Abbásid  
period.

The Revolution which made the fortune of the 'Abbásid House was a triumph for Islam and the party of religious reform. While under the worldly Umayyads the studies of Law and Tradition met with no public encouragement and were only kept alive by the pious zeal of oppressed theologians, the new dynasty drew its strength from the Muḥammadan ideas which it professed to establish, and skilfully adapted its policy to satisfying the ever-increasing claims of the Church. Accordingly the Moslem sciences which arose at this time proceeded in the first instance from the Koran and the Ḥadīth. The sacred books offered many difficulties both to provincial Arabs and especially to Persians and other Moslems of foreign extraction. For their right understanding a knowledge of Arabic grammar and philology was essential, and this involved the study of the ancient Pre-islamic poems which supplied the most authentic models of Arabian speech in its original purity. The study of these poems entailed researches into genealogy and history, which in the course of time became independent branches of learning. Similarly the science of Tradition was systematically developed in order to provide Moslems with practical rules for the conduct of life in every conceivable particular, and various schools of Law sprang into existence.

Muḥammadan writers usually distinguish the sciences which are connected with the Koran and those which the Arabs learned from foreign peoples. In the former class they include the Traditional or Religious Sciences (*al-'Ullūm al-Naqliyya awi 'l-Shar'īyya*) and the Linguistic Sciences (*'Ullūmu 'l-Lisāni 'l-'Arabi*); in the latter the Intellectual or Philosophical Sciences (*al-'Ullūm al-'Aqliyya awi 'l-Ḥikmiyya*), which are sometimes called 'The Sciences of the Foreigners' (*'Ullūmu 'l-'Ajam*) or 'The Ancient Sciences' (*al-'Ullūm al-Qadīma*).

The general scope of this division may be illustrated by the following table :—



## I. THE NATIVE SCIENCES.

1. Koranic Exegesis ('*Ilmu 'l-Tafsir*).
2. Koranic Criticism ('*Ilmu 'l-Qird'ât*).
3. The Science of Apostolic Tradition ('*Ilmu 'l-Hadîth*).
4. Jurisprudence (*Fiqh*).
5. Scholastic Theology ('*Ilmu 'l-Kalâm*).
6. Grammar (*Naḥw*).
7. Lexicography (*Lughah*).
8. Rhetoric (*Bayân*).
9. Literature (*Adab*).

## II. THE FOREIGN SCIENCES.

1. Philosophy (*Falsafa*).<sup>1</sup>
2. Geometry (*Handasa*).<sup>2</sup>
3. Astronomy ('*Ilmu 'l-Nujûm*).
4. Music (*Mûsîqî*).
5. Medicine (*Tibb*).
6. Magic and Alchemy (*al-Siḥr wa-'l-Kîmiyâ*).

The religious phenomena of the Period will be discussed in a separate chapter, and here I can only allude cursorily to their general character. We have seen that during the

The early  
'Abbâsîd period  
favourable to  
free-thought.

whole Umayyad epoch, except in the brief reign of 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azîz, the professors of religion were out of sympathy with the court, and that many of them withdrew from all participation in public affairs. It was otherwise when the 'Abbâsîds established themselves in power. Theology now dwelt in the shadow of the throne and directed the policy of the Government. Honours were showered on eminent jurists and divines, who frequently held official posts of high importance and stood in the most confidential and intimate relations to the Caliph; a classical example is the friendship of the Cadi Abû Yûsuf and Hârûn al-Rashîd. The century after the Revolution gave birth to the four great schools of Muḥammadan Law, which are still called by the

<sup>1</sup> The term *Falsafa* properly includes Logic, Metaphysics, Mathematics, Medicine, and the Natural Sciences.

<sup>2</sup> Here we might add the various branches of Mathematics, such as Arithmetic, Algebra, Mechanics, &c.



names of their founders—Málik b. Anas, Abú Ḥanífa, Sháfi‘i, and Ahmad b. Ḥanbal. At this time the scientific and intellectual movement had free play. The earlier Caliphs usually encouraged speculation so long as it threatened no danger to the existing *régime*. Under Ma‘mún and his successors the Mu‘tazilite Rationalism became the State religion, and Islam seemed to have entered upon an era of enlightenment. Thus the first ‘Abbásid period (750-847 A.D.) with its new learning and liberal theology may well be compared to the European Renaissance; but in the words of a celebrated Persian poet—

*Khi‘atí bas fákhir ámad ‘umr ‘aybash kútahíst.*

“Life is a very splendid robe: its fault is brevity.”

The Caliph Mutawakkil (847-861 A.D.) signalled his accession by declaring the Mu‘tazilite doctrines to be heretical and by returning to the traditional faith.) Stern measures were taken against dissenters. Henceforth there was little room in Islam for independent thought. The populace regarded philosophy and natural science as a species of infidelity. Authors of works on these subjects ran a serious risk unless they disguised their true opinions and brought the results of their investigations into apparent conformity with the text of the Koran. About the middle of the tenth century the reactionary spirit assumed a dogmatic shape in the system of Abu ‘l-Ḥasan al-Ash‘arí, the father of Muḥammadan Scholasticism, which is essentially opposed to intellectual freedom and has maintained its petrifying influence almost unimpaired down to the present time.

I could wish that this chapter were more worthy of the title which I have chosen for it, but the foregoing pages will have served their purpose if they have enabled my readers to form some idea of the politics of the Period and of the broad features marking the course of its literary and religious history.

\* ‘Abdu ‘l-Raḥmán Jámí († 1492 A.D.).

The triumph of  
orthodoxy.

## CHAPTER VII

### POETRY, LITERATURE, AND SCIENCE IN THE 'ABBÁSID PERIOD

PRE-ISLAMIC poetry was the natural expression of nomad life. We might therefore have expected that the new conditions and ideas introduced by Islam would rapidly work a corresponding revolution in the poetical literature of the following century. Such, however, was far from being the case. The Umayyad poets clung tenaciously to the great models of the Heroic Age and even took credit for their skilful imitation of the antique odes. The early Muḥammadan critics, who were philologists by profession, held fast to the principle that Poetry in Pre-Islamic times had reached a perfection which no modern bard could hope to emulate, and which only the lost ideals of chivalry could inspire.<sup>1</sup> To have been born after Islam was in itself a proof of poetical inferiority.<sup>2</sup> Linguistic considerations, of course, entered largely into this prejudice. The old poems were studied as repositories of the pure classical tongue and were estimated mainly from a grammarian's standpoint.

These ideas gained wide acceptance in literary circles and gradually biassed the popular taste to such an extent that learned pedants could boast, like Khalīl b. Aḥmad,

<sup>1</sup> I am deeply indebted in the following pages to Goldziher's essay entitled *Alte und Neue Poesie im Urtheile der Arabischen Kritiker* in his *Abhand. zur Arab. Philologie*, Part I, pp. 122-174.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. the remark made by Abū 'Amr b. al-'Alá about the poet Akḥṭal (p. 242 *supra*).

the inventor of Arabic prosody, that it lay in their power to make or mar the reputation of a rising poet as they deemed fit. Originality being condemned in advance, those who desired the approval of this self-constituted Academy were obliged to waste their time and talents upon elaborate reproduction of the ancient masterpieces, and to entertain courtiers and citizens with borrowed pictures of Bedouin life in which neither they nor their audience took the slightest interest. Some, it is true, recognised the absurdity of the thing. Abú Nuwás († circa 810 A.D.) often ridicules the custom, to which reference has been made elsewhere, of apostrophising the deserted encampment (*aḥlāl* or *ḥulul*) in the opening lines of an ode, and pours contempt on the fashionable glorification of antiquity. In the passage translated below he gives a description of the desert and its people which recalls some of Dr. Johnson's sallies at the expense of Scotland and Scotsmen :—

Abú Nuwás as a  
critic.

“ Let the south-wind moisten with rain the desolate scene  
And Time efface what once was so fresh and green !  
Make the camel-rider free of a desert space  
Where high-bred camels trot with unwearied pace ;  
Where only mimosas and thistles flourish, and where,  
For hunting, wolves and hyenas are nowise rare !  
Amongst the Bedouins seek not enjoyment out :  
What do they enjoy ? They live in hunger and drought.  
Let them drink their bowls of milk and leave them alone,  
To whom life's finer pleasures are all unknown.”<sup>1</sup> ]

Ibn Qutayba, who died towards the end of the ninth century A.D., was the first critic of importance to declare that ancients and moderns should be judged on their merits without regard to their age. He writes as follows in the Introduction

<sup>1</sup> *Diwan des Abu Nowas, Die Weinlieder*, ed. by Ahlwardt, No. 10, vv. 1-5.



to his 'Book of Poetry and Poets' (*Kitābu 'l-Shi'r wa-'l-Shu'ar*):—<sup>1</sup>

"In citing extracts from the works of the poets I have been guided by my own choice and have refused to admire anything merely because others thought it admirable. I have not regarded any ancient with veneration on account of his antiquity nor any modern with contempt on account of his being modern, but I have taken an impartial view of both sides, giving every one his due and amply acknowledging his merit. Some of our scholars, as I am aware, pronounce a feeble poem to be good, because its author was an ancient, and include it among their chosen pieces, while they call a sterling poem bad though its only fault is that it was composed in their own time or that they have seen its author. God, however, did not restrict learning and poetry and rhetoric to a particular age nor appropriate them to a particular class, but has always distributed them in common amongst His servants, and has caused everything old to be new in its own day and every classic work to be an upstart on its first appearance."

Ibn Qutayba on  
ancient and  
modern poets.

The inevitable reaction in favour of the new poetry and of contemporary literature in general was hastened by various circumstances which combined to overthrow the prevalent theory that Arabian heathendom and the characteristic pagan virtues—honour, courage, liberality, &c.—were alone capable of producing poetical genius. Among the chief currents of thought tending in this direction, which are lucidly set forth in Goldziher's essay, pp. 148 sqq., we may note (*a*) the pietistic and theological spirit fostered by the 'Abbāsid Government, and (*b*) the influence of foreign, pre-eminently Persian, culture. As to the former, it is manifest that devout Moslems would not be at all disposed to admit the exclusive pretensions made on behalf of the *Ǧāhiliyya* or to agree with those who exalted chivalry (*murūwwa*) above religion (*dīn*). Were not the language and style of the Koran incomparably excellent? Surely the Holy Book was a more proper subject for study

Revolt against  
classicism.

<sup>1</sup> Ed. by De Goeje, p. 5, ll. 5-15.

than heathen verses. But if Moslems began to call Pre-islamic ideals in question, it was especially the Persian ascendancy resulting from the triumph of the 'Abbásid House that shook the old arrogant belief of the Arabs in the intellectual supremacy of their race. So far from glorying in the traditions of paganism, many people thought it grossly insulting to mention an 'Abbásid Caliph in the same breath with heroes of the past like Ḥátim of Ṭayyī' and Harim b. Sinán. The philosopher al-Kindī († about 850 A.D.) rebuked a poet for venturing on such odious comparisons. "Who are these Arabian vagabonds" (*ša'állku 'l-'Arab*), he asked, "and what worth have they?"<sup>1</sup>

While Ibn Qutayba was content to urge that the modern poets should get a fair hearing, and should be judged not chronologically or philologically, but *æsthetically*, some of the greatest literary critics who came after him do not conceal their opinion that the new poetry is superior to the old. [Tha'álibi († 1038 A.D.) asserts that in tenderness and elegance the Pre-islamic bards are surpassed by their successors, and that both alike have been eclipsed by his contemporaries. Ibn Rashīq († circa 1070 A.D.), whose *'Umda* on the Art of Poetry is described by Ibn Khaldún as an epoch-making work, thought that the superiority of the moderns would be acknowledged if they discarded the obsolete conventions of the Ode. European readers cannot but sympathise with him when he bids the poets draw inspiration from nature and truth instead of relating imaginary journeys on a camel which they never owned, through deserts which they never saw, to a patron residing in the same city as themselves.] This seems to us a very reasonable and necessary protest, but it must be remembered that the Bedouin *qaṣīda* was not easily adaptable to the conditions of urban life, and needed complete remoulding rather than modification in detail.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the story told of Abú Tammám by Ibn Khallikán (De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 350 seq.).

<sup>2</sup> See Nöldeke, *Beiträge*, p. 4.

Critics in favour  
of the  
modern school.



“In the fifth century,” says Goldziher—*i.e.*, from about 1000 A.D.—“the dogma of the unattainable perfection of the heathen poets may be regarded as utterly demolished.”<sup>1</sup> Henceforth popular taste ran strongly in the other direction, as is shown by the immense preponderance of modern pieces in the anthologies—a favourite and characteristic branch of Arabic literature—which were compiled during the ‘Abbásid period and afterwards, and by frequent complaints of the neglect into which the ancient poetry had fallen. But although, for Moslems generally, Imru’u ’l-Qays and his fellows came to be more or less what Chaucer is to the average Englishman, the views first enunciated by Ibn Qutayba met with bitter opposition from the learned class, many of whom clung obstinately to the old philological principles of criticism, and even declined to recognise the writings of Mutanabbí and Abu ’l-‘Alá al-Ma‘arrí as poetry, on the ground that those authors did not observe the classical ‘types’ (*asálib*).<sup>2</sup> The result of such pedantry may be seen at the present day in thousands of *qasidas*, abounding in archaisms and allusions to forgotten far-off things of merely antiquarian interest, but possessing no more claim to consideration here than the Greek and Latin verses of British scholars in a literary history of the Victorian Age.)

Passing now to the characteristics of the new poetry which followed the accession of the ‘Abbásids, we have to bear in mind that from first to last (with very few exceptions) it flourished under the patronage of the court. There was no organised book trade, no wealthy publishers, so that poets were usually dependent for their livelihood on the capricious bounty of the Caliphs and his favourites whom they belauded. Huge sums were paid

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khaldún, *Muqaddima* (Beyrout, 1900), p. 573, l. 21 seq.; *Prolegomena* of Ibn K., translated by De Slane, vol. iii, p. 380.



for a successful panegyric, and the bards vied with each other in flattery of the most extravagant description. Even in writers of real genius this prostitution of their art gave rise to a great deal of the false glitter and empty bombast which are often erroneously attributed to Oriental poetry as a whole.<sup>1</sup> These qualities, however, are absolutely foreign to Arabian poetry of the best period. The old Bedouins who praised a man only for that which was in him, and drew their images directly from nature, stand at the opposite pole to Thaʿālibī's contemporaries. Under the Umayyads, as we have seen, little change took place. It is not until after the enthronement of the ʿAbbāsids, when Persians filled the chief offices at court, and when a goodly number of poets and eminent men of learning had Persian blood in their veins, that an unmistakably new note makes itself heard. One might be tempted to surmise that the high-flown, bombastic, and ornate style of which Mutanabbī is the most illustrious exponent, and which is so marked a feature in later Muḥammadan poetry, was first introduced by the Persians and Perso-Arabs who gathered round the Caliph in Baghdād and celebrated the triumph of their own race in the person of a noble Barmecide; but this would scarcely be true. The style in question is not specially Persian; the earliest Arabic-writing poets of Íránian descent, like Bashshār b. Burd and Abú Nuwās, are (so far as I can see) without a trace of it. [What the Persians brought into Arabian poetry was not a grandiose style, but a lively and graceful fancy, elegance of diction, depth and tenderness of feeling, and a rich store of ideas.]

The process of transformation was aided by other causes besides the influx of Persian and Hellenistic culture: for example, by the growing importance of Islam in public life and the diffusion of a strong religious spirit among the community at large—a spirit which attained its most perfect

<sup>1</sup> See Professor Browne's *Literary History of Persia*, vol. ii, p. 14 sqq.

expression in the reflective and didactic poetry of Abu 'l-'Atáhiya. Every change of many-coloured life is depicted in the brilliant pages of these modern poets, where the reader may find, according to his mood, the maddest gaiety and the shamefullest frivolity; strains of lofty meditation mingled with a world-weary pessimism; delicate sentiment, unforced pathos, and glowing rhetoric; but seldom the manly self-reliance, the wild, invigorating freedom and inimitable freshness of Bedouin song.

It is of course impossible to do justice even to the principal 'Abbásid poets within the limits of this chapter, but the following five may be taken as fairly representative:

Five typical  
poets of the  
Abbásid period.

Muṭṭi' b. Iyás, Abú Nuwás, Abu 'l-'Atáhiya, Mutanabbí, and Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arrí. The first three were in close touch with the court of Baghdád, while Mutanabbí and Abu 'l-'Alá flourished under the Ḥamdánid dynasty which ruled in Aleppo.

Muṭṭi' b. Iyás only deserves notice here as the earliest poet of the New School. His father was a native of Palestine, but he himself was born and educated at Kúfa. (He began his career under the Umayyads, and was devoted to the Caliph Walíd b. Yazíd, who found in him a fellow after his own heart, "accomplished, dissolute, an agreeable companion and excellent wit, reckless in his effrontery and suspected in his religion."<sup>1</sup>) When the 'Abbásids came into power Muṭṭi' attached himself to the Caliph Maṣṣúr. Many stories are told of the debauched life which he led in the company of *zindiqs*, or free-thinkers, a class of men whose opinions we shall sketch in another chapter. His songs of love and wine are distinguished by their lightness and elegance. The best known is that in which he laments his separation from the daughter of a *Dihqán* (Persian landed

<sup>1</sup> *Aghání*, xii, 80, l. 3.

proprietor), and invokes the two palm-trees of Hulwán, a town situated on the borders of the Jibál province between Hamadhán and Baghdád. From this poem arose the proverb, "Faster friends than the two palm-trees of Hulwán."<sup>1</sup>

#### THE YEOMAN'S DAUGHTER.

"O ye two palms, palms of Hulwán,  
Help me weep Time's bitter dole!  
Know that Time for ever parteth  
Life from every living soul.

Had ye tasted parting's anguish,  
Ye would weep as I, forlorn.  
Help me! Soon must ye asunder  
By the same hard fate be torn.

Many are the friends and loved ones  
Whom I lost in days of yore.  
Fare thee well, O yeoman's daughter!—  
Never grief like this I bore.  
Her, alas, mine eyes behold not,  
And on me she looks no more!"

By Europeans who know him only through the *Thousand and One Nights* Abú Nuwás is remembered as the boon-companion and court jester of "the good Haroun Alraschid," and as the hero of countless droll adventures and facetious anecdotes—an Oriental Howleglass or Joe Miller. It is often forgotten that he was a great poet who, in the opinion of those most competent to judge, takes rank above all his contemporaries and successors, including even Mutanabbí, and is not surpassed in poetical genius by any ancient bard.

Abú Nuwás  
(† circa 810 A.D.)

<sup>1</sup> Freytag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. i, p. 46 seq., where the reader will find the Arabic text of the verses translated here. Rückert has given a German rendering of the same verses in his *Hamāsa*, vol. i, p. 311. A fuller text of the poem occurs in *Aghání*, xii, 107 seq.



[Hasan b. Hání<sup>1</sup> gained the familiar title of Abú Nuwás (Father of the lock of hair) from two locks which hung down on his shoulders. He was born of humble parents, about the middle of the eighth century, in Aḥwáz, the capital of Khúzistán.] That he was not a pure Arab the name of his mother, Jallabán, clearly indicates, while the following verse affords sufficient proof that he was not ashamed of his Persian blood :—

“Who are Tamím and Qays and all their kin?  
The Arabs in God’s sight are nobody.”<sup>2</sup>

He received his education at Baṣra, of which city he calls himself a native,<sup>2</sup> and at Kúfa, where he studied poetry and philology under the learned Khalaf al-Aḥmar. After passing a ‘Wanderjahr’ among the Arabs of the desert, as was the custom of scholars at that time, he made his way to Baghdád and soon eclipsed every competitor at the court of Hárún the Orthodox. A man of the most abandoned character, which he took no pains to conceal, Abú Nuwás, by his flagrant immorality, drunkenness, and blasphemy, excited the Caliph’s anger to such a pitch that he often threatened the culprit with death, and actually imprisoned him on several occasions; but these fits of severity were brief. The poet survived both Hárún and his son, Amín, who succeeded him in the Caliphate. Age brought repentance—“the Devil was sick, the Devil a monk would be.” He addressed the following lines from prison to Faḍl b. al-Rabf, whom Hárún appointed Grand Vizier after the fall of the Barmecides :—

“Faḍl, who hast taught and trained me up to goodness  
(And goodness is but habit), thee I praise.  
Now hath vice fled and virtue me revisits,  
And I have turned to chaste and pious ways.

<sup>1</sup> *Dhwán*, ed. by Ahlwardt, *Die Weinlieder*, No. 26, v. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Qutayba, *K. al-Shi‘r wa-l-Shu‘ar*, p. 502, l. 13.

To see me, thou would'st think the saintly Baṣrite,  
 Ḥasan, or else Qatāda, met thy gaze,<sup>1</sup>  
 So do I deck humility with leanness,  
 While yellow, locust-like, my cheek o'erlays.  
 Beads on my arm; and on my breast the Scripture,  
 Where hung a chain of gold in other days."<sup>2</sup>

The Dīwān of Abū Nuwās contains poems in many different styles—e.g., panegyric (*madḥ*), satire (*hijd*), songs or the chase (*ṭardiyyāt*), elegies (*marāthi*), and religious poems (*zuhdiyyāt*); but love and wine were the two motives by which his genius was most brilliantly inspired. His wine-songs (*khamriyyāt*) are generally acknowledged to be incomparable. Here is one of the shortest:—

✓ [ "Thou scolder of the grape and me,  
 I ne'er shall win thy smile!  
 Because against thee I rebel,  
 'Tis churlish to revile.

Ah, breathe no more the name of wine  
 Until thou cease to blame,  
 For fear that thy foul tongue should smirch  
 Its fair and lovely name!

Come, pour it out, ye gentle boys,  
 A vintage ten years old,  
 That seems as though 'twere in the cup  
 A lake of liquid gold.

And when the water mingles there,  
 To fancy's eye are set  
 Pearls over shining pearls close strung  
 As in a carcanet."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For the famous ascetic, Ḥasan of Baṣra, see pp. 225-227. Qatāda was a learned divine, also of Baṣra and contemporary with Ḥasan. He died in 735 A.D.

<sup>2</sup> These verses are quoted by Ibn Qutayba, *op. cit.*, p. 507 seq. 'The Scripture' (*al-maṣḥaf*) is of course the Koran.

<sup>3</sup> *Die Weinlieder*, ed. by Ahlwardt, No. 47.

Another poem begins—

"Ho ! a cup, and fill it up, and tell me it is wine,  
For I will never drink in shade if I can drink in shine !  
Curst and poor is every hour that sober I must go,  
But rich am I whene'er well drunk I stagger to and fro.  
Speak, for shame, the loved one's name, let vain disguise  
alone :  
No good there is in pleasures o'er which a veil is thrown." <sup>1</sup>)

Abú Nuwás practised what he preached, and hypocrisy at any rate cannot be laid to his charge. The moral and religious sentiments which appear in some of his poems are not mere cant, but should rather be regarded as the utterance of sincere though transient emotion. Usually he felt and avowed that pleasure was the supreme business of his life, and that religious scruples could not be permitted to stand in the way. He even urges others not to shrink from any excess, inasmuch as the Divine mercy is greater than all the sins of which a man is capable :—

[ "Accumulate as many sins thou canst :  
The Lord is ready to relax His ire.  
When the day comes, forgiveness thou wilt find  
Before a mighty King and gracious Sire,  
And gnaw thy fingers, all that joy regretting  
Which thou didst leave thro' terror of Hell-fire !" <sup>2</sup>)

We must now bid farewell to Abú Nuwás and the licentious poets (*al-shu'arâ al-mujjân*) who reflect so admirably the ideas and manners prevailing in court circles and in the upper classes of society which were chiefly influenced by the court. The scenes of luxurious dissipation and refined debauchery which they describe show us, indeed, that Persian culture was not an unalloyed blessing to the Arabs any more

<sup>1</sup> *Ibid.*, No. 29, vv. 1-3.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Khallikân, ed. by Wüstenfeld, No. 169, p. 100 ; De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 393.



than were the arts of Greece to the Romans; but this is only the darker side of the picture. The works of a contemporary poet furnish evidence of the indignation which the libertinism fashionable in high places called forth among the mass of Moslems who had not lost faith in morality and religion.

Abu 'l-'Atáhiya, unlike his great rival, came of Arab stock. He was bred in Kúfa, and gained his livelihood as a young man by selling earthenware. His poetical talent, Abu 'l-'Atáhiya  
(748-828 A.D.). however, promised so well that he set out to present himself before the Caliph Mahdl, who richly rewarded him; and Hárún al-Rashíd afterwards bestowed on him a yearly pension of 50,000 dirhems (about £2,000), in addition to numerous extraordinary gifts. [At Baghdád he fell in love with 'Utba, a slave-girl belonging to Mahdl, but she did not return his passion or take any notice of the poems in which he celebrated her charms and bewailed the sufferings that she made him endure.] Despair of winning her affection caused him, it is said, to assume the woollen garb of Muḥammadan ascetics,<sup>1</sup> and henceforth, instead of writing vain and amatorious verses, he devoted his powers exclusively to those joyless meditations on mortality which have struck a deep chord in the hearts of his countrymen. Like Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arri and others who neglected the positive precepts of Islam in favour of a moral philosophy based on experience and reflection, Abu 'l-'Atáhiya was accused of being a freethinker (*zindiq*).<sup>2</sup> It was alleged that in his poems he often spoke of

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Diván* (ed. of Beyrout, 1886), p. 279, l. 9, where he reproaches one of his former friends who deserted him because, in his own words, "I adopted the garb of a dervish" (*sirtu fī ziyyi miskīni*). Others attribute his conversion to disgust with the immorality and profanity of the court-poets amongst whom he lived.

<sup>2</sup> Possibly he alludes to these aspersions in the verse (*ibid.*, p. 153, l. 10): "Men have become corrupted, and if they see any one who is sound in his religion, they call him a heretic" (*mublati*).

death but never of the Resurrection and the Judgment—a calumny which is refuted by many passages in his *Diwán*. According to the literary historian al-Šúll († 946 A.D.), Abu 'l-'Atáhiya believed in One God who formed the universe out of two opposite elements which He created from nothing; and held, further, that everything would be reduced to these same elements before the final destruction of all phenomena. Knowledge, he thought, was acquired naturally (*i.e.*, without Divine Revelation) by means of reflection, deduction, and research.<sup>1</sup> He believed in the threatened retribution (*al-wa'id*) and in the command to abstain from commerce with the world (*tahrimu 'l-makásib*).<sup>2</sup> He professed the opinions of the Butrites,<sup>3</sup> a subdivision of the Zaydites, as that sect of the Shí'a was named which followed Zayd b. Alí b. Ḥusayn b. 'Alí b. Abí Tálíb. He spoke evil or none, and did not approve of revolt against the Government. He held the doctrine of predestination (*jabr*).<sup>4</sup>

Abu 'l-'Atáhiya may have secretly cherished the Manichæan views ascribed to him in this passage, but his poems contain little or nothing that could offend the most orthodox Moslem. The following verse, in which Goldziher finds an allusion to Buddha,<sup>5</sup> is capable of a different interpretation. It rather

<sup>1</sup> Abu 'l-'Atáhiya declares that knowledge is derived from three sources, logical reasoning (*qiyás*), examination (*'iyár*), and oral tradition (*samá'*). See his *Diwán*, p. 158, l. 11.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Mání, seine Lehre und seine Schriften*, by G. Flügel, p. 281, l. 3 sqq. Abu 'l-'Atáhiya did not take this extreme view (*Diwán*, p. 270, l. 3 seq.).

<sup>3</sup> See Shahrastání, Haarbrücker's translation, Part I, p. 181 sqq. It appears highly improbable that Abu 'l-'Atáhiya was a Shí'ite. Cf. the verses (*Diwán*, p. 104, l. 13 seq.), where, speaking of the prophets and the holy men of ancient Islam, he says:—

"Reckon first among them Abú Bakr, the veracious,  
And exclaim 'O 'Umar!' in the second place of honour.  
And reckon the father of Ḥasan after 'Uthmán,  
For the merit of them both is recited and celebrated."

<sup>4</sup> *Aghání*, iii, 128, l. 6 sqq.

<sup>5</sup> *Transactions of the Ninth Congress of Orientalists*, vol. ii. p. 114.



seems to me to exalt the man of ascetic life, without particular reference to any individual, above all others :—

"If thou would'st see the noblest of mankind,  
Behold a monarch in a beggar's garb."\*

But while the poet avoids positive heresy, it is none the less true that much of his *Diwân* is not strictly religious in the Muḥammadan sense and may fairly be called 'philosophical.' This was enough to convict him of infidelity and atheism in the eyes of devout theologians who looked askance on moral teaching, however pure, that was not cast in the dogmatic mould. The pretended cause of his imprisonment by Hārūn al-Rashīd—namely, that he refused to make any more love-songs—is probably, as Goldziher has suggested, a popular version of the fact that he persisted in writing religious poems which were supposed to have a dangerous bias in the direction of free-thought.

His poetry breathes a spirit of profound melancholy and hopeless pessimism. Death and what comes after death, the frailty and misery of man, the vanity of worldly pleasures and the duty of renouncing them—these are the subjects on which he dwells with monotonous reiteration, exhorting his readers to live the ascetic life and fear God and lay up a store of good works against the Day of Reckoning. The simplicity, ease, and naturalness of his style are justly admired. Religious

\* *Diwân*, p. 274, l. 10. Cf. the verse (p. 199, penultimate line) :—

[*"When I gained contentment, I did not cease (thereafter)  
To be a king, regarding riches as poverty."*]

The ascetic "lives the life of a king" (*ibid.*, p. 187, l. 5). Contented men are the noblest of all (p. 148, l. 2). So the great Persian mystic, Jalálu 'l-Dīn Rūmī, says in reference to the perfect Šāfi (*Diwân-i Shams-i Tabriz*, No. viii, v. 3 in my edition) : *Mard-i khudd shāh buvad zir-i dalq*, "the man of God is a king 'neath dervish-cloak ;" and eminent spiritualists are frequently described as "kings of the (mystic) path." I do not deny, however, that this metaphor may have been originally suggested by the story of Buddha.



poetry, as he himself confesses, was not read at court or by scholars who demanded rare and obscure expressions, but only by pious folk, traditionists and divines, and especially by the vulgar, "who like best what they can understand."<sup>1</sup> Abu 'l-'Atáhiya wrote for 'the man in the street.' Discarding conventional themes tricked out with threadbare artifices, he appealed to common feelings and matters of universal experience. He showed for the first and perhaps for the last time in the history of classical Arabic literature that it was possible to use perfectly plain and ordinary language without ceasing to be a poet.

Although, as has been said, the bulk of Abu 'l-'Atáhiya's poetry is philosophical in character, there remains much specifically Islamic doctrine, in particular as regards the Resurrection and the Future Life. This combination may be illustrated by the following ode, which is considered one of the best that have been written on the subject of religion, or, more accurately, of asceticism (*zuhd*) :—

"Get sons for death, build houses for decay !  
 All, all, ye wend annihilation's way.  
 For whom build we, who must ourselves return  
 Into our native element of clay ?  
 O Death, nor violence nor flattery thou  
 Dost use, but when thou com'st, escape none may.  
 Methinks, thou art ready to surprise mine age,  
 As age surprised and made my youth his prey.  
 What ails me, World, that every place perforce  
 I lodge thee in, it galleth me to stay ?  
 And, O Time, how do I behold thee run  
 To spoil me ? Thine own gift thou tak'st away !  
 O Time ! inconstant, mutable art thou,  
 And o'er the realm of ruin is thy sway.)

<sup>1</sup> *Diwān*, p. 25, l. 3 sqq. Abu 'l-'Atáhiya took credit to himself for introducing 'the language of the market-place' into his poetry (*ibid.* p. 12, l. 3 seq.).

What ails me that no glad result it brings  
 Whene'er, O World, to milk thee I essay?  
 And when I court thee, why dost thou raise up  
 On all sides only trouble and dismay?  
 Men seek thee every wise, but thou art like  
 A dream; the shadow of a cloud; the day  
 Which hath but now departed, nevermore  
 To dawn again; a glittering vapour gay.  
 This people thou hast paid in full: their feet  
 Are on the stirrup—let them not delay!  
 But those that do good works and labour well  
 Hereafter shall receive the promised pay.]  
 As if no punishment I had to fear,  
 A load of sin upon my neck I lay;  
 And while the world I love, from Truth, alas,  
 Still my besotted senses go astray.  
 I shall be asked of all my business here:  
 What can I plead then? What can I gainsay?  
 What argument allege, when I am called  
 To render an account on Reckoning-Day?  
 Dooms twain in that dread hour shall be revealed,  
 When I the scroll of these mine acts survey:  
 Either to dwell in everlasting bliss,  
 Or suffer torments of the damned for aye!"\*

I will now add a few verses culled from the *Dīwān* which bring the poet's pessimistic view of life into clearer outline, and also some examples of those moral precepts and sententious criticisms which crowd his pages and have contributed in no small degree to his popularity.

["The world is like a viper soft to touch that venom spits."\*]

"Men sit like revellers o'er their cups and drink,  
 From the world's hand, the circling wine of death."<sup>2</sup>

"Call no man living blest for aught you see  
 But that for which you blessed call the dead."<sup>3</sup>]

\* *Dīwān* (Beyrout, 1886), p. 23, l. 13 *et seq.*

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 51, l. 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 132, l. 3.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 46, l. 16.

## FALSE FRIENDS.

"'Tis not the Age that moves my scorn,  
 But those who in the Age are born.  
 I cannot count the friends that broke  
 Their faith, tho' honied words they spoke;  
 In whom no aid I found, and made  
 The Devil welcome to their aid.  
 May I—so best we shall agree—  
 Ne'er look on them nor they on me!"<sup>1</sup>

"If men should see a prophet begging, they would turn and  
 scout him.  
 Thy friend is ever thine as long as thou canst do without him;  
 But he will spew thee forth, if in thy need thou come about  
 him."<sup>2</sup>

## THE WICKED WORLD.

"'Tis only on the culprit sin recoils,  
 The ignorant fool against himself is armed.  
 Humanity are sunk in wickedness;  
 The best is he that leaveth us unharmed."<sup>3</sup>

"'Twas my despair of Man that gave me hope  
 God's grace would find me soon, I know not how."<sup>4</sup>

## LIFE AND DEATH.

"Man's life is his fair name, and not his length of years;  
 Man's death is his ill-fame, and not the day that nears.  
 Then life to thy fair name by deeds of goodness give:  
 So in this world two lives, O mortal, thou shalt live."<sup>5</sup>

## MAXIMS AND RULES OF LIFE.

"Mere falsehood by its face is recognised,  
 But Truth by parables and admonitions."<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Diwân*, p. 260, l. 11 *et seqq.*

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 295, l. 14 *et seqq.*

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 287, l. 10 *seq.*

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 119, l. 11.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 259, penultimate line *et seq.*

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 115, l. 4



"I keep the bond of love inviolate  
Towards all humankind, for I betray  
Myself, if I am false to any man."<sup>1</sup>

"Far from the safe path, hop'st thou to be saved?  
Ships make no speedy voyage on dry land."<sup>2</sup>

"Strip off the world from thee and naked live,  
For naked thou didst fall into the world."<sup>3</sup>

"Man guards his own and grasps his neighbours' pelf,  
And he is angered when they him prevent;  
But he that makes the earth his couch will sleep  
No worse, if lacking silk he have content."<sup>4</sup>

"Men vaunt their noble blood, but I behold  
No lineage that can vie with righteous deeds."<sup>5</sup>

"If knowledge lies in long experience,  
Less than what I have borne suffices me."<sup>6</sup>

"Faith is the medicine of every grief,  
Doubt only raises up a host of cares."<sup>7</sup>

"Blame me or no, 'tis my predestined state:  
If I have erred, infallible is Fate."<sup>8</sup>

Abu 'l-'Atáhiya found little favour with his contemporaries, who seem to have regarded him as a miserly hypocrite. He died, an aged man, in the Caliphate of Ma'mún.<sup>9</sup> Von

<sup>1</sup> *Díwán*, p. 51, l. 10.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 74, l. 4.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 195, l. 9. Cf. p. 243, l. 4 seq.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 274, l. 6.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 346, l. 11. Cf. p. 102, l. 11; p. 262, l. 1 seq.; p. 267, l. 7. This

verse is taken from Abu 'l-'Atáhiya's famous didactic poem composed in rhyming couplets, which is said to have contained 4,000 sentences of morality. Several of these have been translated by Von Kremer in his *Culturgeschichte des Orients*, vol. ii, p. 374 sqq.

<sup>9</sup> In one of his poems (*Díwán*, p. 160, l. 11), he says that he has lived ninety years, but if this is not a mere exaggeration, it needs to be corrected. The words for 'seventy' and 'ninety' are easily confused in Arabic writing.

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 133, l. 5.

<sup>7</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 149, l. 12 seq.

<sup>8</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 262, l. 4.

Kremer thinks that he had a truer genius for poetry than Abú Nuwás, an opinion in which I am unable to concur. Both, however, as he points out, are distinctive types of their time. If Abú Nuwás presents an appalling picture of a corrupt and frivolous society devoted to pleasure, we learn from Abu 'l-'Atáhiya something of the religious feelings and beliefs which pervaded the middle and lower classes, and which led them to take a more earnest and elevated view of life.

With the rapid decline and disintegration of the 'Abbásid Empire which set in towards the middle of the ninth century, numerous petty dynasties arose, and the hitherto unrivalled splendour of Baghdád was challenged by more than one provincial court. These independent or semi-independent princes were sometimes zealous patrons of learning—it is well known, for example, that a national Persian literature first came into being under the auspices of the Sámánids in Khurásán and the Buwayhids in 'Iráq—but as a rule the anxious task of maintaining, or the ambition of extending, their power left them small leisure to cultivate letters, even if they wished to do so. None combined the arts of war and peace more brilliantly than the Hamdánid Sayfu 'l-Dawla, who in 944 A.D. made himself master of Aleppo, and founded an independent kingdom in Northern Syria.)

"The Hamdánids," says Tha'álibí, "were kings and princes, comely of countenance and eloquent of tongue, endowed with open-handedness and gravity of mind. Sayfu 'l-Dawla is famed as the chief amongst them all and the centre-pearl of their necklace. He was—may God be pleased with him and grant his desires and make Paradise his abode!—the brightest star of his age and the pillar of Islam: by him the frontiers were guarded and the State well governed. His attacks on the rebellious Arabs checked their fury and blunted their teeth and tamed their stubbornness and secured his subjects against their barbarity. His campaigns exacted vengeance from the Emperor of the Greeks, decisively broke their hostile onset,

Tha'álibí's  
eulogy of  
Sayfu 'l-Dawla.

and had an excellent effect on Islam. His court was the goal of ambassadors, the dayspring of liberality, the horizon-point of hope, the end of journeys, a place where savants assembled and poets competed for the palm. It is said that after the Caliphs no prince gathered around him so many masters of poetry and men illustrious in literature as he did; and to a monarch's hall, as to a market, people bring only what is in demand. He was an accomplished scholar, a poet himself and a lover of fine poetry; keenly susceptible to words of praise."<sup>1</sup>

Sayfu 'l-Dawla's cousin, Abú Firás al-Ḥamdání, was a gallant soldier and a poet of some mark, who if space permitted would receive fuller notice here.<sup>2</sup> He, however, though superior to the common herd of court poets, is overshadowed by one who with all his faults—and they are not inconsiderable—made an extraordinary impression upon his contemporaries, and by the commanding influence of his reputation decided what should henceforth be the standard of poetical taste in the Muḥammadan world.

Abu 'l-Tayyib Aḥmad b. Ḥusayn, known to fame as al-Mutanabbí, was born and bred at Kúfa, where his father is said to have been a water-carrier. Following the admirable custom by which young men of promise were sent abroad to complete their education, he studied at Damascus and visited other towns in Syria, but also passed much of his time among the Bedouins, to whom he owed the singular knowledge and mastery of Arabic displayed in his poems. Here he came forward as a prophet (from which circumstance he was afterwards entitled al-Mutanabbí, *i.e.*, 'the pretender to prophecy'), and induced a great multitude to believe in him; but ere long he was captured by Lu'lu', the governor of Ḥimṣ (Emessa), and thrown into prison. After his release he

Mutanabbí  
(915-965 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> Tha'álibí, *Yatímatu 'l-Dahr* (Damascus, 1304 A.H.), vol. i, p. 8 seq.

<sup>2</sup> See Von Kremer's *Culturgeschichte*, vol. ii, p. 381 sqq.; Ahlwardt, *Poesie und Poetik der Araber*, p. 37 sqq.; R. Dvorak, *Abú Firás, ein arabischer Dichter und Held* (Leyden, 1895).



wandered to and fro chanting the praises of all and sundry, until fortune guided him to the court of Sayfu 'l-Dawla at Aleppo. For nine years (948-957 A.D.) he stood high in the favour of that cultured prince, whose virtues he celebrated in a series of splendid eulogies, and with whom he lived as an intimate friend and comrade in arms. The liberality of Sayfu 'l-Dawla and the ingenious impudence of the poet are well brought out by the following anecdote:—

Mutanabbi on one occasion handed to his patron the copy of an ode which he had recently composed in his honour, and retired, leaving Sayfu 'l-Dawla to peruse it at leisure. The prince began to read, and came to these lines—

*Aqil anil aqli' iḥmil 'allī salli a'id  
zid hashshi bashshi tafaḍḍal adni surra ḡili.\**

*"Pardon, bestow, endow, mount, raise, console, restore,  
Add, laugh, rejoice, bring nigh, show favour, gladden, give!"*

Far from being displeased by the poet's arrogance, Sayfu 'l-Dawla was so charmed with his artful collocation of fourteen imperatives in a single verse that he granted every request. Under *pardon* he wrote 'we pardon thee'; under *bestow*, 'let him receive such and such a sum of money'; under *endow*, 'we endow thee with an estate,' which he named (it was beside the gate of Aleppo); under *mount*, 'let such and such a horse be led to him'; under *raise*, 'we do so'; under *console*, 'we do so, be at ease'; under *restore*, 'we restore thee to thy former place in our esteem'; under *add*, 'let him have such and such in addition'; under *bring nigh*, 'we admit thee to our intimacy'; under *show favour*, 'we have done so'; under *gladden*, 'we have made thee glad'; under *give*, 'this we have already done.' Mutanabbi's rivals envied his good fortune, and one of them said to Sayfu 'l-Dawla—"Sire, you have done all that he asked, but when he uttered the words *laugh, rejoice*, why did not you answer, 'Ha, ha, ha'?" Sayfu 'l-Dawla laughed, and said, "You too, shall have your wish," and ordered him a donation.

\* Mutanabbi, ed. by Dieterici, p. 493. Wāḥidī gives the whole story in his commentary on this verse.

\* Mutanabbi, it is said, explained to Sayfu 'l-Dawla that by *surra* (gladden) he meant *surriyya*; whereupon the good-humoured prince presented him with a slave-girl.

Mutanabbi was sincerely attached to his generous master, and this feeling inspired a purer and loftier strain than we find in the fulsome panegyrics which he afterwards addressed to the negro Káfúr. He seems to have been occasionally in disgrace, but Sayfu 'l-Dawla could deny nothing to a poet who paid him such magnificent compliments. Nor was he deterred by any false modesty from praising himself: he was fully conscious of his power and, like Arabian bards in general, he bragged about it. Although the verbal legerdemain which is so conspicuous in his poetry cannot be reproduced in another language, the lines translated below may be taken as a favourable and sufficiently characteristic specimen of his style.

"How glows mine heart for him whose heart to me is cold,  
 Who liketh ill my case and me in fault doth hold!  
 Why should I hide a love that hath worn thin my frame?  
 To Sayfu 'l-Dawla all the world avows the same.  
 Tho' love of his high star unites us, would that we  
 According to our love might so divide the fee!  
 Him have I visited when sword in sheath was laid,  
 And I have seen him when in blood swam every blade:  
 Him, both in peace and war the best of all mankind,  
 Whose crown of excellence was still his noble mind.

Do foes by flight escape thine onset, thou dost gain  
 A chequered victory, half of pleasure, half of pain.  
 So puissant is the fear thou strik'st them with, it stands  
 Instead of thee, and works more than thy warriors' hands.  
 Unfought the field is thine: thou need'st not further strain  
 To chase them from their holes in mountain or in plain.  
 What! 'fore thy fierce attack whene'er an army reels,  
 Must thy ambitious soul press hot upon their heels?  
 Thy task it is to rout them on the battle-ground:  
 No shame to thee if they in flight have safety found.  
 Or thinkest thou perchance that victory is sweet  
 Only when scimitars and necks each other greet?

O justest of the just save in thy deeds to me!  
 Thou art accused and thou, O Sire, must judge the plea.

Look, I implore thee, well ! Let not thine eye cajoled  
See fat in empty froth, in all that glisters gold !<sup>1</sup>  
What use and profit reaps a mortal of his sight,  
If darkness unto him be indistinct from light ?

My deep poetic art the blind have eyes to see,  
My verses ring in ears as deaf as deaf can be.  
They wander far abroad while I am unaware,  
But men collect them watchfully with toil and care.  
Oft hath my laughing mien prolonged the insulter's sport,  
Until with claw and mouth I cut his rudeness short.  
Ah, when the lion bares his teeth, suspect his guile,  
Nor fancy that the lion shows to you a smile.  
I have slain the man that sought my heart's blood many a  
time,

Riding a noble mare whose back none else may climb,  
Whose hind and fore-legs seem in galloping as one ;  
Nor hand nor foot requireth she to urge her on.  
And O the days when I have swung my fine-edged glaive  
Amidst a sea of death where wave was dashed on wave !  
The desert knows me well, the night, the mounted men,  
The battle and the sword, the paper and the pen !"<sup>2</sup>

Finally an estrangement arose between Mutanabbí and Sayfu 'l-Dawla, in consequence of which he fled to Egypt and attached himself to the Ikhshídite Káfúr. Disappointed in his new patron, a negro who had formerly been a slave, the poet set off for Baghdád, and afterwards visited the court of the Buwayhid 'Aḍudu 'l-Dawla at Shíráz. While travelling through Babylonia he was attacked and slain by brigands in 965 A.D.)

The popularity of Mutanabbí is shown by the numerous commentaries<sup>3</sup> and critical treatises on his *Diwán*. By his countrymen he is generally regarded as one of the greatest of Arabian poets, while not a few would maintain that he ranks

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "Do not imagine fat in one whose (apparent) fat is (really) a tumour."

<sup>2</sup> *Diwán*, ed. by Dieterici, pp. 481-484.

<sup>3</sup> The most esteemed commentary is that of Wáḥidí († 1075 A.D.), which has been published by Fr. Dieterici in his edition of Mutanabbí (Berlin, 1858-1861).



absolutely first. Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arrí, himself an illustrious poet and man of letters, confessed that he had sometimes wished to alter a word here and there in Mutanabbí's verses, but had never been able to think of any improvement. "As to his poetry," says Ibn Khallikán, "it is perfection." European scholars, with the exception of Von Hammer,<sup>1</sup> have been far from sharing this enthusiasm, as may be seen by referring to what has been said on the subject by Reiske,<sup>2</sup> De Sacy,<sup>3</sup> Bohlen,<sup>4</sup> Brockelmann,<sup>5</sup> and others. No doubt, according to our canons of taste, Mutanabbí stands immeasurably below the famous Pre-islamic bards, and in a later age must yield the palm to Abú Nuwás and Abu 'l-'Atáhiya. Lovers of poetry, as the term is understood in Europe, cannot derive much æsthetic pleasure from his writings, but, on the contrary, will be disgusted by the beauties hardly less than by the faults which Arabian critics attribute to him. Admitting, however, that only a born Oriental is able to appreciate Mutanabbí at his full worth, let us try to realise the Oriental point of view and put aside, as far as possible, our preconceptions of what constitutes good poetry and good taste. Fortunately we possess abundant materials for such an attempt in the invaluable work of Tha'álíbí, which has been already mentioned.<sup>6</sup> Tha'álíbí (961-1038 A.D.) was nearly contemporary with Mutanabbí. He began to write his *Yatima* about thirty years after the poet's death, and while he bears witness to

<sup>1</sup> *Motenebbi, der grösste arabische Dichter* (Vienna, 1824).

<sup>2</sup> *Abulfeda Annales Muslemici* (Hafnizæ, 1789, &c.), vol. ii, p. 774. Cf. his notes on Tarafa's *Mu'allaga*, of which he published an edition in 1742.

<sup>3</sup> *Chrestomathie Arabe* (2nd edition), vol. iii, p. 27 sqq. *Journal des Savans*, January, 1825, p. 24 sqq.

<sup>4</sup> *Commentatio de Motenabbio* (Bonn, 1824).

<sup>5</sup> *Geschichte der Arabischen Litteratur* (Weimar, 1898, &c.), vol. i, p. 86.

<sup>6</sup> I have made free use of Dieterici's excellent work entitled *Mutanabbí und Seifuddaula aus der Edelperle des Tsálibí* (Leipzig, 1847), which contains on pp. 49-74 an abstract of Tha'álíbí's criticism in the fifth chapter of the First Part of the *Yatima*.

the unrivalled popularity of the *Diwān* amongst all classes of society, he observes that it was sharply criticised as well as rapturously admired. Tha'ālibī himself claims to hold the balance even. "Now," he says, "I will mention the faults and blemishes which critics have found in the poetry of Mutanabbī; for is there any one whose qualities give entire satisfaction?—

*Kafa 'l-mar'a faqlam an tu'adda ma'āyibuh.*

'Tis the height of merit in a man that his faults can be numbered.

Then I will proceed to speak of his beauties and to set forth in due order the original and incomparable characteristics of his style.

The radiant stars with beauty strike our eyes  
Because midst gloom opaque we see them rise."

It was deemed of capital importance that the opening couplet (*maṣṭaʿ*) of a poem should be perfect in form and meaning, and that it should not contain anything likely to offend. Tha'ālibī brings forward many instances in which Mutanabbī has violated this rule by using words of bad omen, such as 'sickness' or 'death,' or technical terms of music and arithmetic which only perplex and irritate the hearer instead of winning his sympathy at the outset. He complains also that Mutanabbī's finest thoughts and images are too often followed by low and trivial ones: "he strings pearls and bricks together" (*jama'a bayna 'l-durrati wa-'l-ājurrati*). "While he moulds the most splendid ornament, and threads the loveliest necklace, and weaves the most exquisite stuff of mingled hues, and paces superbly in a garden of roses, suddenly he will throw in a verse or two verses disfigured by far-fetched metaphors, or by obscure language and confused thought, or by extravagant affectation and excessive

profundity, or by unbounded and absurd exaggeration, or by vulgar and commonplace diction, or by pedantry and grotesqueness resulting from the use of unfamiliar words." We need not follow Tha'alibí in his illustration of these and other weaknesses with which he justly reproaches Mutanabbí, since we shall be able to form a better idea of the prevailing taste from those points which he singles out for special praise.

In the first place he calls attention to the poet's skill in handling the customary erotic prelude (*nashb*), and particularly to his brilliant descriptions of Bedouin women, which were celebrated all over the East. As an example of this kind he quotes the following piece, which "is chanted in the *salons* on account of the extreme beauty of its diction, the choiceness of its sentiment, and the perfection of its art":—

"Shame hitherto was wont my tears to stay,  
But now by shame they will no more be stayed,  
So that each bone seems through its skin to sob,  
And every vein to swell the sad cascade.  
She uncovered: pallor veiled her at farewell:  
No veil 'twas, yet her cheeks it cast in shade.  
So seemed they, while tears trickled over them,  
Gold with a double row of pearls inlaid.  
She loosed three sable tresses of her hair,  
And thus of night four nights at once she made;  
But when she lifted to the moon in heaven  
Her face, two moons together I surveyed."<sup>1</sup>)

The critic then enumerates various beautiful and original features of Mutanabbí's style, *e.g.*—

1. His consecutive arrangement of similes in brief symmetrical clauses, thus:—

"She shone forth like a moon, and swayed like a moringa-bough,  
And shed fragrance like ambergris, and gazed like a gazelle."<sup>2</sup>)

<sup>1</sup> Mutanabbí, ed. by Dieterici, p. 182, vv. 3-9, omitting v. 5.



2. The novelty of his comparisons and images, as when he indicates the rapidity with which he returned to his patron and the shortness of his absence in these lines :—

“I was merely an arrow in the air,  
Which falls back, finding no refuge there.”

3. The *laus duplex* or ‘two-sided panegyric’ (*ai-madh al-muwajjah*), which may be compared to a garment having two surfaces of different colours but of equal beauty, as in the following verse addressed to Sayfu ’l-Dawla :—

“Were all the lives thou hast ta’en possessed by thee,  
Immortal thou and blest the world would be !”

Here Sayfu ’l-Dawla is doubly eulogised by the mention of his triumphs over his enemies as well as of the joy which all his friends felt in the continuance of his life and fortune.

4. His manner of extolling his royal patron as though he were speaking to a friend and comrade, whereby he raises himself from the position of an ordinary encomiast to the same level with kings.

5. His division of ideas into parallel sentences :—

“We were in gladness, the Greeks in fear,  
The land in bustle, the sea in confusion.”

From this summary of Tha‘alibi’s criticism the reader will easily perceive that the chief merits of poetry were then considered to lie in elegant expression, subtle combination of words, fanciful imagery, witty conceits, and a striking use of rhetorical figures. Such, indeed, are the views which prevail to this day throughout the whole Muhammadan world, and it is unreasonable to denounce them as false simply because they do not square with ours. Who shall decide when nations disagree? If Englishmen rightly claim to be the best judges of Shakespeare, and Italians of Dante, the almost unanimous

verdict of Mutanabbî's countrymen is surely not less authoritative—a verdict which places him at the head of all the poets born or made in Islam. And although the peculiar excellences indicated by Tha'âlibî do not appeal to us, there are few poets that leave so distinct an impression of greatness. One might call Mutanabbî the Victor Hugo of the East, for he has the grand style whether he soars to sublimity or sinks to fustian. In the masculine vigour of his verse, in the sweep and splendour of his rhetoric, in the luxuriance and reckless audacity of his imagination we recognise qualities which inspired the oft-quoted lines of the elegist:—

"Him did his mighty soul supply  
With regal pomp and majesty.  
A Prophet by his *diction* known;  
But in the *ideas*, all must own,  
His miracles were clearly shown."<sup>1</sup>

One feature of Mutanabbî's poetry that is praised by Tha'âlibî should not be left unnoticed, namely, his fondness for sententious moralising on topics connected with human life; wherefore Reiske has compared him to Euripides. He is allowed to be a master of that proverbial philosophy in which Orientals delight and which is characteristic of the modern school beginning with Abu 'l-'Atâhiya, though some of the ancients had already cultivated it with success (*cf.* the verses of Zuhayr, p. 118 *supra*). The following examples are among those cited by Bohlen (*op. cit.*, p. 86 sqq.):—

"When an old man cries 'Ugh!' he is not tired  
Of life, but only tired of feebleness."<sup>2</sup>

"He that hath been familiar with the world  
A long while, in his eye 'tis turned about  
Until he sees how false what looked so fair."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The author of these lines, which are quoted by Ibn Khallikân in his article on Mutanabbî, is Abu 'l-Qâsim b. al-Muẓaffar b. 'Alî al-Ṭabasî.

<sup>2</sup> Mutanabbî, ed. by Dieterici, p. 581, v. 27.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 472, v. 5.

"The sage's mind still makes him miserable  
In his most happy fortune, but poor fools  
Find happiness even in their misery."<sup>1</sup>

The sceptical and pessimistic tendencies of an age of social decay and political anarchy are unmistakably revealed in the writings of the poet, philosopher, and man of letters, Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arri, who was born in 973 A.D. at Ma'arratu 'l-Nu'mán, a Syrian town situated about twenty miles south of Aleppo on the caravan road to Damascus. While yet a child he had an attack of small-pox, resulting in partial and eventually in complete blindness, but this calamity, fatal as it might seem to literary ambition, was repaired if not entirely made good by his stupendous powers of memory. After being educated at home under the eye of his father, a man of some culture and a meritorious poet, he proceeded to Aleppo, which was still a flourishing centre of the humanities, though it could no longer boast such a brilliant array of poets and scholars as were attracted thither in the palmy days of Sayfu 'l-Dawla. Probably Abu 'l-'Alá did not enter upon the career of a professional encomiast, to which he seems at first to have inclined: he declares in the preface to his *Saqṭu 'l-Zand* that he never eulogised any one with the hope of gaining a reward, but only for the sake of practising his skill. On the termination of his 'Wanderjahre' he returned in 993 A.D. to Ma'arra, where he spent the next fifteen years of his life, with no income beyond a small pension of thirty dínárs (which he shared with a servant), lecturing on Arabic poetry, antiquities, and philology, the subjects to which his youthful studies had been chiefly devoted. During this period his reputation was steadily increasing, and at last, to adapt what Boswell wrote of Dr. Johnson on a similar occasion, "he thought of trying his fortune in Baghdád, the great field of genius and

<sup>1</sup> Mutanabbí, ed. by Dieterici, p. 341, v. 8.



exertion, where talents of every kind had the fullest scope and the highest encouragement." Professor Margoliouth in the Introduction to his edition of Abu 'l-'Alá's correspondence supplies many interesting particulars of the literary society at Baghdád in which the poet moved. "As in ancient Rome, so in the great Muḥammadan cities public recitation was the mode whereby men of letters made their talents known to their contemporaries. From very early times it had been customary to employ the mosques for this purpose; and in Abu 'l-'Alá's time poems were recited in the mosque of al-Manṣūr in Baghdád. Better accommodation was, however, provided by the Mæcenates who took a pride in collecting savants and *littérateurs* in their houses."<sup>1</sup> Such a Mæcenas was the Sharf al-Raḍī, himself a celebrated poet, who founded the Academy called by his name in imitation, probably, of that founded some years before by Abū Naṣr Sábūr b. Ardashīr, Vizier to the Buwayhid prince, Bahá'u 'l-Dawla. Here Abu 'l-'Alá met a number of distinguished writers and scholars who welcomed him as one of themselves. The capital of Islam, thronged with travellers and merchants from all parts of the East, harbouring followers of every creed and sect—Christians and Jews, Buddhists and Zoroastrians, Šābians and Šūfis, Materialists and Rationalists—must have seemed to the provincial almost like a new world. It is certain that Abu 'l-'Alá, a curious observer who set no bounds to his thirst for knowledge, would make the best use of such an opportunity. The religious and philosophical ideas with which he was now first thrown into contact gradually took root and ripened. His stay in Baghdád, though it lasted only a year and a half (1009-1010 A.D.), decided the whole bent of his mind for the future.

Whether his return to Ma'arra was hastened, as he says, by want of means and the illness of his mother, whom he tenderly loved, or by an indignity which he suffered at the

His visit to  
Baghdád.

<sup>1</sup> Margoliouth's Introduction to the *Letters of Abu 'l-'Alá*, p. xxii.

hands of an influential patron,<sup>2</sup> immediately on his arrival he shut himself in his house, adopted a vegetarian diet and other ascetic practices, and passed the rest of his long life in comparative seclusion :—

"Methinks, I am thrice imprisoned—ask not me  
Of news that need no telling—  
By loss of sight, confinement to my house,  
And this vile body for my spirit's dwelling."<sup>3</sup>

We can only conjecture the motives which brought about this sudden change of habits and disposition. No doubt his mother's death affected him deeply, and he may have been disappointed by his failure to obtain a permanent footing in the capital. It is not surprising that the blind and lonely man, looking back on his faded youth, should have felt weary of the world and its ways, and found in melancholy contemplation of earthly vanities ever fresh matter for the application and development of these philosophical ideas which, as we have seen, were probably suggested to him by his recent experiences. While in the collection of early poems, entitled *Saqtu 'l-Zand* or 'The Spark of the Fire-stick' and mainly composed before his visit to Baghdád, he still treads the customary path of his predecessors,<sup>3</sup> his poems written after that time and generally known as the *Luzúmiyyât*<sup>4</sup> arrest attention by their boldness and originality as well as by the sombre and earnest tone which pervades them. This, indeed, is not the view of most Oriental critics, who dislike the poet's irreverence and fail to appreciate the fact that he stood considerably in advance of his age; but in Europe he has received full justice and perhaps higher

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. xxvii seq.

<sup>3</sup> *Luzúmiyyât* (Cairo, 1891), vol. i, p. 201.

<sup>4</sup> *I.e.*, his predecessors of the modern school. Like Mutanabbí, he ridicules the conventional types (*asdlīb*) in which the old poetry is cast. Cf. Goldziher, *Abhand. zur Arab. Philologie*, Part I, p. 146 seq.

<sup>5</sup> The proper title is *Luzúmu md lá yalzam*, referring to a technical difficulty which the poet unnecessarily imposed on himself with regard to the rhyme.



praise than he deserves. Reiske describes him as 'Arabice callentissimum, vasti, subtilis, sublimis et audacis ingenii';<sup>1</sup> Von Hammer, who ranks him as a poet with Abú Tammám, Buhturí, and Mutanabbí, also mentions him honourably as a philosopher;<sup>2</sup> and finally Von Kremer, who made an exhaustive study of the *Luzlmiyyát* and examined their contents in a masterly essay,<sup>3</sup> discovered in Abu 'l-'Alá, one of the greatest moralists of all time whose profound genius anticipated much that is commonly attributed to the so-called modern spirit of enlightenment. Here Von Kremer's enthusiasm may have carried him too far; for the poet, as Professor Margoliouth says, was unconscious of the value of his suggestions, unable to follow them out, and unable to adhere to them consistently. Although he builded better than he knew, the constructive side of his philosophy was overshadowed by the negative and destructive side, so that his pure and lofty morality leaves but a faint impression which soon dies away in louder, continually recurring voices of doubt and despair.

Abu 'l-'Alá is a firm monotheist, but his belief in God amounted, as it would seem, to little beyond a conviction that all things are governed by inexorable Fate, whose mysteries none may fathom and from whose omnipotence there is no escape. He denies the Resurrection of the dead, *e.g.*:—

"We laugh, but inept is our laughter;  
We should weep and weep sore,  
Who are shattered like glass, and thereafter  
Re-moulded no more!"<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Abulfedæ Annales Muslemici*, ed. by Adler (1789-1794), vol. iii, p. 677.

<sup>2</sup> *Literaturgesch. der Araber*, vol. vi, p. 900 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> *Sitzungsberichte der Philosophisch-Historischen Classe der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften*, vol. cxvii, 6th Abhandlung (Vienna, 1889). Select passages admirably rendered by Von Kremer into German verse will be found in the *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 29, pp. 304-312; vol. 30, pp. 40-52; vol. 31, pp. 471-483; vol. 38, pp. 499-529.

<sup>4</sup> *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 38, p. 507; Margoliouth, *op. cit.*, p. 131, l. 15 of the Arabic text.



Since Death is the ultimate goal of mankind, the sage will pray to be delivered as speedily as possible from the miseries of life and refuse to inflict upon others what, by no fault of his own, he is doomed to suffer :—

"Amends are richly due from sire to son :  
What if thy children rule o'er cities great ?  
That eminence estranges them the more  
From thee, and causes them to wax in hate,  
Beholding one who cast them into Life's  
Dark labyrinth whence no wit can extricate."<sup>1</sup>

[There are many passages to the same effect, showing that Abu 'l-'Alá regarded procreation as a sin and universal annihilation as the best hope for humanity.] He acted in accordance with his opinions, for he never married, and he is said to have desired that the following verse should be inscribed on his grave :—

"This wrong was by my father done  
To me, but ne'er by me to one."<sup>2</sup>

Hating the present life and weary of its burdens, yet seeing no happier prospect than that of return to non-existence, Abu 'l-'Alá can scarcely have disguised from himself what he might shrink openly to avow—that he was at heart, not indeed an atheist, but wholly incredulous of any Divine revelation. Religion, as he conceives it, is a product of the human mind, in which men believe through force of habit and education, never stopping to consider whether it is true.

"Sometimes you may find a man skilful in his trade, perfect in sagacity and in the use of arguments, but when he comes to religion he is found obstinate, so does he follow the old groove. Piety is implanted in human nature ; it is deemed a sure refuge.

<sup>1</sup> *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 29, p. 308.

<sup>2</sup> Margoliouth, *op. cit.*, p. 133 of the Arabic text.

To the growing child that which falls from his elders' lips is a lesson that abides with him all his life. Monks in their cloisters and devotees in the mosques accept their creed just as a story is handed down from him who tells it, without distinguishing between a true interpreter and a false. If one of these had found his kin among the Magians, he would have declared himself a Magian, or among the Šábians, he would have become nearly or quite like *them*.<sup>1</sup>

Religion, then, is "a fable invented by the ancients," worthless except to those unscrupulous persons who prey upon human folly and superstition. Islam is neither better nor worse than any other creed:—

"Hanífs are stumbling,\* Christians all astray,  
Jews wildered, Magians far on error's way.  
We mortals are composed of two great schools—  
Enlightened knaves or else religious fools."<sup>2</sup>

Not only does the poet emphatically reject the proud claim of Islam to possess a monopoly of truth, but he attacks most of its dogmas in detail. As to the Koran, Abu 'l-'Alá could not altogether refrain from doubting if it was really the Word of God, but he thought so well of the style that he accepted the challenge flung down by Muḥammad and produced a rival work (*al-Fuṣṣíl wa-'l-Gháyát*), which appears to have been a somewhat frivolous parody of the sacred volume, though in the author's judgment its inferiority was simply due to the fact that it was not yet polished by the tongues of four centuries or readers. Another work which must have sorely offended orthodox Muḥammadans is the *Risálatu 'l-Ghufrán* (Epistle or Forgiveness).<sup>4</sup> Here the Paradise of the Faithful becomes

<sup>1</sup> This passage occurs in Abu 'l-'Alá's *Risálatu 'l-Ghufrán* (see *infra*), *J.R.A.S.* for 1902, p. 351. Cf. the verses translated by Von Kremer in his essay on Abu 'l-'Alá, p. 23.

<sup>2</sup> For the term 'Haníf' see p. 149 *supra*. Here it is synonymous with 'Muslim.'

<sup>3</sup> *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 38, p. 513.

<sup>4</sup> This work, of which only two copies exist in Europe—one at Constantinople and another in my collection—has been described and partially translated in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1900, pp. 637-720, and for 1902, pp. 75-101, 337-362, and 813-847.

a glorified salon tenanted by various heathen poets who have been forgiven—hence the title—and received among the Blest. This idea is carried out with much ingenuity and in a spirit of audacious burlesque that reminds us of Lucian. The poets are presented in a series of imaginary conversations with a certain Shaykh 'Alí b. Manşúr, to whom the work is addressed, reciting and explaining their verses, quarrelling with one another, and generally behaving as literary Bohemians. The second part contains a number of anecdotes relating to the *zindiqs* or freethinkers of Islam interspersed with quotations from their poetry and reflections on the nature of their belief, which Abu 'l-'Alá condemns while expressing a pious hope that they are not so black as they paint themselves. At this time it may have suited him—he was over sixty—to assume the attitude of charitable orthodoxy. Like so many wise men of the East, he practised dissimulation as a fine art—

"I lift my voice to utter lies absurd,

But when I speak the truth, my hushed tones scarce are heard."\*

In the *Luzlmiyyát*, however, he often unmask. Thus he describes as idolatrous relics the two Pillars of the Ka'ba and the Black Stone, venerated by every Moslem, and calls the Pilgrimage itself 'a heathen's journey' (*riḥlatu jāhiliyya*). The following sentiments do him honour, but they would have been rank heresy at Mecca :—

"Praise God and pray,

Walk seventy times, not seven, the Temple round—  
And impious remain !

Devout is he alone who, when he may

Feast his desires, is found

With courage to abstain."\* ]

\* Margoliouth, *op. cit.*, p. 132, last line of the Arabic text.

\* *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 31, p. 483.



It is needless to give further instances of the poet's contempt for the Muḥammadan articles of faith. Considering that he assailed persons as well as principles, and lashed with bitter invective the powerful class of the *'Ulamá*, the clerical and legal representatives of Islam, we may wonder that the accusation of heresy brought against him was never pushed home and had no serious consequences. The question was warmly argued on both sides, and though Abu 'l-'Alá was pronounced by the majority to be a freethinker and materialist, he did not lack defenders who quoted chapter and verse to prove that he was nothing of the kind. It must be remembered that his works contain no philosophical system; that his opinions have to be gathered from the ideas which he scatters incoherently, and for the most part in guarded language, through a long succession of rhymes; and that this task, already arduous enough, is complicated by the not inrequent occurrence of sentiments which are blamelessly orthodox and entirely contradictory to the rest. A brilliant writer, familiar with Eastern ways of thinking, has observed that in general the conscience of an Asiatic is composed of the following ingredients: (1) an almost bare religious designation; (2) a more or less lively belief in certain doctrines of the creed which he professes; (3) a resolute opposition to many of its doctrines, even if they should be the most essential; (4) a fund of ideas relating to completely alien theories, which occupies more or less room; (5) a constant tendency to get rid of these ideas and theories and to replace the old by new.<sup>1</sup> Such phenomena will account for a great deal of logical inconsistency, but we should beware of invoking them too confidently in this case. Abu 'l-'Alá with his keen intellect and unfanatical temperament was not the man to let himself be mystified. Still lamer is the explanation offered by some Muḥammadan critics, that his thoughts were decided by the

<sup>1</sup> De Gobineau, *Les religions et les philosophies dans l'Asie centrale*, p. 11 seq.

necessities of the difficult metre in which he wrote. It is conceivable that he may sometimes have doubted his own doubts and given Islam the benefit, but Von Kremer's conclusion is probably near the truth, namely, that where the poet speaks as a good Moslem, his phrases if they are not purely conventional are introduced of set purpose to foil his pious antagonists or to throw them off the scent. Although he was not without religion in the larger sense or the word, unprejudiced students of the later poems must recognise that from the orthodox standpoint he was justly branded as an infidel. The following translations will serve to illustrate the negative side of his philosophy :—

[ "Falsehood hath so corrupted all the world  
That wrangling sects each other's gospel chide;  
But were not hate Man's natural element,  
Churches and mosques had risen side by side." ]

"What is Religion? A maid kept close that no eye may view  
her;  
The price of her wedding-gifts and dowry baffles the wooer.  
Of all the goodly doctrine that I from the pulpit heard  
My heart has never accepted so much as a single word!"\* ]

"The pillars of this earth are four,  
Which lend to human life a base;  
God shaped two vessels, Time and Space,  
The world and all its folk to store.

That which Time holds, in ignorance  
It holds—why vent on it our spite?  
Man is no cave-bound eremite,  
But still an eager spy on Chance

He trembles to be laid asleep,  
Tho' worn and old and weary grown.  
We laugh and weep by Fate alone,  
Time moves us not to laugh or weep;

\* *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 31, p. 477.

\* *Ibid.*, vol. 29, p. 311.

Yet we accuse it innocent,  
Which, could it speak, might us accuse,  
Our best and worst, at will to choose,  
United in a sinful bent.<sup>1</sup>

"The stars' conjunction comes, divinely sent,  
And lo, the veil o'er every creed is rent.  
No realm is founded that escapes decay,  
The firmest structure soon dissolves away."<sup>2</sup>  
With sadness deep a thoughtful mind must scan  
Religion made to serve the pelf of Man.  
Fear thine own children: sparks at random flung  
Consume the very tinder whence they sprung.  
Evil are all men; I distinguish not  
That part or this: the race entire I blot.  
Trust none, however near akin, tho' he  
A perfect sense of honour show to thee,  
Thy self is the worst foe to be withstood:  
Be on thy guard in hours of solitude.

\* \* \* \*

Desire a venerable shaykh to cite  
Reason for his doctrine, he is gravelled quite.  
What! shall I ripen ere a leaf is seen?  
The tree bears only when 'tis clad in green.<sup>3</sup>

"How have I provoked your enmity?  
Christ or Muhammad, 'tis one to me.  
No rays of dawn our path illumine,  
We are sunk together in ceaseless gloom.  
Can blind perceptions lead aright,  
Or blear eyes ever have clear sight?  
Well may a body racked with pain  
Envy mouldering bones in vain;  
Yet comes a day when the weary sword  
Reposes, to its sheath restored.

<sup>1</sup> *Z.D.M.G.* vol. 38, p. 522.

<sup>2</sup> According to De Goeje, *Mémoires sur les Carmathes du Bahraïn*, p. 197, n. 1, these lines refer to a prophecy made by the Carmathians that the conjunction of Saturn and Jupiter, which took place in 1047 A.D. would herald the final triumph of the Fātimids over the Abbāsids.

<sup>3</sup> *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 38, p. 504.



Ah, who to me a frame will give  
As clod or stone insensitive?—  
For when spirit is joined to flesh, the pair  
Anguish of mortal sickness share.  
O Wind, be still, if wind thy name,  
O Flame, die out, if thou art flame!"

Pessimist and sceptic as he was, Abu 'l-'Alá denies more than he affirms, but although he rejected the dogmas of positive religion, he did not fall into utter unbelief; for he found within himself a moral law to which he could not refuse obedience.

"Take Reason for thy guide and do what she  
Approves, the best of counsellors in sooth.  
Accept no law the Pentateuch lays down:  
Not there is what thou seekest—the plain truth."

He insists repeatedly that virtue is its own reward.

"Oh, purge the good thou dost from hope of recompense  
Or profit, as if thou wert one that sells his wares."

His creed is that of a philosopher and ascetic. Slay no living creature, he says; better spare a flea than give alms. Yet he prefers active piety, active humanity, to fasting and prayer. "The gist of his moral teaching is to inculcate as the highest and holiest duty a conscientious fulfilment of one's obligations with equal warmth and affection towards all living beings."<sup>4</sup>

Abu 'l-'Alá died in 1057 A.D., at the age of eighty-four. About ten years before this time, the Persian poet and traveller, Násir-i Khusraw, passed through Ma'arra on his way to Egypt. He describes Abu 'l-'Alá as the chief man in the town, very rich, revered by the inhabitants, and surrounded by more than two hundred students who came from all parts to attend his lectures on literature and

<sup>2</sup> *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 31, p. 474.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, i, 312.

<sup>2</sup> *Luzúmiyyât* (Cairo, 1891), i, 394.

<sup>4</sup> Von Kremer, *op. cit.*, p. 38.

poetry.<sup>1</sup> We may set this trustworthy notice against the doleful account which Abu 'l-'Alá gives of himself in his letters and other works. If not among the greatest Muḥammadan poets, he is undoubtedly one of the most original and attractive. After Mutanabbí, even after Abu 'l-'Atáhiya, he must appear strangely modern to the European reader. It is astonishing to reflect that a spirit so unconventional, so free from dogmatic prejudice, so rational in spite of his pessimism and deeply religious notwithstanding his attacks on revealed religion, should have ended his life in a Syrian country-town some years before the battle of Senlac. Although he did not meddle with politics and held aloof from every sect, he could truly say of himself, "I am the son of my time" (*ghadawtu 'bna waqtī*).<sup>2</sup> His poems leave no aspect of the age untouched, and present a vivid picture of degeneracy and corruption, in which tyrannous rulers, venal judges, hypocritical and unscrupulous theologians, swindling astrologers, roving swarms of dervishes and godless Carmathians occupy a prominent place.<sup>3</sup>

Although the reader may think that too much space has been already devoted to poetry, I will venture by way of concluding the subject to mention very briefly a few well-known names which cannot be altogether omitted from a work of this kind.

Abú Tammám (Ḥabíb b. Aws) and Buḥturí, both of whom flourished in the ninth century, were distinguished court poets of the same type as Mutanabbí, but their reputation rests more securely on the anthologies which they compiled under the title of *Ḥamása* (see p. 129 seq.).

Abú Tammám  
and Buḥturí.

<sup>1</sup> *Safar-náma*, ed. by Schefer, p. 10 seq. = pp. 35-36 of the translation.

<sup>2</sup> *Luzúmiyyát*, ii, 280. The phrase does not mean "I am the child of my age," but "I live in the present," forgetful of the past and careless what the future may bring.

<sup>3</sup> See Von Kremer, *op. cit.*, p. 46 seq.

Abu 'l-'Abbás 'Abdu'lláh, the son of the Caliph al-Mu'tazz, was a versatile poet and man of letters, who showed his originality by the works which he produced in two novel styles of composition. It has often been remarked that the Arabs have no great epos like the Iliad or the Persian *Sháhname*, but only prose narratives which, though sometimes epical in tone, are better described as historical romances. Ibnu 'l-Mu'tazz could not supply the deficiency. He wrote, however, in praise of his cousin, the Caliph Mu'taḍid, a metrical epic in miniature, commencing with a graphic delineation of the wretched state to which the Empire had been reduced by the rapacity and tyranny of the Turkish mercenaries. He composed also, besides an anthology of Bacchanalian pieces, the first important work on Poetics (*Kitābu 'l-Badī'*). A sad destiny was in store for this accomplished prince. On the death of the Caliph Muqtarī he was called to the throne, but a few hours after his accession he was overpowered by the partisans of Muqtadir, who strangled him as soon as they discovered his hiding-place. Picturing the scene, one thinks almost inevitably of Nero's dying words, *Qualis artifex pereo!*

The mystical poetry of the Arabs is far inferior, as a whole, to that of the Persians. Fervour and passion it has in the highest degree, but it lacks range and substance, not to speak of imaginative and speculative power. 'Umar Ibnu 'l-Fāriḍ, though he is undoubtedly the poet of Arabian mysticism, cannot sustain a comparison with his great Persian contemporary, Jalālu'l-Dīn Rūmī († 1273 A.D.); he surpasses him only in the intense glow and exquisite beauty of his diction. It will be convenient to reserve a further account of Ibnu 'l-Fāriḍ for the next chapter, where we shall discuss the development of Ṣūfism during this period.

Finally two writers claim attention who owe their reputa-

'Umar Ibnu  
'l-Fāriḍ  
(1181-1235 A.D.).



tion to single poems—a by no means rare phenomenon in the history of Arabic literature. One of these universally celebrated odes is the *Lāmiyyatu 'l-'Ajam* (the ode rhyming in *l* of the non-Arabs) composed in the year 1111 A.D. by Ṭughrā'i; the other is the *Burda* (Mantle Ode) of Būṣīrī, which I take the liberty of mentioning in this chapter, although its author died some forty years after the Mongol Invasion.

Ḥasan b. 'Alī al-Ṭughrā'i was of Persian descent and a native of Iṣfahān.<sup>1</sup> He held the offices of *kātib* (secretary) and *munshī* or *ṭughrā'i* (chancellor) under the great Seljūq Sultans, Malikshāh and Muḥammad, and afterwards became Vizier to the Seljūqid prince Ghiyāthu 'l-Dīn Mas'ūd<sup>2</sup> in Mosul. He derived the title by which he is generally known from the royal signature (*ṭughrā*) which it was his duty to indite on all State papers over the initial *Bismillāh*. The *Lāmiyyatu 'l-'Ajam* is so called with reference to Shanfarā's renowned poem, the *Lāmiyyatu 'l-'Arab* (see p. 79 seq.), which rhymes in the same letter; otherwise the two odes have only this in common,<sup>3</sup> that whereas Shanfarā depicts the hardships of an outlaw's life in the desert, Ṭughrā'i, writing in Baghdād, laments the evil times on which he has fallen, and complains that younger rivals, base and servile men, are preferred to him, while he is left friendless and neglected in his old age.

The *Qaṣīdatu 'l-Burda* (Mantle Ode) of al-Būṣīrī<sup>4</sup> is a

<sup>1</sup> See the article on Ṭughrā'i in Ibn Khallikān, De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 462.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, vol. iii, p. 355.

<sup>3</sup> The spirit of fortitude and patience (*ḥamḍa*) is exhibited by both poets, but in a very different manner. Shanfarā describes a man of heroic nature. Ṭughrā'i wraps himself in his virtue and moralises like a Muḥammadan Horace. Ṣafadī, however, says in his commentary on Ṭughrā'i's ode (I translate from a MS. copy in my possession): "It is named *Lāmiyyatu 'l-'Ajam* by way of comparing it with the *Lāmiyyatu 'l-'Arab*, because it resembles the latter in its wise sentences and maxims."

<sup>4</sup> *I.e.*, the native of Abūṣīr (Būṣīr), a village in Egypt.

hymn in praise of the Prophet. Its author was born in Egypt in 1212 A.D. We know scarcely anything concerning his life, which, as he himself declares, was passed in writing poetry and in paying court to the great<sup>1</sup>; but his biographers tell us that he supported himself by copying manuscripts, and that he was a disciple of the eminent Ṣūfī, Abu 'l-Abbās Aḥmad al-Marsī. It is said that he composed the *Burda* while suffering from a stroke which paralysed one half of his body. After praying God to heal him, he began to recite the poem. Presently he fell asleep and dreamed that he saw the Prophet, who touched his palsied side and threw his mantle (*burda*) over him.<sup>2</sup> "Then," said al-Buṣīrī, "I awoke and found myself able to rise." However this may be, the Mantle Ode is held in extraordinary veneration by Muḥammadans. Its verses are often learned by heart and inscribed in golden letters on the walls of public buildings; and not only is the whole poem regarded as a charm against evil, but some peculiar magical power is supposed to reside in each verse separately. Although its poetical merit is no more than respectable, the *Burda* may be read with pleasure on account of its smooth and elegant style, and with interest as setting forth in brief compass the mediæval legend of the Prophet—a legend full of prodigies and miracles in which the historical figure of Muḥammad is glorified almost beyond recognition.

Rhymed prose (*saj'*) long retained the religious associations which it possessed in Pre-islamic times and which were consecrated, for all Moslems, by its use in the Koran. About the middle of the ninth century it began to appear

<sup>1</sup> The *Burda*, ed. by C. A. Ralfs (Vienna, 1860), verse 140; *La Borda* traduite et commentée par René Basset (Paris, 1894), verse 151.

<sup>2</sup> This appears to be a reminiscence of the fact that Muḥammad gave his own mantle as a gift to Ka'b b. Zuhayr, when that poet recited his famous ode, *Bānat Su'ūd* (see p. 127 *supra*).



in the public sermons (*khutab*, sing. *khutba*) of the Caliphs and their viceroys, and it was still further developed by professional preachers, like Ibn Nubáta († 984 A.D.), and by official secretaries, like Ibráhm b. Hilál al-Šábl († 994 A.D.). Henceforth rhyme becomes a distinctive and almost indispensable feature of rhetorical prose.

Rhymed prose.

The credit of inventing, or at any rate of making popular, a new and remarkable form of composition in this style belongs to al-Hamadhání († 1007 A.D.), on whom posterity conferred the title *Badi'u 'l-Zamán*, i.e., 'the Wonder or the Age.' Born in Hamadhán (Ecbatana), he left his native town as a young man and travelled through the greater part of Persia, living by his wits and astonishing all whom he met by his talent for improvisation. His *Maqámát* may be called a romance or literary Bohemianism. In the *maqáma* we find some approach to the dramatic style, which has never been cultivated by the Semites.<sup>1</sup> Hamadhání imagined as his hero a witty, unscrupulous vagabond journeying from place to place and supporting himself by the presents which his impromptu displays of rhetoric, poetry, and learning seldom failed to draw from an admiring audience. The second character is the *ráwí* or narrator, "who should be continually meeting with the other, should relate his adventures, and repeat his excellent compositions."<sup>2</sup> The *Maqámát* of Hamadhání

Badi'u 'l-Zamán  
al-Hamadhání  
(† 1007 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> *Maqáma* (plural, *maqámát*) is properly 'a place of standing'; hence, an assembly where people stand listening to the speaker, and in particular, an assembly for literary discussion. At an early period reports of such conversations and discussions received the name of *maqámát* (see Brockelmann, *Gesch. der Arab. Litteratur*, vol. i, p. 94). The word in its literary sense is usually translated by 'assembly,' or by the French '*séance*.'

<sup>2</sup> *The Assemblies of al-Hariri*, translated from the Arabic, with an introduction and notes by T. Chenery (1867), vol. i, p. 19. This excellent work contains a fund of information on diverse matters connected with Arabian history and literature. Owing to the author's death it was left unfinished, but a second volume (including *Assemblies* 27-50) by F. Steingass appeared in 1898.



became the model for this kind of writing, and the types which he created survive unaltered in the more elaborate work of his successors. Each *maqáma* forms an independent whole, so that the complete series may be regarded as a novel consisting of detached episodes in the hero's life, a medley of prose and verse in which the story is nothing, the style everything.

Less original than Badí'u 'l-Zamán, but far beyond him in variety of learning and copiousness of language, Abú Muḥammad al-Qásim al-Ḥarírí of Baṣra produced in his *Maqámát* a masterpiece which for eight centuries "has been esteemed as, next to the Koran, the chief treasure of the Arabic tongue." In the Preface to his work he says that the composition of *maqámát* was suggested to him by "one whose suggestion is a command and whom it is a pleasure to obey." This was the distinguished Persian statesman, Anúshirwán b. Khálid,<sup>1</sup> who afterwards served as Vizier under the Caliph Mustarshid Billáh (1118-1135 A.D.) and Sultán Mas'úd, the Seljúq (1133-1152 A.D.); but at the time when he made Ḥarírí's acquaintance he was living in retirement at Baṣra and devoting himself to literary studies. Ḥarírí begged to be excused on the score that his abilities were unequal to the task, "for the lame steed cannot run like the strong courser."<sup>2</sup> Finally, however, he yielded to the request of Anúshirwán, and, to quote his own words—

"I composed, in spite of hindrances that I suffered  
From dullness of capacity and dimness of intellect,  
And dryness of imagination and distressing anxieties,  
Fifty *Maqámát*, which contain serious language and lightsome,

<sup>1</sup> A full account of his career will be found in the Preface to Houtsma's *Recueil de textes relatifs à l'histoire des Seldjoucides*, vol. ii, p. 11 sqq. Cf. Browne's *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. ii, p. 360.

<sup>2</sup> This is a graceful, but probably insincere, tribute to the superior genius of Hamadhání.

And combine refinement with dignity of style,  
 And brilliancies with jewels of eloquence,  
 And beauties of literature with its rarities,  
 Beside verses of the Koran wherewith I adorned them,  
 And choice metaphors, and Arab proverbs that I interspersed,  
 And literary elegancies and grammatical riddles,  
 And decisions based on the (double) meaning of words,  
 And original discourses and highly-wrought orations,  
 And affecting exhortations as well as entertaining jests:  
 The whole of which I have indited as by the tongue of Abū  
     Zayd of Sarūj,  
 The part of narrator being assigned to Harith son of Hammām  
     of Baṣra."<sup>1</sup>

Ḥarīrī then proceeds to argue that his *Maqāmāt* are not mere frivolous stories such as strict Moslems are bound to reprobate in accordance with a well-known passage of the Koran referring to Naḍr b. Ḥārith, who mortally offended the Prophet by amusing the Quraysh with the old Persian legends of Rustam and Isfandiyār (Koran, xxxi, 5-6): "*There is one that buyeth idle tales that he may seduce men from the way of God, without knowledge, and make it a laughing-stock: these shall suffer a shameful punishment. And when Our signs are read to him, he turneth his back in disdain as though he heard them not, as though there were in his ears a deafness: give him joy of a grievous punishment!*" Ḥarīrī insists that the *Assemblies* have a moral purpose. The ignorant and malicious, he says, will probably condemn his work, but intelligent readers will perceive, if they lay prejudice aside, that it is as useful and instructive as the fables of beasts, &c.,<sup>2</sup> to which no one has ever objected. That his fears of hostile criticism were not altogether groundless is shown by the

<sup>1</sup> The above passage is taken, with some modification, from the version of Ḥarīrī published in 1850 by Theodore Preston, Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, who was afterwards Lord Almoner's Professor of Arabic (1855-1871).

<sup>2</sup> Moslems had long been familiar with the fables of Bidpai, which were translated from the Pehlevi into Arabic by Ibnu 'l-Muqaffa' († circa 760 A.D.).



following remarks of the author of the popular history entitled *al-Fakhri* († circa 1300 A.D.). This writer, after claiming that his own book is more useful than the *Ḥamāsa* of Abū Tammām, continues:—

“And, again, it is more profitable than the *Maqāmāt* on which men have set their hearts, and which they eagerly commit to memory; because the reader derives no benefit from *Maqāmāt* except familiarity with elegant composition and knowledge of the rules of verse and prose. Undoubtedly they contain maxims and ingenious devices and experiences; but all this has a debasing effect on the mind, for it is founded on begging and sponging and disgraceful scheming to acquire a few paltry pence. Therefore, if they do good in one direction, they do harm in another; and this point has been noticed by some critics of the *Maqāmāt* of Ḥarīrī and Badi’u ’l-Zamān.”<sup>1</sup>

Before pronouncing on the justice of this censure, we must consider for a moment the character of Abū Zayd, the hero of Ḥarīrī’s work, whose adventures are related by a certain Ḥārith b. Hammām, under which name the author is supposed to signify himself.<sup>2</sup> According to the general tradition, Ḥarīrī was one day seated with a number of savants in the mosque of the Banū Ḥarām at Baṣra, when an old man entered, footsore and travel-stained. On being asked who he was and whence he came, he answered that his name of honour was Abū Zayd and that he came from Sarūj.<sup>3</sup> He described in eloquent and moving terms how his native town had been plundered by the Greeks, who made his daughter a captive and drove him forth to exile and poverty. Ḥarīrī was so struck with his wonderful powers of improvisation that on the same evening he began to compose the *Maqāma of the Banū Ḥarām*,<sup>3</sup> where Abū Zayd

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Fakhri*, ed. by Derenbourg, p. 18, l. 4 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> A town in Mesopotamia, not far from Edessa. It was taken by the Crusaders in 1101 A.D. (Abu ’l-Fidā, ed. by Reiske, vol. iii, p. 332).

<sup>3</sup> The 48th *Maqāma* of the series as finally arranged.



is introduced in his invariable character: "a crafty old man, full of genius and learning, unscrupulous of the artifices which he uses to effect his purpose, reckless in spending in forbidden indulgences the money he has obtained by his wit or deceit, but with veins of true feeling in him, and ever yielding to unfeigned emotion when he remembers his devastated home and his captive child."<sup>1</sup>) If an immoral tendency has been attributed to the *Assemblies* of Ḥarīrī it is because the author does not conceal his admiration for this unprincipled and thoroughly disreputable scamp. Abū Zayd, indeed, is made so fascinating that we can easily pardon his knaveries for the sake of the pearls of wit and wisdom which he scatters in splendid profusion—excellent discourses, edifying sermons, and plaintive lamentations mingled with rollicking ditties and ribald jests. Modern readers are not likely to agree with the historian quoted above, but although they may deem his criticism illiberal, they can hardly deny that it has some justification.

Ḥarīrī's rhymed prose might be freely imitated in English, but the difficulty of rendering it in rhyme with tolerable fidelity has caused me to abandon the attempt to produce a version of one of the *Assemblies* in the original form.<sup>2</sup> I will translate instead three poems which are put into the mouth of Abū Zayd. The first is a tender elegiac strain recalling far-off days of youth and happiness in his native land:—

"Ghassán is my noble kindred, Sarúj is my land of birth,  
Where I dwelt in a lofty mansion of sunlike glory and worth,  
A Paradise for its sweetness and beauty and pleasant mirth!

<sup>1</sup> Chenery, *op. cit.*, p. 23.

<sup>2</sup> This has been done with extraordinary skill by the German poet, Friedrich Rückert (*Die Verwandlungen des Abu Seid von Serug*, 2nd ed. 1837), whose work, however, is not in any sense a translation.

And oh, the life that I led there abounding in all delight !  
 I trailed my robe on its meadows, while Time flew a careless  
 flight,  
 Elate in the flower of manhood, no pleasure veiled from my  
 sight.

Now, if woe could kill, I had died of the troubles that haunt  
 me here,  
 Or could past joy ever be ransomed, my heart's blood had not  
 been dear,  
 Since death is better than living a brute's life year after year,

Subdued to scorn as a lion whom base hyenas torment.  
 But Luck is to blame, else no one had failed of his due  
 ascent :  
 If she were straight, the conditions of men would never be  
 bent."\*

The scene of the eleventh *Assembly* is laid in Sáwa, a city lying midway between Hamadhán (Ecbatana) and Rayy (Rhages). "Ĥáarith, in a fit of religious zeal, betakes himself to the public burial ground, for the purpose of contemplation. He finds a funeral in progress, and when it is over an old man, with his face muffled in a cloak, takes his stand on a hillock, and pours forth a discourse on the certainty of death and judgment. . . . He then rises into poetry and declaims a piece which is one of the noblest productions of Arabic literature. In lofty morality, in religious fervour, in beauty of language, in power and grace of metre, this magnificent hymn is unsurpassed."<sup>2</sup>

"Pretending sense in vain, how long, O light of brain, wilt thou  
 heap sin and bane, and compass error's span ?

Thy conscious guilt avow ! The white hairs on thy brow  
 admonish thee, and thou hast ears unstopt, O man !

\* A literal translation of these verses, which occur in the sixth *Assembly*, is given by Chénery, *op. cit.*, p. 138.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 163.

Death's call dost thou not hear? Rings not his voice full clear? Of parting hast no fear, to make thee sad and wise?

How long sunk in a sea of sloth and vanity wilt thou play heedlessly, as though Death spared his prize?

Till when, far wandering from virtue, wilt thou cling to evil ways that bring together vice in brief?

For thy Lord's anger shame thou hast none, but let maim o'ertake thy cherished aim, then feel'st thou burning grief.

Thou hail'st with eager joy the coin of yellow die, but if a bier pass by, feigned is thy sorry face;

Perverse and callous wight! thou scornest counsel right to follow the false light of treachery and disgrace.

Thy pleasure thou dost crave, to sordid gain a slave, forgetting the dark grave and what remains of dole;

Were thy true weal descried, thy lust would not misguide nor thou be terrified by words that should console.

Not tears, blood shall thine eyes pour at the great Assize, when thou hast no allies, no kinsman thee to save;

Straiter thy tomb shall be than needle's cavity: deep, deep thy plunge I see as diver's 'neath the wave.

There shall thy limbs be laid, a feast for worms arrayed, till utterly decayed are wood and bones withal,

Nor may thy soul repel that ordeal horrible, when o'er the Bridge of Hell she must escape or fall.

Astray shall leaders go, and mighty men be low, and sages shall cry, 'Woe like this was never yet.'

Then haste, my thoughtless friend, what thou hast marred to mend, for life draws near its end, and still thou art in the net.

Trust not in fortune, nay, though she be soft and gay; for she will spit one day her venom, if thou dote;

Abate thy haughty pride! lo, Death is at thy side, fastening, whate'er betide, his fingers on thy throat.

When prosperous, refrain from arrogant disdain, nor give thy tongue the rein: a modest tongue is best.

Comfort the child of bale and listen to his tale: repair thine actions frail, and be for ever blest.

Feather the nest once more of those whose little store has vanished: ne'er deplore the loss nor miser be;

With meanness bravely cope, and teach thine hand to ope, and spurn the misanthrope, and make thy bounty free.



Lay up provision fair and leave what brings thee care : for  
sea the ship prepare and dread the rising storm.

This, friend, is what I preach expressed in lucid speech. Good  
luck to all and each who with my creed conform !"

In the next *Maqâma*—that of Damascus—we find Abû  
Zayd, gaily attired, amidst casks and vats of wine, carousing  
and listening to the music of lutes and singing—

"I ride and I ride through the waste far and wide, and I fling  
away pride to be gay as the swallow ;  
Stem the torrent's fierce speed, tame the mettlesome steed,  
that wherever I lead Youth and Pleasure may follow.  
I bid gravity pack, and I strip bare my back lest liquor I lack  
when the goblet is lifted :  
Did I never incline to the quaffing of wine, I had ne'er been  
with fine wit and eloquence gifted.  
Is it wonderful, pray, that an old man should stay in a well-  
stored seray by a cask overflowing ?  
Wine strengthens the knees, physics every disease, and from  
sorrow it frees, the oblivion-bestowing !  
Oh, the purest of joys is to live sans disguise unconstrained  
by the ties of a grave reputation,  
And the sweetest of love that the lover can prove is when  
fear and hope move him to utter his passion.  
Thy love then proclaim, quench the smouldering flame, for  
'twill spark out thy shame and betray thee to laughter :  
Heal the wounds of thine heart and assuage thou the smart  
by the cups that impart a delight men seek after ;  
While to hand thee the bowl damsels wait who cajole and  
enravis the soul with eyes tenderly glancing,  
And singers whose throats pour such high-mounting notes,  
when the melody floats, iron rocks would be dancing !  
Obey not the fool who forbids thee to pull beauty's rose when  
in full bloom thou'rt free to possess it ;  
Pursue thine end still, tho' it seem past thy skill : let them say  
what they will, take thy pleasure and bless it !  
Get thee gone from thy sire, if he thwart thy desire ; spread  
thy nets nor enquire what the nets are receiving ;  
But be true to a friend, shun the miser and spend, ways of  
charity wend, be unwearied in giving.  
He that knocks enters straight at the Merciful's gate, so repent  
or e'er Fate call thee forth from the living !"

The reader may judge from these extracts whether the *Assemblies* of Ḥarīrī are so deficient in matter as some critics have imagined. But, of course, the celebrity of the work is mainly due to its consummate literary form—a point on which the Arabs have always bestowed singular attention. Ḥarīrī himself was a subtle grammarian, living in Baṣra, the home of philological science;<sup>1</sup> and though he wrote to please rather than to instruct, he seems to have resolved that his work should illustrate every beauty and nicety of which the Arabic language is capable. We Europeans can see as little merit or taste in the verbal conceits—equivoques, paronomasias, assonances, alliterations, &c.—with which his pages are thickly studded, as in *tours de force* of composition which may be read either forwards or backwards, or which consist entirely of pointed or of unpointed letters; but our impatience of such things should not blind us to the fact that they are intimately connected with the genius and traditions of the Arabic tongue,<sup>2</sup> and therefore stand on a very different footing from those euphuistic extravagances which appear, for example, in English literature of the Elizabethan age. By Ḥarīrī's countrymen the *Maqāmāt* are prized as an almost unique monument of their language, antiquities, and culture. One of the author's contemporaries, the famous Zamakhsharī, has expressed the general verdict in pithy verse—

"I swear by God and His marvels,  
By the pilgrims' rite and their shrine:  
Ḥarīrī's *Assemblies* are worthy  
To be written in gold each line."

---

<sup>1</sup> Two grammatical treatises by Ḥarīrī have come down to us. In one of these, entitled *Durratu 'l-Ghawwāḍ* ('The Pearl of the Diver') and edited by Thorbecke (Leipzig, 1871), he discusses the solecisms which people of education are wont to commit.

<sup>2</sup> See Chenery, *op. cit.*, pp. 83-97.



Concerning some of the specifically religious sciences, such as Dogmatic Theology and Mysticism, we shall have more to say in the following chapter, while as to the science of Apostolic Tradition (*Ḥadīth*) we must refer the reader to what has been already said. All that can be attempted here is to take a passing notice of the most eminent writers and the most celebrated works of this epoch in the field of religion.

The place of honour belongs to the Imām Málík b. Anas of Medína, whose *Muwatta'* is the first great corpus of Muḥammadan Law. He was a partisan of the 'Alids, and was flogged by command of the Caliph Maṣṣūr in consequence of his declaration that he did not consider the oath of allegiance to the 'Abbásid dynasty to have any binding effect.

The two principal authorities for Apostolic Tradition are Bukhárí († 870 A.D.) and Muslim († 875 A.D.), authors of the collections entitled *Ṣaḥīḥ*. Compilations of a narrower range, embracing only those traditions which bear on the *Sunna* or custom of the Prophet, are the *Sunan* of Abú Dáwūd al-Sijistání († 889 A.D.), the *Jámi'* of Abú 'Isá Muḥammad al-Tirmidhí († 892 A.D.), the *Sunan* of al-Nasá'í († 915 A.D.), and the *Sunan* of Ibn Mája († 896 A.D.). These, together with the *Ṣaḥīḥs* of Bukhárí and Muslim, form the Six Canonical Books (*al-kutub al-sitta*), which are held in the highest veneration. Amongst the innumerable works of a similar kind produced in this period it will suffice to mention the *Maṣābiḥu 'l-Sunna* by al-Baghawí († circa 1120 A.D.). A later adaptation called *Mishkátu 'l-Maṣābiḥ* has been often printed, and is still extremely popular.

Omitting the great manuals of Moslem Jurisprudence, which are without literary interest in the larger sense, we may pause for a moment at the name of al-Máwardí, a Sháfi'ite lawyer, who wrote a well-known treatise on politics—



the *Kitābu 'l-Aḥkām al-Sulṭāniyya*, or 'Book of the Principles of Government.' His standpoint is purely theoretical.

Māwardī  
(† 1058 A.D.).

Thus he lays down that the Caliph should be elected by the body of learned, pious, and orthodox divines, and that the people must leave the administration of the State to the Caliph absolutely, as being its representative. Māwardī lived at Baghdād during the period of Buwayhid ascendancy, a period described by Sir W. Muir in the following words: "The pages of our annalists are now almost entirely occupied with the political events of the day, in the guidance of which the Caliphs had seldom any concern, and which therefore need no mention here."<sup>1</sup> Under the 'Abbāsid dynasty the mystical doctrines of the Šūfis were systematised and expounded. Some of the most important Arabic works of reference on Šūfiism are the *Qūtu 'l-Qulūb*, or

Arabic authorities on Šūfiism.

'Food of Hearts,' by Abū Ṭālib al-Makkī († 996 A.D.); the *Kitābu 'l-Ta'arruf li-Madhhabi ahli 'l-Taṭawwuf*, or 'Book of Enquiry as to the Religion of the Šūfis,' by Muḥammad b. Ishāq al-Kalābādhī († circa 1000 A.D.); the *Ṭabaqātu 'l-Šūfiyya*, or 'Classes of the Šūfis,' by Abū 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Sulamī († 1021 A.D.); the *Ḥilyatu 'l-Awliyā*, or 'Adornment of the Saints,' by Abū Nu'aym al-Iṣfahānī († 1038 A.D.); the *Risālatu 'l-Qushayriyya*, or 'Qushayrite Tract,' by Abū 'l-Qāsim al-Qushayrī of Naysābūr († 1074 A.D.); the *Iḥyā'u 'Ulūm al-Dīn*, or 'Revivification of the Religious Sciences,' by Ghazālī († 1111 A.D.); and the *'Awḍiyyu 'l-Ma'ḍrif*, or 'Bounties of Knowledge,' by Shihābu 'l-Dīn Abū Ḥafṣ 'Umar al-Suhrawardī († 1234 A.D.)—a list which might easily be extended. In Dogmatic

Ghazālī  
(† 1111 A.D.).

Theology there is none to compare with Abū Ḥāmid al-Ghazālī, surnamed 'the Proof of Islam' (*Ḥujjatu 'l-Islām*). He is a figure of such towering importance that some detailed account of his life and opinions must be inserted in a book like this,

<sup>1</sup> *The Caliphate, its Rise, Decline, and Fall*, p. 573.

which professes to illustrate the history of Muḥammadan thought. Here, however, we shall only give an outline of his biography in order to pave the way for discussion of his intellectual achievements and his far-reaching influence.

"In this year (505 A.H. = 1111 A.D.) died the Imám, who was the Ornament of the Faith and the Proof of Islam, Abú Ḥámid Muḥammad . . . of Tús, the Sháfi'ite. His death took place on the 14th of the Latter Jumádá at Tábarán, a village near Tús. He was then fifty-five years of age. Ghazzálí is equivalent to Ghazzál, like 'Atṭári (for 'Atṭár) and Khabbázi (for Khabbáz), in the dialect of the people of Khurásán\*: so it is stated by the author of the 'Ibar.' Al-Isnawí says in his *Tabaqát*†:—Ghazzálí is an Imám by whose name breasts are dilated and souls are revived, and in whose literary productions the ink-horn exults and the paper quivers with joy; and at the hearing thereof voices are hushed and heads are bowed. He was born at Tús in the year 450 A.H. = 1058–1059 A.D. His father used to spin wool (*yaghziḷu 'l-ṣúf*) and sell it in his shop. On his death-bed he committed his two sons, Ghazzálí himself and his brother Abmad, to the care of a pious Shúfi, who taught them writing and educated them until the money left him by their father was all spent. 'Then,' says Ghazzálí, 'we went to the college to learn divinity (*fiqh*) so that we might gain our livelihood.' After studying there for some time he journeyed to Abú Naṣr al-Isma'íli in Jurján, then to the Imámu 'l-Ḥaramayn‡ at Naysábúr, under whom he studied with such assiduity that he became the best scholastic of his contemporaries (*ṣára anṣara ahli zamánihi*), and he lectured *er*

\* Another example is 'Umar al-Khayyámí for 'Umar Khayyám. The spelling Ghazzálí (with a double z) was in general use when Ibn Khallikán wrote his Biographical Dictionary in 1256 A.D. (see De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 80), but according to Sam'ání the name is derived from Ghazála, a village near Tús; in which case Ghazálí is the correct form of the *nisba*. I have adopted 'Ghazálí' in deference to Sam'ání's authority, but those who write 'Ghazzálí' can at least claim that they err in very good company.

† Shamsu 'l-Dín al-Dhahabí († 1348 A.D.).

‡ 'Abdu 'l-Raḥím al-Isnawí († 1370 A.D.), author of a biographical work on the Sháfi'ite doctors. See Brockelmann, *Gesch. der Arab. Litt.*, vol. ii, p. 90.

§ Abu 'l-Ma'álí al-JuwaynÍ, a famous theologian of Naysábúr († 1085 A.D.), received this title, which means 'Imám of the Two Sanctuaries,' because he taught for several years at Mecca and Medina.



*cathedrâ* in his master's lifetime, and wrote books. . . . And on the death of his master he set out for the Camp<sup>1</sup> and presented himself to the Niẓāmu 'l-Mulk, whose assembly was the alighting-place of the learned and the destination of the leading divines and savants; and there, as was due to his high merit, he enjoyed the society of the principal doctors, and disputed with his opponents and rebutted them in spite of their eminence. [So the Niẓāmu 'l-Mulk inclined to him and showed him great honour, and his name flew through the world. Then, in the year '84 (1091 A.D.) he was called to a professorship in the Niẓāmiyya College at Baghdād, where a splendid reception awaited him.] His words reached far and wide, and his influence soon exceeded that of the Emīrs and Viziers. But at last his lofty spirit recoiled from worldly vanities. He gave himself up to devotion and dervishhood, and set out, in the year '88 (1095 A.D.), for the Hijāz.\* On his return from the Pilgrimage he journeyed to Damascus and made his abode there for ten years in the minaret of the Congregational Mosque, and composed several works, of which the *Ihyā* is said to be one. Then, after visiting Jerusalem and Alexandria, he returned to his home at Tūs, intent on writing and worship and constant recitation of the Koran and dissemination of knowledge and avoidance of intercourse with men. The Vizier Fakhru 'l-Mulk,<sup>3</sup> son of the Niẓāmu 'l-Mulk, came to see him, and urged him by every means in his power to accept a professorship in the Niẓāmiyya College at Naysābūr.<sup>4</sup> Ghazzālī consented, but after teaching for a time, resigned the appointment and returned to end his days in his native town."

Besides his *magnum opus*, the already-mentioned *Ihyā*, in which he expounds theology and the ethics of religion from the standpoint of the moderate Šūfī school, Ghazzālī wrote a great number of important works, such as the *Munqidh mina 'l-Ḍalāl*, or 'Deliverer from Error,' a sort of 'Apologia pro Vitâ Suâ'; the *Ḳimiyâ'u 'l-Sa'âdat*, or 'Alchemy of Happiness,' which was

His principal  
works.

<sup>1</sup> I.e., the camp-court of the Seljûq monarch Malikshâh, son of Alp Arslân.

<sup>2</sup> According to his own account in the *Munqidh*, Ghazzālī on leaving Baghdād went first to Damascus, then to Jerusalem, and then to Mecca. The statement that he remained ten years at Damascus is inaccurate.

<sup>3</sup> The MS. has Fakhru 'l-Dīn.

<sup>4</sup> Ghazzālī's return to public life took place in 1106 A.D.



originally written in Persian; and the *Taháfutu 'l-Falásifa*, or 'Collapse of the Philosophers,' a polemical treatise designed to refute and destroy the doctrines of Moslem philosophy. This work called forth a rejoinder from the celebrated Ibn Rushd (Averroes), who died at Morocco in 1198-1199 A.D.

Here we may notice two valuable works on the history of religion, both of which are generally known as *Kitábu 'l-Milal wa-'l-Nihál*,<sup>1</sup> that is to say, 'The Book of Religions and Sects,' by Ibn Ḥazm of Cordova († 1064 A.D.) and Abu 'l-Faṭḥ al-Shahrastání († 1153 A.D.). Ibn Ḥazm we shall meet with again in the chapter which deals specially with the history and literature of the Spanish Moslems. Shahrastání, as he is named after his birthplace, belonged to the opposite extremity of the Muḥammadan Empire, being a native of Khurásán, the huge Eastern province bounded by the Oxus. Cureton, who edited the Arabic text of the *Kitábu 'l-Milal wa-'l-Nihál* (London, 1842-1846), gives the following outline of its contents:—

After five introductory chapters, the author proceeds to arrange his book into two great divisions; the one comprising the Religious, the other the Philosophical Sects. The former of these contains an account of the various Sects of the followers of Muḥammad, and likewise of those to whom a true revelation had been made (the *Ahlu 'l-Kitáb*, or 'People of the Scripture'), that is, Jews and Christians; and of those who had a doubtful or pretended revelation (*man laḥú shubḥatu 'l-Kitáb*), such as the Magi and the Manichæans. The second division comprises an account of the philosophical opinions of the Sabæans (Śábians), which are mainly set forth in a very interesting dialogue between a Sabæan and an orthodox Muḥammadan; of the tenets of various Greek Philosophers and some of the Fathers of the Christian Church; and also of the Muḥammadan doctors, more particularly of the system of Ibn Síná or Avicenna, which the author explains at considerable length. The work terminates with an account of the tenets of the Arabs before the commencement of Islamism, and of the religion of the people of India.

<sup>1</sup> The correct title of Ibn Ḥazm's work is uncertain. In the Cairo ed. (1321 A.H.) it is called *Kitábu 'l-Fiṣal fi 'l-Milal wa 'l-Aḥwá wa 'l-Nihál*.

The science of grammar took its rise in the cities of Baṣra and Kúfa, which were founded not long after Muḥammad's death, and which remained the chief centres of Arabian life and thought outside the peninsula until they were eclipsed by the great 'Abbásid capital. In both towns the population consisted of Bedouin

Grammar and philology.

Arabs, belonging to different tribes and speaking many different dialects, while there were also thousands of artisans and clients who spoke Persian as their mother-tongue, so that the classical idiom was peculiarly exposed to corrupting influences. If the pride and delight of the Arabs in their noble language led them to regard the maintenance of its purity as a national duty, they were equally bound by their religious convictions to take decisive measures for ensuring the correct pronunciation and interpretation of that "miracle of Divine eloquence," the Arabic Koran. To this latter motive the invention of grammar is traditionally ascribed. The inventor is related to have been Abu 'l-Aswad al-Du'illí, who died at Baṣra during the Umayyad period. "Abu 'l-Aswad, having been asked where he had acquired the science of grammar, answered that

The invention of Arabic grammar.

he had learned the rudiments of it from 'Alí b. Abi Ṭálib. It is said that he never made known any of the principles which he had received from 'Alí till Ziyád<sup>1</sup> sent to him the order to compose something which might serve as a guide to the public and enable them to understand the Book of God. He at first asked to be excused, but on hearing a man recite the following passage out of the Koran, *anna 'lláha bar' minna 'l-mushrikina wa-rasúluhu*,<sup>2</sup> which last word the reader pronounced *rasúlihi*, he exclaimed, 'I never thought that things would have come to this.' He then returned to Ziyád and

<sup>1</sup> See p. 195 *supra*.

<sup>2</sup> Kor. ix, 3. The translation runs ("This is a declaration) that God is clear of the idolaters, and His Apostle likewise." With the reading *rasúlihi* it means that God is clear of the idolaters and also of His Apostle.



said, 'I will do what you ordered.'"<sup>1</sup> The Baṣra school of grammarians which Abu 'l-Aswad is said to have founded is older than the rival school of Kúfa and surpassed it in fame. Its most prominent representatives were The philologists of Baṣra. Abú 'Amr b. al-'Alá († 770 A.D.), a diligent and profound student of the Koran, who on one occasion burned all his collections of old poetry, &c., and abandoned himself to devotion; Khalíl b. Aḥmad, inventor of the Arabic system of metres and author of the first Arabic lexicon (the *Kitābu 'l-'Ayn*), which, however, he did not live to complete; the Persian Sībawayhi, whose Grammar, entitled 'The Book of Sībawayhi,' is universally celebrated; the great Humanists al-Aṣma'í and Abú 'Ubayda who flourished under Hārún al-Rashid; al-Mubarrad, about a century later, whose best-known work, the *Kāmil*, has been edited by Professor William Wright; his contemporary al-Sukkarí, a renowned collector and critic of old Arabian poetry; and Ibn Durayd († 934 A.D.), a distinguished philologist, genealogist, and poet, who received a pension from the Caliph Muqtadir in recognition of his services on behalf of science, and whose principal works, in addition to the famous ode known as the *Maqṣūra*, are a voluminous lexicon (*al-Jamhara fi 'l-Luḡa*) and a treatise on the genealogies of the Arab tribes (*Kitābu 'l-Ishtiqāq*).

Against these names the school of Kúfa can set al-Kisá'í, a Persian savant who was entrusted by Hārún al-Rashid with the education of his sons Amín and The philologists of Kúfa. Ma'mún; al-Farrá († 822 A.D.), a pupil and compatriot of al-Kisá'í; al-Mufaḍḍal al-Ḍabbí, a favourite of the Caliph Maḥdī, for whom he compiled an excellent anthology of Pre-islamic poems (*al-Mufaḍḍaliyyāt*), which has already been noticed<sup>2</sup>; Ibnu 'l-Sikkít, whose outspoken partiality for the House of 'Alí b. Abí Tālib caused him to be brutally trampled to death by the Turkish

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikan, De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 663.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 128.



guards of the tyrant Mutawakkil (858 A.D.); and Tha'lab, head of the Kúfa school in his time († 904 A.D.), of whose rivalry with al-Mubarrad many stories are told. A contemporary, Abú Bakr b. Abi 'l-Azhar, said in one of his poems:—

“Turn to Mubarrad or to Tha'lab, thou  
That seek'st with learning to improve thy mind!  
Be not a fool, like mangy camel shunned:  
All human knowledge thou with them wilt find.  
The science of the whole world, East and West,  
In these two single doctors is combined.”<sup>1</sup>

Reference has been made in a former chapter to some of the earliest Humanists, *e.g.*, Ḥammád al-Ráwiya († 776 A.D.) and his slightly younger contemporary, Khalaf al-Aḥmar, to their inestimable labours in rescuing the old poetry from oblivion, and to the unscrupulous methods which they sometimes employed.<sup>2</sup> Among their successors, who flourished in the Golden Age of Islam, under the first 'Abbásids, the place of honour belongs to Abú 'Ubayda († about 825 A.D.) and al-Aṣma'ī († about 830 A.D.).

Abú 'Ubayda Ma'mar b. al-Muthanná was of Jewish-Persian race, and maintained in his writings the cause of the Shu'úbites against the Arab national party, for which reason he is erroneously described as a Khárijite.<sup>3</sup> The rare expressions of the Arabic language, the history of the Arabs and their conflicts were his predominant study—“neither in heathen nor Muḥammadan times,” he once boasted, “have two horses met in battle but that I possess information about them and their riders”<sup>4</sup>; yet, with all his learning, he was not always able to recite a verse without mangling it; even in reading the Koran, with the book

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikán, No. 608; De Slane's translation, vol. iii, p. 31.

<sup>2</sup> See pp. 131-134, *supra*.

<sup>3</sup> Goldziher, *Muhammedanische Studien*, Part I, p. 197.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 195.

before his eyes, he made mistakes.\* Our knowledge of Arabian antiquity is drawn, to a large extent, from the traditions collected by him which are preserved in the *Kitābu 'l-Aghāni* and elsewhere. He left nearly two hundred works, of which a long but incomplete catalogue occurs in the *Fihrist* (pp. 53-54). Abū 'Ubayda was summoned by the Caliph Hārūn al-Rashīd to Baghdād, where he became acquainted

with Aşma'ī. There was a standing feud between them, due in part to difference of character<sup>2</sup>

and in part to personal jealousies. 'Abdu 'l-Malik b. Qurayb al-Aşma'ī was, like his rival, a native of Baṣra. Although he may have been excelled by others of his contemporaries in certain branches of learning, none exhibited in such fine perfection the varied literary culture which at that time was so highly prized and so richly rewarded. Whereas Abū 'Ubayda was dreaded for his sharp tongue and sarcastic humour, Aşma'ī had all the accomplishments and graces of a courtier. Abū Nuwās, the first great poet of the 'Abbāsīd period, said that Aşma'ī was a nightingale to charm those who heard him with his melodies. In court circles, where the talk often turned on philological matters, he was a favourite guest, and the Caliph would send for him to decide any abstruse question connected with literature which no one present was able to answer. Of his numerous writings on linguistic and antiquarian themes several have come down to us, e.g., 'The Book of Camels' (*Kitābu 'l-Ibil*), 'The Book of Horses' (*Kitābu 'l-Khayl*), and 'The Book of the Making of Man' (*Kitābu Khalqī 'l-Insān*), a treatise which shows that the Arabs of the desert had acquired a considerable knowledge of human anatomy. His work as editor, commentator, and critic of Arabian poetry forms (it has been said) the basis of nearly all that has since been written on the subject.

\* Ibn Qutayba, *Kitābu 'l-Ma'ārif*, p. 269.

<sup>2</sup> While Abū 'Ubayda was notorious for his free-thinking proclivities, Aşma'ī had a strong vein of pietism. See Goldziher, *loc. cit.*, p. 199 and *Abh. zur Arab. Philologie*, Part I, p. 136.



Belles-lettres (*Adab*) and literary history are represented by a whole series of valuable works. Only a few of the most important can be mentioned here, and that in a very summary manner. The Persian Rûzbih, better known as 'Abdullâh Ibnu 'l-Muqaffa', who was put to death by order of the Caliph Manşûr, made several translations from the Pehlevî or Middle-Persian literature into Arabic. We possess a specimen of his powers in the famous *Book of Kalila and Dimna*, which is ultimately derived from the Sanscrit *Fables of Bidpai*. The Arabic version is one of the oldest prose works in that language, and is justly regarded as a model of elegant style, though it has not the pungent brevity which marks true Arabian eloquence. Ibn

Ibn 'l-Muqaffa'  
(† circa 760 A.D.).

Qutayba, whose family came from Merv, held for a time the office of Cadi at Dînawar, and lived at Baghdâd in the latter half of the ninth century. (We have more than once cited his 'Book of General Knowledge' (*Kitâbu 'l-Ma'ârif*)<sup>1</sup> and his 'Book of Poetry and Poets,' (*Kitâbu 'l-Shi'r wa-'l-Shu'arâ*), and may add here the *Adabu 'l-Kâtib*, or 'Accomplishments of the Secretary,'<sup>2</sup> a manual of stylistic, dealing with orthography, orthoepy, lexicography, and the like; and the *'Uyûnu 'l-Akhhâr*, or 'Choice Histories,'<sup>3</sup> a work in ten chapters, each of which is devoted to a special theme such as Government, War, Nobility, Friendship, Women, &c.

'Amr b. Baḥr al-Jāḥiẓ of Baṣra was a celebrated freethinker, and gave his name to a sect of the Mu'tazilites (*al-Jāḥiẓiyya*).<sup>4</sup> He composed numerous books of an anecdotal and entertaining character. Ibn Khallikān singles out as his finest and most instructive works the *Kitâbu 'l-Hayawân* ('Book of Animals'), and the

Ibn Qutayba  
(† 889 A.D.).

Jāḥiẓ  
(† 869 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> Professor Browne has given a *résumé* of the contents in his *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. i, p. 387 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. by Max Grünert (Leyden, 1900).

<sup>3</sup> Vol. i ed. by C. Brockelmann (Weimar and Strassburg, 1898-1908).

<sup>4</sup> The epithet *jāḥiẓ* means 'goggle-eyed.'



*Kitābu 'l-Bayān wa-'l-Tabyīn* ('Book of Eloquence and Exposition'), which is a popular treatise on rhetoric. It so happens—and the fact is not altogether fortuitous—that extremely valuable contributions to the literary history of the Arabs were made by two writers connected with the

Umayyad House. Ibn 'Abdi Rabbihi of Cordova, who was descended from an enfranchised slave of the Spanish Umayyad Caliph, Hishām b. 'Abd al-Rahmān (788–796 A.D.), has left us a miscellaneous anthology entitled *al-'Iqd al-Farīd*, or 'The Unique Necklace,' which is divided into twenty-five books, each bearing the name of a different gem, and "contains something on every subject." Though Abu 'l-Faraj 'Alī, the

author of the *Kitābu 'l-Aghāni*, was born at Iṣfahān, he was an Arab of the Arabs, being a member of the tribe Quraysh and a lineal descendant of Marwān, the last Umayyad Caliph. (Coming to Baghdād, he bent all his energies to the study of Arabian antiquity, and towards the end of his life found a generous patron in al-Muhallabī, the Vizier of the Buwayhid sovereign, Mu'izzu 'l-Dawla. His minor works are cast in the shade by his great 'Book of Songs.' This may be described as a history of all the Arabian poetry that had been set to music down to the author's time.) It is based on a collection of one hundred melodies which was made for the Caliph Hārūn al-Rashīd, but to these Abu 'l-Faraj has added many others chosen by himself. After giving the words and the airs attached to them, he relates the lives of the poets and musicians by whom they were composed, and takes occasion to introduce a vast quantity of historical traditions and anecdotes, including much ancient and modern verse. It is said that the Ṣāhib Ibn 'Abbād,\* when travelling, used to take thirty camel-loads of books about with him, but on receiving the *Aghāni* he con-

Ibn 'Abdi Rabbihi († 940 A.D.).  
Abu 'l-Faraj al-Iṣfahānī († 967 A.D.).

\* See p. 267.

tented himself with this one book and dispensed with all the rest.\* The chief man of letters of the next generation was

<sup>Tba'álíbi</sup>  
(† 1037 A.D.),

Abú Maṣṣúr al-Tha'álíbi (the Furrier) of Naysábúr. Notwithstanding that most of his works are unscientific compilations, designed to amuse the public rather than to impart solid instruction, his famous anthology of recent and contemporary poets—the *Yatlmatu 'l-Dahr*, or 'Solitaire of the Time'—supplies indubitable proof of his fine scholarship and critical taste. Successive continuations of the *Yatima* were written by al-Bákhazí († 1075 A.D.) in the *Dumyatu 'l-Qaṣr*, or 'Statue of the Palace'; by Abu 'l-Ma'álí al-Ḥazlí († 1172 A.D.) in the *Zinatu 'l-Dahr*, or 'Ornament of the Time'; and by the favourite of Saladin, 'Imádu 'l-Dín al-Kátib al-Iṣṣahání († 1201 A.D.), in the *Kharidatu 'l-Qaṣr*, or 'Virgin Pearl of the Palace.' From the tenth century onward the study of philology proper began to decline, while on the other hand those sciences which formerly grouped themselves round philology now became independent, were cultivated with brilliant success, and in a short time reached their zenith.

The elements of History are found (1) in Pre-islamic traditions and (2) in the *Ḥadīth* of the Prophet, but the idea of historical composition on a grand scale was probably suggested to the Arabs by Persian models such as the Pehleví *Khudáy-náma*, or 'Book of Kings,' which Ibnu 'l-Muqaffá turned into Arabic in the eighth century of our era under the title of *Siyaru Mulúki 'l-'Ajam*, that is, 'The History of the Kings of Persia.'

Under the first head Hishám Ibnu 'l-Kalbí († 819 A.D.) and his father Muḥammad deserve particular mention as painstaking and trustworthy recorders.

Historical traditions relating to the Prophet were put in

\* Ibn Khallikán, De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 250.



writing at an early date (see p. 247). The first biography of Muḥammad (*Ṣiratu Rasūli 'llāh*), compiled by Ibn Ishāq, who died in the reign of Maṣṣūr (768 A.D.), has come down to us only in the recension made by Ibn Hishām († 834 A.D.). This work as well as those of al-Wāqidī († 823 A.D.) and Ibn Sa'd († 845 A.D.) have been already noticed.

Other celebrated historians of the 'Abbāsid period are the following.

Aḥmad b. Yaḥyá al-Balādhurī († 892 A.D.), a Persian, wrote an account of the early Muḥammadan conquests (*Kitābu Futūḥi 'l-Bulḍān*), which has been edited by Balādhurī. De Goeje, and an immense chronicle based on genealogical principles, 'The Book of the Lineages of the Nobles' (*Kitābu Ansābi 'l-Ashraf*), of which two volumes are extant.<sup>1</sup>

Abū Ḥānifa Aḥmad al-Dīnawarī († 895 A.D.) was also of Irānian descent. His 'Book of Long Histories' (*Kitābu 'l-Akḥbār al-Ṭiwāl*) deals largely with the national legend of Persia, and is written throughout from the Persian point of view.

Ibn Wāḍiḥ al-Ya'qūbī, a contemporary of Dīnawarī, produced an excellent compendium of universal history, which is specially valuable because its author, being a follower of the House of 'Alī, has preserved the ancient and unfalsified Shī'ite tradition. His work has been edited in two volumes by Professor Houtsma (Leyden, 1883).

The Annals of Ṭabarī, edited by De Goeje and other European scholars (Leyden, 1879-1898), and the Golden Meadows<sup>2</sup> (*Murūju 'l-Dhahab*) of Maṣ'ūdī, which Pavet de

<sup>1</sup> One of these, the eleventh of the complete work, has been edited by Ahlwardt: *Anonyme Arabische Chronik* (Greifswald, 1883). It covers part of the reign of the Umayyad Caliph, 'Abdu 'l-Malik (685-705 A.D.).

<sup>2</sup> The French title is *Les Prairies d'Or*. Brockelmann, in his shorter



Courteille and Barbier de Meynard published with a French translation (Paris, 1861-1877), have been frequently cited in the foregoing pages; and since these two authors are not only the greatest historians of the Muḥammadan East but also (excepting, possibly, Ibn Khaldún) the most eminent of all who devoted themselves to this branch of Arabic literature, we must endeavour to make the reader more closely acquainted with them.

Abú Ja'far Muḥammad b. Jarír was born in 838-839 A.D. at Ámul in Ṭabaristán, the mountainous province lying along the south coast of the Caspian Sea; whence the name, Ṭabarí, by which he is usually known.<sup>1</sup>

At this time 'Iráq was still the principal focus of Muḥammadan culture, so that a poet could say:—

"I see a man in whom the secretarial dignity is manifest,  
One who displays the brilliant culture of 'Iráq."

Thither the young Ṭabarí came to complete his education. He travelled by way of Rayy to Baghdád, visited other neighbouring towns, and extended his tour to Syria and Egypt. Although his father sent him a yearly allowance, it did not always arrive punctually, and he himself relates that on one occasion he procured bread by selling the sleeves of his shirt. Fortunately, at Baghdád he was introduced to 'Ubaydulláh b. Yahyá, the Vizier of Mutawakkil, who engaged him as tutor for his son. How long he held this post is uncertain, but he was only twenty-three years of age when his patron went out of office. Fifteen years later we find him, penniless once more, in Cairo

*Hist. of Arabic Literature* (Leipzig, 1901), p. 110, states that the correct translation of *Muráju 'l-Dhahab* is 'Goldwäschen.'

<sup>1</sup> Concerning Ṭabarí and his work the reader should consult De Goeje's Introduction (published in the supplementary volume containing the Glossary) to the Leyden edition, and his excellent article on Ṭabarí and early Arab Historians in the *Encyclopædia Britannica*.

<sup>2</sup> Abu 'l-Mahásin, ed. by Juynboll, vol. i, p. 608.

(876-877 A.D.). He soon, however, returned to Baghdād, where he passed the remainder of his life in teaching and writing. Modest, unselfish, and simple in his habits, he diffused his encyclopædic knowledge with an almost superhuman industry. During forty years, it is said, he wrote forty leaves every day. His great works are the *Ta'rikhu 'l-Rusul wa-'l-Muluk*, or 'Annals of the Apostles and the Kings,' and his *Tafsir*, or 'Commentary on the Koran.' Both, even in their present shape, are books of enormous extent, yet it seems likely that both were originally composed on a far larger scale and were abbreviated by the author for general use. His pupils, we are told, flatly refused to read the first editions with him, whereupon he exclaimed: "Enthusiasm for learning is dead!" [The History of Tabarī, from the Creation to the year 302 A.H.=915 A.D., is distinguished by "completeness of detail, accuracy, and the truly stupendous learning of its author that is revealed throughout, and that makes the Annals a vast storehouse of valuable information for the historian as well as for the student of Islam."<sup>1</sup> It is arranged chronologically, the events being tabulated under the year (of the Muḥammadan era) in which they occurred. Moreover, it has a very peculiar form. "Each important fact is related, if possible, by an eye-witness or contemporary, whose account came down through a series of narrators to the author. If he has obtained more than one account of a fact, with more or less important modifications, through several series of narrators, he communicates them all to the reader *in extenso*. Thus we are enabled to consider the facts from more than one point of view, and to acquire a vivid and clear notion of them."<sup>2</sup> According to modern ideas, Tabarī's compilation is not so much a history as a priceless collection of original documents placed side by side without any attempt to construct a critical

<sup>1</sup> *Selection from the Annals of Tabarī*, ed. by M. J. de Goeje (Leyden, 1902), p. xi.

<sup>2</sup> De Goeje's Introduction to Tabarī, p. xxvii.



and continuous narrative.) At first sight one can hardly see the wood for the trees, but on closer study the essential features gradually emerge and stand out in bold relief from amidst the multitude of insignificant circumstances which lend freshness and life to the whole. Ṭabarī suffered the common fate of standard historians. His work was abridged and popularised, the *isnāds* or chains of authorities were suppressed, and the various parallel accounts were combined by subsequent writers into a single version.\* Of the Annals, as it left the author's hands, no entire copy exists anywhere, but many odd volumes are preserved in different parts of the world. The Leyden edition is based on these scattered MSS., which luckily comprise the whole work with the exception of a few not very serious lacunæ.

‘Alī b. Ḥusayn, a native of Baghdād, was called Mas‘ūdī after one of the Prophet's Companions, ‘Abdullāh b. Mas‘ūd, to whom he traced his descent. Although we possess only a small remnant of his voluminous writings, no better proof can be desired of the vast and various erudition which he gathered not from books alone, but likewise from long travel in almost every part of Asia. Among other places, he visited Armenia, India, Ceylon, Zanzibar, and Madagascar, and he appears to have sailed in Chinese waters as well as in the Caspian Sea. “My journey,” he says, “resembles that of the sun, and to me the poet's verse is applicable :—

“We turn our steps toward each different clime,  
Now to the Farthest East, then West once more ;  
Even as the sun, which stays not his advance  
O'er tracts remote that no man durst explore.”\*

---

\* Al-Bal'ami, the Vizier of Manṣūr I, the Sāmānid, made in 963 A.D. a Persian epitome of which a French translation by Dubeux and Zotenberg was published in 1867-1874.

\* *Murūju 'l-Dhahab*, ed. by Barbier de Meynard, vol. i, p. 5 seq.



He spent the latter years of his life chiefly in Syria and Egypt—for he had no settled abode—compiling the great historical works,<sup>1</sup> of which the *Murūju 'l-Dhahab* is an epitome. As regards the motives which urged him to write, Mas'ūdī declares that he wished to follow the example of scholars and sages and to leave behind him a praiseworthy memorial and imperishable monument. He claims to have taken a wider view than his predecessors. ["One who has never quitted his hearth and home, but is content with the knowledge which he can acquire concerning the history of his own part of the world, is not on the same level as one who spends his life in travel and passes his days in restless wanderings, and draws forth all manner of curious and precious information from its hidden mine." <sup>2</sup>]

Mas'ūdī has been named the 'the Herodotus of the Arabs,' and the comparison is not unjust.<sup>3</sup> His work, although it lacks the artistic unity which distinguishes that of the Greek historian, shows the same eager spirit of enquiry, the same open-mindedness and disposition to record without prejudice all the marvellous things that he had heard or seen, the same ripe experience and large outlook on the present as on the past. It is professedly a universal history beginning with the Creation and ending at the Caliphate of Muṭṭī, in 947 A.D., but no description can cover the immense range of topics which are discussed and the innumerable digressions with which the author delights or irritates his readers, as the case may be.<sup>4</sup> Thus, to pick

The *Murūju 'l-Dhahab*.

<sup>1</sup> The *Akhbār al-Zamān* in thirty volumes (one volume is extant at Vienna) and the *Kitāb al-Awsaf*. <sup>2</sup> *Murūju 'l-Dhahab*, p. 9 seq.

<sup>3</sup> It may be noted as a coincidence that Ibn Khaldūn calls Mas'ūdī *imām al-mu'arrikhin*, "an Imām for all the historians," which resembles, though it does not exactly correspond to, "the Father of History."

<sup>4</sup> Mas'ūdī gives a summary of the contents of his historical and religious works in the Preface to the *Tanbih wa-l-Ishrāf*, ed. by De Goeje, p. 2 seq. A translation of this passage by De Sacy will be found in Barbier de Meynard's edition of the *Murūju 'l-Dhahab*, vol. ix, p. 302 seq.

a few examples at random, we find a dissertation on tides (vol. i, p. 244); an account of the *tinnin* or sea-serpent (*ibid.*, p. 267); of pearl-fishing in the Persian Gulf (*ibid.*, p. 328); and of the rhinoceros (*ibid.*, p. 385). Mas'ûdî was a keen student and critic of religious beliefs, on which subject he wrote several books.<sup>1</sup> The *Murûju 'l-Dhahab* supplies many valuable details regarding the Muḥammadan sects, and also regarding the Zoroastrians and Šābians. There is a particularly interesting report of a meeting which took place between Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn, the governor of Egypt (868–877 A.D.), and an aged Copt, who, after giving his views as to the source of the Nile and the construction of the Pyramids, defended his faith (Christianity) on the ground of its manifest errors and contradictions, arguing that its acceptance, in spite of these, by so many peoples and kings was decisive evidence of its truth.<sup>2</sup> Mas'ûdî's account of the Caliphs is chiefly remarkable for the characteristic anecdotes in which it abounds. Instead of putting together a methodical narrative he has thrown off a brilliant but unequal sketch of public affairs and private manners, of social life and literary history. Only considerations of space have prevented me from enriching this volume with not a few pages which are as lively and picturesque as any in Suetonius. His last work, the *Kitābu 'l-Tanbīh wa-'l-Ishrāf* ('Book of Admonition and Recension'),<sup>3</sup> was intended to take a general survey of the field which had been more fully traversed in his previous compositions, and also to supplement them when it seemed necessary.

We must pass over the minor historians and biographers of this period—for example, 'Utbi († 1036 A.D.), whose

<sup>1</sup> See *Murûj*, vol. i, p. 201, and vol. iii, p. 268.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, vol. ii, p. 372 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> De Sacy renders the title by 'Le Livre de l'Indication et de l'Admonition ou l'Indicateur et le Moniteur'; but see De Goeje's edition of the text (Leyden, 1894), p. xxvii.



*Kitāb al-Yamīnī* celebrates the glorious reign of Sultan Mahmūd of Ghazna; Khaṭīb of Baghdād († 1071 A.D.), who composed a history of the eminent men of that city; Imādu 'l-Dīn of Iṣfahān († 1201 A.D.), the biographer of Saladin; Ibnu 'l-Qiftī († 1248 A.D.), born at Qift (Coptos) in Upper Egypt, whose lives of the philosophers and scientists have only come down to us in a compendium entitled *Ta'rikhu 'l-Hukamā*; Ibnu 'l-Jawzī († 1200 A.D.), a prolific writer in almost every branch of literature, and his grandson, Yūsuf († 1257 A.D.)—generally called Sibṭ Ibn al-Jawzī—author of the *Mir'ātu 'l-Zamān*, or 'Mirror of the Time'; Ibn Abī Uṣaybi'a († 1270 A.D.), whose history of physicians, the *Uyūnu 'l-Anbā*, has been edited by A. Müller (1884); and the Christian, Jirjis (George) al-Makīn († 1273 A.D.), compiler of a universal chronicle—named the *Majma' al-Mubārak*—of which the second part, from Muḥammad to the end of the 'Abbāsīd dynasty, was rendered into Latin by Erpenius in 1625.

A special notice, brief though it must be, is due to 'Izzu 'l-Dīn Ibnu 'l-Athīr († 1234 A.D.). He was brought up at Mosul in Mesopotamia, and after finishing his studies in Baghdād, Jerusalem, and Syria, he returned home and devoted himself to reading and literary composition. Ibn Khallikān, who knew him personally, speaks of him in the highest terms both as a man and as a scholar. "His great work, the *Kāmil*,<sup>1</sup> embracing the history of the world from the earliest period to the year 628 of the Hijra (1230–1231 A.D.), merits its reputation as one of the best productions of the kind."<sup>2</sup> Down to the year 302 A.H. the author has merely abridged the Annals of Ṭabarī with occasional additions from other sources.] In

Ibnu 'l-Athīr  
(† 1234 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> The full title is *Kitābu 'l-Kāmil fī 'l-Ta'rikh*, or 'The Perfect Book of Chronicles.' It has been edited by Tornberg in fourteen volumes (Leyden, 1851–1876).

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Khallikān, De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 289.



the first volume he gives a long account of the Pre-islamic battles (*Ayyāmu 'l-'Arab*) which is not found in the present text of Ṭabarī; but De Goeje, as I learn from Professor Bevan, thinks that this section was included in Ṭabarī's original draft and was subsequently struck out. Ibnu 'l-Athīr was deeply versed in the science of Tradition, and his *Usdu 'l-Ghāba* ('Lions of the Jungle') contains biographies of 7,500 Companions of the Prophet.

An immense quantity of information concerning the various countries and peoples of the 'Abbāsid Empire has been preserved for us by the Moslem geographers, who in many cases describe what they actually witnessed and experienced in the course of their travels, although they often help themselves liberally and without acknowledgment from the works of their predecessors. The following list, which does not pretend to be exhaustive, may find a place here.<sup>1</sup>

1. The Persian Ibn Khurdādbih (first half of ninth century) was postmaster in the province of Jibāl, the Media of the ancients. His *Kitābu 'l-Masālik wa-'l-Mamālik* ('Book of the Roads and Countries'), an official guide-book, is the oldest geographical work in Arabic that has come down to us.

2. Abū Ishāq al-Fārisī, a native of Persepolis (Iṣṭakhr)—on this account he is known as Iṣṭakhrī—wrote a book called *Masāliku 'l-Mamālik* ('Routes of the Provinces'), which was afterwards revised and enlarged by Ibn Ḥawqal. Both works belong to the second half of the tenth century and contain "a careful description

<sup>1</sup> An excellent account of the Arab geographers is given by Guy Le Strange in the Introduction to his *Palestine under the Moslems* (London, 1890). De Goeje has edited the works of Ibn Khurdādbih, Iṣṭakhrī, Ibn Ḥawqal, and Muqaddasī in the *Bibliotheca Geographorum Arabicorum* (Leyden, 1870, &c.)

of each province in turn of the Muslim Empire, with the chief cities and notable places."

3. Al-Muqaddasī (or al-Maqdisī), *i.e.*, 'the native of the Holy City', was born at Jerusalem in 946 A.D. In his delightful book entitled *Aḥṣanu 'l-Taqāsīm fī ma'rifati 'l-Aqdām* he has gathered up the fruits of twenty years' travelling through the dominions of the Caliphate.

4. Omitting the Spanish Arabs, Bakrī, Idrīsī, and Ibn Jubayr, all of whom flourished in the eleventh century, we come to the greatest of Moslem geographers, Yāqūt. Yāqūt b. 'Abdallāh (1179-1229 A.D.). A Greek by birth, he was enslaved in his childhood and sold to a merchant of Baghdād. His master gave him a good education and frequently sent him on trading expeditions to the Persian Gulf and elsewhere. After being enfranchised in consequence of a quarrel with his benefactor, he supported himself by copying and selling manuscripts. In 1219-1220 A.D. he encountered the Tartars, who had invaded Khwārizm, and "fled as naked as when he shall be raised from the dust of the grave on the day of the resurrection." Further details of his adventurous life are recorded in the interesting notice by Ibn Khallikān.<sup>1</sup> His great Geographical Dictionary (*Mu'jamu 'l-Buldān*) has been edited in six volumes by Wüstenfeld (Leipzig, 1866), and is described by Mr. Le Strange as "a storehouse of geographical information, the value of which it would be impossible to over-estimate." We possess a useful epitome of it, made about a century later, *viz.*, the *Marāṣidu 'l-Iṭṭilā'*. Among the few other extant works of Yāqūt, attention may be called to the *Mushtarik*—a lexicon of places bearing the same name—and the *Mu'jamu 'l-Udabā'*, or 'Dictionary of Littérateurs,' which has been edited by Professor Margoliouth for the Trustees of the Gibb Memorial Fund.

<sup>1</sup> De Slane's translation, vol. iv, p. 9 sqq.



As regards the philosophical and exact sciences the Moslems naturally derived their ideas and material from Greek culture, which had established itself in Egypt, Syria, and Western Asia since the time of Alexander's conquests. When the Syrian school of Edessa was broken up by ecclesiastical dissensions towards the end of the fifth century of our era, the expelled savants took refuge in Persia at the Sásánian court, and Khusraw Anúshirwán, or Núshirwán (531-578 A.D.)—the same monarch who welcomed the Neo-platonist philosophers banished from Athens by Justinian—founded an Academy at Jundé-shápúr in Khúzistán, where Greek medicine and philosophy continued to be taught down to 'Abbásid days. Another centre of Hellenism was the city of Harrán in Mesopotamia. Its inhabitants, Syrian heathens who generally appear in Muḥammadan history under the name of 'Šábians,' spoke Arabic with facility and contributed in no small degree to the diffusion of Greek wisdom. The work of translation was done almost entirely by Syrians. In the monasteries of Syria and Mesopotamia the writings of Aristotle, Galen, Ptolemy, and other ancient masters were rendered with slavish fidelity, and these Syriac versions were afterwards retranslated into Arabic. A beginning was made under the Umayyads, who cared little for Islam but were by no means indifferent to the claims of literature, art, and science. An Umayyad prince, Khálid b. Yazíd, procured the translation of Greek and Coptic works on alchemy, and himself wrote three treatises on that subject. The accession of the 'Abbásids gave a great impulse to such studies, which found an enlightened patron in the Caliph Maṣṣúr. Works on logic and medicine were translated from the Pehleví by Ibnu 'l-Muqaffá' († about 760 A.D.) and others. It is, however, the splendid reign of Ma'mún (813-833 A.D.) that marks the full vigour of this Oriental Renaissance. Ma'mún was no ordinary man. Like a true Persian, he threw himself heart and soul into

The foreign  
sciences.

Translations  
from the  
Greek.



theological speculations and used the authority of the Caliphate to enforce a liberal standard of orthodoxy. His interest in science was no less ardent. According to a story told in the *Fihrist*,<sup>1</sup> he dreamed that he saw the venerable figure of

Ma'mún's  
encouragement  
of the New  
Learning.

Aristotle seated on a throne, and in consequence of this vision he sent a deputation to the Roman Emperor (Leo the Armenian) to obtain scientific books for translation into Arabic. The Caliph's example was followed by private individuals. Three brothers, Muḥammad, Aḥmad, and Ḥasan, known collectively as the Banú Músá, "drew translators from distant countries by the offer of ample rewards<sup>2</sup> and thus made evident the marvels of science. Geometry, engineering, the movements of the heavenly bodies, music, and astronomy were the principal subjects to which they turned their attention; but these were only a small number of their acquirements."<sup>3</sup> Ma'mún installed them, with Yaḥyá b. Abí Maṣṣūr and other scientists, in the House of Wisdom (*Baytu 'l-Ḥikma*) at Baghdád, an institution which comprised a well-stocked library and an astronomical observatory. Among the celebrated translators of the ninth century, who were themselves conspicuous workers in the new field, we can only mention the Christians Qusṭá b. Lúqá and Hunayn b. Isḥáq, and the Šábian Thábit b. Qurra. It does not fall within the scope of this volume to consider in detail the achievements of the Moslems in science and philosophy. That in some departments they made valuable additions to existing knowledge must certainly be granted, but these discoveries count for little in comparison with the debt which we owe to the Arabs as pioneers of learning and bringers of light to mediæval Europe.<sup>4</sup> Meanwhile it is only

<sup>1</sup> P. 243.

<sup>2</sup> The translators employed by the Banú Músá were paid at the rate of about 500 dinárs a month (*ibid.*, p. 43, l. 18 sqq.).

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 271; Ibn Khallikán, De Slane's translation, vol. iii, p. 315.

<sup>4</sup> A chapter at least would be required in order to set forth adequately the chief material and intellectual benefits which European civilisation

possible to enumerate a few of the most eminent philosophers and scientific men who lived during the 'Abbásid age. The reader will observe that with rare exceptions they were of foreign origin.

The leading spirits in philosophy were:—

1. Ya'qúb b. Ishâq al-Kindí, a descendant of the princely family of Kinda (see p. 42). He was distinguished by his contemporaries with the title *Faylashfu 'l-'Arab*, Kindí. 'The Philosopher of the Arabs.' He flourished in the first half of the ninth century.

2. Abú Naşr al-Fárábl († 950 A.D.), of Turkish race, a native of Fáráb in Transoxania. The later years of his life were passed at Aleppo under the patronage of Fárábl. Sayfu 'l-Dawla. He devoted himself to the study of Aristotle, whom Moslems agree with Dante in regarding as "il maestro di color che sanno."

3. Abú 'Alí Ibn Síná (Avicenna), born of Persian parents at Kharmaythan, near Bukhárá, in the year 980 A.D. As a youth he displayed extraordinary talents, so that "in the sixteenth year of his age physicians of the highest eminence came to read medicine with him and to learn those modes of treatment which he had discovered by his practice." <sup>1</sup> He was no quiet student, like Fárábl, but a pleasure-loving, adventurous man of the world who travelled from court to court, now in favour, now in disgrace, and always writing indefatigably. His system has derived from the Arabs. The reader may consult Von Kremer's *Culturgeschichte des Orients*, vol. ii, chapters 7 and 9; Diercks, *Die Araber im Mittelalter* (Leipzig, 1882); Sédillot, *Histoire générale des Arabes*; Schack, *Poesie und Kunst der Araber in Spanien und Sicilien*; Munk, *Mélanges de Philosophie Juive et Arabe*; De Lacy O'Leary, *Arabic Thought and its Place in History* (1922); and Campbell, *Arabian Medicine and its Influence on the Middle Ages* (1926). A volume entitled *The Legacy of the Islamic World*, ed. by Sir T. W. Arnold and Professor A. Guillaume, is in course of publication.

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikán, De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 440.



of philosophy, in which Aristotelian and Neo-platonic theories are combined with Persian mysticism, was well suited to the popular taste, and in the East it still reigns supreme. His chief works are the *Shifá* (Remedy) on physics, metaphysics, &c., and a great medical encyclopædia entitled the *Qánún* (Canon). Avicenna died in 1037 A.D.

4. The Spanish philosophers, Ibn Bájjá (Avenpace), Ibn Tufayl, and Ibn Rushd (Averroes), all of whom flourished in the twelfth century after Christ.

The most illustrious name beside Avicenna in the history of Arabian medicine is Abú Bakr al-Rázi (Rhazes), a native of Rayy, near Teheran († 923 or 932 A.D.). Jábir b. Hayyán of Tarsus († about 780 A.D.)—the Geber of European writers—won equal renown

Medicine,  
Astronomy,  
and Mathematics.

as an alchemist. Astronomy went hand in hand with astrology. The reader may recognise al-Farghání, Abú Ma'shar of Balkh († 885 A.D.) and al-Battání, a Šábian of Harrán († 929 A.D.), under the names of Alfraganus, Albumaser, and Albategnius, by which they became known in the West. Abú 'Abdalláh al-Khwárizmí, who lived in the Caliphate of Ma'mún, was the first of a long line of mathematicians. In this science, as also in Medicine and Astronomy, we see the influence of India upon Muḥammadan civilisation—an influence, however, which, in so far as it depended on literary sources, was more restricted and infinitely less vital than that of Greece. Only a passing reference can be made to Abú Rayḥán al-Bíróní, a native of Khwárizm (Khiva), whose knowledge of the sciences, antiquities, and customs of India was

Bíróní 973-  
1048 A.D.)

such as no Moslem had ever equalled. (His two principal works, the *Athár al-Báqiya*, or 'Surviving Monuments,' and the *Ta'rikhu 'l-Hind*, or 'History of India,' have been edited and translated into English by Dr. Sachau.<sup>1</sup>)

Some conception of the amazing intellectual activity of the

<sup>1</sup> *The Chronology of Ancient Nations* (London, 1879) and *Alberuni's India* (London, 1888).



Moslems during the earlier part of the 'Abbásid period, and also of the enormous losses which Arabic literature has suffered through the destruction of thousands of books that are known to us by nothing beyond their titles and the names of their authors, may be gained from the *Fihrist*, or 'Index' of Muḥammad b. Ishāq b. Abī Ya'qūb al-Nadīm al-Warrāq al-Baghdādī († 995 A.D.). Regarding the compiler we have no further information than is conveyed in the last two epithets attached to his name: he was a copyist of MSS., and was connected with Baghdād either by birth or residence; add that, according to his own statement (p. 349, l. 14 sqq.), he was at Constantinople (*Dāru 'l-Rūm*) in 988 A.D., the same year in which his work was composed. He may possibly have been related to the famous musician, Ishāq b. Ibrāhīm al-Nadīm of Mosul († 849-850 A.D.), but this has yet to be proved. At any rate we owe to his industry a unique conspectus of the literary history of the Arabs to the end of the fourth century after the Flight. The *Fihrist* (as the author explains in his brief Preface) is "an Index of the books of all nations, Arabs and foreigners alike, which are extant in the Arabic language and script, on every branch of knowledge; comprising information as to their compilers and the classes of their authors, together with the genealogies of those persons, the dates of their birth, the length of their lives, the times of their death, the places to which they belonged, their merits and their faults, since the beginning of every science that has been invented down to the present epoch: namely, the year 377 of the Hijra." As the contents of the *Fihrist* (which considerably exceed the above description) have been analysed in detail by G. Flügel (*Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 13, p. 559 sqq.) and set forth in tabular form by Professor Browne in the first volume of his *Literary History of Persia*,<sup>1</sup> I need only indicate the general arrangement and scope of the work. It is divided into ten

<sup>1</sup> P. 384 sqq.

discourses (*maqálat*), which are subdivided into a varying number of sections (*funún*). Ibnu 'l-Nadím discusses, in the first place, the languages, scripts, and sacred books of the Arabs and other peoples, the revelation of the Koran, the order of its chapters, its collectors, redactors, and commentators. Passing next to the sciences which, as we have seen, arose from study of the Koran and primarily served as handmaids to theology, he relates the origin of Grammar, and gives an account of the different schools of grammarians with the treatises which they wrote. The third discourse embraces History, Belles-Lettres, Biography, and Genealogy; the fourth treats of Poetry, ancient and modern. Scholasticism (*Kalám*) forms the subject of the following chapter, which contains a valuable notice of the Ismá'ílís and their founder, 'Abdulláh b. Maymún, as also of the celebrated mystic, Ḥusayn b. Manṣúr al-Ḥalláj. From these and many other names redolent of heresy the author returns to the orthodox schools of Law—the Málikites, Ḥanafites, Sháfi'ites and Záhírites; then to the jurisconsults of the Shí'a, &c. The seventh discourse deals with Philosophy and 'the Ancient Sciences,' under which head we find some curious speculations concerning their origin and introduction to the lands of Islam; a list of translators and the books which they rendered into Arabic; an account of the Greek philosophers from Thales to Plutarch, with the names of their works that were known to the Moslems; and finally a literary survey of the remaining sciences, such as Mathematics, Music, Astronomy, and Medicine. Here, by an abrupt transition, we enter the enchanted domain of Oriental fable—the *Hazár Afán*, or Thousand Tales, *Kallla* and *Dimna*, the Book of Sindbád, and the legends of Rustam and Isfandiyár; works on sorcery, magic, conjuring, amulets, talismans, and the like. European savants have long recognised the importance of the ninth discourse,<sup>1</sup> which is

<sup>1</sup> The passages concerning the Šábians were edited and translated, with copious annotations, by Chwolsohn in his *Sabier und Sabismus* (St.

devoted to the doctrines and writings of the Šábians and the Dualistic sects founded by Manes, Bardesanes, Marcion, Mazdak, and other heresiarchs. The author concludes his work with a chapter on the Alchemists (*al-Klmiyd'un*).

Petersburg, 1856), vol. ii, p. 1-365, while Flügel made similar use of the Manichæan portion in *Mani, seine Lehre und seine Schriften* (Leipzig, 1862).



## CHAPTER VIII

### ORTHODOXY, FREE-THOUGHT, AND MYSTICISM

WE have already given some account of the great political revolution which took place under the 'Abbásid dynasty, and we have now to consider the no less vital influence of the new era in the field of religion. It will be remembered that the House of 'Abbás came forward as champions of Islam and of the oppressed and persecuted Faithful. Their victory was a triumph for the Muḥammadan over the National idea. "They wished, as they said, to revive the dead Tradition of the Prophet. They brought the experts in Sacred Law from Medína, which had hitherto been their home, to Baghdád, and always invited their approbation by taking care that even political questions should be treated in legal form and decided in accordance with the Koran and the Sunna. In reality, however, they used Islam only to serve their own interest. They tamed the divines at their court and induced them to sanction the most objectionable measures. They made the pious Opposition harmless by leading it to victory. With the downfall of the Umayyads it had gained its end and could now rest in peace."<sup>1</sup> There is much truth in this view of the matter, but notwithstanding the easy character of their religion, the 'Abbásid Caliphs were sincerely devoted to the cause of Islam and zealous to maintain its principles in public life. They regarded themselves as the

The 'Abbásids  
and Islam.

<sup>1</sup> Wellhausen, *Das Arabische Reich*, p. 350 seq.

sovereign defenders of the Faith; added the Prophet's mantle (*al-burda*) to those emblems of Umayyad royalty, the sceptre and the seal; delighted in the pompous titles which their flatterers conferred on them, *e.g.*, 'Vicegerent of God,' 'Sultan of God upon the Earth,' 'Shadow of God,' &c.; and left no stone unturned to invest themselves with the attributes of theocracy, and to inspire their subjects with veneration.<sup>1</sup> Whereas the Umayyad monarchs ignored or crushed Muḥammadan sentiment, and seldom made any

Influence of  
theologians.

attempt to conciliate the leading representatives of Islam, the 'Abbāsids, on the other hand, not only gathered round their throne all the most celebrated theologians of the day, but also showed them every possible honour, listened respectfully to their counsel, and allowed them to exert a commanding influence on the administration of the State.<sup>2</sup> When Málík b. Anas was summoned by the Caliph Hárún al-Rashíd, who wished to hear him recite traditions, Málík replied, "People come to seek knowledge." So Hárún went to Málík's house, and leaned against the wall beside him. Málík said, "O Prince of the Faithful, whoever honours God, honours knowledge." Al-Rashíd arose and seated himself at Málík's feet and spoke to him and heard him relate a number of traditions handed down from the Apostle of God. Then he sent for Sufyán b. 'Uyayna, and Sufyán came to him and sat in his presence and recited traditions to him. Afterwards al-Rashíd said, "O Málík, we humbled ourselves before thy knowledge, and profited thereby, but Sufyán's knowledge humbled itself to us, and we got no good from it."<sup>3</sup> Many instances might be given of the high favour which theologians enjoyed at this time, and of the lively interest with which religious topics were debated by the

<sup>1</sup> See Goldziher, *Muhamm. Studien*, Part II, p. 53 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 70 seq.

<sup>3</sup> *Fragmenta Historicorum Arabicorum*, ed. by De Goeje and De Jong, p. 298.

Caliph and his courtiers. As the Caliphs gradually lost their temporal sovereignty, the influence of the *‘Ulamā*—the doctors of Divinity and Law—continued to increase, so that ere long they formed a privileged class, occupying in Islam a position not unlike that of the priesthood in mediæval Christendom.

It will be convenient to discuss the religious phenomena of the ‘Abbásid period under the following heads:—

I. Rationalism and Free-thought.

II. The Orthodox Reaction and the rise of Scholastic Theology.

III. The Šúfi Mysticism.

I. The first century of ‘Abbásid rule was marked, as we have seen, by a great intellectual agitation. All sorts of new ideas were in the air. It was an age of discovery and awakening. In a marvellously brief space the diverse studies of Theology, Law, Medicine, Philosophy, Mathematics, Astronomy, and Natural Science attained their maturity, if not their highest development. Even if some pious Moslems looked askance at the foreign learning and its professors, an enlightened spirit generally prevailed. People took their cue from the court, which patronised, or at least tolerated,<sup>1</sup> scientific research as well as theological speculation.

These circumstances enabled the Mu‘tazilites (see p. 222 sqq.) to propagate their liberal views without hindrance, and finally to carry their struggle against the orthodox party to a successful issue. It was the same conflict that divided Nominalists and Realists in the days of Thomas Aquinas, Duns Scotus, and Occam. As often happens when momentous principles are at stake, the whole

<sup>1</sup> There are, of course, some partial exceptions to this rule, e.g., Maḥdī and Hārūn al-Rashīd.



controversy between Reason and Revelation turned on a single question—"Is the Koran created or uncreated?" In other terms, is it the work of God or the Word of God? According to orthodox belief, it is uncreated and has existed with God from all eternity, being in its present form merely a transcript of the heavenly archetype.<sup>1</sup> Obviously this conception of the Koran as the direct and literal Word of God left no room for exercise of the understanding, but required of those who adopted it a dumb faith and a blind fatalism. There were many to whom the sacrifice did not seem too great. [The Mu'tazilites, on the contrary, asserted their intellectual freedom. It was possible, they said, to know God and distinguish good from evil without any Revelation at all. They admitted that the Koran was God's work, in the sense that it was produced by a divinely inspired Prophet, but they flatly rejected its deification. Some went so far as to criticise the 'inimitable' style, declaring that it could be surpassed in beauty and eloquence by the art of man.<sup>2</sup>]

The Mu'tazilite controversy became a burning question in the reign of Ma'mún (813-833 A.D.), a Caliph whose scientific enthusiasm and keen interest in religious matters we have already mentioned. He did not inherit the orthodoxy of his father, Hárún al-Rashíd; and it was believed that he was at heart a *zindiq*. [His liberal tendencies would have been wholly admirable if they had not been marred by excessive intolerance towards those who held opposite views to his own. In 833 A.D., the year of his death, he promulgated a decree which bound all Moslems to accept the Mu'tazilite doctrine as to the creation of the Koran on pain of losing their civil rights, and at the same time he established an inquisition (*miḥna*) in order to obtain the assent of

<sup>1</sup> See p. 163, note.

<sup>2</sup> Several freethinkers of this period attempted to rival the Koran with their own compositions. See Goldziher, *Muhamm. Studien*, Part II, p. 401 seq.

the divines, judges, and doctors of law.) Those who would not take the test were flogged and threatened with the sword.

After Ma'mún's death the persecution still went on, although it was conducted in a more moderate fashion. Popular feeling ran strongly against the

Rationalism  
adopted and put  
in force by the  
Caliph Ma'mún.

Mu'tazilites. The most prominent figure in the orthodox camp was the Imám Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal, who firmly resisted the new dogma from the first. "But for him," says the Sunnite historian, Abu 'l-Maḥásin, "the beliefs of a great number would have been corrupted."<sup>1</sup> Neither threats nor entreaties could shake his resolution, and when he was scourged by command of the Caliph Mu'taṣim, the palace was in danger of being wrecked by an angry mob which had assembled outside to hear the result of the trial. (The Mu'tazilite dogma remained officially in force until it was abandoned

by the Caliph Wáthiq and once more declared heretical by the cruel and bigoted Mutawakkil (847 A.D.). From that time to this the victorious party have sternly suppressed every rationalistic movement in Islam.)

Mutawakkil  
returns to  
orthodoxy.

According to Steiner, the original Mu'tazilite heresy arose in the bosom of Islam, independently of any foreign influence, but, however that may be, its later development

was largely affected by Greek philosophy. We need not attempt to follow the recondite speculations of Abú Hudhayl al-'Alláf († about 840 A.D.) of his contemporaries, al-Nazzám, Bishr b. al-Mu'tamir, and others, and of the philosophical schools of Baṣra and Baghdád in which the movement died away. Vainly they sought to replace the Muḥammadan idea of God as will by the Aristotelian conception of God as law. Their efforts to purge the Koran of anthropomorphism made no impression on the faithful, who ardently hoped to see God in Paradise face to face. What they actually achieved was little enough. Their weapons of

The end of the  
Mu'tazilites.

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Nujúm al-Záhira*, ed. by Juynboll, vol. i, p. 639.



logic and dialectic were turned against them with triumphant success, and scholastic theology was founded on the ruins of Rationalism. Indirectly, however, the Mu'tazilite principles leavened Muḥammadan thought to a considerable extent and cleared the way for other liberal movements, like the Fraternity of the *Ikhwānu 'l-Ṣafā*, which endeavoured to harmonise authority with reason, and to construct a universal system of religious philosophy.

[These 'Brethren of Purity,'<sup>1</sup> as they called themselves, compiled a great encyclopædic work in fifty tractates (*Rasā'il*). Of the authors, who flourished at Baṣra towards the end of the tenth century, five are known to us by name; viz., Abū Sulaymān Muḥammad b. Ma'shar al-Bayustī or al-Muqaddasī (Maqdisī), Abū 'l-Ḥasan 'Alī b. Ḥārūn al-Zanjānī, Abū Aḥmad al-Mihrajānī, al-'Awfī, and Zayd b. Rifā'a. "They formed a society for the pursuit of holiness, purity, and truth, and established amongst themselves a doctrine whereby they hoped to win the approval of God, maintaining that the Religious Law was defiled by ignorance and adulterated by errors, and that there was no means of cleansing and purifying it except philosophy, which united the wisdom of faith and the profit of research. They held that a perfect result would be reached if Greek philosophy were combined with Arabian religion. Accordingly they composed fifty tracts on every branch of philosophy, theoretical as well as practical, added a separate index, and entitled them the 'Tracts of the Brethren of Purity' (*Rasā'ilu Ikhwān al-Ṣafā*). The authors of this work concealed their names, but circulated it among the booksellers and gave it to the public. They filled their pages with devout phraseology, religious parables, metaphorical expressions, and figurative turns of style."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This is the literal translation of *Ikhwānu 'l-Ṣafā*, but according to Arabic idiom 'brother of purity' (*akhu 'l-ṣafā*) simply means 'one who is pure or sincere,' as has been shown by Goldziher, *Muhamm. Studien*, Part I, p. 9, note. The term does not imply any sort of brotherhood.

<sup>2</sup> Ibnu 'l-Qifṭī, *Ta'rikhu 'l-Hukamā* (ed. by Lippert), p. 83, l. 17 sqq.



Nearly all the tracts have been translated into German by Dieterici, who has also drawn up an epitome of the whole encyclopædia in his *Philosophie der Araber im X Jahrhundert*. It would take us too long to describe the system of the *Ikhwân*, but the reader will find an excellent account of it in Stanley Lane-Poole's *Studies in a Mosque*, 2nd ed., p. 176 sqq. The view has recently been put forward that the Brethren of Purity were in some way connected with the Ismâ'îlî propaganda, and that their eclectic idealism represents the highest teaching of the Fâtimids, Carmathians, and Assassins. Strong evidence in support of this theory is supplied by a MS. of the Bibliothèque Nationale (No. 2309 in De Slane's Catalogue), which contains, together with fragments of the *Ras'd'il*, a hitherto unknown tract entitled the *ġâmi'a* or 'Summary.'<sup>1</sup> The latter purports to be the essence and crown of the fifty *Ras'd'il*, it is manifestly Ismâ'îlî in character, and, assuming that it is genuine, we may, I think, agree with the conclusions which its discoverer, M. P. Casanova, has stated in the following passage:—

"Surtout je crois être dans le vrai en affirmant que les doctrines philosophiques des Ismaïliens sont contenues tout entières dans les Epîtres des Frères de la Pureté. Et c'est ce qui explique 'la séduction extraordinaire que la doctrine exerçait sur des hommes sérieux.'<sup>2</sup> En y ajoutant la croyance en l' *imâm caché* (*al-imâm al-mastûr*) qui doit apparaître un jour pour établir le bonheur universel, elle réalisait la fusion de toutes les doctrines idéalistes, du messianisme et du platonisme. Tant que l' *imâm* restait caché, il s'y mêlait encore une saveur de mystère qui attachait les esprits les plus élevés. . . . En tous cas, on peut affirmer que les Carmathes et les Assassins ont été profondément calomniés quand ils ont été accusés par leurs adversaires d'athéisme et de débauche. Le *fetwa* d' Ibn Taimiyyah, que j'ai cité plus haut, prétend que leur dernier degré dans l' initiation (*al-balâgh al-akbar*) est la négation même du Créateur. Mais la *djâmi'at* que nous avons découverte est, comme

The doctrines of the Brethren of Purity identical with the esoteric philosophy of the Ismâ'îlîs.

<sup>1</sup> Notice sur un manuscrit de la secte des Assassins, by P. Casanova in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1898, p. 151 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> De Goeje, *Mémoire sur les Carmathes*, p. 172.

tout l'indique, le dernier degré de la science des Frères de la Pureté et des Ismaïliens ; il n'y a rien de fondé dans une telle accusation. La doctrine apparaît très pure, très élevée, très simple même : je répète que c'est une sorte de panthéisme mécaniste et esthétique qui est absolument opposé au scepticisme et au matérialisme, car il repose sur l'harmonie générale de toutes les parties du monde, harmonie voulue par le Créateur parce qu'elle est la beauté même.

"Ma conclusion sera que nous avons là un exemple de plus dans l'histoire d'une doctrine très pure et très élevée en théorie, devenue, entre les mains des fanatiques et des ambitieux, une source d'actes monstrueux et méritant l'infamie qui est attachée à ce nom historique d'Assassins."

Besides the Mu'tazilites, we hear much of another class of heretics who are commonly grouped together under the name of *Zindiqs*.

"It is well known," says Goldziher,<sup>1</sup> "that the earliest persecution was directed against those individuals who managed more or less adroitly to conceal under the veil of Islam old Persian religious ideas. Sometimes indeed they did not consider any disguise to be necessary, but openly set up dualism and other Persian or Manichæan doctrines, and the practices associated therewith, against the dogma and usage of Islam. Such persons were called *Zindiqs*, a term which comprises different shades of heresy and hardly admits of simple definition. [Firstly, there are the old Persian families incorporated in Islam who, following the same path as the Shu'ûbites, have a *national interest* in the revival of Persian religious ideas and traditions, and from this point of view react against the *Arabian* character of the Muḥammadan system. Then, on the other hand, there are freethinkers, who oppose in particular the stubborn dogma of Islam, reject *positive religion*, and acknowledge only the moral law. Amongst the latter there is developed a monkish

<sup>1</sup> *Sâlih b. 'Abd al-Quddûs und das Zindîkthum während der Regierung des Chalifen al-Mahdî in Transactions of the Ninth Congress of Orientalists*, vol. ii, p. 105 seq.



asceticism extraneous to Islam and ultimately traceable to Buddhist influences.")

The 'Abbásid Government, which sought to enforce an official standard of belief, was far less favourable to religious liberty than the Umayyads had been. Orthodox and heretic alike fell under its ban. While Ma'mún harried pious Sunnites, his immediate predecessors raised a hue and cry against *Zindiqs*. The Caliph Mahdí distinguished himself by an organised persecution of these enemies of the faith. He appointed a Grand Inquisitor (*Šāhibu 'l-Zandīqa*<sup>1</sup> or *'Arīfu 'l-Zandīqa*)

Persecution of  
*Zindīqs*.

to discover and hunt them down. If they would not recant when called upon, they were put to death and crucified, and their books<sup>2</sup> were cut to pieces with knives.<sup>3</sup> Mahdí's example was followed by Hádī and Hárún al-Rashíd. Some of the 'Abbásids, however, were less severe. Thus Khašīb, Maṣṣūr's physician, was a *Zindīq* who professed Christianity,<sup>4</sup> and in the reign of Ma'mún it became the mode to affect Manichæan opinions as a mark of elegance and refinement.<sup>5</sup>

The two main types of *zandaqa* which have been described above are illustrated in the contemporary poets, Bashshár b.

Burd and Šāliḥ b. 'Abd al-Quddús. Bashshár b. Burd.

was born stone-blind. The descendant of a noble Persian family—though his father, Burd, was a slave—he cherished strong national sentiments and did not attempt to conceal his sympathy with the Persian clients (*Mawálí*), whom he was accused of stirring up against their Arab lords. He may also have had leanings towards Zoroastrianism, but Professor Bevan has observed that there is no real

<sup>1</sup> Tabarí, iii, 522, 1.

<sup>2</sup> *I.e.* the sacred books of the Manichæans, which were often splendidly illuminated. See Von Kremer, *Culturgesch. Streifzüge*, p. 39.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Tabarí, iii, 499, 8 sqq.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, iii, 422, 19 sqq.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. the saying "*Azrafu minā 'l-Zindīq*" (Freitag, *Arabum Proverbia*, vol. i, p. 214).



evidence for this statement,<sup>1</sup> though Zoroastrian or Manichæan views are probably indicated by the fact that he used to dispute with a number of noted Moslem theologians in Baṣra, e.g., with Wāṣil b. 'Aṭā, who started the Mu'tazilite heresy, and 'Amr b. 'Ubayd. He and Ṣāliḥ b. 'Abd al-Quddūs were put to death by the Caliph Maḥdī in the same year (783 A.D.).

This Ṣāliḥ belonged by birth or affiliation to the Arab tribe of Azd. Of his life we know little beyond the circumstance that he was for some time a street-preacher at Baṣra, and afterwards at Damascus. It is possible that his public doctrine was thought dangerous, although the preachers as a class were hand in glove with the Church and did not, like the Lollards, denounce religious abuses.<sup>2</sup> His extant poetry contains nothing heretical, but is wholly moral and didactic in character. We have seen, however, in the case of Abu 'l-'Atāhiya, that Muḥammadan orthodoxy was apt to connect 'the philosophic mind' with positive unbelief; and Ṣāliḥ appears to have fallen a victim to this prejudice. He was accused of being a dualist (*thanawf*), i.e., a Manichæan. Maḥdī, it is said, conducted his examination in person, and at first let him go free, but the poet's fate was sealed by his confession that he was the author of the following verses:—

"The greybeard will not leave what in the bone is bred  
Until the dark tomb covers him with earth o'erspread;  
For, tho' deterred awhile, he soon returns again  
To his old folly, as the sick man to his pain."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> As Professor Bevan points out, it is based solely on the well-known verse (*Aghāni*, iii, 24, l. 11), which has come down to us without the context:—

"Earth is dark and Fire is bright,  
And Fire has been worshipped ever since Fire existed."

<sup>2</sup> These popular preachers (*quṣṣās*) are admirably described by Goldziher, *Muhamm. Studien*, Part II, p. 161 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> The Arabic text of these verses will be found in Goldziher's monograph, p. 122, ll. 6-7.

Abu 'l-'Alá al-Ma'arrí, himself a bold and derisive critic of Muḥammadan dogmas, devotes an interesting section of his *Risálatu 'l-Ghufrán* to the Zindíqs, and says many hard things about them, which were no doubt intended to throw dust in the eyes of a suspicious audience. The wide scope of the term is shown by the fact that he includes under it the pagan chiefs of Quraysh; the Umayyad Caliph Walíd b. Yazíd; the poets Di'bíl, Abú Nuwás, Bashshár, and Šáliḥ b. 'Abd al-Quddús; Abú Muslim, who set up the 'Abbásid dynasty; the Persian rebels, Bábak and Mázyár; Afshín, who after conquering Bábak was starved to death by the Caliph Mu'tašim; the Carmathian leader al-Jannábi; Ibnu 'l-Ráwandí, whose work entitled the *Dámigh* was designed to discredit the 'miraculous' style of the Koran; and Ḥusayn b. Manšúr al-Ḥalláj, the Šúfi martyr. Most of these, one may admit, fall within Abu 'l-'Alá's definition of the Zindíqs: "they acknowledge neither prophet nor sacred book." The name Zindíq, which is applied by Jáḥiẓ († 868 A.D.) to certain wandering monks,<sup>1</sup> seems in the first instance to have been used of Manes (*Mánt*) and his followers, and is no doubt derived, as Professor Bevan has suggested, from the *zaddíqs*, who formed an elect class in the Manichæan hierarchy.<sup>2</sup>

II. The official recognition of Rationalism as the State religion came to an end on the accession of Mutawakkil in 847 A.D. The new Caliph, who owed his throne to the

<sup>1</sup> See a passage from the *Kitábu 'l-Hayawán*, cited by Baron V. Rosen in *Zapiski*, vol. vi, p. 337, and rendered into English in my *Translations from Eastern Poetry and Prose*, p. 53. Probably these monks were Manichæans, not Buddhists.

<sup>2</sup> *Zaddíq* is an Aramaic word meaning 'righteous.' Its etymological equivalent in Arabic is *šiddíq*, which has a different meaning, namely, 'veracious.' *Zaddíq* passed into Persian in the form *Zandík*, which was used by the Persians before Islam, and *Zindíq* is the Arabicised form of the latter word. For some of these observations I am indebted to Professor Bevan. Further details concerning the derivation and meaning of *Zindíq* are given in Professor Browne's *Literary Hist. of Persia* (vol. i, p. 159 sqq.), where the reader will also find a lucid account of the Manichæan doctrines.



Turkish Prætorians, could not have devised a surer means of making himself popular than by standing forward as the avowed champion of the faith of the masses. He persecuted impartially Jews, Christians, Mu'tazilites, Shī'ites, and Šūfis—every one, in short, who diverged from the narrowest Sunnite orthodoxy. The Vizier Ibn Abī Du'ād, who had shown especial zeal in his conduct of the Mu'tazilite Inquisition, was disgraced, and the bulk of his wealth was confiscated. In Baghdād the followers of Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal went from house to house terrorising the citizens,<sup>1</sup> and such was their fanatical temper that when Ṭabarī, the famous divine and historian, died in 923 A.D., they would not allow his body to receive the ordinary rites of burial.<sup>2</sup> Finally, in the year 935 A.D., the Caliph Rāḍī issued an edict denouncing them in these terms: "Ye assert that your ugly, ill-favoured faces are in the likeness of the Lord of Creation, and that your vile exterior resembles His, and ye speak of the hand, the fingers, the feet, the golden shoes, and the curly hair (of God), and of His going up to Heaven and of His coming down to Earth. . . . The Commander of the Faithful swears a binding oath that unless ye refrain from your detestable practices and perverse tenets he will lay the sword to your necks and the fire to your dwellings."<sup>3</sup> Evidently the time was ripe for a system which should reconcile the claims of tradition and reason, avoiding the gross anthropomorphism of the extreme Ḥanbalites on the one side and the pure rationalism of the advanced Mu'tazilites (who were still a power to be reckoned with) on the other. It is a frequent experience that great intellectual or religious movements rising slowly and invisibly, in response, as it were, to some incommunicable want, suddenly find a distinct interpreter with whose name they are henceforth associated for ever. The man, in this case, was Abu 'l-Ḥasan al-Ash'arī. He belonged to a noble and traditionally orthodox family of

<sup>1</sup> Ibn 'l-Athīr, vol. viii, p. 229 seq. (anno 323 A.H. = 934-935 A.D.).

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 98.

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 230 seq.



Yemenite origin. One of his ancestors was Abū Mūsā al-AšĤarĪ, who, as the reader will recollect, played a somewhat inglorious part in the arbitration between 'Alī and Mu'āwiya after the battle of Šiffin.\* Born in 873–874 A.D. at Bašra, a city renowned for its scientific and intellectual fertility, the young Abu 'l-Ḥasan deserted the faith of his fathers, attached himself to the freethinking school, and until his fortieth year was the favourite pupil and intimate friend of al-Jubbā'ī († 915 A.D.), the head of the Mu'tazilite party at that time. He is said to have broken with his teacher in consequence of a dispute as to whether God always does what is best (*aṣṣaḥ*) for His creatures. The story is related as follows by Ibn Khallikān (De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 669 seq.):—

Ash'arī proposed to Jubbā'ī the case of three brothers, one of whom was a true believer, virtuous and pious; the second an infidel, a debauchee and a reprobate; and the third an infant: they all died, and Ash'arī wished to know what had become of them. To this Jubbā'ī answered: "The virtuous brother holds a high station in Paradise; the infidel is in the depths of Hell, and the child is among those who have obtained salvation." "Suppose now," said Ash'arī, "that the child should wish to ascend to the place occupied by his virtuous brother, would he be allowed to do so?" "No," replied Jubbā'ī, "it would be said to him: 'Thy brother arrived at this place through his numerous works of obedience towards God, and thou hast no such works to set forward.'" "Suppose then," said Ash'arī, "that the child say: 'That is not my fault; you did not let me live long enough, neither did you give me the means of proving my obedience.'" "In that case," answered Jubbā'ī, "the Almighty would say: 'I knew that if I had allowed thee to live, thou wouldst have been disobedient and incurred the severe punishment (of Hell); I therefore acted for thy advantage.'" "Well," said Ash'arī, "and suppose the infidel brother were to say: 'O God of the universe I since you knew what awaited him, you must have known what

\* See p. 192.

\* *I.e.*, he is saved from Hell but excluded from Paradise.

awaited me; why then did you act for his advantage and not for mine?" Jubbá'í had not a word to offer in reply.

Soon afterwards Ash'arí made a public recantation. One Friday, while sitting (as his biographer relates) in the chair from which he taught in the great mosque of Baṣra, he cried out at the top of his voice: "They who know me know who I am: as for those who do not know me I will tell them. I am 'Alí b. Ismá'íl al-Ash'arí, and I used to hold that the Koran was created, that the eyes of men shall not see God, and that we ourselves are the authors of our evil deeds. Now I have returned to the truth; I renounce these opinions, and I undertake to refute the Mu'tazilites and expose their infamy and turpitude."<sup>1</sup>

These anecdotes possess little or no historical value, but illustrate the fact that Ash'arí, having learned all that the Mu'tazilites could teach him and having thoroughly mastered their dialectic, turned against them with deadly force the weapons which they had put in his hands. His doctrine on the subject of free-will may serve to exemplify the method of *Kalám* (Disputation) by which he propped up the orthodox creed.<sup>2</sup> Here, as in other instances, Ash'arí took the central path—*medio tutissimus*—between two extremes. It was the view of the early Moslem Church—a view justified by the Koran and the Apostolic Traditions—that everything was determined in advance and inscribed, from all eternity, on the Guarded Tablet (*al-Lawḥ al-Mahfūz*), so that men had no choice but to commit the actions decreed by destiny. The Mu'tazilites, on the

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikán, ed. by Wüstenfeld, No. 440; De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 228.

<sup>2</sup> The clearest statement of Ash'arí's doctrine with which I am acquainted is contained in the Creed published by Spitta, *Zur Geschichte Abu'l-Ḥasan al-Ash'arí's* (Leipzig, 1876), p. 133, l. 9 sqq.; German translation, p. 95 sqq. It has been translated into English by D. B. Macdonald in his *Muslim Theology*, p. 293 and foll.

Ash'arí's  
conversion to  
orthodoxy.

Ash'arí as the  
founder of  
Scholastic  
Theology.



contrary, denied that God could be the author of evil and insisted that men's actions were free. Ash'arī, on his part, declared that all actions are created and predestined by God, but that men have a certain subordinate power which enables them to acquire the actions previously created, although it produces no effect on the actions themselves. Human agency, therefore, was confined to this process of acquisition (*kasb*). With regard to the anthropomorphic passages in the Koran, Ash'arī laid down the rule that such expressions as "*The Merciful has settled himself upon His throne*," "*Both His hands are spread out*," &c., must be taken in their obvious sense without asking 'How?' (*bilā kayfa*). Spitta saw in the system of Ash'arī a successful revolt of the Arabian national spirit against the foreign ideas which were threatening to overwhelm Islam,<sup>1</sup> a theory which does not agree with the fact that most of the leading Ash'arites were Persians.<sup>2</sup> Von Kremer came nearer the mark when he said "Ash'arī's victory was simply a clerical triumph,"<sup>3</sup> but it was also, as Schreiner has observed, "a victory of reflection over unthinking faith."

The victory, however, was not soon or easily won.<sup>4</sup> Many of the orthodox disliked the new Scholasticism hardly less than the old Rationalism. Thus it is not surprising to read in the *Kdmil* of Ibnu 'l-Athīr under the year 456 A.H. = 1063-4 A.D., that Alp Arslān's Vizier, 'Amīdu 'l-Mulk al-Kundurī, having obtained his master's permission to have curses pronounced against the Rāfidites (Shī'ites) from the pulpits of Khurāsān, included the Ash'arites in the same malediction, and that the famous Ash'arite doctors, Abu 'l-Qāsim al-Qushayrī and the Imāmu 'l-Haramayn Abu 'l-Ma'ālī al-Juwaynī, left the country in consequence. The great Nizāmu 'l-Mulk

<sup>1</sup> *Op. cit.*, p. 7 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Schreiner, *Zur Geschichte des Ash'aritentums* in the *Proceedings of the Eighth International Congress of Orientalists* (1889), p. 5 of the *tirage à part*.

<sup>3</sup> *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 31, p. 167.

<sup>4</sup> See Goldziher in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 41, p. 63 seq., whence the following details are derived.



exerted himself on behalf of the Ash'arites, and the Nizāmiyya College, which he founded in Baghdād in the year 1067 A.D., was designed to propagate their system of theology. But the man who stamped it with the impression of his own powerful genius, fixed its ultimate form, and established it as the universal creed of orthodox Islam, was Abū Ḥamid al-Ghazālī (1058-1111 A.D.). We have already sketched the outward course of his life, and need only recall that he lectured at Baghdād in the Nizāmiyya College for four years (1091-1095 A.D.).<sup>1</sup> At the end of that time he retired from the world as a Ṣūfī, and so brought to a calm and fortunate close the long spiritual travail which he has himself described in the *Munqidh mina 'l-Ḍalāl*, or 'Deliverer from Error.'<sup>2</sup> We must now attempt to give the reader some notion of this work, both on account of its singular psychological interest and because Ghazālī's search for religious truth exercised, as will shortly appear, a profound and momentous influence upon the future history of Muḥam-madan thought. It begins with these words:—

"In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate. Praise be to God by the praise of whom every written or spoken discourse is opened! And blessings on Muḥammad, the Elect, the Prophet and Apostle, as well as on his family and his companions who lead us forth from error! To proceed: You have asked me, O my brother in religion, to explain to you the hidden meanings and the ultimate goal of the sciences, and the secret bane of the different doctrines, and their inmost depths. You wish me to relate all that I have endured in seeking to recover the truth from amidst the confusion of sects with diverse ways and paths, and how I have dared to raise myself from the abyss of blind belief in authority to the height of discernment. You desire to know what benefits I have derived in the first place from Scholastic Theology, and what I have appropriated, in the second

<sup>1</sup> See p. 339 seq.

<sup>2</sup> I have used the Cairo edition of 1309 A.H. A French translation by Barbier de Meynard was published in the *Journal Asiatique* (January, 1877), pp. 9-93.

place, from the methods of the Ta'limites\* who think that truth can be attained only by submission to the authority of an Imám; and thirdly, my reasons for spurning the systems of philosophy; and, lastly, why I have accepted the tenets of Šúfiism: you are anxious, in short, that I should impart to you the essential truths which I have learned in my repeated examination of the (religious) opinions of mankind."

[In a very interesting passage, which has been translated by Professor Browne, Ghazálí tells how from his youth upward he was possessed with an intense thirst for knowledge, which impelled him to study every form of religion and philosophy, and to question all whom he met concerning the nature and meaning of their belief.<sup>a</sup> But when he tried to distinguish the true from the false, he found no sure test. He could not trust the evidence of his senses. The eye sees a shadow and declares it to be without movement; or a star, and deems it no larger than a piece of gold. If the senses thus deceive, may not the mind do likewise? Perhaps our life is a dream full of phantom thoughts which we mistake for realities—until the awakening comes, either in moments of ecstasy or at death. "For two months," says Ghazálí, "I was actually, though not avowedly, a sceptic." Then God gave him light, so that he regained his mental balance and was able to think soundly. He resolved that this faculty must guide him to the truth, since blind faith once lost never returns. Accordingly, he set himself to examine the foundations of belief in four classes of men who were devoted to the search for truth, namely, Scholastic Theologians, Ismá'ílís (*Báṭiniyya*), Philosophers, and Šúfis. For a long while he had to be content with wholly negative results. Scholasticism was, he admitted, an excellent purge against heresy, but it could not cure the disease from which he was suffering. As for the philosophers, all of them—Materialists (*Dahriyyūn*), Naturalists (*Tabi'īyyūn*),

\* These are the Ismá'ílís or Báṭinís (including the Carmathians and Assassins). See p. 271 seq.

<sup>a</sup> A *Literary History of Persia*, vol. ii, p. 295 seq.



and Theists (*Ilāhiyyūn*)—"are branded with infidelity and impiety." Here, as often in his discussion of the philosophical schools, Ghazālī's religious instinct breaks out. We cannot imagine him worshipping at the shrine of pure reason any more than we can imagine Herbert Spencer at Lourdes. He next turned to the Ta'ālimites (Doctrinists) or Bāṭīnites (Esoterics), who claimed that they knew the truth, and that its unique source was the infallible Imām. But when he came to close quarters with these sectaries, he discovered that they could teach him nothing, and their mysterious Imām vanished into space. Šūfism, therefore, was his last hope. He carefully studied the writings of the mystics, and as he read it became clear to him that now he was on the right path. He saw that the higher stages of Šūfism could not be learned by study, but must be realised by actual experience, that is, by rapture, ecstasy, and moral transformation.) After a painful struggle with himself he resolved to cast aside all his worldly ambition and to live for God alone. In the month of Dhu 'l-Qa'da, 488 A.H. (November, 1095 A.D.), he left Baghdād and wandered forth to Syria, where he found in the Šūfī discipline of prayer, praise, and meditation the peace which his soul desired.

Mr. Duncan B. Macdonald, to whom we owe the best and fullest life of Ghazālī that has yet been written, sums up his work and influence in Islam under four heads \* :—

*First*, he led men back from scholastic labours upon theological dogmas to living contact with, study and exegesis of, the Word and the Traditions.

*Second*, in his preaching and moral exhortations he re-introduced the element of fear.

*Third*, it was by his influence that Šūfism attained a firm and assured position within the Church of Islam.

\* *The Life of al-Ghazālī in the Journal of the American Oriental Society*, vol. xx (1899), p. 122 sqq.



*Fourth*, he brought philosophy and philosophical theology within the range of the ordinary mind.

"Of these four phases of al-Ghazzālī's work," says Macdonald, "the first and third are undoubtedly the most important. He made his mark by leading Islam back to its fundamental and historical facts, and by giving a place in its system to the emotional religious life. But it will have been noticed that in none of the four phases was he a pioneer. He was not a scholar who struck out a new path, but a man of intense personality who entered on a path already trodden and made it the common highway. We have here his character. Other men may have been keener logicians, more learned theologians, more gifted saints; but he, through his personal experiences, had attained so overpowering a sense of the divine realities that the force of his character—once combative and restless, now narrowed and intense—swept all before it, and the Church of Islam entered on a new era of its existence."

III. We have traced the history of Mysticism in Islam from the ascetic movement of the first century, in which it originated, to a point where it begins to pass beyond the sphere of Muḥammadan influence and to enter on a strange track, of which the Prophet assuredly never dreamed, although the Ṣūfīs constantly pretend that they alone are his true followers. I do not think it can be maintained that Ṣūfīism of the theosophical and speculative type, which we have now to consider, is merely a development of the older asceticism and quietism which have been described in a former chapter. The difference between them is essential and must be attributed in part, as Von Kremer saw,<sup>1</sup> to the intrusion of some extraneous, non-Islamic, element. As to the nature of this new element there are several conflicting theories, which have been so clearly and fully stated by Professor Browne in his *Literary History of Persia* (vol. i, p. 418 sqq.) that I need not dwell upon them here. Briefly it is claimed—

<sup>1</sup> *Herrschende Ideen*, p. 67.

- (a) That Šúfiism owes its inspiration to Indian philosophy, and especially to the Vedānta.
- (b) That the most characteristic ideas in Šúfiism are of Persian origin.
- (c) That these ideas are derived from Neo-platonism.]

Instead of arguing for or against any of the above theories, all of which, in my opinion, contain a measure of truth, I propose in the following pages to sketch the historical evolution of the Šúfi doctrine as far as the materials at my disposal will permit. This, it seems to me, is the only possible method by which we may hope to arrive at a definite conclusion as to its origin. Since mysticism in all ages and countries is fundamentally the same, however it may be modified by its peculiar environment, and by the positive religion to which it clings for support, we find remote and unrelated systems showing an extraordinarily close likeness and even coinciding in many features of verbal expression. Such resemblances can prove little or nothing unless they are corroborated by evidence based on historical grounds. Many writers on Šúfiism have disregarded this principle; hence the confusion which long prevailed. The first step in the right direction was made by Adalbert Merx,<sup>1</sup> who derived valuable results from a chronological examination of the sayings of the early Šúfis. He did not, however, carry his researches beyond Abú Sulaymán al-Dárání († 830 A.D.), and confined his attention almost entirely to the doctrine, which, according to my view, should be studied in connection with the lives, character, and nationality of the men who taught it.<sup>2</sup> No doubt the origin and growth of mysticism in Islam, as in all other religions, ultimately depended on general causes and conditions, not on external

<sup>1</sup> *Idee und Grundlinien einer allgemeiner Geschichte der Mystik*, an academic oration delivered on November 22, 1892, and published at Heidelberg in 1893.

<sup>2</sup> The following sketch is founded on my paper, *An Historical Enquiry concerning the Origin and Development of Šúfiism* (J.R.A.S., April, 1906, p. 303 sqq.).



circumstances. For example, the political anarchy of the Umayyad period, the sceptical tendencies of the early 'Abbasid age, and particularly the dry formalism or Moslem theology could not fail to provoke counter-movements towards quietism, spiritual authority, and emotional faith. But although Šūfiism was not called into being by any impulse from without (this is too obvious to require argument), the influences of which I am about to speak have largely contributed to make it what it is, and have coloured it so deeply that no student of the history of Šūfiism can afford to neglect them.

Towards the end of the eighth century of our era the influence of new ideas is discernible in the sayings of Ma'rūf al-Karkhī († 815 A.D.), a contemporary of Fuḍayl

Ma'rūf al-Karkhī  
(† 815 A.D.)

b. 'Iyād and Shaḡīq of Balkh. He was born in the neighbourhood of Wásīṭ, one of the great cities of Mesopotamia, and the name of his father, Fīrūz, or Fīrūzān, shows that he had Persian blood in his veins. Ma'rūt was a client (*mawlā*) of the Shī'ite Imām, 'Alī b. Mūsā al-Riḍā, in whose presence he made profession of Islam; for he had been brought up as a Christian (such is the usual account), or, possibly, as a Šābian. He lived during the reign of Hārūn al-Rashīd in the Karkh quarter of Baghdād, where he gained a high reputation for saintliness, so that his tomb in that city is still an object of veneration. He is described as a God-intoxicated man, but in this respect he is not to be compared with many who came after him. Nevertheless, he deserves to stand at the head of the mystical as opposed to the ascetic school of Šūfis. He defined Šūfiism as "the apprehension of Divine realities and renunciation of human possessions."<sup>1</sup> Here are a few of his sayings:—

"Love is not to be learned from men; it is one of God's gifts and comes of His grace."

<sup>1</sup> This, so far as I know, is the oldest extant definition of Šūfiism.



"The Saints of God are known by three signs : their thought is of God, their dwelling is with God, and their business is in God.

"If the gnostic (*'drif*) has no bliss, yet he himself is in every bliss.

"When you desire anything of God, swear to Him by me."

From these last words, which Ma'rúf addressed to his pupil Sarí al-Saqatí, it is manifest that he regarded himself as being in the most intimate communion with God.

Abú Sulaymán († 830 A.D.), the next great name in the Šúfí biographies, was also a native of Wásit, but afterwards emigrated to Syria and settled at Dárayá (near Damascus), whence he is called 'al-Dárání.' He developed the doctrine of gnosis (*ma'rifat*). Those who are familiar with the language of European mystics—*illuminatio*, *oculus cordis*, &c.—will easily interpret such sayings as these :—

"None refrains from the lusts of this world save him in whose heart there is a light that keeps him always busied with the next world.

"When the gnostic's spiritual eye is opened, his bodily eye is shut : they see nothing but Him.

"If Gnosis were to take visible form, all that looked thereon would die at the sight of its beauty and loveliness and goodness and grace, and every brightness would become dark beside the splendour thereof."

"Gnosis is nearer to silence than to speech."

We now come to Dhu 'l-Nún al-Miṣrī († 860 A.D.), whom the Šúfís themselves consider to be the primary author of their doctrine.<sup>2</sup> That he at all events was among the first of those who helped to give it permanent shape is a fact which is amply attested by the collection of his sayings preserved in 'Aṭṭār's *Memoirs of the*

\* It is impossible not to recognise the influence of Greek philosophy in this conception of Truth as Beauty.

\* Jámí says (*Nafahātu 'l-Uns*, ed. by Nassau Lees, p. 36) : "He is the head of this sect : they all descend from, and are related to, him."

*Saints* and in other works of the same kind.<sup>1</sup> It is clear that the theory of gnosis, with which he deals at great length, was the central point in his system; and he seems to have introduced the doctrine that true knowledge of God is attained only by means of ecstasy (*wajd*). "The man that knows God best," he said, "is the one most lost in Him." Like Dionysius, he refused to make any positive statements about the Deity. "Whatever you imagine, God is the contrary of that." Divine love he regarded as an ineffable mystery which must not be revealed to the profane. All this is the very essence of the later Šúfism. It is therefore desirable to ascertain the real character of Dhu 'l-Nún and the influences to which he was subjected. The following account gives a brief summary of what I have been able to discover; fuller details will be found in the article mentioned above.

His name was Abu 'l-Fayḍ Thawbān b. Ibráhīm, Dhu 'l-Nún (He of the Fish) being a sobriquet referring to one of his miracles, and his father was a native of Nubia, or of Ikhmīm in Upper Egypt. Ibn Khallikān describes Dhu 'l-Nún as 'the nonpareil or his age' for learning, devotion, communion with the Divinity (*ḥál*), and acquaintance with literature (*adab*); adding that he was a philosopher (*ḥakīm*) and spoke Arabic with elegance. The people of Egypt, among whom he lived, looked upon him as a *zindīq* (free-thinker), and he was brought to Baghdād to answer this charge, but after his death he was canonised. In the *Fihrist* he appears among "the philosophers who discoursed on alchemy," and Ibnu 'l-Qiftī brackets him with the famous occultist Jābir b. Ḥayyān. He used to wander (as we learn from Mas'ūdī)<sup>2</sup> amidst the ruined Egyptian monuments, studying the inscriptions and endeavouring to decipher the mysterious figures which were thought to hold the key to the

<sup>1</sup> See 'Aṭṭār's *Tadhkiratu 'l-Awliyā*, ed. by Nicholson, Part I, p. 114; Jāmi's *Nafahāt*, p. 35; Ibn Khallikān, De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 291.

<sup>2</sup> *Murāju 'l-Dhahab*, vol. ii, p. 401 seq.



lost sciences of antiquity. He also dabbled in medicine, which, like Paracelsus, he combined with alchemy and magic.

Let us see what light these facts throw upon the origin of the Súfí theosophy. Did it come to Egypt from India, Persia, or Greece?

Considering the time, place, and circumstances in which it arose, and having regard to the character of the man who bore a chief part in its development, we cannot hesitate, I think, to assert that it is largely a product of Greek speculation. Ma'rúf al-Karkhí, Abú Sulaymán al-Dárání, and Dhu'l-Nún al-Miṣrí all three lived and died in the period (786-861 A.D.) which begins with the accession of Hárún al-Rashíd and is terminated by the death of Mutawakkil. [During these seventy-five years the stream of Hellenic culture flowed unceasingly into the Moslem world.] Innumerable works of Greek philosophers, physicians, and scientists were translated and eagerly studied. Thus the Greeks became the teachers of the Arabs, and the wisdom of ancient Greece formed, as has been shown in a preceding chapter, the basis of Muḥammadan science and philosophy. The results are visible in the Mu'tazilite rationalism as well as in the system of the *Ikhwánu 'l-Ṣafá*. But it was not through literature alone that the Moslems were imbued with Hellenism. In 'Iráq, Syria, and Egypt they found themselves on its native soil, which yielded, we may be sure, a plentiful harvest of ideas—Neo-platonic, Gnostical, Christian, mystical, pantheistic, and what not? In Mesopotamia, the heart of the 'Abbásid Empire, dwelt a strange people, who were really Syrian heathens, but who towards the beginning of the ninth century assumed the name of Ṣábiáns in order to protect themselves from the persecution with which they were threatened by the Caliph Ma'mún. At this time, indeed, many of them accepted Islam or Christianity, but the majority clung to their old pagan beliefs, while the educated class continued to profess a religious philosophy which, as it is described by Shahrastání and

The origin of  
theosophical  
Súfism.



other Muḥammadan writers, is simply the Neo-platonism of Proclus and Iamblichus. To return to Dhu 'l-Nún, it is incredible that a mystic and natural philosopher living in the first half of the ninth century in Egypt should have derived his doctrine directly from India. There may be Indian elements in Neo-platonism and Gnosticism, but this possibility does not affect my contention that the immediate source of the Šufī theosophy is to be sought in Greek and Syrian speculation. To define its origin more narrowly is not, I think, practicable in the present state of our knowledge. Merx, however, would trace it to Dionysius, the Pseudo-Areopagite, or rather to his master, a certain "Hierotheus," whom Frothingham has identified with the Syrian mystic, Stephen bar Sudaili (*circa* 500 A.D.). Dionysius was of course a Christian Neo-platonist. His works certainly laid the foundations of mediæval mysticism in Europe, and they were also popular in the East at the time when Šufiism arose.

When speaking of the various current theories as to the origin of Šufiism, I said that in my opinion they all contained a measure of truth. No single cause will account for a phenomenon so widely spread and so diverse in its manifestations. Šufiism has always been thoroughly eclectic, absorbing and transmuting whatever 'broken lights' fell across its path, and consequently it gained adherents amongst men of the most opposite views—theists and pantheists, Mu'tazilites and Scholastics, philosophers and divines. We have seen what it owed to Greece, but the Perso-Indian elements are not to be ignored. Although the theory "that it must be regarded as the reaction of the Aryan mind against a Semitic religion imposed on it by force" is inadmissible—Dhu 'l-Nún, for example, was a Copt or Nubian—the fact remains that there was at the time a powerful anti-Semitic reaction, which expressed itself, more or less consciously, in Šufis of Persian race. Again, the literary influence of India upon Muḥammadan thought before 1000 A.D.

Šufiism composed of many different elements.

was greatly inferior to that of Greece, as any one can see by turning over the pages of the *Fihrist*; but Indian religious ideas must have penetrated into Khurásán and Eastern Persia at a much earlier period.

These considerations show that the question as to the origin of Šúfiism cannot be answered in a definite and exclusive way. None of the rival theories is completely true, nor is any of them without a partial justification. The following words of Dr. Goldziher should be borne in mind by all who are interested in this subject:—

“Šúfiism cannot be looked upon as a regularly organised sect within Islam. Its dogmas cannot be compiled into a regular system. It manifests itself in different shapes in different countries. We find divergent tendencies, according to the spirit of the teaching of distinguished theosophists who were founders of different schools, the followers of which may be compared to Christian monastic orders. The influence of different environments naturally affected the development of Šúfiism. Here we find mysticism, there asceticism the prevailing thought.”

The four principal foreign sources of Šúfiism are undoubtedly Christianity, Neo-platonism, Gnosticism, and Indian asceticism and religious philosophy. I shall not attempt in this place to estimate their comparative importance, but it should be clearly understood that the speculative and theosophical side of Šúfiism, which, as we have seen, was first elaborated in ‘Irâq, Syria, and Egypt, bears unmistakable signs of Hellenistic influence.

The early Šúffis are particularly interested in the theory of mystical union (*fand wa-baqd*) and often use expressions which it is easy to associate with pantheism, yet none of them can fairly be called a pantheist in the true sense. The step from theosophy

\* *The Influence of Buddhism upon Islam*, by I. Goldziher (Budapest, 1903). As this essay is written in Hungarian, I have not been able to consult it at first hand, but have used the excellent translation by Mr. T. Duka, which appeared in the *J.R.A.S.* for January, 1904, pp. 125-141.



to pantheism was not, I think, made either by Halláj († 922 A.D.) or by the celebrated Abú Yazíd, in Persian Báyzídz († 874-75 A.D.), of Bistām, a town in the province of Qúmis situated near the south-eastern corner of the Caspian Sea.

Báyzídz of  
Bistām.

While his father, Surúshán, was a Zoroastrian, his master in Šúfiism seems to have been connected with Sind (Scinde), where Moslem governors had been installed since 715 A.D. Báyzídz carried the experimental doctrine of *fand* (dying to self) to its utmost limit, and his language is tinged with the peculiar poetic imagery which was afterwards developed by the great Šúfi of Khurásán, Abú Sa'íd b. Abi 'l-Khayr († 1049 A.D.). I can give only a few specimens of his sayings. Their genuineness is not above suspicion, but they serve to show that if the theosophical basis of Šúfiism is distinctively Greek, its mystical extravagances are no less distinctively Oriental.

“Creatures are subject to ‘states’ (*aḥwāl*), but the gnostic has no ‘state,’ because his vestiges are effaced and his essence is annihilated by the essence of another, and his traces are lost in another’s traces.

“I went from God to God until they cried from me in me, ‘O Thou I!’

“Nothing is better for Man than to be without aught, having no asceticism, no theory, no practice. When he is without all, he is with all.

“Verily I am God, there is no God except me, so worship me!

“Glory to me! how great is my majesty!

“I came forth from Báyzídz-ness as a snake from its skin. Then I looked. I saw that lover, beloved, and love are one, for in the world of unification all can be one.

“I am the wine-drinker and the wine and the cup-bearer.”

Thus, in the course of a century, Šúfiism, which at first was little more than asceticism, became in succession mystical and theosophical, and even ran the risk of being confused with pantheism. Henceforward the term *Taṣawwuf* unites all these varying shades. As a rule, however, the great Šúfis of the third century A.H. (815-912 A.D.) keep their antinomian



enthusiasm under control. Most of them agreed with Junayd of Baghdád (†909 A.D.), the leading theosophist of his time, in preferring "the path of sobriety," and in seeking to reconcile the Law (*shari'at*) with the Truth (*haqiqat*). "Our principles," said Sahl b. 'Abdulláh al-Tustarí (†896 A.D.), "are six: to hold fast by the Book of God, to model ourselves upon the Apostle (Muḥammad), to eat only what is lawful, to refrain from hurting people even though they hurt us, to avoid forbidden things, and to fulfil obligations without delay." To these articles the strictest Moslem might cheerfully subscribe. Šúfiism in its ascetic, moral, and devotional aspects was a spiritualised Islam, though it was a very different thing essentially. While doing lip-service to the established religion, it modified the dogmas of Islam in such a way as to deprive them of their original significance. Thus Allah, the God of mercy and wrath, was in a certain sense depersonalised and worshipped as the One absolutely Real (*al-Haqq*). Here the Šúfis betray their kinship with the Mu'tazilites, but the two sects have little in common except the Greek philosophy.<sup>1</sup> It must never be forgotten that Šúfiism was the expression of a profound religious feeling—"hatred of the world and love of the Lord."<sup>2</sup> "*Taṣawwuf*," said Junayd, "is this: that God should make thee die to thyself and should make thee live in Him."

The further development of Šúfiism may be indicated in a few words.

What was at first a form of religion adopted by individuals and communicated to a small circle of companions gradually became a monastic system, a school for saints, with rules of discipline and devotion which the novice (*muríd*) learned from his spiritual director (*pír* or *ustádh*), to whose guidance he

<sup>1</sup> It was recognised by the Šúfis themselves that in some points their doctrine was apparently based on Mu'tazilite principles. See Sha'rání, *Lawāqih al-Anwár* (Cairo, 1299 A.H.), p. 14, l. 21 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> This definition is by Abu 'l-Ḥusayn al-Núrí (†907-908 A.D.).

submitted himself absolutely. Already in the third century after Muḥammad it is increasingly evident that the typical Šúfī adept of the future will no longer be a solitary ascetic shunning the sight of men, but a great Shaykh and hierophant, who appears on ceremonial occasions attended by a numerous train of admiring disciples. Soon the doctrine began to be collected and embodied in books. Some of the most notable Arabic works of reference on Šúfiism have been mentioned already. Among the oldest are the *Kitābu 'l-Luma'* by Abū Naṣr al-Sarrāj († 988 A.D.) and the *Qūtu 'l-Qulūb* by Abū Ṭālib al-Makkī († 996 A.D.). The twelfth century saw the rise of the Dervish Orders. 'Adī al-Hakkārī († 1163 A.D.) and 'Abdu 'l-Qādir al-Jīlī († 1166 A.D.) founded the fraternities which are called 'Adawīs and Qādirīs, after their respective heads. These were followed in rapid succession by the Rifā'īs, the Shādhīlīs, and the Mevlevīs, of whom the last named owe their origin to the Persian poet and mystic, Jalālu 'l-Dīn Rūmī († 1273 A.D.). By this time, mainly through the influence of Ghazālī, Šúfiism had won for itself a secure and recognised position in the Muḥammadan Church. Orthodoxy was forced to accept the popular Saint-worship and to admit the miracles of the *Awliyā*, although many Moslem puritans raised their voices against the superstitious veneration which was paid to the tombs of holy men, and against the prayers, sacrifices, and oblations offered by the pilgrims who assembled. Ghazālī also gave the Šúfī doctrine a metaphysical basis. For this purpose he availed himself of the terminology, which Fārābī (also a Šúfī) and Avicenna had already borrowed from the Neo-platonists. From his time forward we find in Šúfī writings constant allusions to the Plotinian theories of emanation and ecstasy.

Mysticism was more congenial to the Persians than to the Arabs, and its influence on Arabic literature is not to be compared with the extraordinary spell which it has cast over the Persian mind since the eleventh century of the



Christian era to the present day. With few exceptions, the great poets of Persia (and, we may add, of Turkey) speak the allegorical language and use the fantastic imagery of which the quatrains of the Persian Šúfi, Abú Sa'íd b. Abi 'l-Khayr,<sup>1</sup> afford almost the first literary example. The Arabs have only one mystical poet worthy to stand beside the Persian masters.

<sup>1</sup>Umar Ibnu 'l-Fárid.

This is Sharafu 'l-Dín 'Umar Ibnu 'l-Fárid, who was born in Cairo (1181 A.D.) and died there in 1235. His *Diwán* was edited by his grandson 'All, and the following particulars regarding the poet's life are extracted from the biographical notice prefixed to this edition<sup>2</sup> :—

"The Shaykh 'Umar Ibnu 'l-Fárid was of middle stature ; his face was fair and comely, with a mingling of visible redness ; and when he was under the influence of music (*samá'*) and rapture (*wajd*), and overcome by ecstasy, it grew in beauty and brilliancy, and sweat dropped from his body until it ran on the ground under his feet. I never saw (so his son relates) among Arabs or foreigners a figure equal in beauty to his, and I am the likeliest of all men to him in form. . . . And when he walked in the city, the people used to press round him asking his blessing and trying to kiss his hand, but he would not allow any one to do so, but put his hand in theirs. . . . 'Umar Ibnu 'l-Fárid said : 'In the beginning of my detachment (*tajrid*) from the world I used to beg permission of my father and go up to the Wádi 'l-Mustaḍ'afin on the second mountain of al-Muqattam. Thither I would resort and continue in this hermit life (*siyḍha*) night and day ; then I would return to my father, as bound in duty to cherish his affection. My father was at that time Lieutenant of the High Court (*khalīfatu 'l-ḥukmi 'l-'aziz*) in Qáhira and Miṣr,<sup>3</sup> the two guarded cities, and was one of the men most eminent for learning and affairs. He was wont to be glad when I returned, and he frequently let me sit with him in the chambers of the court and in the colleges of law. Then I would long for "detachment," and beg leave to return to the life of

<sup>2</sup> See Professor Browne's *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. ii, p. 261 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> The *Diwán* of 'Umar Ibnu 'l-Fárid, ed. by Rushayyid al-Dahḍáh (Marseilles, 1853).

<sup>4</sup> *I.s.*, New and Old Cairo.



a wandering devotee, and thus I was doing repeatedly, until my father was asked to fill the office of Chief Justice (*Qāḍī 'l-Quḍāt*), but refused, and laid down the post which he held, and retired from society, and gave himself entirely to God in the preaching-hall (*qā'atu 'l-khiṭāba*) of the Mosque al-Azhar. After his death I resumed my former detachment, and solitary devotion, and travel in the way of Truth, but no revelation was vouchsafed to me. One day I came to Cairo and entered the Sayfiyya College. At the gate I found an old grocer performing an ablution which was not prescribed. First he washed his hands, then his feet; then he wiped his head and washed his face. "O Shaykh," I said to him, "do you, after all these years, stand beside the gate of the college among the Moslem divines and perform an irregular ablution?" He looked at me and said, "O 'Umar, nothing will be vouchsafed to thee in Egypt, but only in the Hijáz, at Mecca (may God exalt it!); set out thither, for the time of thy illumination hath come." Then I knew that the man was one of God's saints and that he was disguising himself by his manner of livelihood and by pretending to be ignorant of the irregularity of the ablution. I seated myself before him and said to him, "O my master, how far am I from Mecca! and I cannot find convoy or companions save in the months of Pilgrimage." He looked at me and pointed with his hand and said, "Here is Mecca in front of thee"; and as I looked with him, I saw Mecca (may God exalt it!); and bidding him farewell, I set off to seek it, and it was always in front of me until I entered it. At that moment illumination came to me and continued without any interruption. . . . I abode in a valley which was distant from Mecca ten days' journey for a hard rider, and every day and night I would come forth to pray the five prayers in the exalted Sanctuary, and with me was a wild beast of huge size which accompanied me in my going and returning, and knelt to me as a camel kneels, and said, "Mount, O my master," but I never did so."

When fifteen years had elapsed, 'Umar Ibnu 'l-Fárid returned to Cairo. The people venerated him as a saint, and the reigning monarch, Malik al-Kámil, wished to visit him in person, but 'Umar declined to see him, and rejected his bounty. "At most times," says the poet's son, "the Shaykh was in a state of bewilderment, and his eyes stared fixedly. He neither heard nor saw any one speaking to him. Now he would stand, now sit, now repose on his side, now lie on his

back wrapped up like a dead man; and thus would he pass ten consecutive days, more or less, neither eating nor drinking nor speaking nor stirring." In 1231 A.D. he made the pilgrimage to Mecca, on which occasion he met his famous contemporary, Shihābu' l-Dīn Abū Ḥafṣ 'Umar al-Suhrawardī. He died four years later, and was buried in the Qarāfa cemetery at the foot of Mount Muqattam.

His *Diwān* of mystical odes, which were first collected and published by his grandson, is small in extent compared with similar works in the Persian language, but of no unusual brevity when regarded as the production of an Arabian poet.<sup>1</sup> Concerning its general character something has been said above (p. 325). The commentator, Ḥasan al-Būrīnī († 1615 A.D.), praises the easy flow (*insijām*) of the versification, and declares that Ibnu 'l-Fāriḍ "is accustomed to play with ideas in ever-changing forms, and to clothe them with splendid garments."<sup>2</sup> His style, full of verbal subtleties, betrays the influence of Mutanabbī.<sup>3</sup> The longest piece in the *Diwān* is a Hymn of Divine Love, entitled *Nazmu 'l-Sulūk* ('Poem on the Mystic's Progress'), and often called *al-Tā'iyyatu 'l-Kubrā* ('The Greater Ode rhyming in t'), which has been edited with a German verse-translation by Hammer-Purgstall (Vienna, 1854). On account of this poem the author was accused of favouring the doctrine of *ḥulūl*, i.e., the incarnation of God in human beings. Another celebrated ode is the *Khamriyya*, or Hymn of Wine.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The *Diwān*, excluding the *Tā'iyyatu 'l-Kubrā*, has been edited by Rushayyid al-Daḥdāḥ (Marseilles, 1853).

<sup>2</sup> *Diwān*, p. 219, l. 14 and p. 213, l. 18.

<sup>3</sup> Ibnu 'l-Fāriḍ, like Mutanabbī, shows a marked fondness for diminutives. As he observes (*Diwān*, p. 552) :—

*mā qultu ḥubayyibī minā 'l-tahqiri*  
*bal ya'dkubu 'smu 'l-shakhṣi bi-'l-tasghiri.*

"Not in contempt I say 'my darling.' No!  
By 'diminution' names do sweeter grow."

<sup>4</sup> *Diwān*, p. 472 sqq. A French rendering will be found at p. 41 of Grangeret de Lagrange's *Anthologie Arabe* (Paris, 1828).

The following versions will perhaps convey to English readers some faint impression of the fervid rapture and almost ethereal exaltation which give the poetry of Ibnu 'l-Fārid a unique place in Arabic literature :—

“ Let passion's swelling tide my senses drown !  
 Pity love's fuel, this long-smouldering heart,  
 Nor answer with a frown,  
 When I would fain behold Thee as Thou art,  
 'Thou shalt not see Me.'\* O my soul, keep fast  
 The pledge thou gav'st : endure unfaltering to the last !  
 For Love is life, and death in love the Heaven  
 Where all sins are forgiven.  
 To those before and after and of this day,  
 That witnesseth my tribulation, say,  
 'By me be taught, me follow, me obey,  
 And tell my passion's story thro' wide East and West.'  
 With my Beloved I alone have been  
 When secrets tenderer than evening airs  
 Passed, and the Vision blest  
 Was granted to my prayers,  
 That crowned me, else obscure, with endless fame,  
 The while amazed between  
 His beauty and His majesty  
 I stood in silent ecstasy,  
 Revealing that which o'er my spirit went and came.  
 Lo ! in His face commingled  
 Is every charm and grace ;  
 The whole of Beauty singled  
 Into a perfect face  
 Beholding Him would cry,  
 'There is no God but He, and He is the most High !'”\*

Here are the opening verses of the *Tā'iyyatu 'l-Ṣuḡhrā*, or 'The Lesser Ode rhyming in *t*,' which is so called in order to distinguish it from the *Tā'iyyatu 'l-Kubrā* :—

“ Yea, in me the Zephyr kindled longing, O my loves, for you ;  
 Sweetly breathed the balmy Zephyr, scattering odours when it  
 blew ;

\* The words of God to Moses (Kor. vii, 139).

\* *Diwān*, p. 257 sqq.



Whispering to my heart at morning secret tales of those who dwell

(How my fainting heart it gladdened!) nigh the water and the well ;

Murmuring in the grassy meadows, garmented with gentleness,  
Languid love-sick airs diffusing, healing me of my distress.

When the green slopes wave before thee, Zephyr, in my loved Hijáz,

Thou, not wine that mads the others, art my rapture's only cause.

Thou the covenant eternal<sup>\*</sup> callest back into my mind,  
For but newly thou hast parted from my dear ones, happy Wind !

Driver of the dun-red camels that amidst acacias bide,  
Soft and sofa-like thy saddle from the long and weary ride !  
Blessings on thee, if descrying far-off Tūdih at noon-day,  
Thou wilt cross the desert hollows where the fawns of Wajra play,

And if from 'Urayd's sand-hillocks bordering on stony ground  
Thou wilt turn aside to Huzwá, driver for Suwayqa bound,  
And Tuwayli's willows leaving, if to Sal' thou thence wilt ride—  
Ask, I pray thee, of a people dwelling on the mountain-side !  
Halt among the clan I cherish (so may health attend thee still !)  
And deliver there my greeting to the Arabs of the hill.

For the tents are basking yonder, and in one of them is She  
That bestows the meeting sparely, but the parting lavishly.  
All around her as a rampart edge of sword and point of lance,  
Yet my glances stray towards her when on me she deigns to glance.

Girt about with double raiment—soul and heart of mine, no less—

She is guarded from beholders, veiled by her unveiledness.  
Death to me, in giving loose to my desire, she destineth ;  
Ah, how goodly seems the bargain, and how cheap is Love for Death !<sup>\*</sup>

Ibnu 'l-Fárid came of pure Arab stock, and his poetry is thoroughly Arabian both in form and spirit. This is not

<sup>\*</sup> This refers to Kor. vii, 171. God drew forth from the loins of Adam all future generations of men and addressed them, saying, "*Am not I your Lord ?*" They answered, "*Yes,*" and thus, according to the Šúfi interpretation, pledged themselves to love God for evermore.

<sup>\*</sup> *Díwadn*, p. 142 sqq.

the place to speak of the great Persian Ṣūfīs, but Ḥusayn b. Maṣṣūr al-Ḥallāj, who was executed in the Caliphate of Muqtadir (922 A.D.), could not have been omitted here but for the fact that Professor Browne has already given an admirable account of him, to which I am unable to add anything of importance.<sup>1</sup> The Arabs, however, have contributed to the history of Ṣūfism another memorable name—Muḥyi 'l-Dīn Ibnu 'l-'Arabī, whose life falls within the final century of the 'Abbásid period, and will therefore fitly conclude the present chapter.<sup>2</sup>

Muḥyi 'l-Dīn Muḥammad b. 'Alī Ibnu 'l-'Arabī (or Ibn 'Arabī)<sup>3</sup> was born at Mursiya (Murcia) in Spain on the 17th of Ramaḍān, 560 A.H. = July 29, 1165 A.D.

Ibnu 'l-'Arabī.

From 1173 to 1202 he resided in Seville. He then set out for the East, travelling by way of Egypt to the Ḥijāz, where he stayed a long time, and after visiting Baghdād, Mosul, and Asia Minor, finally settled at Damascus, in which city he died (638 A.H. = 1240 A.D.). His tomb below Mount Qāsiyūn was thought to be "a piece of the gardens of Paradise," and was called the Philosophers' Stone.<sup>4</sup> It is now enclosed in a mosque which bears the name of Muḥyi 'l-Dīn, and a cupola rises over it.<sup>5</sup> We know little concerning the events of his life, which seems to have been passed chiefly in travel and conversation with Ṣūfīs and in the composition of his

<sup>1</sup> See *A Literary History of Persia*, vol. i, p. 428 sqq. But during the last twenty years a great deal of new light has been thrown upon the character and doctrines of Ḥallāj. See Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> The best-known biography of Ibnu 'l-'Arabī occurs in Maqqarī's *Nafḥu 'l-Tīb*, ed. by Dozy and others, vol. i, pp. 567-583. Much additional information is contained in a lengthy article, which I have extracted from a valuable MS. in my collection, the *Shadḥardītu 'l-Dhahab*, and published in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1906, pp. 806-824. Cf. also Von Kremer's *Herrschende Ideen*, pp. 102-109.

<sup>3</sup> Muḥyi 'l-Dīn means 'Reviver of Religion.' In the West he was called Ibnu 'l-'Arabī, but the Moslems of the East left out the definite article (*al*) in order to distinguish him from the Cadi Abū Bakr Ibnu 'l-'Arabī of Seville (†1151 A.D.).

<sup>4</sup> *Al-Kūbrī al-aḥmar* (literally, 'the red sulphur').

<sup>5</sup> See Von Kremer, *op. cit.*, p. 108 seq.



voluminous writings, about three hundred in number according to his own computation. Two of these works are especially celebrated, and have caused Ibnu 'l-'Arabí to be regarded as the greatest of all Muḥammadan mystics—the *Futūḥāt al-Makkiyya*, or 'Meccan Revelations,' and the *Fuṣṣuṣ 'l-Ḥikam*, or 'Bezels of Philosophy.' The *Futūḥāt* is a huge treatise in five hundred and sixty chapters, containing a complete system of mystical science. The author relates that he saw Muḥammad in the World of Real Ideas, seated on a throne amidst angels, prophets, and saints, and received his command to discourse on the Divine mysteries. At another time, while circumambulating the Ka'ba, he met a celestial spirit wearing the form of a youth engaged in the same holy rite, who showed him the living esoteric Temple which is concealed under the lifeless exterior, even as the eternal substance of the Divine Ideas is hidden by the veils of popular religion—veils through which the lofty mind must penetrate, until, having reached the splendour within, it partakes of the Divine nature and beholds what no mortal eye can endure to look upon. Ibnu 'l-'Arabí immediately fell into a swoon. When he came to himself he was instructed to contemplate the visionary form and to write down the mysteries which it would reveal to his gaze. Then the youth entered the Ka'ba with Ibnu 'l-'Arabí, and resuming his spiritual aspect, appeared to him on a three-legged steed, breathed into his breast the knowledge of all things, and once more bade him describe the heavenly form in which all mysteries are enshrined.<sup>1</sup> Such is the reputed origin of the 'Meccan Revelations,' of which the greater portion was written in the town where inspiration descended on Muḥammad six hundred years before. The author believed, or pretended to believe, that every word of them was dictated to him by supernatural means. The

<sup>1</sup> The above particulars are derived from an abstract of the *Futūḥāt* made by 'Abdu 'l-Waḥháb al-Sha'rání († 1565 A.D.), of which Fleischer has given a full description in the *Catalogue of Manuscripts in the Leipzig Univ. Library* (1838), pp. 490-495.



*Fúṣúṣ*, a short work in twenty-seven chapters, each of which is named after one of the prophets, is no less highly esteemed, and has been the subject of numerous commentaries in Arabic, Persian, and Turkish.

Curiously enough, Ibnu 'l-'Arabí combined the most extravagant mysticism with the straitest orthodoxy. "He was a Zāhirite (literalist) in religion and a Bāṭinite (spiritualist) in his speculative beliefs."<sup>1</sup> He rejected all authority (*taqlíd*). "I am not one of those who say, 'Ibn Ḥazm said so-and-so, Aḥmad<sup>2</sup> said so-and-so, al-Nu'mán<sup>3</sup> said so-and-so,'" he declares in one of his poems. But although he insisted on punctilious adherence to the letter of the sacred law, we may suspect that his refusal to follow any human authority, analogy, or opinion was simply the overweening presumption of the seer who regards himself as divinely illuminated and infallible. (Many theologians were scandalised by the apparently blasphemous expressions which occur in his writings, and taxed him with holding heretical doctrines, *e.g.*, the incarnation of God in man (*ḥulūl*) and the identification of man with God (*ittiḥād*).) Centuries passed, but controversy continued to rage over him. He found numerous and enthusiastic partisans, who urged that the utterances of the saints must not be interpreted literally nor criticised at all. It was recognised, however, that such high mysteries were unsuitable for the weaker brethren, so that many even of those who firmly believed in his sanctity discouraged the reading of his books. They were read nevertheless, publicly and privately, from one end of the Muḥammadan world to the other; people copied them for the sake of obtaining the author's blessing, and the manuscripts were eagerly bought. Among the distinguished men who wrote in his defence we can mention here only Majdu 'l-Dín al-Fíruzábádí († 1414 A.D.), the author of the great Arabic lexicon entitled *al-Qámús*; Jalálu 'l-Dín al-Suyútí († 1445 A.D.); and 'Abdu 'l-Waḥḥáb al-Sha'rání († 1565 A.D.). (The funda-

<sup>1</sup> Maqqarí, i, 569, 11.

<sup>2</sup> Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal.

<sup>3</sup> Abú Ḥanífa.

mental principle of his system is the Unity of Being (*wahdatu 'l-wujūd*). There is no real difference between the Essence and its attributes or, in other words, between God and the universe. All created things subsist eternally as ideas (*a'yān thābita*) in the knowledge of God, and since being is identical with knowledge, their "creation" only means His knowing them, or Himself, under the aspect of actuality; the universe, in fact, is the concrete sum of the relations of the Essence as subject to itself as object. This pantheistic monism puts on an Islamic mask in the doctrine of "the Perfect Man" (*al-Insān al-Kāmil*), a phrase which Ibnu 'l-'Arabī was the first to associate with it. The Divine consciousness, evolving through a series of five planes (*ḥaḍarāt*), attains to complete expression in Man, the microcosmic being who unites the creative and creaturely attributes of the Essence and is at once the image of God and the archetype of the universe.

The doctrine of the Perfect Man.

Only through him does God know Himself and make Himself known; he is the eye of the world whereby God sees His own works. The daring paradoxes of Ibnu 'l-'Arabī's dialectic are illustrated by such verses as these:—

He praises me (by manifesting my perfections and creating me in His form),

And I praise Him (by manifesting His perfections and obeying Him).

How can He be independent when I help and aid Him?

(because the Divine attributes derive the possibility of manifestation from their human correlates).

For that cause God brought me into existence,

And I know Him and bring Him into existence (in my knowledge and contemplation of Him).<sup>1</sup>

Thus it is the primary function of Man to reveal and realise his Divine nature; and the Perfect Men, regarded individually,

<sup>1</sup> *Fuṣūṣu 'l-Ḥikam* (Cairo, A.H. 1321), p. 78. The words within brackets belong to the commentary of 'Abdu 'l-Razzāq al-Kāshānī which accompanies the text.



are the prophets and saints. Here the doctrine—an amalgam of Manichæan, Gnostic, Neo-platonic and Christian speculations—attaches itself to Muḥammad, “the Seal of the prophets.” According to Moslem belief, the pre-existent Spirit or Light of Muḥammad (*Nūr Muḥammadi*) became incarnate in Adam and in the whole series of prophets, of whom Muḥammad is the last. Muḥammad, then, is the Logos,<sup>1</sup> the Mediator, the Vicegerent of God (*Khalifat Allah*), the God-Man who has descended to this earthly sphere to make manifest the glory of Him who brought the universe into existence.

But, of course, Ibnu 'l-'Arabī's philosophy carries him far beyond the realm of positive religion. If God is the “self” of all things sensible and intelligible, it follows that He reveals Himself in every form of belief in a degree proportionate to the pre-determined capacity of the believer; the mystic alone sees that He is One in all forms, for the mystic's heart is all-receptive: it assumes whatever form God reveals Himself in, as wax takes the impression of the seal.

“My heart is capable of every form,  
A cloister for the monk, a fane for idols,  
A pasture for gazelles, the pilgrim's Ka'ba,  
The Tables of the Torah, the Koran.  
Love is the faith I hold: wherever turn  
His camels, still the one true faith is mine.”<sup>2</sup>

The vast bulk of Ibnu 'l-'Arabī's writings, his technical and scholastic terminology, his recondite modes of thought, and the lack of method in his exposition have, until recently, deterred European Orientalists from bestowing on him the attention

<sup>1</sup> Ibnu 'l-'Arabī uses the term “Idea of ideas” (*Ḥaqīqatu 'l-ḥaqd'iq*) as equivalent to λόγος ἐνδιδόκτος, while “the Idea of Muḥammad” (*al-Ḥaqīqatu 'l-Muḥammadiyya*) corresponds to λόγος προφορικὸς.

<sup>2</sup> The Arabic text of these verses will be found in the collection of Ibnu 'l-'Arabī's mystical odes, entitled *Tarjūmānu 'l-Ashwāq*, which I have edited (Oriental Translation Fund, New Series, vol. xx, p. 19, vv. 13-15).



which he deserves.<sup>1</sup> In the history of Šúfiism his name marks an epoch: it is owing to him that what began as a profoundly religious personal movement in Islam ends as an eclectic and definitely pantheistic system of philosophy. The title of "The Grand Master" (*al-Shaykh al-Akbar*), by which he is commonly designated, bears witness to his supremacy in the world of Moslem mysticism from the Mongol Invasion to the present day. In Persia and Turkey his influence has been enormous, and through his pupil, Šadru 'l-Dīn of Qóniya, he is linked with the greatest of all Šúfī poets, Jalálu 'l-Dīn Rūmī, the author of the *Mathnawī*, who died some thirty years after him. Nor did all those who borrowed his ideas call themselves Moslems. He inspired, amongst other mediæval Christian writers, "the Illuminated Doctor" Raymond Lull, and probably Dante.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ibnu 'l-'Arabi has been studied by Asin Palacios, Professor of Arabic at Madrid, whose books are written in Spanish, and H. S. Nyberg (*Kleinere Schriften des Ibn al-'Arabi*, Leiden, 1919). A general view may be obtained from my *Studies in Islamic Mysticism*, pp. 77-142 and pp. 149-161.

<sup>2</sup> See Asin Palacios, *Islam and the Divine Comedy*, London, 1926.



## CHAPTER IX

### THE ARABS IN EUROPE

It will be remembered that before the end of the first century of the Hijra, in the reign of the Umayyad Caliph, Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik (705-715 A.D.), the Moslems under Táriq and Músá b. Nušayr, crossed the Mediterranean, and having defeated Roderic the Goth in a great battle near Cadiz, rapidly brought the whole of Spain into subjection. The fate of the new province was long doubtful. The Berber insurrection which raged in Africa (734-742 A.D.) spread to Spain and threatened to exterminate the handful of Arab colonists; and no sooner was this danger past than the victors began to rekindle the old feuds and jealousies which they had inherited from their ancestors of Qays and Kalb. Once more the rival factions of Syria and Yemen flew to arms, and the land was plunged in anarchy.

Meanwhile 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán b. Mu'áwiya, a grandson of the Caliph Hishám, had escaped from the general massacre with which the 'Abbásids celebrated their triumph over the House of 'Umayya, and after five years of wandering adventure, accompanied only by his faithful freedman, Badr, had reached the neighbourhood of Ceuta, where he found a precarious shelter with the Berber tribes. Young, ambitious, and full of confidence in his destiny, 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán conceived the bold plan of

'Abdu  
'l-Raḥmán, the  
Umayyad.

throwing himself into Spain and of winning a kingdom with the help of the Arabs, amongst whom, as he well knew, there were many clients of his own family. Accordingly in 755 A.D. he sent Badr across the sea on a secret mission. The envoy accomplished even more than was expected of him. To gain over the clients was easy, for 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán was their natural chief, and in the event of his success they would share with him the prize. Their number, however, was comparatively small. The pretender could not hope to achieve anything unless he were supported by one of the great parties, Syrians or Yemenites. At this time the former, led by the feeble governor, Yúsuf b. 'Abd al-Raḥmán al-Fihri, and his cruel but capable lieutenant, Şumayl b. Hâtîm, held the reins of power and were pursuing their adversaries with ruthless ferocity. The Yemenites, therefore, hastened to range themselves on the side of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán, not that they loved his cause, but inspired solely by the prospect of taking a bloody vengeance upon the Syrians. These Spanish Moslems belonged to the true Bedouin stock!

A few months later 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán landed in Spain, occupied Seville, and, routing Yúsuf and Şumayl under the walls of Cordova, made himself master of the capital. On the same evening he presided, as Governor of Spain, over the citizens assembled for public worship in the great Mosque (May, 756 A.D.).

During his long reign of thirty-two years 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán was busily employed in defending and consolidating the empire which more than once seemed to be on the point of slipping from his grasp. The task before him was arduous in the extreme. On the one hand, he was confronted by the unruly Arab aristocracy, jealous of their independence and regarding the monarch as their common foe. Between him and them no permanent compromise was possible, and since they could only be kept in check by an armed force stronger



than themselves, he was compelled to rely on mercenaries, for the most part Berbers imported from Africa. Thus, by a fatal necessity the Moslem Empire in the West gradually assumed that despotic and Prætorian character which we have learned to associate with the 'Abbásid Government in the period of its decline, and the results were in the end hardly less disastrous. The monarchy had also to reckon with the fanaticism of its Christian subjects and with a formidable Spanish national party eager to throw off the foreign yoke. Extraordinary energy and tact were needed to maintain authority over these explosive elements, and if the dynasty founded by 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān not only survived for two centuries and a half but gave to Spain a more splendid era of prosperity and culture than she had ever enjoyed, the credit is mainly due to the bold adventurer from whom even his enemies could not withhold a tribute of admiration. One day, it is said, the Caliph Maṣṣūr asked his courtiers, "Who is the Falcon of Quraysh?" They replied, "O Prince of the Faithful, that title belongs to you who have vanquished mighty kings and have put an end to civil war." "No," said the Caliph, "it is not I." "Mu'āwiya, then, or 'Abdu 'l-Malik?" "No," said Maṣṣūr, "the Falcon of Quraysh is 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān b. Mu'āwiya, he who traversed alone the deserts of Asia and Africa, and without an army to aid him sought his fortune in an unknown country beyond the sea. With no weapons except judgment and resolution he subdued his enemies, crushed the rebels, secured his frontiers, and founded a great empire. Such a feat was never achieved by any one before."<sup>1</sup>

Of the Moslems in Spain the Arabs formed only a small minority, and they, moreover, showed all the indifference towards religion and contempt for the laws of Islam

<sup>1</sup> Abridged from Ibnu 'l-'Idhārī, *al-Bayān al-Mughrib*, ed. by Dozy, vol. ii, p. 61 seq.

which might be expected from men imbued with Bedouin traditions whose forbears had been devotedly attached to the world-loving Umayyads of Damascus. It was otherwise with the Spanish converts, the so-called 'Renegades' or *Muwalladūn* (Affiliati) living as clients under protection of the Arab nobility, and with the Berbers. These races took their adopted religion very seriously, in accordance with the fervid and sombre temperament which has always distinguished them. Hence among the mass of Spanish Moslems a rigorous orthodoxy prevailed. The Berber, Yahyá b. Yahyá († 849 A.D.), is a typical figure.

Islam in  
Spain.

At the age of twenty-eight years he travelled to the East and studied under Málík. b Anas, who dictated to him his celebrated work known as the *Muwatta'*. Yahyá was one day at Málík's lecture with a number of fellow-students, when some one said, "Here comes the elephant!" All of them ran out to see the animal, but Yahyá did not stir. "Why," said Málík, "do you not go out and look at it? Such animals are not to be seen in Spain." To this Yahyá replied, "I left my country for the purpose of seeing you and obtaining knowledge under your guidance. I did not come here to see the elephant." Málík was so pleased with this answer that he called him the most intelligent (*'áqil*) of the people of Spain. On his return to Spain Yahyá exerted himself to spread the doctrines of his master, and though he obstinately refused, on religious grounds, to accept any public office, his influence and reputation were such that, as Ibn Ḥazm says, no Cadi was ever appointed till Yahyá had given his opinion and designated the person whom he preferred.<sup>1</sup> Thus the Málíkite system, based on close adherence to tradition, became the law of the land. "The Spaniards," it is observed by a learned writer of the tenth century, "recognise only the Koran and the

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikán, ed. by Wüstenfeld, No. 802; De Slane's translation, vol. iv, p. 29 sqq.



*Muwatta'*; if they find a follower of Abú Ḥanīfa or Shāfiʿ, they banish him from Spain, and if they meet with a Muʿtazilite or a Shīʿite or any one of that sort, they often put him to death."¹ Arrogant, intensely bigoted, and ambitious of power, the Muḥammadan clergy were not disposed to play a subordinate rôle in the State. In Hishām (788-796 A.D.), the successor of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān, they had a prince after their own heart, whose piety and devotion to their interests left nothing to be desired. Ḥakam (796-822 A.D.) was less complaisant. He honoured and respected the clergy, but at the same time he let them see that he would not permit them to interfere in political affairs. The malcontents, headed by the fiery Yaḥyá b. Yaḥyá, replied with menaces and insults, and called on the populace of Cordova—especially the 'Renegades' in the southern quarter (*rabad*) of the city—to rise against the tyrant and his insolent soldiery. One day in Ramaḍān, 198 A.H. (May, 814 A.D.), Ḥakam suddenly found himself cut off from the garrison and besieged in his palace by an infuriated mob, but he did not lose courage, and, thanks to his coolness

The Revolt of  
the Suburb.

and skilful strategy, he came safely out of the peril in which he stood. The revolutionary suburb was burned to the ground and those of its inhabitants who escaped massacre, some 60,000 souls, were driven into exile. The real culprits went unpunished. Ḥakam could not afford further to exasperate the divines, who on their part began to perceive that they might obtain from the prince by favour what they had failed to wring from him by force. Being mostly Arabs or Berbers, they had a strong claim to his consideration. Their power was soon restored, and in the reign of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān II (822-852 A.D.) Yaḥyá himself, the ringleader of the mutiny, directed ecclesiastical policy and dispensed judicial patronage as he pleased.

¹ Muqaddasī (ed. by De Goeje), p. 236, cited by Goldziher, *Die Zāhiriten* p. 114.



The Revolt of the Suburb was only an episode in the long and sanguinary struggle between the Spaniards, Moslem or Christian, on the one hand, and the monarchy of Cordova on the other—a struggle complicated by the rival Arab tribes, which sometimes patched up their own feuds in order to defend themselves against the Spanish patriots, but never in any circumstances gave their support to the detested Umayyad Government. The hero of this war of independence was 'Umar b. Ḥaṣṣūn. He belonged to a noble family of West-Gothic origin which had gone over to Islam and settled in the mountainous district north-east of Malaga. Hot-blooded, quarrelsome, and ready to stab on the slightest provocation, the young man soon fell into trouble. At first he took shelter in the wild fastnesses of Ronda, where he lived as a brigand until he was captured by the police. He then crossed the sea to Africa, but in a short time returned to his old haunts and put himself at the head of a band of robbers. Here he held out for two years, when, having been obliged to surrender, he accepted the proposal of the Sultan of Cordova that he and his companions should enlist in the Imperial army. But 'Umar was destined for greater glory than the Sultan could confer upon him. A few contemptuous words from a superior officer touched his pride to the quick, so one fine day he galloped off with all his men in the direction of Ronda. They found an almost impregnable retreat in the castle of Bobastro, which had once been a Roman fortress. From this moment, says Dozy, 'Umar b. Ḥaṣṣūn was no longer a brigand-chief, but leader of the whole Spanish race in the south. The lawless and petulant free-lance was transformed into a high-minded patriot, celebrated for the stern justice with which he punished the least act of violence, adored by his soldiers, and regarded by his countrymen as the champion of the national cause. During the rest of his life (884–917 A.D.) he conducted the guerilla with untiring energy and made himself a terror to the

'Umar b. Ḥaṣṣūn.

Arabs, but fortune deserted him at the last, and he died—*felix opportunitate mortis*—only a few years before complete ruin overtook his party. The Moslem Spaniards, whose enthusiasm had been sensibly weakened by their leader's conversion to Christianity, were the more anxious to make their peace with the Government, since they saw plainly the hopelessness of continuing the struggle.

In 912 A.D. 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān III, the Defender of the Faith (*al-Nāṣir li-dīni 'llāh*), succeeded his grandfather, the Amīr 'Abdullāh, on the throne of Cordova. The character, genius, and enterprise of this great monarch are strikingly depicted in the following passage from the pen of an eloquent historian whose work, although it was published some fifty years ago, will always be authoritative<sup>1</sup> :—

"Amongst the Umayyad sovereigns who have ruled Spain the first place belongs incontestably to 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān III. What he accomplished was almost miraculous. He had found the empire abandoned to anarchy and civil war, rent by factions, parcelled amongst a multitude of heterogeneous princes, exposed to incessant attacks from the Christians of the north, and on the eve of being swallowed up either by the Léonese or the Africans. In spite of innumerable obstacles he had saved Spain both from herself and from the foreign domination. He had endowed her with new life and made her greater and stronger than she had ever been. He had given her order and prosperity at home, consideration and respect abroad. The public treasury, which he had found in a deplorable condition, was now overflowing. Of the Imperial revenues, which amounted annually to 6,245,000 pieces of gold, a third sufficed for ordinary expenses; a third was held in reserve, and 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān devoted the remainder to his buildings. It was calculated that in the year 951 he had in his coffers the enormous sum of 20,000,000 pieces of gold, so that a traveller not without judgment in matters of finance assures us that 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān and the Ḥamdānid (Nāṣiru 'l-Dawla), who was then reigning over Mesopotamia, were the wealthiest princes of that epoch. The state of the country was in

<sup>1</sup> Dozy, *Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne* (Leyden, 1861), vol. iii, p. 90 sqq.



keeping with the prosperous condition of the treasury. Agriculture, industry, commerce, the arts and the sciences, all flourished. . . . Cordova, with its half-million inhabitants, its three thousand mosques, its superb palaces, its hundred and thirteen thousand houses, its three hundred bagnios, and its twenty-eight suburbs, was inferior in extent and splendour only to Baghdád, with which city the Cordovans loved to compare it. . . . The power of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán was formidable. A magnificent fleet enabled him to dispute with the Fátimids the empire of the Mediterranean, and secured him in the possession of Ceuta, the key of Mauritania. A numerous and well-disciplined army, perhaps the finest in the world, gave him superiority over the Christians of the north. The proudest sovereigns solicited his alliance. The emperor of Constantinople, the kings of Germany, Italy, and France sent ambassadors to him.

"Assuredly, these were brilliant results; but what excites our astonishment and admiration when we study this glorious reign is not so much the work as the workman: it is the might of that comprehensive intelligence which nothing escaped, and which showed itself no less admirable in the minutest details than in the loftiest conceptions. This subtle and sagacious man, who centralises, who founds the unity of the nation and of the monarchy, who by means of his alliances establishes a sort of political equilibrium, who in his large tolerance calls the professors of another religion into his councils, is a modern king rather than a mediæval Caliph."

[In short, 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán III made the Spanish Moslems one people, and formed out of Arabs and Spaniards a united Andalusian nation, which, as we shall presently see, advanced with incredible swiftness to a height of culture that was the envy of Europe and was not exceeded by any contemporary State in the Muḥammadan East. With his death, however, the decline of the Umayyad dynasty began.] His son, Ḥakam II († 976 A.D.), left as heir-apparent a boy eleven years old, Hishám II, who received the title of Caliph while the government was carried on by his mother Aurora and the ambitious minister Muḥammad b. Abí 'Ámir. The latter was virtually monarch of Spain, and whatever may be thought of the means by which he rose to eminence, or of his treatment of the unfortunate Caliph whose

Regency of  
Manṣur Ibn Abí  
'Ámir  
(976-1002 A.D.)

\* 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán III was the first of his line to assume this title.



mental faculties he deliberately stunted and whom he condemned to a life of monkish seclusion, it is impossible to deny that he ruled well and nobly. He was a great statesman and a great soldier. No one could accuse him of making an idle boast when he named himself 'Al-Manşúr' ('The Victorious'). Twice every year he was accustomed to lead his army against the Christians, and such was the panic which he inspired that in the course of more than fifty campaigns he scarcely ever lost a battle. He died in 1002 A.D. A Christian monk, recording the event in his chronicle, adds, "he was buried in Hell," but Moslem hands engraved the following lines upon the tomb of their champion:—

"His story in his relics you may trace,  
As tho' he stood before you face to face.  
Never will Time bring forth his peer again,  
Nor one to guard, like him, the gaps of Spain."

His demise left the Prætorians masters of the situation. Berbers and Slaves<sup>2</sup> divided the kingdom between them, and

<sup>1</sup> Maqqarí, vol. i, p. 259. As Maqqarí's work is our principal authority for the literary history of Moslem Spain, I may conveniently give some account of it in this place. The author, Aḥmad b. Muḥammad al-Tilimsání al-Maqqarí († 1632 A.D.) wrote a biography of Ibnu 'l-Khaṭīb, the famous Vizier of Granada, to which he prefixed a long and discursive introduction in eight chapters: (1) Description of Spain; (2) Conquest of Spain by the Arabs; (3) History of the Spanish dynasties; (4) Cordova; (5) Spanish-Arabian scholars who travelled in the East; (6) Orientals who visited Spain; (7) Miscellaneous extracts, anecdotes, poetical citations, &c., bearing on the literary history of Spain; (8) Reconquest of Spain by the Christians and expulsion of the Arabs. The whole work is entitled *Nafḥu 'l-Tīb min ghuṣṣi 'l-Andalusī 'l-raṭīb wa-dhikri wazīrihā Lisāni 'l-Dīn Ibnu 'l-Khaṭīb*. The introduction, which contains a fund of curious and valuable information—"a library in little"—has been edited by Dozy and other European Arabists under the title of *Analectes sur l'Histoire et la Littérature des Arabes d'Espagne* (Leyden, 1855-1861).

<sup>2</sup> The name of Slaves (*Saqdliba*) was originally applied to prisoners of war, belonging to various northern races, who were sold to the Arabs of Spain, but the term was soon widened so as to include all foreign slaves serving in the harem or the army, without regard to their nationality. Like the Mamelukes and Janissaries, they formed a privileged corps under the

amidst revolution and civil war the Umayyad dynasty passed away (1031 A.D.).)

It has been said with truth that the history of Spain in the eleventh century bears a close resemblance to that of Italy in the fifteenth. The splendid empire of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān III was broken up, and from its ruins there emerged a fortuitous conglomeration of petty states governed by successful condottieri. Of these Party Kings (*Muluku 'l-Tawā'if*), as they are called by Muḥammadan writers, the most powerful were the 'Abbādids of Seville. Although it was an age of political decay, the material prosperity of Spain had as yet suffered little diminution, whilst in point of culture the society of this time reached a level hitherto unequalled. Here, then, we may pause for a moment to review the progress of literature and science during the most fruitful period of the Moslem occupation of European soil.

Whilst in Asia, as we have seen, the Arab conquerors yielded to the spell of an ancient culture infinitely superior to their own, they no sooner crossed the Straits of Gibraltar than the rôles were reversed. As the invaders extended their conquests to every part of the peninsula, thousands of Christians fell into their hands, who generally continued to live under Moslem protection. They were well treated by the Government, enjoyed religious liberty, and often rose to high offices in the army or at court. Many of them became rapidly imbued with Moslem civilisation, so that as early as the middle of the ninth century we find Alvaro, Bishop of Cordova, complaining that his co-religionists read the poems and romances of the Arabs, and studied the writings of Muḥammadan theologians and philosophers, not in patronage of the palace, and since the reign of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān III their number and influence had steadily increased. Cf. Dozy, *Hist. des Mus. d'Espagne*, vol. iii, p. 58 sqq.

The Party Kings  
(*Muluku*  
'*l-Tawā'if*).

Influence of  
Arabic culture  
on the  
Spaniards.



order to refute them but to learn how to express themselves in Arabic with correctness and elegance. "Where," he asks, "can any one meet nowadays with a layman who reads the Latin commentaries on the Holy Scriptures? Who studies the Gospels, the Prophets, the Apostles? Alas, all young Christians of conspicuous talents are acquainted only with the language and writings of the Arabs; they read and study Arabic books with the utmost zeal, spend immense sums of money in collecting them for their libraries, and proclaim everywhere that this literature is admirable. On the other hand, if you talk with them of Christian books, they reply contemptuously that these books are not worth their notice. Alas, the Christians have forgotten their own language, and amongst thousands of us scarce one is to be found who can write a tolerable Latin letter to a friend; whereas very many are capable of expressing themselves exquisitely in Arabic and of composing poems in that tongue with even greater skill than the Arabs themselves."<sup>1</sup>

However the good bishop may have exaggerated, it is evident that Muḥammadan culture had a strong attraction for the Spanish Christians, and equally, let us add, for the Jews, who made numerous contributions to poetry, philosophy, and science in their native speech as well as in the kindred Arabic idiom. The 'Renegades,' or Spanish converts to Islam, became completely Arabicised in the course of a few generations; and from this class sprang some of the chief ornaments of Spanish-Arabian literature.

Considered as a whole, the poetry of the Moslems in Europe shows the same characteristics which have already been noted in the work of their Eastern contemporaries. The paralysing conventions from which the laureates of Baghdād and Aleppo could not emancipate themselves remained in full force at Cordova and

The poetry  
of the  
Spanish Arabs.

<sup>1</sup> Dozy, *op. cit.*, vol. ii, p. 103 seq.



Seville. [Yet, just as Arabic poetry in the East was modified by the influences of Persian culture, in Spain also the gradual amalgamation of Aryans with Semites introduced new elements which have left their mark on the literature of both races. Perhaps the most interesting features of Spanish-Arabian poetry are the tenderly romantic feeling which not infrequently appears in the love-songs, a feeling that sometimes anticipates the attitude of mediæval chivalry; and in the second place an almost modern sensibility to the beauties of nature.] On account of these characteristics the poems in question appeal to many European readers who do not easily enter into the spirit of the *Mu'allaght* or the odes of Mutanabbî, and if space allowed it would be a pleasant task to translate some of the charming lyric and descriptive pieces which have been collected by anthologists. The omission, however, is less grave inasmuch as Von Schack has given us a series of excellent versions in his *Poesie und Kunst der Araber in Spanien und Sicilien* (2nd ed., Stuttgart, 1877).

"One of its marvels," says Qazwîni, referring to the town of Shilb (Silves) in Portugal, "is the fact, which innumerable persons have mentioned, that the people living there, with few exceptions, are makers of verse and devoted to belles-lettres; and if you passed by a labourer standing behind his plough and asked him to recite some verses, he would at once improvise on any subject that you might demand."¹

Of such folk-songs the *zajal* and *muwashshah* were favourite types.² Both forms were invented in Spain, and their structure is very similar, consisting of several stanzas in which the rhymes are so arranged that the master-rhyme ending each stanza and running through the whole poem like a refrain is continually interrupted by a various succession of subordinate rhymes, as is shown in the following scheme:—

¹ Qazwîni, *Athâru 'l-Bilâd*, ed. by Wüstenfeld, p. 364, l. 5 sqq.

² See Schack, *op. cit.*, vol. ii, p. 46 sqq.

aa  
bbba  
ccca  
ddda.

[Many of these songs and ballads were composed in the vulgar dialect and without regard to the rules of classical prosody. The troubadour Ibn Quzmán († 1160 A.D.) first raised the *zajal* to literary rank. Here is an example of the *muwashshah*:—

"Come, hand the precious cup to me,  
And brim it high with a golden sea!  
Let the old wine circle from guest to guest,  
While the bubbles gleam like pearls on its breast.  
So that night is of darkness dispossessed.  
How it foams and twinkles in fiery glee!  
'Tis drawn from the Pleiads' cluster, perdie.

Pass it, to music's melting sound,  
Here on this flowery carpet round,  
Where gentle dews refresh the ground  
And bathe my limbs deliciously  
In their cool and balmy fragrancy.

Alone with me in the garden green  
A singing-girl enchants the scene:  
Her smile diffuses a radiant sheen.  
I cast off shame, for no spy can see,  
And 'Hola,' I cry, 'let us merry be!'"

True to the traditions of their family, the Spanish Umayyads loved poetry, music, and polite literature a great deal better than the Koran. Even the Falcon of Quraysh, 'Abdu 'l-Rahmán I, if the famous verses on the Palm-tree are really by him, concealed something of the softer graces under his grim exterior. It is

Verses by 'Abdu  
'l-Rahmán I.

\* The Arabic original occurs in the 11th chapter of the *Halbatu 'l-Kumayt*, a collection of poems on wine and drinking by Muḥammad b. Ḥasan al-Nawáji († 1455 A.D.), and is also printed in the *Anthologie Arabe* of Grangeret de Lagrange, p. 202.

said that in his gardens at Cordova there was a solitary date-palm, which had been transplanted from Syria, and that one day 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān, as he gazed upon it, remembered his native land and felt the bitterness of exile and exclaimed:—

[ "O Palm, thou art a stranger in the West,  
Far from thy Orient home, like me unblest.  
Weep! But thou canst not. Dumb, dejected tree,  
Thou art not made to sympathise with me.  
Ah, thou wouldst weep, if thou hadst tears to pour,  
For thy companions on Euphrates' shore;  
But yonder tall groves thou rememberest not,  
As I, in hating foes, have my old friends forgot." ]

At the court of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān II (822-852 A.D.) a Persian musician was prime favourite. This was Ziryāb, a client of the Caliph Maḥdī and a pupil of the celebrated singer, Iṣḥāq al-Mawṣilī.<sup>2</sup> Iṣḥāq, seeing in the young man a dangerous rival to himself, persuaded him to quit Baghdād and seek his fortune in Spain. 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān received him with open arms, gave him a magnificent house and princely salary, and bestowed upon him every mark of honour imaginable. The versatile and accomplished artist wielded a vast influence. He set the fashion in all things appertaining to taste and manners; he fixed the toilette, sanctioned the cuisine, and prescribed what dress should be worn in the different seasons of the year. The kings of Spain took him as a model, and his authority was constantly invoked and universally recognised in that country down to the last days of Moslem rule.<sup>3</sup> Ziryāb was only one

Ziryāb the musician.

<sup>1</sup> *Al-Hullat al-Siyar* of Ibnu 'l-Abbār, ed. by Dozy, p. 34. In the last line instead of "foes" the original has "the sons of 'Abbās." Other verses addressed by 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān to this palm-tree are cited by Maqqarī, vol. ii, p. 37.

<sup>2</sup> Full details concerning Ziryāb will be found in Maqqarī, vol. ii, p. 83 sqq. Cf. Dozy, *Hist. des Mus. d'Espagne*, vol. ii, p. 89 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> Maqqarī, *loc. cit.*, p. 87, l. 10 sqq.



of many talented and learned men who came to Spain from the East, while the list of Spanish savants who journeyed "in quest of knowledge" (*fi ṭalabi 'l-'ilm*) to Africa and Egypt, to the Holy Cities of Arabia, to the great capitals of Syria and 'Irāq, to Khurāsān, Transoxania, and in some cases even to China, includes, as may be seen from the perusal of Maqqarī's fifth chapter, nearly all the eminent scholars and men of letters whom Moslem Spain has produced. Thus a lively exchange of ideas was continually in movement, and so little provincialism existed that famous Andalusian poets, like Ibn Hānī and Ibn Zaydūn, are described by admiring Eastern critics as the Buḥturīs and Mutanabbīs of the West.

The tenth century of the Christian era is a fortunate and illustrious period in Spanish history. Under 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān III and his successor, Ḥakam II, the nation, hitherto torn asunder by civil war, bent its united energies to the advancement of material and intellectual culture. Ḥakam was an enthusiastic bibliophile. He sent his agents in every direction to purchase manuscripts, and collected

400,000 volumes in his palace, which was

The Library of  
Ḥakam II.

thronged with librarians, copyists, and bookbinders. All these books, we are told, he had

himself read, and he annotated most of them with his own hand. His munificence to scholars knew no bounds. He made a present of 1,000 dīnārs to Abu 'l-Faraj of Iṣfahān, in order to secure the first copy that was published of the great 'Book of Songs' (*Kitābu 'l-Aghāni*), on which the author was then engaged. Besides honouring and encouraging the learned, Ḥakam took measures to spread the benefits of education amongst the poorest of his subjects. (With this view he founded twenty-seven free schools in the capital and paid the teachers out of his private purse. Whilst in Christian Europe the rudiments of learning were confined to the clergy, in Spain almost every one could read and write.)

"The University of Cordova was at that time one of the most celebrated in the world. In the principal Mosque, where the lectures were held, Abú Bakr b. Mu'áwiya, the Qurayshite, discussed the Traditions relating to Muḥammad. Abú 'Alí al-Qálí of Baghdád dictated a large and excellent miscellany which contained an immense quantity of curious information concerning the ancient Arabs, their proverbs, their language, and their poetry. This collection he afterwards published under the title of *Amáli*, or 'Dictations.' Grammar was taught by Ibnu 'l-Qúṭiyya, who, in the opinion of Abú 'Alí al-Qálí, was the leading grammarian of Spain. Other sciences had representatives no less renowned. Accordingly the students attending the classes were reckoned by thousands. The majority were students of what was called *fiqh*, that is to say, theology and law, for that science then opened the way to the most lucrative posts."

Among the notable savants of this epoch we may mention Ibn 'Abdi Rabbihi († 940 A.D.), laureate of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmán III and author of a well-known anthology entitled *al-Iqd al-Farid*; the poet Ibn Hání of Seville († 973 A.D.), an Ismá'ílí convert who addressed blasphemous panegyrics to the Fátimid Caliph Mu'izz;<sup>2</sup> the historians of Spain, Abú Bakr al-Rázi († 937 A.D.), whose family belonged to Rayy in Persia, and Ibnu 'l-Qúṭiyya († 977 A.D.), who, as his name indicates, was the descendant of a Gothic princess; the astronomer and mathematician Maslama b. Aḥmad of Madrid († 1007 A.D.); and the great surgeon Abu 'l-Qásim al-Zahráwí of Cordova, who died about the same time, and who became known to Europe by the name of Albucasis.

[The fall of the Spanish Umayyads, which took place in the first half of the eleventh century, left Cordova a republic and a merely provincial town; and though she might still claim to be regarded as the literary metropolis of Spain, her ancient glories were overshadowed by the independent dynasties which

<sup>1</sup> Dozy *Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne*, vol. iii, p. 107 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> See the verses cited by Ibnu 'l-Athír, vol. viii, p. 457



now begin to flourish in Seville, Almeria, Badajoz, Granada, Toledo, Malaga, Valencia, and other cities. Of these rival princedoms the most formidable in arms and the most brilliant in its cultivation of the arts was, beyond question, the family of the 'Abbádids, who reigned in Seville.] The

The 'Abbádids  
(1023-1091 A.D.).

foundations of their power were laid by the Cadi Abu 'l-Qásim Muḥammad. "He acted towards the people with such justice and moderation as drew on him the attention of every eye and the love of every heart," so that the office of chief magistrate was willingly conceded to him. In order to obtain the monarchy which he coveted, the Cadi employed an audacious ruse. The last Umayyad Caliph, Hishám II, had vanished mysteriously : it was generally supposed that, after escaping from Cordova when that city was stormed by the Berbers (1013 A.D.), he fled to Asia and died unknown ; but many believed that he was still alive. Twenty years after his disappearance there suddenly arose a pretender, named Khalaf, who gave out that he was the Caliph Hishám. The likeness between them was strong enough to make the imposture plausible. At any rate, the Cadi had his own reasons for abetting it. He called on the people, who were deeply attached to the Umayyad dynasty, to rally round their legitimate sovereign. Cordova and several other States recognised the authority of this pseudo-Caliph, whom Abu 'l-Qásim used as a catspaw. His son 'Abbád, a treacherous and blood-thirsty tyrant, but an amateur of belles-lettres, threw off the mask and reigned under the title of al-Mu'taḍid (1042-1069 A.D.). He in turn was succeeded by his son, al-Mu'tamid, whose strange and romantic history reminds one of a sentence frequently occurring in the *Arabian Nights* : "Were it graven with needle-gravers upon the eye-corners, it were a warner to whoso would be warned." He is described as "the most liberal, the most hospitable, the most munificent, and the most powerful of all the princes who ruled in Spain. His court was the halting-place of travellers, the rendezvous



of poets, the point to which all hopes were directed, and the haunt of men of talent."<sup>1</sup> Mu'tamid himself was a poet of rare distinction. "He left," says Ibn Bassâm, "some pieces of verse beautiful as the bud when it opens to disclose the flower; and had the like been composed by persons who made of poetry a profession and a merchandise, they would still have been considered charming, admirable, and singularly original."<sup>2</sup> Numberless anecdotes are told of Mu'tamid's luxurious life at Seville: his evening rambles along the banks of the Guadalquivir; his parties of pleasure; his adventures when he sallied forth in disguise, accompanied by his Vizier, the poet Ibn 'Ammâr, into the streets of the sleeping city; and his passion for the slave-girl I'timâd, commonly known as Rumaykiyya, whom he loved all his life with constant devotion.

Meanwhile, however, a terrible catastrophe was approaching. The causes which led up to it are related by Ibn Khallikân as follows 3 :—

"At that time Alphonso VI, the son of Ferdinand, the sovereign of Castile and king of the Spanish Franks, had become so powerful that the petty Moslem princes were obliged to make peace with him and pay him tribute. Mu'tamid Ibn 'Abbâd surpassed all the rest in greatness of power and extent of empire, yet he also paid tribute to Alphonso. After capturing Toledo (May 29, 1085 A.D.) the Christian monarch sent him a threatening message with the demand that he should surrender his fortresses; on which condition he might retain the open country as his own. These words provoked Mu'tamid to such a degree that he struck the ambassador and put to death all those who accompanied him."<sup>4</sup> Alphonso, who was marching on Cordova,

The Almoravides  
in Spain.

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikân, No. 697; De Slane's translation, vol. iii, p. 186.

<sup>2</sup> Ibn Khallikân, *loc. cit.*

<sup>3</sup> *Loc. cit.*, p. 189. For the sake of clearness I have slightly abridged and otherwise remodelled De Slane's translation of this passage.

<sup>4</sup> A somewhat different version of these events is given by Dozy, *Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne*, vol. iv, p. 189 sqq.

no sooner received intelligence of this event than he returned to Toledo in order to provide machines for the siege of Seville. When the Shaykhs and doctors of Islam were informed of this project they assembled and said: 'Behold how the Moslem cities fall into the hands of the Franks whilst our sovereigns are engaged in warfare against each other! If things continue in this state the Franks will subdue the entire country.' They then went to the Cadi (of Cordova), 'Abdulláh b. Muḥammad b. Adham, and conferred with him on the disasters which had befallen the Moslems and on the means by which they might be remedied. Every person had something to say, but it was finally resolved that they should write to Abú Ya'qúb Yúsuf b. Táshifin, the king of the *Mulaththamún*\* and sovereign of Morocco, imploring his assistance. The Cadi then waited on Mu'tamid, and informed him of what had passed. Mu'tamid concurred with them on the expediency of such an application, and told the Cadi to bear the message himself to Yúsuf b. Táshifin. A conference took place at Ceuta. Yúsuf recalled from the city of Morocco the troops which he had left there, and when all were mustered he sent them across to Spain, and followed with a body of 10,000 men. Mu'tamid, who had also assembled an army, went to meet him; and the Moslems, on hearing the news, hastened from every province for the purpose of combating the infidels. Alphonso, who was then at Toledo, took the field with 40,000 horse, exclusive of other troops which came to join him. He wrote a long and threatening letter to Yúsuf b. Táshifin, who inscribed on the back of it these words: '*What will happen thou shalt see!*' and returned it. On reading the answer Alphonso was filled with apprehension, and observed that this was a man of resolution. The two armies met at Zalláqa, near Badajoz. The Moslems gained the victory, and Alphonso fled with a few others, after witnessing the complete destruction of his army. This year was adopted in Spain as the commencement of a new era, and was called the year of Zalláqa."

Battle of Zalláqa  
(October 23,  
1086 A.D.).

Mu'tamid soon perceived that he had "dug his own grave"—to quote the words used by himself a few years afterwards—when he sought aid from the perfidious Almoravide. Yúsuf

\* The term *Mulaththamún*, which means literally 'wearers of the *lithám*' (a veil covering the lower part of the face), is applied to the Berber tribes of the Sahara, the so-called Almoravides (*al-Murábiṣún*), who at this time ruled over Northern Africa.



could not but contrast the beauty, riches, and magnificent resources of Spain with the barren deserts and rude civilisation of Africa. He was not content to admire at a distance the enchanting view which had been dangled before him. In the following year he returned to Spain and took possession of Granada. He next proceeded to pick a quarrel with Mu'tamid. The Berber army laid siege to Seville, and although Mu'tamid displayed the utmost bravery, he was unable to prevent the fall of his capital (September, 1091 A.D.). The unfortunate prince was thrown into chains and transported to Morocco.

Captivity and  
death of  
Mu'tamid.

Yūsuf spared his life, but kept him a prisoner at Aghmât, where he died in 1095 A.D. During his captivity he bewailed in touching poems the misery of his state, the sufferings which he and his family had to endure, and the tragic doom which suddenly deprived him of friends, fortune, and power. "Every one loves Mu'tamid," wrote an historian of the thirteenth century, "every one pities him, and even now he is lamented."<sup>1</sup> He deserved no less, for, as Dozy remarks, he was "the last Spanish-born king (*le dernier roi indigène*), who represented worthily, nay, brilliantly, a nationality and culture which succumbed, or barely survived, under the dominion of barbarian invaders."<sup>2</sup>

The Age of the Tyrants, to borrow from Greek history a designation which well describes the character of this period, yields to no other in literary and scientific renown. Poetry was cultivated at every Andalusian court. If Seville could point with just pride to Mu'tamid and his Vizier, Ibn 'Ammâr, Cordova claimed a second pair almost equally illustrious—Ibn Zaydûn (1003-1071 A.D.) and Wallâda, a daughter of the Umayyad Caliph al-Mustakfi. Ibn Zaydûn entered upon a political career and became the confidential agent of Ibn Jahwar, the chief

Ibn Zaydûn.

<sup>1</sup> Ibnu 'l-Abbâr (Dozy, *Locs de Abbâdids*, vol. ii, p. 63).

<sup>2</sup> *Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne*, vol. iv, p. 287.



magistrate of Cordova, but he fell into disgrace, probably on account of his love for the beautiful and talented princess, who inspired those tender melodies which have caused the poet's European biographers to link his name with Tibullus and Petrarch. In the hope of seeing her, although he durst not show himself openly, he lingered in al-Zahrá, the royal suburb of Cordova built by 'Abdu 'l-Rahmán III. At last, after many wanderings, he found a home at Seville, where he was cordially received by Mu'taḍid, who treated him as an intimate friend and bestowed on him the title of *Dhu 'l-Wizáratayn*.<sup>1</sup> The following verses, which he addressed to Walláda, depict the lovely scenery of al-Zahrá and may serve to illustrate the deep feeling for nature which, as has been said, is characteristic of Spanish-Arabian poetry in general.<sup>2</sup>

"To-day my longing thoughts recall thee here;  
 The landscape glitters, and the sky is clear.  
 So feebly breathes the gentle zephyr's gale,  
 In pity of my grief it seems to fail.  
 The silvery fountains laugh, as from a girl's  
 Fair throat a broken necklace sheds its pearls.  
 Oh, 'tis a day like those of our sweet prime,  
 When, stealing pleasures from indulgent Time,  
 We played midst flowers of eye-bewitching hue,  
 That bent their heads beneath the drops of dew.  
 Alas, they see me now bereaved of sleep;  
 They share my passion and with me they weep.  
 Here in her sunny haunt the rose blooms bright,  
 Adding new lustre to Aurora's light;  
 And waked by morning beams, yet languid still,  
 The rival lotus doth his perfume spill.

<sup>1</sup> I.e., 'holder of the two vizierships'—that of the sword and that of the pen. See De Slane's translation of Ibn Khallikán, vol. iii, p. 130, n. 1.

<sup>2</sup> The Arabic text of this poem, which occurs in the *Qalá'idu 'l-Iqádn* of Ibn Kháqán, will be found on pp. 24-25 of Weyers's *Specimen criticum exhibens locos Ibn Khacanis de Ibn Zeidouno* (Leyden, 31).

All stirs in me the memory of that fire  
 Which in my tortured breast will ne'er expire.  
 Had death come ere we parted, it had been  
 The best of all days in the world, I ween;  
 And this poor heart, where thou art every thing,  
 Would not be fluttering now on passion's wing.  
 Ah, might the zephyr waft me tenderly,  
 Worn out with anguish as I am, to thee!  
 O treasure mine, if lover e'er possessed  
 A treasure! O thou dearest, queenliest!  
 Once, once, we paid the debt of love complete  
 And ran an equal race with eager feet.  
 How true, how blameless was the love I bore,  
 Thou hast forgotten; but I still adore!"

The greatest scholar and the most original genius of Moslem Spain is Abú Muḥammad 'Alī Ibn Ḥazm, who was born at Cordova in 994 A.D. He came of a 'Renegade' family, but he was so far from honouring his Christian ancestors that he pretended to trace his descent to a Persian freedman of Yazīd b. Abī Sufyān, a brother of the first Umayyad Caliph, Mu'āwiyā; and his contempt for Christianity was in proportion to his fanatical zeal on behalf of Islam. His father, Aḥmad, had filled the office of Vizier under Maṣṣūr Ibn Abī 'Āmir, and Ibn Ḥazm himself plunged ardently into politics as a client—through his false pedigree—of the Umayyad House, to which he was devotedly attached. Before the age of thirty he became prime minister of 'Abdu 'l-Raḥmān V (1023–1024 A.D.), but on the fall of the Umayyad Government he retired from public life and gave himself wholly to literature. Ibn Bashkuwāl, author of a well-known biographical dictionary of Spanish celebrities entitled *al-Ṣila fī akhbārī a'immati 'l-Andalus*, speaks of him in these terms: "Of all the natives of Spain Ibn Ḥazm was the most eminent by the universality and the depth of his learning in the sciences cultivated by the Moslems; add to this his profound acquaintance with the Arabic tongue, and his vast abilities

Ibn Ḥazm  
 (994–1064 A.D.).

as an elegant writer, a poet, a biographer, and an historian ; his son possessed about 400 volumes, containing nearly 80,000 leaves, which Ibn Ḥazm had composed and written out."<sup>1</sup> It is recorded that he said, "My only desire in seeking knowledge was to attain a high scientific rank in this world and the next."<sup>2</sup> He got little encouragement from his contemporaries. The mere fact that he belonged to the Zāhirite school of theology would not have mattered, but the caustic style in which he attacked the most venerable religious authorities of Islam aroused such bitter hostility that he was virtually excommunicated by the orthodox divines. People were warned against having anything to do with him, and at Seville his writings were solemnly committed to the flames. On this occasion he is said to have remarked—

"The paper ye may burn, but what the paper holds  
Ye cannot burn : 'tis safe within my breast : where I  
Remove, it goes with me, alights when I alight,  
And in my tomb will lie."<sup>3</sup>

After being expelled from several provinces of Spain, Ibn Ḥazm withdrew to a village, of which he was the owner, and remained there until his death. Of his numerous writings only a few have escaped destruction, but fortunately we possess the most valuable of them all, the 'Book of Religions and Sects' (*Kitābu 'l-Milal wa-'l-Niḥal*),<sup>4</sup> which was recently printed in Cairo for the first time. This work treats in controversial fashion (1) of the non-Muḥammadan religious systems, especially Judaism, Christianity, and Zoroastrianism, and (2) of Islam and its dogmas, which are of course regarded from the Zāhirite

<sup>1</sup> Cited by Ibn Khallikān in his article on Ibn Ḥazm (De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 268).

<sup>2</sup> Maqqarī, vol. i, p. 511, l. 21.      <sup>3</sup> Maqqarī, *loc. cit.* p. 515, l. 5 seq.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 341, note 1.



standpoint, and of the four principal Muhammadan sects, viz., the Mu'tazilites, the Murjites, the Shi'ites, and the Khárijites. The author maintains that these sects owed their rise to the Persians, who sought thus to revenge themselves upon victorious Islam.<sup>1</sup>

The following are some of the most distinguished Spanish writers of this epoch: the historian, <sup>Literature in Spain in the eleventh century.</sup> Abú Marwán Ibn Ḥayyán of Cordova († 1075 A.D.), whose chief works are a colossal history of Spain in sixty volumes entitled *al-Maṭn* and a smaller chronicle (*al-Muqtabis*), both of which appear to have been almost entirely lost;<sup>2</sup> the jurisconsult and poet, Abu 'l-Walíd al-Bájl († 1081 A.D.); the traditionist Yúsf Ibn 'Abd al-Barr († 1071 A.D.); and the geographer al-Bakrī, a native of Cordova, where he died in 1094 A.D. Finally, mention should be made of the famous Jews, Solomon Ibn Gabirol (Avicbron) and Samuel Ha-Levi. The former, who was born at Malaga about 1020 A.D., wrote two philosophical works in Arabic, and his *Fons Vitæ* played an important part in the development of mediæval scholasticism. Samuel Ha-Levi was Vizier to Bádls, the sovereign of Granada (1038-1073 A.D.). In their admiration of his extraordinary accomplishments the Arabs all but forgot that he was a Jew and a prince (*Naghld*) in Israel.<sup>3</sup> Samuel, on his part, when he wrote letters of State, did not scruple to employ the usual Muhammadan formulas, "Praise to Allah!" "May Allah bless our Prophet Muhammad!"

<sup>1</sup> The contents of the *Kilábu 'l-Milal wa-'l-Nihál* are fully summarised by Dozy in the Leyden Catalogue, vol. iv, pp. 230-237. Cf. also *Zur Komposition von Ibn Ḥazm's Milal wa-'n-Nihál*, by Israel Friedlaender in the *Nöldeke-Festschrift* (Giessen, 1906), vol. i, p. 267 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> So far as I am aware, the report that copies are preserved in the great mosque at Tunis has not been confirmed.

<sup>3</sup> His Arabic name is Ismá'il b. Naghdála. See the Introduction to Dozy's ed. of *Ibnu 'l-'Idhári*, p. 84, n. 1.

and to glorify Islam quite in the manner of a good Moslem. He had a perfect mastery of Hebrew and Arabic; he knew five other languages, and was profoundly versed in the sciences of the ancients, particularly in astronomy. With all his learning he was a supple diplomat and a man of the world. Yet he always preserved a dignified and unassuming demeanour, although in his days (according to Ibnu 'l-'Idhârî) "the Jews made themselves powerful and behaved arrogantly towards the Moslems."<sup>1</sup>

[During the whole of the twelfth, and well into the first half of the thirteenth, century Spain was ruled by two African dynasties, the Almoravides and the Almohades, which originated, as their names denote, in the religious fanaticism of the Berber tribes of the Sahara.] The rise of the Almoravides is related by Ibnu 'l-Athîr as follows:—

"In this year (448 A.H. = 1056 A.D.) was the beginning of the power of the *Mulaththamûn*.<sup>2</sup> These were a number of tribes

descended from Himyar, of which the most considerable were Lamtûna, Jadâla, and Lamta. . . . Now in

the above-mentioned year a man of Jadâla, named

Jawhar, set out for Africa<sup>4</sup> on his way to the Pilgrimage, for he loved religion and the people thereof. At Qayrawân he fell in with a certain divine—Abû 'Imrân al-Fâsî, as is generally supposed—and a company of persons who were studying theology under him. Jawhar was much pleased with what he saw of their piety, and on his return from Mecca he begged Abû 'Imrân to send back with him to the desert a teacher who should instruct the ignorant Berbers in the laws of Islam. So Abû 'Imrân sent

<sup>1</sup> An interesting notice of Samuel Ha-Levi is given by Dozy in his *Hist. des Mus. d'Espagne*, vol. iv, p. 27 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Kdmil* of Ibnu 'l-Athîr, ed. by Tornberg, vol. ix, p. 425 sqq. The following narrative (which has been condensed as far as possible) differs in some essential particulars from the accounts given by Ibn Khaldûn (*History of the Berbers*, De Slane's translation, vol. ii, p. 64 sqq.) and by Ibn Abi Zar' (Tornberg, *Annales Regum Mauritanie*, p. 100 sqq. of the Latin version). Cf. A. Müller, *Der Islam*, vol. ii, p. 611 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> See note on p. 423.

<sup>4</sup> The province of Tunis.



with him a man called 'Abdulláh b. Yásín al-Kuzúli, who was an excellent divine, and they journeyed together until they came to the tribe of Lamtúna. Then Jawhar dismounted from his camel and took hold of the bridle of 'Abdulláh b. Yásín's camel, in reverence for the law of Islam; and the men of Lamtúna approached Jawhar and greeted him and questioned him concerning his companion. 'This man,' he replied, 'is the bearer of the Sunna of the Apostle of God: he has come to teach you what is necessary in the religion of Islam.' So they bade them both welcome, and said to 'Abdulláh, 'Tell us the law of Islam,' and he explained it to them. They answered, 'As to what you have told us of prayer and alms-giving, that is easy; but when you say, "He that kills shall be killed, and he that steals shall have his hand cut off, and he that commits adultery shall be flogged or stoned," that is an ordinance which we will not lay upon ourselves. Begone elsewhere!' . . . And they came to Jadála, Jawhar's own tribe, and 'Abdulláh called on them and the neighbouring tribes to fulfil the law, and some consented while others refused. Then, after a time, 'Abdulláh said to his followers, 'Ye must fight the enemies of the Truth, so appoint a commander over you.' Jawhar answered, 'Thou art our commander,' but 'Abdulláh declared that he was only a missionary, and on his advice the command was offered to Abú Bakr b. 'Umar, the chief of Lamtúna, a man of great authority and influence. Having prevailed upon him to act as leader, 'Abdulláh began to preach a holy war, and gave his adherents the name of Almoravides (*al-Murábitún*)."

The little community rapidly increased in numbers and power. Yúsuf b. Táshifín, who succeeded to the command in 1069 A.D., founded the city of Morocco, and from this centre made new conquests in every direction, so that ere long the Almoravides ruled over the whole of North-West Africa from Senegal to Algeria. We have already seen how Yúsuf was invited by

The Almoravide  
Empire  
(1056-1147 A.D.).

\* *Murábit* is literally 'one who lives in a *ribát*,' i.e., a guardhouse or military post on the frontier. Such buildings were often occupied, in addition to the garrison proper, by individuals who, from pious motives, wished to take part in the holy war (*jihád*) against the unbelievers. The word *murábit*, therefore, gradually got an exclusively religious signification, 'devotee' or 'saint,' which appears in its modern form, *marabout*. As applied to the original Almoravides, it still retains a distinctly military flavour.



the 'Abbáids to lead an army into Spain, how he defeated Alphonso VI at Zalláqa and, returning a few years later, this time not as an ally but as a conqueror, took possession of Granada and Seville. The rest of Moslem Spain was subdued without much trouble: laity and clergy alike hailed in the Berber monarch a zealous reformer of the Faith and a mighty bulwark against its Christian enemies. The hopeful prospect was not realised. Spanish civilisation enervated the Berbers, but did not refine them. Under the narrow bigotry of Yúsuf and his successors free thought became impossible, culture and science faded away. Meanwhile the country was afflicted by famine, brigandage, and all the disorders of a feeble and corrupt administration.

The empire of the Almoravides passed into the hands of another African dynasty, the Almohades.<sup>1</sup> Their founder, *Ibn Túmart*, was a native of the mountainous district of Sús which lies to the south-west of Morocco. When a youth he made the Pilgrimage to Mecca (about 1108 A.D.), and also visited Baghdád, where he studied in the Nizámiyya College and is said to have met the celebrated Ghazálí. He returned home with his head full of theology and ambitious schemes. We need not dwell upon his career from this point until he finally proclaimed himself as the Mahdí (1121 A.D.), nor describe the familiar methods—some of them disreputable enough—by which he induced the Berbers to believe in him. His doctrines, however, may be briefly stated. "In most questions," says one of his biographers,<sup>2</sup> "he followed the system of Abu 'l-Hasan al-Ash'arí, but he agreed with the Mu'tazilites in their denial of the Divine Attributes and in a few matters besides; and he

<sup>1</sup> See Goldziher's article *Materialien zur Kenntniss der Almohadenbewegung in Nordafrika* (Z.D.M.G., vol. 41, p. 30 sqq.).

<sup>2</sup> 'Abdu 'l-Wáhid, *History of the Almohades*, ed. by Dory, p. 135, l. 1 sqq.

was at heart somewhat inclined to Shi'ism, although he gave it no countenance in public."<sup>1</sup> The gist of his teaching is indicated by the name *Muwahhīd* (Unitarian), which he bestowed on himself, and which his successors adopted as their dynastic title.<sup>2</sup> Ibn Tūmart emphasised the Unity of God; in other words, he denounced the anthropomorphic ideas which prevailed in Western Islam and strove to replace them by a purely spiritual conception of the Deity. To this main doctrine he added a second, that of the Infallible Imām (*al-Imām al-Ma'ṣūm*), and he naturally asserted that the Imām was Muḥammad Ibn Tūmart, a descendant of 'Alī b. Abī Tālib.

On the death of the Maḥdī (1130 A.D.) the supreme command devolved upon his trusted lieutenant, 'Abdu 'l-Mu'min, who carried on the holy war against the Almoravides with growing success, until in 1158 A.D. he "united the whole coast from the frontier of Egypt to the Atlantic, together with Moorish Spain, under his sceptre."<sup>3</sup> The new dynasty was far more enlightened and favourable to culture than the Almoravides had been. Yūsuf, the son of 'Abdu 'l-Mu'min, is described as an excellent scholar, whose mind was stored with the battles and traditions and history of the Arabs before and after Islam. But he found his highest pleasure in the study and patronage of philosophy. The great Aristotelian, Ibn Tūfayl, was his Vizier and court physician; and Ibn Rushd (Averroes) received flattering honours both from him and from his successor, Ya'qūb al-Manṣūr, who loved to converse with the philosopher on scientific topics, although in a fit of orthodoxy he banished him for a time.<sup>4</sup> This curious mixture

The Almohades  
(1130-1269 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> The Berbers at this time were Sunnite and anti-Fātimid.

<sup>2</sup> Almohade is the Spanish form of *al-Muwahhīd*.

<sup>3</sup> Stanley Lane-Poole, *The Mohammadan Dynasties*, p. 46.

<sup>4</sup> Renan, *Averroès et l'Averroïsme*, p. 12 sqq.



of liberality and intolerance is characteristic of the Almohades. However they might encourage speculation in its proper place, their law and theology were cut according to the plain Zāhirite pattern. "The Koran and the Traditions of the Prophet—or else the sword!" is a saying of the last-mentioned sovereign, who also revived the *autos-da-fé*, which had been prohibited by his grandfather, of Mālikite and other obnoxious books.<sup>1</sup> The spirit of the Almohades is admirably reflected in Ibn Ṭufayl's famous philosophical romance, named after its hero, *Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān*, i.e., 'Alive, son of Awake,'<sup>2</sup> of which the following summary is given by Mr. Duncan B. Macdonald in his excellent *Muslim Theology* (p. 253):—

"In it he conceives two islands, the one inhabited and the other not. On the inhabited island we have conventional people living conventional lives, and restrained by a conventional religion of rewards and punishments. Two men there, <sup>The story of Ḥayy b. Yaqẓān.</sup> Salāmān and Asāl,<sup>3</sup> have raised themselves to a higher level of self-rule. Salāmān adapts himself externally to the popular religion and rules the people; Asāl, seeking to perfect himself still further in solitude, goes to the other island. But there he finds a man, Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān, who has lived alone from infancy and has gradually, by the innate and uncorrupted powers of the mind, developed himself to the highest philosophic level and reached the Vision of the Divine. He has passed through all the stages of knowledge until the universe lies clear before him, and now he finds that his philosophy thus reached, without prophet or revelation, and the purified religion of Asāl are one and the same. The story told by Asāl of the people of the other island sitting in darkness stirs his soul, and he goes forth to them as a missionary. But he soon learns that the method of Muḥammad was the true one

<sup>1</sup> See a passage from 'Abdu 'l-Wāḥid's *History of the Almohades* (p. 201, l. 19 sqq.), which is translated in Goldziher's *Zāhiriten*, p. 174.

<sup>2</sup> The Arabic text, with a Latin version by E. Pocock, was published in 1671, and again in 1700, under the title *Philosophus Autodidactus*. An English translation by Simon Ockley appeared in 1708, and has been several times reprinted.

<sup>3</sup> The true form of this name is Absāl, as in Jāmi's celebrated poem. Cf. De Boer, *The History of Philosophy in Islam*, translated by E. R. Jones, p. 144.



for the great masses, and that only by sensuous allegory and concrete things could they be reached and held. He retires to his island again to live the solitary life."

Of the writers who flourished under the Berber dynasties few are sufficiently important to deserve mention in a work of this kind. The philosophers, however, stand in

Literature under the Almoravides and Almohades (1100-1250 A.D.). a class by themselves. Ibn Bájja (Avempace), Ibn Rushd (Averroes), Ibn Tufayl, and Músá b.

Maymún (Maimonides) made their influence felt far beyond the borders of Spain: they belong, in a sense, to Europe. We have noticed elsewhere the great mystic, Muhyi 'l-Dín Ibnu 'l-'Arabí († 1240 A.D.); his fellow-townsmen, Ibn Sab'ín († 1269 A.D.), a thinker of the same type, wrote letters on philosophical subjects to Frederick II of Hohenstaufen. Valuable works on the literary history of Spain were composed by Ibn Kháqán († 1134 A.D.), Ibn Bassám († 1147 A.D.), and Ibn Bashkuwál († 1183 A.D.). The geographer Idrísí († 1154 A.D.) was born at Ceuta, studied at Cordova, and found a patron in the Sicilian monarch, Roger II; Ibn Jubayr published an interesting account of his pilgrimage from Granada to Mecca and of his journey back to Granada during the years 1183-1185 A.D.; Ibn Zuhri (Avenzoar), who became a Vizier under the Almoravides, was the first of a whole family of eminent physicians; and Ibnu 'l-Bayṭár of Malaga († 1248 A.D.), after visiting Egypt, Greece, and Asia Minor in order to extend his knowledge of botany, compiled a *Materia Medica*, which he dedicated to the Sultan of Egypt, Malik al-Kámil.

[We have now taken a rapid survey of the Moslem empire in Spain from its rise in the eighth century of our era down to the last days of the Almohades, which saw the Christian arms everywhere triumphant. By 1230 A.D. the Almohades had been driven out of the peninsula, although they continued to rule Africa for about

Reconquest of Spain by Ferdinand III.

forty years after this date. Amidst the general wreck one spot remained where the Moors could find shelter. This was Granada. Here, in 1232 A.D., Muḥammad Ibnu 'l-Aḥmar assumed the proud title of 'Conqueror by Grace of God' (*Ghālib billāh*) and founded the Naṣrid dynasty, which held the Christians at bay during two centuries and a half. That the little Moslem kingdom survived so long was not due to its own strength, but rather to its almost impregnable situation and to the dissensions of the victors. The latest bloom of Arabic culture in Europe renewed, if it did not equal, the glorious memories of Cordova and Seville. In this period arose the world-renowned Alhambra, *i.e.*, 'the Red Palace' (*al-Ḥamrá*) of the Naṣrid kings, and many other superb monuments of which the ruins are still visible. We must not, however, be led away into a digression even upon such a fascinating subject as Moorish architecture. Our information concerning literary matters is scantier than it might have been, on account of the vandalism practised by the Christians when they took Granada. It is no dubious legend (like the reputed burning of the Alexandrian Library by order of the Caliph 'Umar),<sup>1</sup> but a well-ascertained fact that the ruthless Archbishop Ximenez made a bonfire of all the Arabic manuscripts on which he could lay his hands. He wished to annihilate the record of seven centuries of Muḥammadan culture in a single day.

The names of Ibnu 'l-Khaṭīb and Ibn Khaldūn represent the highest literary accomplishment and historical comprehension of which this age was capable. The latter, indeed, has no parallel among Oriental historians.

Lisānu 'l-Dīn Ibnu 'l-Khaṭīb<sup>2</sup> played a great figure in the

<sup>1</sup> Jurjī Zaydān, however, is disposed to regard the story as being not without foundation. See his interesting discussion of the evidence in his *Ta'rikhu 'l-Tamaddun al-Islāmī* ('History of Islamic Civilisation'), Part III, pp. 40-46.

<sup>2</sup> The life of Ibnu 'l-Khaṭīb has been written by his friend and contemporary, Ibn Khaldūn (*Hist. of the Berbers*, translated by De Slane, vol. iv.



politics of his time, and his career affords a conspicuous example of the intimate way in which Moslem poetry and literature are connected with public life. "The Arabs did not share the opinion widely spread nowadays, that poetical talent flourishes best in seclusion from the tumult of the world, or that it dims the clearness of vision which is required for the conduct of public affairs. On the contrary, their princes entrusted the chief offices of State to poets, and poetry often served as a means to obtain more brilliant results than diplomatic notes could have procured."<sup>1</sup> A young

Ibnu 'l-Khaṭīb  
(1313-1374 A.D.).

man like Ibnu 'l-Khaṭīb, who had mastered the entire field of belles-lettres, who improvised odes and rhyming epistles with incomparable elegance and facility, was marked out to be the favourite of kings. He became Vizier at the Naṣrid court, a position which he held, with one brief interval of disgrace, until 1371 A.D., when the intrigues of his enemies forced him to flee from Granada. He sought refuge at Fez, and was honourably received by the reigning Sultan, 'Abdu 'l-'Azīz; but on the accession of Abu 'l-'Abbās in 1374 A.D. the exiled minister was incarcerated and brought to trial on the charge of heresy (*zandaqa*). While the inquisition was proceeding a fanatical mob broke into the gaol and murdered him. Maqqarī relates that Ibnu 'l-Khaṭīb suffered from insomnia, and that most of his works were composed during the night, for which reason he got the nickname of *Dhu 'l-'Umrāyn*, or 'The man of two lives.'<sup>2</sup> He was a prolific writer in various branches of literature, but, like so many of his countrymen, he excelled in History. His monographs on the sovereigns and savants of Granada (one of which includes an autobiography) supply interesting details concerning this obscure period.

p. 390 sqq.), and forms the main subject of Maqqarī's *Nafḥu 'l-Ṭīb* (vols. iii and iv of the Bulāq edition).

<sup>1</sup> Schack, *op. cit.*, vol. i, p. 312 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Cited in the *Shadharātu 'l-Dhahab*, a MS. in my collection. See *J.R.A.S.* for 1899, p. 911 seq., and for 1906, p. 797.



Some apology may be thought necessary for placing Ibn Khaldūn, the greatest historical thinker of Islam, in the present chapter, as though he were a Spaniard either by birth or residence. He descended, it is true, from a family, the Banū Khaldūn, which had long been settled in Spain, first at Carmona and afterwards at Seville; but they migrated to Africa about the middle of the thirteenth century, and Ibn Khaldūn was born at Tunis. Nearly the whole of his life, moreover, was passed in Africa—a circumstance due rather to accident than to predilection; for in 1362 A.D. he entered the service of the Sultan of Granada, Abū 'Abdallāh Ibnu 'l-Aḥmar, and would probably have made that city his home had not the jealousy of his former friend, the Vizier Ibnu 'l-Khaṭīb, decided him to leave Spain behind. We cannot give any account of the agitated and eventful career which he ended, as Cadi of Cairo, in 1406 A.D. Ibn Khaldūn lived with statesmen and kings: he was an ambassador to the court of Pedro of Castile, and an honoured guest of the mighty Tamerlane. The results of his ripe experience are marvellously displayed in the *Prolegomena* (*Muqaddima*), which forms the first volume of a huge general history entitled the *Kitābu 'l-'Ibar* ('Book of Examples').<sup>1</sup> He himself has stated his idea of the historian's function in the following words:—

"Know that the true purpose of history is to make us acquainted with human society, *i.e.*, with the civilisation of the world, and with its natural phenomena, such as savage life, the softening of manners, attachment to the family and the tribe, the various kinds of superiority which one people gains over another, the kingdoms and diverse dynasties which arise in this way, the different trades and laborious occupations to

Ibn Khaldūn as  
a philosophical  
historian.

<sup>1</sup> The Arabic text of the *Prolegomena* has been published by Quatremère in *Notices et extraits des manuscrits de la Bibliothèque Impériale*, vols. 16-18, and at Beyrout (1879, 1886, and 1900). A French translation by De Slane appeared in *Not. et Extraits*, vols. 19-21.

which men devote themselves in order to earn their livelihood, the sciences and arts; in fine, all the manifold conditions which naturally occur in the development of civilisation."<sup>1</sup>

Ibn Khaldún argues that History, thus conceived, is subject to universal laws, and in these laws he finds the only sure criterion of historical truth.

"The rule for distinguishing what is true from what is false in history is based on its possibility or impossibility: that is to say, we must examine human society (civilisation) and discriminate between the characteristics which are essential and inherent in its nature and those which are accidental and need not be taken into account, recognising further those which cannot possibly belong to it. If we do this we have a rule for separating historical truth from error by means of a demonstrative method that admits of no doubt. . . . It is a genuine touchstone whereby historians may verify whatever they relate."<sup>2</sup>

Here, indeed, the writer claims too much, and it must be allowed that he occasionally applied his principles in a pedantic fashion, and was led by purely *a priori* considerations to conclusions which are not always so warrantable as he believed. This is a very trifling matter in comparison with the value and originality of the principles themselves. Ibn Khaldún asserts, with justice, that he has discovered a new method of writing history. No Moslem had ever taken a view at once so comprehensive and so philosophical; none had attempted to trace the deeply hidden causes of events, to expose the moral and spiritual forces at work beneath the surface, or to divine the immutable laws of national progress and decay. Ibn Khaldún owed little to his predecessors, although he mentions some of them with respect. He stood far above his age, and his own countrymen have admired rather than followed him. His intellectual descendants are the great

<sup>1</sup> *Muqaddima* (Beyrouth ed. of 1900), p. 35, l. 5 sqq. = Prolegomena translated by De Slane, vol. i, p. 71.

<sup>2</sup> *Muqaddima*, p. 37, l. 4 fr. foot = De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 77.



medizæval and modern historians of Europe—Machiavelli and Vico and Gibbon.

It is worth while to sketch briefly the peculiar theory of historical development which Ibn Khaldún puts forward in his Prolegomena—a theory founded on the study of actual conditions and events either past or passing before his eyes.<sup>1</sup> He was struck, in the first place, with the physical fact that in almost every part of the Muḥammadan Empire great wastes of sand or stony plateaux, arid and incapable of tillage, wedge themselves between fertile domains of cultivated land. The former were inhabited from time immemorial by nomad tribes, the latter by an agricultural or industrial population; and we have seen, in the case of Arabia, that cities like Mecca and Hîra carried on a lively intercourse with the Bedouins and exerted a civilising influence upon them. In Africa the same contrast was strongly marked. It is no wonder, therefore, that Ibn Khaldún divided the whole of mankind into two classes—Nomads and Citizens. The nomadic life naturally precedes and produces the other. Its characteristics are simplicity and purity of manners, warlike spirit, and, above all, a loyal devotion to the interests of the family and the tribe. As the nomads become more civilised they settle down, form states, and make conquests. They have now reached their highest development. Corrupted by luxury, and losing the virtues which raised them to power, they are soon swept away by a ruder people. Such, in bare outline, is the course of history as Ibn Khaldún regards it; but we must try to give our readers some further account of the philosophical ideas

<sup>1</sup> Von Kremer has discussed Ibn Khaldún's ideas more fully than is possible here in an admirably sympathetic article, *Ibn Chaldun und seine Culturgeschichte der islamischen Reiche*, contributed to the *Sitz. der Kais. Akad. der Wissenschaften*, vol. 93 (Vienna, 1879). I have profited by many of his observations, and desire to make the warmest acknowledgment of my debt to him in this as in countless other instances.



underlying his conception. He discerns, in the life of tribes and nations alike, two dominant forces which mould their destiny. The primitive and cardinal force he calls '*aṣabiyya*', the *binding* element in society, the feeling which unites members of the same family, tribe, nation, or empire, and which in its widest acceptation is equivalent to the modern term, Patriotism. It springs up and especially flourishes among nomad peoples, where the instinct of self-preservation awakens a keen sense of kinship and drives men to make common cause with each other. This '*aṣabiyya*' is the vital energy of States: by it they rise and grow; as it weakens they decline; and its decay is the signal for their fall. The second of the forces referred to is Religion. Ibn Khaldūn hardly ascribes to religion so much influence as we might have expected from a Moslem. He recognises, however, that it may be the only means of producing that solidarity without which no State can exist. Thus in the twenty-seventh chapter of his *Muqaddima* he lays down the proposition that "the Arabs are incapable of founding an empire unless they are imbued with religious enthusiasm by a prophet or a saint."

In History he sees an endless cycle of progress and retrogression, analogous to the phenomena of human life. Kingdoms are born, attain maturity, and die within a definite period which rarely exceeds three generations, *i.e.*, 120 years.<sup>1</sup> During this time they pass through five stages of development and decay.<sup>2</sup> It is noteworthy that Ibn Khaldūn admits the moral superiority of the Nomads. For him civilisation necessarily involves corruption and degeneracy. If he did not believe in the gradual advance of mankind towards some higher goal, his pessimism was justified by the lessons of experience and by the mournful plight of the Muḥammadan world, to which his view was restricted.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Muqaddima*, Beyrout ed., p. 170 = De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 347 sqq.

<sup>2</sup> *Muqaddima*, p. 175 = De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 356 sqq.

<sup>3</sup> An excellent appreciation of Ibn Khaldūn as a scientific historian will

In 1492 A.D. the last stronghold of the European Arabs opened its gates to Ferdinand and Isabella, and "the Cross supplanted the Crescent on the towers of Granada." The victors showed a barbarous fanaticism that was the more abominable as it violated their solemn pledges to respect the religion and property of the Moslems, and as it utterly reversed the tolerant and liberal treatment which the Christians of Spain had enjoyed under Muhammadan rule. Compelled to choose between apostasy and exile, many preferred the latter alternative. Those who remained were subjected to a terrible persecution, until in 1609 A.D., by order of Philip III, the Moors were banished *en masse* from Spanish soil.

The fall of  
Granada  
(1492 A.D.).

Spain was not the sole point whence Moslem culture spread itself over the Christian lands. Sicily was conquered by the Aghlabids of Tunis early in the ninth century, and although the island fell into the hands of the Normans in 1071 A.D., the court of Palermo retained a semi-Oriental character. Here in the reign of Frederick II of Hohenstaufen (1194-1250 A.D.) might be seen "astrologers from Baghdád with long beards and waving robes, Jews who received princely salaries as translators of Arabic works, Saracen dancers and dancing-girls, and Moors who blew silver trumpets on festal occasions." Both Frederick himself and his son Manfred were enthusiastic Arabophiles, and scandalised Christendom by their assumption of 'heathen' manners as well as by the attention which they devoted to Moslem philosophy and science. Under their auspices Arabic learning was communicated to the neighbouring towns of Lower Italy.

The Arabs in  
Sicily.

be found in Robert Flint's *History of the Philosophy of History*, vol. i, pp. 157-171.

<sup>1</sup> Schack, *op. cit.*, vol. ii, p. 151.

## CHAPTER X

### FROM THE MONGOL INVASION TO THE PRESENT DAY

BEFORE proceeding to speak of the terrible catastrophe which filled the whole of Western Asia with ruin and desolation,

General characteristics of the period. I may offer a few preliminary remarks concerning the general character of the period which we

shall briefly survey in this final chapter. It forms, one must admit, a melancholy conclusion to a glorious history. The Caliphate, which symbolised the supremacy of the Prophet's people, is swept away. Mongols, Turks, Persians, all in turn build up great Muḥammadan empires, but the Arabs have lost even the shadow of a leading part and appear only as subordinate actors on a provincial stage. The chief centres of Arabian life, such as it is, are henceforth Syria and Egypt, which were held by the Turkish Mamelukes until 1517 A.D., when they passed under Ottoman rule. In North Africa the petty Berber dynasties (Hafṣids, Ziyánids, and Marínids) gave place in the sixteenth century to the Ottoman Turks. Only in Spain, where the Naṣrids of Granada survived until 1492 A.D., in Morocco, where the Sharífs (descendants of 'Alī b. Abī Ṭálib) assumed the sovereignty in 1544 A.D., and to some extent in Arabia itself, did the Arabs preserve their political independence. In such circumstances it would be vain to look for any large developments of literature and culture worthy to rank with those of the past. This is an age of imitation and



compilation. Learned men abound, whose erudition embraces every subject under the sun. The mass of writing shows no visible diminution, and much of it is valuable and meritorious work. But with one or two conspicuous exceptions—*e.g.* the historian Ibn Khaldún and the mystic Sha‘rání—we cannot point to any new departure, any fruitful ideas, any trace of original and illuminating thought. The fifteenth and sixteenth centuries “witnessed the rise and triumph of that wonderful movement known as the Renaissance, . . . but no ripple of this great upheaval, which changed the whole current of intellectual and moral life in the West, reached the shores of Islam.”<sup>1</sup> Until comparatively recent times, when Egypt and Syria first became open to European civilisation, the Arab retained his mediæval outlook and habit of mind, and was in no respect more enlightened than his forefathers who lived under the ‘Abbásid Caliphate. And since the Mongol Invasion I am afraid we must say that instead of advancing farther along the old path he was being forced back by the inevitable pressure of events. East of the Euphrates the Mongols did their work of destruction so thoroughly that no seeds were left from which a flourishing civilisation could arise; and, moreover, the Arabic language was rapidly extinguished by the Persian. In Spain, as we have seen, the power of the Arabs had already begun to decline; Africa was dominated by the Berbers, a rude, unlettered race, Egypt and Syria by the blighting military despotism of the Turks. Nowhere in the history of this period can we discern either of the two elements which are most productive of literary greatness: the quickening influence of a higher culture or the inspiration of a free and vigorous national life.<sup>2</sup>

[Between the middle of the eleventh century and the end

<sup>1</sup> E. J. W. Gibb, *A History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. ii, p. 5.

<sup>2</sup> The nineteenth century should have been excepted, so far as the influence of modern civilisation has reacted on Arabic literature.

of the fourteenth the nomad tribes dwelling beyond the Oxus burst over Western Asia in three successive waves. First came the Seljúq Turks, then the Mongols under Chingfz Khan and Húlagú, then the hordes, mainly Turkish, of Tímúr.] Regarding the Seljúqs all that is necessary for our purpose has been said in a former chapter. The conquests of Tímúr are a frightful episode which I may be pardoned for omitting from this history, inasmuch as their permanent results (apart from the enormous damage which they inflicted) were inconsiderable ; and although the Indian empire of the Great Moguls, which Bábur, a descendant of Tímúr, established in the first half of the sixteenth century, ran a prosperous and brilliant course, its culture was borrowed almost exclusively from Persian models and does not come within the scope of the present work. We shall, therefore, confine our view to the second wave of the vast Asiatic migration, which bore the Mongols, led by Chingfz Khan and Húlagú, from the steppes of China and Tartary to the Mediterranean.

In 1219 A.D. Chingfz Khan, having consolidated his power in the Far East, turned his face westward and suddenly advanced into Transoxania, which at that time formed a province of the wide dominions of the Sháhs of Khwárizm (Khiva). The reigning monarch, 'Alá'u 'l-Dín Muḥammad, was unable to make an effective resistance ; and notwithstanding that his son, the gallant Jalálu 'l-Dín, carried on a desperate guerilla for twelve years, the invaders swarmed over Khurásán and Persia, massacring the panic-stricken inhabitants wholesale and leaving a wilderness behind them. [Hitherto Baghdád had not been seriously threatened, but on the first day of January, 1256 A.D.—an epoch-marking date—Húlagú, the grandson of Chingfz Khan, crossed the Oxus, with the intention of occupying the 'Abbásid capital.] I translate the following

The Mongol  
Invasion.

Chingfz Khan  
and Húlagú.



narrative from a manuscript in my possession of the *Ta'rikh al-Khamis* by Diyárbakrí († 1574 A.D.) :—

In the year 654 (A.H. = 1256 A.D.) the stubborn tyrant, Húlagú, the destroyer of the nations (*Mubidu 'l-Umam*), set forth and took the castle of Alamút from the Ismá'ilis<sup>1</sup> and slew them and laid waste the lands of Rayy. . . . And Húlagú before Baghdad (1258 A.D.) in the year 655 there broke out at Baghdád a fearful riot between the Sunnis and the Shí'ites, which led to great plunder and destruction of property. A number of Shí'ites were killed, and this so incensed and infuriated the Vizier Ibnu 'l-'Alqamí that he encouraged the Tartars to invade 'Iráq, by which means he hoped to take ample vengeance on the Sunnis.<sup>2</sup> And in the beginning of the year 656 the tyrant Húlagú b. Túlí b. Chingiz Khán, the Moghul, arrived at Baghdád with his army, including the Georgians (*al-Kurj*) and the troops of Mosul. The Dawidár<sup>3</sup> marched out of the city and met Húlagú's vanguard, which was commanded by Bájú.<sup>4</sup> The Moslems, being few, suffered defeat; whereupon Bájú advanced and pitched his camp to the west of Baghdád, while Húlagú took up a position on the eastern side. Then the Vizier Ibnu 'l-'Alqamí said to the Caliph Musta'sim Billáh: "I will go to the Supreme Khán to arrange peace." So the hound<sup>5</sup> went and obtained security for himself, and on his return said to the Caliph: "The Khán desires to marry his daughter to your son and to render homage to you, like the Seljúq kings, and then to depart." Musta'sim set out, attended by the nobles of

<sup>1</sup> These Ismá'ilis are the so-called Assassins, the terrible sect organised by Hasan b. Sabbáh (see Professor Browne's *Literary History of Persia*, vol. ii, p. 201 sqq.), and finally exterminated by Húlagú. They had many fortresses, of which Alamút was the most famous, in the Jibál province, near Qazwín.

<sup>2</sup> The reader must be warned that this and the following account of the treacherous dealings of Ibnu 'l-'Alqamí are entirely contradicted by Shí'ite historians. For example, the author of *al-Fakhri* (ed. by Derenbourg, p. 452) represents the Vizier as a far-seeing patriot who vainly strove to awaken his feeble-minded master to the gravity of the situation.

<sup>3</sup> Concerning the various functions of the Dawidár (literally Inkstand-holder) or Dawádár, as the word is more correctly written, see Quatremère, *Histoire des Sultans Mamlouks*, vol. i, p. 118, n. 2.

<sup>4</sup> The MS. writes Yájúnas.

<sup>5</sup> *Al-kalb*, the Arabic equivalent of the Persian *sag* (dog), an animal which Moslems regard as unclean.



his court and the grandees of his time, in order to witness the contract of marriage. The whole party were beheaded except the Caliph, who was trampled to death. The Tartars entered Baghdád and distributed themselves in bands throughout the city. For thirty-four days the sword was never sheathed. Few escaped. The slain amounted to 1,800,000 and more. Then quarter was called. . . . Thus it is related in the *Duwalu 'l-Islám*.<sup>1</sup> . . . And on this wise did the Caliphate pass from Baghdád. As the poet sings:—

Sack of  
Baghdád.

*"Khalati 'l-mandábiru wa-'l-asírratu minhumá  
wa-'alayhimú hatta 'l-mamáti salámú."*

*"The pulpits and the thrones are empty of them;  
I bid them, till the hour of death, farewell!"*

It seemed as if all Muhammadan Asia lay at the feet of the pagan conqueror. Resuming his advance, Húlágú occupied Mesopotamia and sacked Aleppo. He then returned to the East, leaving his lieutenant, Ketboghá, to complete the reduction of Syria. Meanwhile, however, an Egyptian army under the Mameluke Sultan Muẓaffar Qutuz was hastening to oppose the invaders. On Friday, the 25th of Ramaḍán, 658 A.H., a decisive battle was fought at 'Ayn Jálút (Goliath's Spring), west of the Jordan. The Tartars were routed with immense slaughter, and their subsequent attempts to wrest Syria from the Mamelukes met with no success. The submission of Asia Minor was hardly more than nominal, but in Persia the descendants of Húlágú, the Íl-Kháns, reigned over a great empire, which the conversion of one of their number, Gházán (1295-1304 A.D.), restored to Moslem rule. We are not concerned here with the further history of the Mongols in Persia nor with that of the Persians themselves. Since the days of Húlágú the lands east and west of the Tigris are separated by an ever-widening gulf. The two races—Persians and Arabs—to whose co-operation the mediæval

Battle of 'Ayn  
Jálút (September,  
1260 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> By Shamsu 'l-Dín al-Dhahabí († 1348 A.D.).

world, from Samarcand to Seville, for a long time owed its highest literary and scientific culture, have now finally dissolved their partnership.] It is true that the cleavage began many centuries earlier, and before the fall of Baghdád the Persian genius had already expressed itself in a splendid national literature. But from this date onward the use of Arabic by Persians is practically limited to theological and philosophical writings. The Persian language has driven its rival out of the field. Accordingly Egypt and Syria will now demand the principal share of our attention, more especially as the history of the Arabs of Granada, which properly belongs to this period, has been related in the preceding chapter.

The dynasty of the Mameluke<sup>1</sup> Sultans of Egypt was founded in 1250 A.D. by Aybak, a Turkish slave, who commenced his career in the service of the Ayyúbid, Malik Šálih Najmu 'l-Dín. His successors<sup>2</sup> held sway in Egypt and Syria until the conquest of these countries by the Ottomans. The Mamelukes were rough soldiers, who seldom indulged in any useless refinement, but they had a royal taste for architecture, as the visitor to Cairo may still see. Their administration, though disturbed by frequent mutinies and murders, was tolerably prosperous on the whole, and their victories over the Mongol hosts, as well as the crushing blows which they dealt to the Crusaders, gave Islam new prestige. The ablest of them all was Baybars, who richly deserved his title Malik al-Záhir, *i.e.*, the Victorious King. His name has passed into the legends of the people, and his warlike exploits into

Arabic ceases to be the language of the whole Moslem world.

The Mamelukes of Egypt (1250-1517 A.D.).

Sultan Baybars (1260-1277 A.D.).

<sup>1</sup> Mameluke (Mamlúk) means 'slave.' The term was applied to the mercenary troops, Turks and Kurds for the most part, who composed the bodyguard of the Ayyúbid princes.

<sup>2</sup> There are two Mameluke dynasties, called respectively Bahrí (River) Mamelukes and Burjí (Tower) Mamelukes. The former reigned from 1250 to 1390, the latter from 1382 to 1517.



romances written in the vulgar dialect which are recited by story-tellers to this day.<sup>1</sup> The violent and brutal acts which he sometimes committed—for he shrank from no crime when he suspected danger—made him a terror to the ambitious nobles around him, but did not harm his reputation as a just ruler. Although he held the throne in virtue of having murdered the late monarch with his own hand, he sought to give the appearance of legitimacy to his usurpation. He therefore recognised as Caliph a certain Abu 'l-Qásim Aḥmad, a pretended scion of the 'Abbásid house, invited him to Cairo, and took the oath of allegiance to him in due form. The Caliph on his part invested the Sultan with sovereignty over Egypt, Syria, Arabia, and all the provinces that he might obtain by future conquests. This Aḥmad, entitled al-Mustanṣir, was the first of a long series of mock Caliphs who were appointed by the Mameluke Sultans and generally kept under close surveillance in the citadel of Cairo. There is no authority for the statement, originally made by Mouradgea d'Ohsson in 1787 and often repeated since, that the last of the line bequeathed his rights of succession to the Ottoman Sultan Selīm I, thus enabling the Sultans of Turkey to claim the title and dignity of Caliph.<sup>2</sup>

The 'Abbásid  
Caliphs of Egypt.

The poets of this period are almost unknown in Europe, and until they have been studied with due attention it would be premature to assert that none of them rises above mediocrity. At the same time my own impression (based, I confess, on a very desultory and imperfect acquaintance with their work) is that the best among them are merely elegant and accomplished artists, playing brilliantly with words and phrases, but doing little else. No doubt extreme artificiality may coexist with poetical genius of a high order, provided that it has behind it Mutanabbí's power, Ma'arrí's earnestness, or Ibnu 'l-Fárid's enthusiasm. In the absence of these

Arabic poetry  
after the Mongol  
Invasion.

<sup>1</sup> See Lane, *The Modern Egyptians*, ch. xxii.

<sup>2</sup> See Sir T. W. Arnold, *The Caliphate*, p. 146.



qualities we must be content to admire the technical skill with which the old tunes are varied and revived. Let us take, for example, Ṣafīyyu 'l-Dīn al-Ḥillī, who was born at Ḥilla, a large town on the Euphrates, in 1278 A.D., became laureate of the Urtuqid dynasty at Māridīn, and died in Baghdād about 1350. He is described as "the poet of his age absolutely," and to judge from the extracts in Kutubī's *Fawā'idu 'l-Wafayāt*<sup>1</sup> he combined subtlety of fancy with remarkable ease and sweetness of versification. Many of his pieces, however, are *jeux d'esprit*, like his ode to the Prophet, in which he employs 151 rhetorical figures, or like another poem where all the nouns are diminutives.<sup>2</sup> The following specimen of his work is too brief to do him justice:—

[ "How can I have patience, and thou, mine eye's delight,  
All the livelong year not one moment in my sight?  
And with what can I rejoice my heart, when thou that art a  
joy  
Unto every human heart, from me hast taken flight?  
I swear by Him who made thy form the envy of the sun  
(So graciously He clad thee with lovely beams of light):  
The day when I behold thy beauty doth appear to me  
✓ As tho' it gleamed on Time's dull brow a constellation bright.  
O thou scorner of my passion, for whose sake I count as  
naught  
All the woe that I endure, all the injury and despite,  
Come, regard the ways of God! for never He at life's last  
gasp  
Suffereth the weight to perish even of one mite!" ]

We have already referred to the folk-songs (*muwashshah* and *zajal*) which originated in Spain. These simple ballads,

<sup>1</sup> Ed. of Bulāq (1283 A.H.), pp. 356-366.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 358.

<sup>3</sup> These verses are cited in the *Ḥadiqatu 'l-Afrāḥ* (see Brockelmann's *Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.*, ii, 502), Calcutta, 1229 A.H., p. 280. In the final couplet there is an allusion to Kor. iv, 44: "Verily God will not wrong any one even the weight of an ant" (*mithqāla dharraṭ*<sup>10</sup>).

with their novel metres and incorrect language, were despised by the classical school, that is to say, by nearly all Moslems with any pretensions to learning; but their popularity was such that even the court poets occasionally condescended to write in this style. To the *zajal* and *muwashshah* we may add the *dubayt*, the *mawāliyyā*, the *kātwakān*, and the *himāq*, which together with verse of the regular form made up the 'seven kinds of poetry' (*al-funūn al-sab'a*). Šafiyyu 'l-Dīn al-Ḥillī, who wrote a special treatise on the Arabic folk-songs, mentions two other varieties which, he says, were invented by the people of Baghdād to be sung in the early dawn of Ramaḍān, the Moslem Lent.<sup>1</sup> It is interesting to observe that some few literary men attempted, though in a timid fashion, to free Arabic poetry from the benumbing academic system by which it was governed and to pour fresh life into its veins. A notable example of this tendency is the *Hazzu 'l-Quhūf*<sup>2</sup> by Shīrbīnī, who wrote in 1687 A.D. Here we have a poem in the vulgar dialect of Egypt, but what is still more curious, the author, while satirising the uncouth manners and rude language of the peasantry, makes a bitter attack on the learning and morals of the Muḥammadan divines.<sup>3</sup> For this purpose he introduces a typical Fellah named Abū Shādūf, whose rôle corresponds to that of Piers the Plowman in Longland's *Vision*. Down to the end of the nineteenth century, at any rate, such isolated offshoots had not gone far to found a living school of popular poetry. Only the future can show whether the Arabs are capable of producing a genius who will succeed in doing for the national folk-songs what Burns did for the Scots ballads.

<sup>1</sup> Hartmann, *Das Muwašṣah* (Weimar, 1897), p. 218.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, 'The Shaking of the Skull-caps,' in allusion to the peasants' dance.

<sup>3</sup> See Vollers, *Beiträge zur Kenntniss der lebenden arabischen Sprache in Aegypten*, Z.D.M.G., vol. 41 (1887), p. 370.



Biography and History were cultivated with ardour by the savants of Egypt and Syria. Among the numerous compositions of this kind we can have no hesitation in awarding the place of honour to the *Wafayât* 'l-'*Ā'yân*, or 'Obituaries of Eminent Men,' by Shamsu 'l-Dîn Ibn Khallikân, a work which has often been quoted in the foregoing pages. The author belonged to a distinguished family descending from Yaḥyâ b. Khâlid the Barmecide (see p. 259 seq.), and was born at Arbela in 1211 A.D. He received his education at Aleppo and Damascus (1229-1238) and then proceeded to Cairo, where he finished the first draft of his Biographical Dictionary in 1256. Five years later he was appointed by Sultan Baybars to be Chief Cadi of Syria. He retained this high office (with a seven years' interval, which he devoted to literary and biographical studies) until a short time before his death. In the Preface to the *Wafayât* Ibn Khallikân observes that he has adopted the alphabetical order as more convenient than the chronological. As regards the scope and character of his Dictionary, he says :—

"I have not limited my work to the history of any one particular class of persons, as learned men, princes, emîrs, viziers, or poets ; but I have spoken of all those whose names are familiar to the public, and about whom questions are frequently asked ; I have, however, related the facts I could ascertain respecting them in a concise manner, lest my work should become too voluminous ; I have fixed with all possible exactness the dates of their birth and death ; I have traced up their genealogy as high as I could ; I have marked the orthography of those names which are liable to be written incorrectly ; and I have cited the traits which may best serve to characterise each individual, such as noble actions, singular anecdotes, verses and letters, so that the reader may derive amusement from my work, and find it not exclusively of such a uniform cast as would prove tiresome ; for the most effectual inducement to reading a book arises from the variety of its style."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikân  
His Biographical  
Dictionary.

<sup>1</sup> Ibn Khallikân, De Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 3.



Ibn Khallikan might have added that he was the first Muḥammadan writer to design a Dictionary of National Biography, since none of his predecessors had thought of comprehending the lives of eminent Moslems of every class in a single work.<sup>1</sup> The merits of the book have been fully recognised by the author's countrymen as well as by European scholars. It is composed in simple and elegant language, it is extremely accurate, and it contains an astonishing quantity of miscellaneous historical and literary information, not drily catalogued but conveyed in the most pleasing fashion by anecdotes and excerpts which illustrate every department of Moslem life. I am inclined to agree with the opinion of Sir William Jones, that it is the best general biography ever written; and allowing for the difference of scale and scope, I think it will bear comparison with a celebrated English work which it resembles in many ways—I mean Boswell's *Johnson*.<sup>2</sup>

To give an adequate account of the numerous and talented historians of the Mameluke period would require far more space than they can reasonably claim in a review of this kind. Concerning Ibn Khaldūn, who held a professorship as well as the office of Cadi in Cairo under Sultan Barqūq (1382–1398 A.D.), we have already spoken at some length. This extraordinary genius discovered principles and methods which might have been

Historians of  
the Mameluke  
period.

<sup>1</sup> It should be pointed out that the *Wafayāt* is very far from being exhaustive. The total number of articles only amounts to 865. Besides the Caliphs, the Companions of the Prophet, and those of the next generation (*Ṭabīʿūn*), the author omitted many persons of note because he was unable to discover the date of their death. A useful supplement and continuation of the *Wafayāt* was compiled by al-Kutubī († 1363 A.D.) under the title *Fawā'id al-Wafayāt*.

<sup>2</sup> The Arabic text of the *Wafayāt* has been edited with variants and indices by Wüstenfeld (Göttingen, 1835–1850). There is an excellent English translation by Baron MacGuckin de Slane in four volumes (1842–1871).

expected to revolutionise historical science, but neither was he himself capable of carrying them into effect nor, as the event proved, did they inspire his successors to abandon the path of tradition. I cannot imagine any more decisive symptom of the intellectual lethargy in which Islam was now sunk, or any clearer example of the rule that even the greatest writers struggle in vain against the spirit of their own times. There were plenty of learned men, however, who compiled local and universal histories. Considering the precious materials which their industry has preserved for us, we should rather admire these diligent and erudite authors than complain of their inability to break away from the established mode. Perhaps the most famous among them is Taqiyyu 'l-Dīn al-Maqrīzī (1364-1442 A.D.). A native of Cairo, he devoted himself to Egyptian history and antiquities, on which subject he composed several standard works, such as the *Khīṭaṭ*<sup>1</sup> and the *Sulūk*.<sup>2</sup> Although he was both unconscientious and uncritical, too often copying without acknowledgment or comment, and indulging in

Maqrīzī wholesale plagiarism when it suited his purpose, these faults which are characteristic of his age may easily be excused. "He has accumulated and reduced to a certain amount of order a large quantity of information that would but for him have passed into oblivion. He is generally painstaking and accurate, and always resorts to contemporary evidence if it is available. Also he has a pleasant and lucid style, and writes without bias and apparently with distinguished impartiality."<sup>3</sup> Other well-known works belonging to this

<sup>1</sup> The full title is *al-Mawḍiʿ wa-l-Iʿtibār fī dhikri 'l-Khīṭaṭ wa-l-Athār*. It was printed at Bulāq in 1270 A.H.

<sup>2</sup> *Al-Sulūk li-maʿrifati Duwālī 'l-Mulūk*, a history of the Ayyūbids and Mamelukes. The portion relating to the latter dynasty is accessible in the excellent French version by Quatremère (*Histoire des Sultans Mamlouks de l'Égypte*, Paris, 1845).

<sup>3</sup> A. R. Guest, *A List of Writers, Books, and other Authorities mentioned by El Maqrīzī in his Khīṭaṭ*, J.R.A.S. for 1902, p. 106.



epoch are the *Fakhri* of Ibnu 'l-Ṭiṭṭaqá, a delightful manual of Muḥammadan politics<sup>1</sup> which was written at Mosul in 1302 A.D.; the epitome of universal history by Abu 'l-Fidá, Prince of Ḥamát († 1331); the voluminous Chronicle of Islam by Dhahabí († 1348); the high-flown Biography of Timúr entitled '*Ajā'ibu 'l-Ma'qduṛ*, or 'Marvels of Destiny,' by Ibn 'Arabsháh († 1450); and the *Nujúm al-Záhirá* ('Resplendent Stars') by Abu 'l-Mahásin b. Taghríbirdí († 1469), which contains the annals of Egypt under the Moslems. The political and literary history of Muḥammadan Spain by Maqqarí of Tilimsán († 1632) was mentioned in the last chapter.<sup>2</sup>

If we were asked to select a single figure who should exhibit as completely as possible in his own person the literary tendencies of the Alexandrian age of Arabic civilisation, our choice would assuredly fall on Jalálu 'l-Dín al-Suyúṭí, who was born at Suyúṭ (Usyúṭ) in Upper Egypt in 1445 A.D. His family came originally from Persia, but, like Dhahabí, Ibn Taghríbirdí, and many celebrated writers of this time, he had, through his mother, an admixture of Turkish blood. At the age of five years and seven months, when his father died, the precocious boy had already reached the *Suratu 'l-Taḥrím* (Súra of Forbidding), which is the sixty-sixth chapter of the Koran, and he knew the whole volume by heart before he was eight years old. He prosecuted his studies under the most renowned masters in every branch of Moslem learning, and on finishing his education held one Professorship after another at Cairo until 1501, when he was deprived of his post in consequence of malversation of the bursary monies in his charge. He died

<sup>1</sup> The *Fakhri* has been edited by Ahlwardt (1860) and Derenbourg (1895). The simplicity of its style and the varied interest of its contents have made it deservedly popular. Leaving the Koran out of account, I do not know any book that is better fitted to serve as an introduction to Arabic literature.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 413, n. 1.



four years later in the islet of Rawḍa on the Nile, whither he had retired under the pretence of devoting the rest of his life to God. We possess the titles of more than five hundred separate works which he composed. This number would be incredible but for the fact that many of them are brief pamphlets displaying the author's curious erudition on all sorts of abstruse subjects—e.g., whether the Prophet wore trousers, whether his turban had a point, and whether his parents are in Hell or Paradise. Suyúṭí's indefatigable pen travelled over an immense field of knowledge—Koran, Tradition, Law, Philosophy and History, Philology and Rhetoric. Like some of the old Alexandrian scholars, he seems to have taken pride in a reputation for polygraphy, and his enemies declared that he made free with other men's books, which he used to alter slightly and then give out as his own. Suyúṭí, on his part, laid before the Shaykhu 'l-Islám a formal accusation of plagiarism against Qaṣṭallání, an eminent contemporary divine. We are told that his vanity and arrogance involved him in frequent quarrels, and that he was 'cut' by his learned brethren. Be this as it may, he saw what the public wanted. His compendious and readable handbooks were famed throughout the Moslem world, as he himself boasts, from India to Morocco, and did much to popularise the scientific culture of the day. It will be enough to mention here the *Itqán* on Koranic exegesis; the *Tafsíru 'l-Jalálayn*, or 'Commentary on the Koran by the two Jaláls,' which was begun by Jalálu 'l-Dín al-Maḥallí and finished by his namesake, Suyúṭí; the *Muzhir* (*Mizhar*), a treatise on philology; the *Ḥusnu 'l-Muḥáḍara*, a history of Old and New Cairo; and the *Ta'rikhu 'l-Khulafá*, or 'History of the Caliphs.'

To dwell longer on the literature of this period would only be to emphasise its scholastic and unoriginal character. A passing mention, however, is due to the encyclopædist Nuwayrí (†1332), author of the *Niháyatu 'l-Arab*, and Ibnu 'l-Wardí

(†1349). Šafadī (†1363) compiled a gigantic biographical dictionary, the *Wāfi bi'l-Wafayāt*, in twenty-six volumes, and the learned traditionist, Ibn Ḥajar of Ascalon (†1449), has left a large number of writings, among which it will be sufficient to name the *Iṣāba fī tamyīz al-Ṣaḥāba*, or Lives of the Companions of the Prophet.<sup>1</sup> We shall conclude this part of our subject by enumerating a few celebrated works which may be described in modern terms as standard text-books for the Schools and Universities of Islam. Amidst the host of manuals of Theology and Jurisprudence, with their endless array of abridgments, commentaries, and supercommentaries, possibly the best known to European students are those by Abu 'l-Barakāt al-Nasafī (†1310), 'Aḍudu 'l-Dīn al-Ījlī (†1355), Sīdī Khalīl al-Jundī (†1365), Taftāzānī (†1389), Sharīf al-Jurjānī (†1413), and Muḥammad b. Yūsuf al-Sanūsī (†1486). For Philology and Lexicography we have the *Alfiyya*, a versified grammar by Ibn Mālik of Jaen (†1273); the *Ajurrūmiyya* on the rudiments of grammar, an exceedingly popular compendium by Ṣanhājī (†1323); and two famous Arabic dictionaries, the *Lisānu 'l-'Arab* by Jamālu 'l-Dīn Ibn Mukarram (†1311), and the *Qāmūs* by Fīrūzābādī (†1414). Nor, although he was a Turk, should we leave unnoticed the great bibliographer Ḥājī Khalīfa (†1658), whose *Kashfu 'l-Zunūn* contains the titles, arranged alphabetically, of all the Arabic, Persian, and Turkish books of which the existence was known to him.

(The Mameluke period gave final shape to the *Alf Layla wa-Layla*, or 'Thousand and One Nights,' a work which is far more popular in Europe than the Koran or any other masterpiece of Arabic literature.) The modern title, 'Arabian Nights,' tells only a part of the truth. Mas'ūdī (†956 A.D.) mentions

<sup>1</sup> A *Biographical Dictionary of Persons who knew Mohammad*, ed. by Sprenger and others (Calcutta, 1856-1873).



an old Persian book, the *Hazár Afsána* ('Thousand Tales') which "is generally called the Thousand and One Nights; it is the story of the King and his Vizier, and of the Vizier's daughter and her slave-girl: Shírázád and Dínázád."<sup>1</sup> The author of the *Fihrist*, writing in 988 A.D., begins his chapter "concerning the Story-Tellers and the Fabulists and the names of the books which they composed" with the following passage (p. 304):—

"The first who composed fables and made books of them and put them by in treasuries and sometimes introduced animals as speaking

Persian origin  
of the 'Thou-  
sand and One  
Nights.'

them were the Ancient Persians. Afterwards the Parthian kings, who form the third dynasty of the kings of Persia, showed the utmost zeal in this matter.

Then in the days of the Sásánian kings such books became numerous and abundant, and the Arabs translated them into the Arabic tongue, and they soon reached the hands of philologists and rhetoricians, who corrected and embellished them and composed other books in the same style. Now the first book ever made on this subject was the Book of the Thousand Tales (*Hazár Afsán*), on the following occasion: A certain king of Persia used to marry a woman for one night and kill her the next morning. And he wedded a wise and clever princess, called Shahrázád, who began to tell him stories and brought the tale at daybreak to a point that induced the king to spare her life and ask her on the second night to finish her tale. So she continued until a thousand nights had passed, and she was blessed with a son by him. . . . And the king had a stewardess (*qahramána*) named Dínárzád, who was in league with the queen. It is also said that this book was composed for Humání, the daughter of Bahmán, and there are various traditions concerning it. The truth, if God will, is that Alexander (the

The *Hazár  
Afsán*.

Great) was the first who heard stories by night, and he had people to make him laugh and divert him with tales; although he did not seek amusement therein,

but only to store and preserve them (in his memory). The kings who came after him used the 'Thousand Tales' (*Hazár Afsán*) for this

<sup>1</sup> *Muráju 'l-Dhahab*, ed. by Barbier de Meynard, vol. iv. p. 90. The names Shírázád and Dínázád are obviously Persian. Probably the former is a corruption of Chíhrázád, meaning 'of noble race,' while Dínázád signifies 'of noble religion.' My readers will easily recognise the familiar Scheherazade and Dinarzade.



purpose. It covers a space of one thousand nights, but contains less than two hundred stories, because the telling of a single story often takes several nights. I have seen the complete work more than once, and it is indeed a vulgar, insipid book (*kitāb<sup>m</sup> ghalth<sup>m</sup> bāridu'l-ḥadīth*).<sup>\*</sup>

Abū 'Abdallāh Muḥammad b. 'Abdūs al-Jahshiyārī (†942-943 A.D.), the author of the 'Book of Viziers,' began to compile a book in which he selected one thousand stories of the Arabs, the Persians, the Greeks, and other peoples, every piece being independent and unconnected with the rest. He gathered the story-tellers round him and took from them the best of what they knew and were able to tell, and he chose out of the fable and story-books whatever pleased him. He was a skilful craftsman, so he put together from this material 480 nights, each night an entire story of fifty pages, more or less, but death surprised him before he completed the thousand tales as he had intended."

Evidently, then, the *Hazār Afśn* was the kernel of the 'Arabian Nights,' and it is probable that this Persian archetype included the most finely imaginative tales in the existing collection, e.g., the 'Fisherman and the Genie,' 'Camaralzamān and Budūr,' and the 'Enchanted Horse.' As time went on, the original stock received large additions which may be divided into two principal groups, both Semitic in character: the one belonging to Baghdād and consisting mainly of humorous anecdotes and love romances in which the famous Caliph 'Haroun Alraschid' frequently comes on the scene; the other having its centre in Cairo, and marked by a roguish, ironical pleasantry as well as by the mechanic supernaturalism which is perfectly illustrated in 'Aladdin and the Wonderful Lamp.' But, apart from these three sources, the 'Arabian Nights' has in the course of centuries accumulated and absorbed an immense number of Oriental folk-tales of every description, equally various in origin and style. The oldest translation by Galland (Paris, 1704-1717) is a charming

<sup>\*</sup> Strange as it may seem, this criticism represents the view of nearly all Moslem scholars who have read the 'Arabian Nights.'

paraphrase, which in some respects is more true to the spirit of the original than are the scholarly renderings of Lane and Burton.

The 'Romance of 'Antar' (*Siratu 'Antar*) is traditionally ascribed to the great philologist, Aṣma'ī,<sup>1</sup> who flourished in the reign of Hārūn al-Rashīd, but this must be considered as an invention of the professional reciters who sit in front of Oriental cafés and entertain the public with their lively declamations.<sup>2</sup> According to Brockelmann, the work in its present form apparently dates from the time of the Crusades.<sup>3</sup> Its hero is the celebrated heathen poet and warrior, 'Antara b. Shaddād, of whom we have already given an account as author of one of the seven *Mu'allagāt*.<sup>4</sup> Though the Romance exhibits all the anachronisms and exaggerations of popular legend, it does nevertheless portray the unchanging features of Bedouin life with admirable fidelity and picturesqueness. Von Hammer, whose notice in the *Mines de l'Orient* (1802) was the means of introducing the *Siratu 'Antar* to European readers, justly remarks that it cannot be translated in full owing to its portentous length. It exists in two recensions called respectively the Arabian (*Hijāziyya*) and the Syrian (*Shāmiyya*), the latter being very much curtailed.<sup>4</sup>

While the decadent state of Arabic literature during all

<sup>1</sup> Many episodes are related on the authority of Aṣma'ī, Abū 'Ubayda, and Wabb b. Munabbih.

<sup>2</sup> Those who recite the *Siratu 'Antar* are named 'Andlira, sing. 'Antari. See Lane's *Modern Egyptians*, ch. xxiii.

<sup>3</sup> That it was extant in some shape before 1150 A.D. seems to be beyond doubt. Cf. the *Journal Asiatique* for 1838, p. 383; Wüstenfeld, *Gesch. der Arab. Aerzte*, No. 172.

<sup>4</sup> *Antar, a Bedouen Romance*, translated from the Arabic by Terrick Hamilton (London, 1820), vol. i, p. xxiii seq. See, however, Flügel's Catalogue of the Kais. Kön. Bibl. at Vienna, vol. ii, p. 6. Further details concerning the 'Romance of 'Antar' will be found in Thorbecke's *'Antarah* (Leipzig, 1867), p. 31 sqq. The whole work has been published at Cairo in thirty-two volumes.



these centuries was immediately caused by unfavourable social and political conditions, the real source of the malady lay deeper, and must, I think, be referred to the spiritual paralysis which had long been creeping over Islam and which manifested itself by the complete victory of the Ash'arites or Scholastic Theologians about 1200 A.D. Philosophy and Rationalism were henceforth as good as dead. Two parties remained in possession of the field—the orthodox and the mystics. The former were naturally intolerant of anything approaching to free-thought, and in their principle of *ijmā'*, i.e., the consensus of public opinion (which was practically controlled by themselves), they found a potent weapon against heresy. How ruthlessly they sometimes used it we may see from the following passage in the *Yawāqūt* of Sha'rānī. After giving instances of the persecution to which the Šūfis of old—Bāyazīd, Dhu 'l-Nūn, and others—were subjected by their implacable enemies, the 'Ulamā, he goes on to speak of what had happened more recently<sup>1</sup> :—

“They brought the Imām Abū Bakr al-Nābulusī, notwithstanding his merit and profound learning and rectitude in religion, from the Maghrib to Egypt and testified that he was a heretic (zindīq). The Sultan gave orders that he should be suspended by his feet and flayed alive. While the sentence was being carried out, he began to recite the Koran with such an attentive and humble demeanour that he moved the hearts of the people, and they were near making a riot. And likewise they caused Nasīmī to be flayed at Aleppo.” When he silenced them by

<sup>1</sup> Sha'rānī, *Yawāqūt* (ed. of Cairo, 1277 A.H.), p. 18.

<sup>2</sup> In 1417 A.D. The reader will find a full and most interesting account of Nasīmī, who is equally remarkable as a Turkish poet and as a mystic belonging to the sect of the Ḥurūfis, in Mr. E. J. W. Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. i, pp. 343-368. It is highly improbable that the story related here gives the true ground on which he was condemned: his pantheistic utterances afford a sufficient explanation, and the Turkish biographer, Laṭīfī, specifies the verse which cost him his life. I may add that the author of the *Shadharātu 'l-Dhahab* calls him Nasīmu 'l-Dīn of



his arguments, they devised a plan for his destruction, thus : They wrote the *Sûratu 'l-Ikhlâs*<sup>1</sup> on a piece of paper and bribed a cobbler of shoes, saying to him, 'It contains only love and pleasantness, so place it inside the sole of the shoe.' Then they took that shoe and sent it from a far distance as a gift to the Shaykh (Nasîmî), who put it on, for he knew not. His adversaries went to the governor of Aleppo and said : 'We have sure information that Nasîmî has written, *Say, God is One*, and has placed the writing in the sole of his shoe. If you do not believe us, send for him and see!' The governor did as they wished. On the production of the paper, the Shaykh resigned himself to the will of God and made no answer to the charge, knowing well that he would be killed on that pretext. I was told by one who studied under his disciples that all the time when he was being flayed Nasîmî was reciting *muwashshahs* in praise of the Unity of God, until he composed five hundred verses, and that he was looking at his executioners and smiling. And likewise they brought Shaykh Abu 'l-Ḥasan al-Shâdhilî<sup>2</sup> from the West to Egypt and bore witness that he was a heretic, but God delivered him from their plots. And they accused Shaykh 'Izzu 'l-Dîn b. 'Abd al-Salâm<sup>3</sup> of infidelity and sat in judgment over him on account of some expressions in his *Aqida* (Articles of Faith) and urged the Sultan to punish him ; afterwards, however, he was restored to favour. They denounced Shaykh Tâju 'l-Dîn al-Subkî<sup>4</sup> on the same charge, asserting that he held it lawful to drink wine and that he wore at night the badge (*ghiyâr*) of the unbelievers and the zone (*zunnâr*)<sup>5</sup> ; and they brought him, manacled and in chains, from Syria to Egypt."

This picture is too highly coloured. It must be admitted for the credit of the 'Ulamâ, that they seldom resorted to violence. Islam was happily spared the horrors of an organised Inquisition. On the other hand, their authority was

Tabriz (he is generally said to be a native of Nasîm in the district of Baghdâd), and observes that he resided in Aleppo, where his followers were numerous and his heretical doctrines widely disseminated.

<sup>1</sup> The 112th chapter of the Koran. See p. 164.

<sup>2</sup> Founder of the Shâdhiliyya Order of Dervishes. He died in 1258 A.D.

<sup>3</sup> A distinguished jurist and scholar who received the honorary title, 'Sultan of the Divines.' He died at Cairo in 1262 A.D.

<sup>4</sup> An eminent canon lawyer († 1370 A.D.).

<sup>5</sup> It was the custom of the Zoroastrians (and, according to Moslem belief, of the Christians and other infidels) to wear a girdle round the waist.

now so firmly established that all progress towards moral and intellectual liberty had apparently ceased, or at any rate only betrayed itself in spasmodic outbursts. Šūfism in some degree represented such a movement, but the mystics shared the triumph of Scholasticism and contributed to the reaction which ensued. No longer an oppressed minority struggling for toleration, they found themselves side by side with reverend doctors on a platform broad enough to accommodate all parties, and they saw their own popular heroes turned into Saints of the orthodox Church. The compromise did not always work smoothly—in fact, there was continual friction—but on the whole it seems to have borne the strain wonderfully well. If pious souls were shocked by the lawlessness of the Dervishes, and if bigots would fain have burned the books of Ibnu 'l-ʿArabī and Ibnu 'l-Fāriḍ, the divines in general showed a disposition to suspend judgment in matters touching holy men and to regard them as standing above human criticism.

As typical representatives of the religious life of this period we may take two men belonging to widely opposite camps—Taqiyyu 'l-Dīn Ibn Taymiyya and ʿAbdu 'l-Wahhāb al-Shaʿrānī.

Ibn Taymiyya was born at Ḥarrān in 1263 A.D. A few years later his father, fleeing before the Mongols, brought him to Damascus, where in due course he received an excellent education. It is said that he never forgot anything which he had once learned, and his knowledge of theology and law was so extensive as almost to justify the saying, "A tradition that Ibn Taymiyya does not recognise is no tradition." Himself a Ḥanbalite of the deepest dye—holding, in other words, that the Koran must be interpreted according to its letter and not by the light of reason—he devoted his life with rare courage to the work of religious reform. His aim, in short, was to restore the primitive monotheism taught by the Prophet and to purge Islam

Ibn Taymiyya  
(1263—1328 A.D.).



of the heresies and corruptions which threatened to destroy it. One may imagine what a hornet's nest he was attacking. Mystics, philosophers, and scholastic theologians, all fell alike under the lash of his denunciation. Bowing to no authority, but drawing his arguments from the traditions and practice of the early Church, he expressed his convictions in the most forcible terms, without regard to consequences. Although several times thrown into prison, he could not be muzzled for long. The climax was reached when he lifted up his voice against the superstitions of the popular faith—saint-worship, pilgrimage to holy shrines, vows, offerings, and invocations. These things, which the zealous puritan condemned as sheer idolatry, were part of a venerable cult that was hallowed by ancient custom, and had engrafted itself in luxuriant overgrowth upon Islam. The mass of Moslems believed, and still believe implicitly in the saints, accept their miracles, adore their relics, visit their tombs, and pray for their intercession. Ibn Taymiyya even declared that it was wrong to implore the aid of the Prophet or to make a pilgrimage to his sepulchre. It was a vain protest. He ended his days in captivity at Damascus. The vast crowds who attended his funeral—we are told that there were present 200,000 men and 15,000 women—bore witness to the profound respect which was universally felt for the intrepid reformer. Oddly enough, he was buried in the Cemetery of the *Şúfis*, whose doctrines he had so bitterly opposed, and the multitude revered his memory—as a saint! The principles which inspired Ibn Taymiyya did not fall to the ground, although their immediate effect was confined to a very small circle. We shall see them reappearing victoriously in the Wahhábite movement of the eighteenth century.

Notwithstanding the brilliant effort of Ghazálí to harmonise dogmatic theology with mysticism, it soon became clear that the two parties were in essence irreconcilable. The orthodox clergy who held fast by the authority of the Koran and the



Traditions saw a grave danger to themselves in the esoteric revelation which the mystics claimed to possess; while the latter, though externally conforming to the law of Islam, looked down with contempt on the idea that true knowledge of God could be derived from theology, or from any source except the inner light of heavenly inspiration. Hence the antithesis of *faqīh* (theologian) and *faqīr* (dervish), the one class forming a powerful official hierarchy in close alliance with the Government, whereas the *Šūfīs* found their chief support among the people at large, and especially among the poor. We need not dwell further on the natural antagonism which has always existed between these rival corporations, and which is a marked feature in the modern history of Islam. It will be more instructive to spend a few moments with the last great

Shā'arānī  
(† 1565 A.D.).

Muḥammadan theosophist, 'Abdu 'l-Wahhāb al-Shā'arānī, a man who, with all his weaknesses, was an original thinker, and exerted an influence strongly felt to this day, as is shown by the steady demand for his books. He was born about the beginning of the sixteenth century. Concerning his outward life we have little information beyond the facts that he was a weaver by trade and resided in Cairo. At this time Egypt was a province of the Ottoman Empire. Shā'arānī contrasts the miserable lot of the peasantry under the new *régime* with their comparative prosperity under the Mamelukes. So terrible were the exactions of the tax-gatherers that the fellah was forced to sell the whole produce of his land, and sometimes even the ox which ploughed it, in order to save himself and his family from imprisonment; and every lucrative business was crushed by confiscation. It is not to be supposed, however, that Shā'arānī gave serious attention to such sublunary matters. He lived in a world of visions and wonderful experiences. He conversed with angels and prophets, like his more famous predecessor, Muḥyi 'l-Dīn Ibnu 'l-'Arabī, whose *Meccan Revelations* he studied and epitomised. His autobiography entitled *Laṭā'ifu 'l-Minan*

displays the hierophant in full dress. It is a record of the singular spiritual gifts and virtues with which he was endowed, and would rank as a masterpiece of shameless self-laudation, did not the author repeatedly assure us that all his extraordinary qualities are Divine blessings and are gratefully set forth by their recipient *ad maiorem Dei gloriam*. We should be treating Sha'rání very unfairly if we judged him by this work alone. The arrogant miracle-monger was one of the most learned men of his day, and could beat the scholastic theologians with their own weapons. Indeed, he regarded theology (*fiqh*) as the first step towards Šúfism, and endeavoured to show that in reality they are different aspects of the same science. He also sought to harmonise the four great schools of law, whose disagreement was consecrated by the well-known saying ascribed to the Prophet: "The variance of my people is an act of Divine mercy" (*ikhtilāfu ummati raḥmat<sup>an</sup>*). Like the Arabian Šúfis generally, Sha'rání kept his mysticism within narrow bounds, and declared himself an adherent of the moderate section which follows Junayd of Baghdád († 909-910 A.D.). For all his extravagant pretensions and childish belief in the supernatural, he never lost touch with the Muḥammadan Church.

In the thirteenth century Ibn Taymiyya had tried to eradicate the abuses which obscured the simple creed of Islam. He failed, but his work was carried on by others and was crowned, after a long interval, by the Wahnábite Reformation.<sup>2</sup> [Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Wahnáb,<sup>2</sup> from whom its name is

<sup>2</sup> See *Materials for a History of the Wahabys*, by J. L. Burckhardt, published in the second volume of his *Notes on the Bedouins and Wahabys* (London, 1831). Burckhardt was in Arabia while the Turks were engaged in re-conquering the Hijáz from the Wahnábis. His graphic and highly interesting narrative has been summarised by Dozy, *Essai sur l'histoire de l'Islamisme*, ch. 13.

<sup>2</sup> Following Burckhardt's example, most European writers call him simply 'Abdu 'l-Wahnáb.



derived, was born about 1720 A.D. in Najd, the Highlands of Arabia.) In his youth he visited the principal cities of the East, "as is much the practice with his countrymen even now,"<sup>1</sup> and what he observed in the course of his travels convinced him that Islam was thoroughly corrupt. Fired by the example of Ibn Taymiyya, whose writings he copied with his own hand,<sup>2</sup> Ibn 'Abd al-Wahháb determined to re-establish the pure religion of Muḥammad in its primitive form. Accordingly he returned home and retired with his family to Dīra'iyya at the time when Muḥammad b. Sa'ūd was the chief personage of the town. This man became his first convert and soon after married his daughter. But it was not until the end of the eighteenth century that the Wahhábīs, under 'Abdu 'l-'Azíz, son of Muḥammad b. Sa'ūd, gained their first great successes. In 1801 they sacked Imám-Ḥusayn,<sup>3</sup> a town in the vicinity of Baghdád, massacred five thousand persons, and destroyed the cupola of Ḥusayn's tomb; the veneration paid by all Shí'ites to that shrine being, as Burckhardt says, a sufficient cause to attract the Wahhábí fury against it. [Two years later they made themselves masters of the whole Hijáz, including Mecca and Medina.] On the death of 'Abdu 'l-'Azíz, who was assassinated in the same year, his eldest son, Sa'ūd, continued the work of conquest and brought the greater part of Arabia under Wahhábite rule. At last, in 1811, Turkey despatched a fleet and army to recover the Holy Cities. This task was accomplished by Muḥammad 'Alí, the Pasha of Egypt (1812-13), and after five years' hard fighting the war ended in favour of the Turks, who in 1818 inflicted a severe defeat on the Wahhábīs and took their capital, Dīra'iyya, by storm. The sect, however, still maintains

<sup>1</sup> Burckhardt, *op. cit.*, vol. ii, p. 96.

<sup>2</sup> MSS. of Ibn Taymiyya copied by Ibn 'Abd al-Wahháb are extant (Goldziher in *Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 52, p. 156).

<sup>3</sup> This is the place usually called Karbalá or Mashhad Ḥusayn.



its power in Central Arabia, and in recent times has acquired political importance.

The Wahhábí were regarded by the Turks as infidels and authors of a new religion. It was natural that they should appear in this light, for they interrupted the pilgrim-caravans, demolished the domes and ornamented tombs of the most venerable Saints (not excepting that of the Prophet himself), and broke to pieces the Black Stone in the Ka'ba. All this they did not as innovators, but as reformers. They resembled the Carmathians only in their acts. Burckhardt says very truly: "Not a single new precept was to be found in the Wahaby code. Abd el Waháb took as his sole guide the Koran and the Sunne (or the laws formed upon the traditions of Mohammed); and the only difference between his sect and the orthodox Turks, however improperly so termed, is, that the Wahabys rigidly follow the same laws which the others neglect, or have ceased altogether to observe."<sup>1</sup> "The Wahhábites," says Dozy, "attacked the idolatrous worship of Mahomet; although he was in their eyes a Prophet sent to declare the will of God, he was no less a man like others, and his mortal shell, far from having mounted to heaven, rested in the tomb at Médina. Saint-worship they combated just as strongly. They proclaimed that all men are equal before God; that even the most virtuous and devout cannot intercede with Him; and that, consequently, it is a sin to invoke the Saints and to adore their relics."<sup>2</sup> In the same puritan spirit they forbade the smoking of tobacco, the wearing of gaudy robes, and praying over the rosary. "It has been stated that they likewise prohibited the drinking of coffee; this, however, is not the fact: they have always used it to an immoderate degree."<sup>3</sup>

The Wahhábite movement has been compared with the

<sup>1</sup> *Op. cit.*, vol. ii, p. 112.

<sup>2</sup> *Essai sur l'histoire de l'Islamisme*, p. 416.

<sup>3</sup> Burckhardt, *loc. laud.*, p. 115.

Protestant Reformation in Europe ; but while the latter was followed by the English and French Revolutions, the former has not yet produced any great political results. It has borne fruit in a general religious revival throughout the world of

Islam and particularly in the mysterious Sanúsiyya Brotherhood, whose influence is supreme in

Tripoli, the Sahara, and the whole North African Hinterland, and whose members are reckoned by millions. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī b. Sanúsi, the founder of this vast and formidable organisation, was born at Algiers in 1791, lived for many years at Mecca, and died at Jaghbúb in the Libyan desert, midway between Egypt and Tripoli, in 1859. Concerning the real aims of the Sanúsís I must refer the reader to an interesting paper by the Rev. E. Sell (*Essays on Islam*, p. 127 sqq.). [There is no doubt that they are utterly opposed to all Western and modern civilisation, and seek to regenerate Islam by establishing an independent theocratic State on the model of that which the Prophet and his successors called into being at Medína in the seventh century after Christ.]

Since Napoleon showed the way by his expedition to Egypt in 1798, the Moslems in that country, as likewise in Syria and North

Africa, have come more and more under European influence.<sup>1</sup> The above-mentioned Muḥammad

‘Alī, who founded the Khedivial dynasty, and his successors were fully alive to the practical benefits which might be obtained from the superior culture of the West, and although their policy in this respect was marked by greater zeal than discretion, they did not exert themselves altogether in vain. [The introduction of the printing-press in 1821 was an epoch-making measure.] If, on the one hand, the publication of

<sup>1</sup> I cannot enter into details on this subject. A review of modern Arabic literature is given by Brockelmann, *Gesch. der Arab. Litt.*, vol. ii, pp. 469-511, and by Huart, *Arabic Literature*, pp. 411-443.



many classical works, which had well-nigh fallen into oblivion, rekindled the enthusiasm of the Arabs for their national literature, the cause of progress—I use the word without prejudice—has been furthered by the numerous political, literary, and scientific journals which are now regularly issued in every country where Arabic is spoken.<sup>1</sup> Besides these ephemeral sheets, books of all sorts, old and new, have been multiplied by the native and European presses of Cairo, Búlák, and Beyrout. The science and culture of Europe have been rendered accessible in translations and adaptations of which the complete list would form a volume in itself. Thus, an Arab may read in his own language the tragedies of Racine, the comedies of Molière,<sup>2</sup> the fables of La Fontaine, ‘Paul and Virginia,’ the ‘Talisman,’ ‘Monte Cristo’ (not to mention scores of minor romances), and even the Iliad of Homer.<sup>3</sup> Parallel to this imitative activity, we see a vigorous and growing movement away from the literary models of the past. “Neo-Arabic literature is only to a limited extent the heir of the old ‘classical’ Arabic literature, and even shows a tendency to repudiate its inheritance entirely. Its leaders are for the most part men who have drunk from other springs and look at the world with different eyes. Yet the past still plays a part in their intellectual background, and there is a section amongst them upon whom that past retains a hold scarcely shaken by newer influences. For many decades the partisans of the ‘old’ and the ‘new’ have engaged in a struggle for the soul of the Arabic world, a struggle in which the victory of one side over the other is even yet not assured. The protagonists are (to classify them roughly for practical purposes) the European-educated classes of Egyptians and Syrians on the one hand, and those in Egypt and the less advanced Arabic lands whose education has followed traditional

<sup>1</sup> See M. Hartmann, *The Arabic Press of Egypt* (London, 1899).

<sup>2</sup> Brockelmann, *loc. cit.*, p. 476.

<sup>3</sup> Translated into Arabic verse by Sulaymán al-Bistání (Cairo, 1904). See Professor Margoliouth’s interesting notice of this work in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1905, p. 417 sqq.



lines on the other. Whatever the ultimate result may be, there can be no question that the conflict has torn the Arabic world from its ancient moorings, and that the contemporary literature of Egypt and Syria breathes in its more recent developments a spirit foreign to the old traditions."<sup>1</sup>

Hitherto Western culture has only touched the surface of Islam. Whether it will eventually strike deeper and penetrate the inmost barriers of that scholastic discipline and literary tradition which are so firmly rooted in the affections of the Moslem peoples, or whether it will always remain an exotic and highly-prized accomplishment of the enlightened and emancipated few, but an object of scorn and detestation to Muḥammadans in general—these are questions that may not be fully solved for centuries to come.

Meanwhile the Past affords an ample and splendid field of study.

"*Man lam ya'i 'l-la'rikha fi ḡadrihi*  
*Lam yadri ḡulwa 'l-'ayshi min murrihi*  
*Wa-man wa'ā akhbāra man qad maḡā*  
*Aḡāfa a'mār<sup>m</sup> ilā 'umrihi."*

"He in whose heart no History is enscrolled  
 Cannot discern in life's alloy the gold.  
 But he that keeps the records of the Dead  
 Adds to his life new lives a hundredfold."

<sup>1</sup> H. A. R. Gibb, *Studies in contemporary Arabic literature*, Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies, vol. iv, pt. 4, p. 746; cf. also vol. v, pt. 2, p. 311 foll. Mr Gibb has given references to the chief works on the subject, but for the sake of those who do not read Arabic or Russian it may be hoped that he will continue and complete his own survey, to which there is nothing *simile aut secundum* in English.

## APPENDIX

P. xxii, l. 2. Arabic begins to appear in North Arabian inscriptions in the third century A.D. Perhaps the oldest yet discovered is one, of which the probable date is 268 A.D., published by Jaussen and Savignac (*Mission archéologique en l'Arabie*, vol. i, p. 172). Though it is written in Aramaic characters, nearly all the words are Arabic, as may be seen from the transcription given by Professor Horovitz in *Islamic Culture* (Hyderabad, Deccan), April 1929, vol. iii, No. 2, p. 169, note 2.

P. 4 foll. Concerning the Sabaeans and the South Arabic inscriptions a great deal of valuable information will be found in the article *Saba'* by J. Tkatsch in the *Encyclopædia of Islam*. The writer points out the special importance of the epigraphic discoveries of E. Glaser, who, in the course of four journeys (1882-94), collected over 2000 inscriptions. See also D. Nielsen, *Handbuch der altarabischen Altertumskunde*, vol. i (Copenhagen and Paris, 1927).

P. 13, note 2. Excerpts from the *Shamsu 'l-'Ulûm* relating to South Arabia have been edited by Dr 'Azîmu'ddîn Aḥmad (E. J. W. Gibb Memorial Series, vol. xxiv).

P. 26 foll. For contemporary and later Christian accounts of the martyrdom of the Christians of Najrân, see the fragmentary *Book of the Himyarites* (Syriac text and English translation), ed. by A. Moberg in 1924, and cf. Tor Andrae, *Der Ursprung des Islams und das Christentum* (Uppsala, 1926), pp. 10-13.

P. 31. The collection of Arabic proverbs, entitled *Kitābu 'l-Fākhîr*, by Mufaddal b. Salama of Kûfa, is now available in the excellent edition of Mr C. A. Storey (Leyden, 1915).

P. 32, note 1. An edition of the *Aghānî* with critical notes is in course of publication at Cairo.

P. 52, l. 9 foll. The battle mentioned here cannot be the battle of 'Ayn Ubāgh, which took place between Ḥārith, the son of Ḥārith b. Jabala, and Mundhir IV of Ḥîra about 583 A.D. (Guidi, *L'Arabie antéislamique*, p. 27).

P. 127, l. 16. The ode *Bānat Su'ād* is rendered into English in my *Translations of Eastern Poetry and Prose*, pp. 19-23.

P. 133. As regards the authenticity of the Pre-Islamic poems which have come down to us, the observations of one of the greatest authorities on the subject, the late Sir Charles J. Lyall, seem to me to be eminently judicious (Introduction to the

*Mufaḍḍalīyāt*, vol. ii, pp. xvi-xxvi). He concludes that "upon the whole, the impression which a close study of these ancient relics gives is that we must take them, generally speaking, as the production of the men whose names they bear." All that can be urged against this view has been said with his usual learning by Professor Margoliouth (*The Origins of Arabic Poetry*, J.R.A.S., 1925, p. 417 foll.).

P. 145, l. 2. The oldest extant commentary on the Koran is that of Bukhārī in ch. 65 of the *Ṣaḥīḥ*, ed. Krehl, vol. iii, pp. 193-390.

P. 146, note 2. Recent investigators (Caetani and Lammens) are far more sceptical. Cf. Snouck Hurgronje, *Mohammedanism*, p. 22 foll.

P. 152, note 5. As suggested by Mr Richard Bell (*The Origin of Islam in its Christian environment*, p. 88), the word *ruḡḡ* is in all likelihood identical with the Syriac *ruḡḡa*, wrath, so that this verse of the Koran means, "Flee from the wrath to come."

P. 170, l. 2 foll. This is one of the passages I should have liked to omit. Even in its present form, it maintains a standpoint which I have long regarded as mistaken.

P. 184, l. 4 foll. Professor Snouck Hurgronje (*Mohammedanism*, p. 44) asks, "Was Mohammed conscious of the universality of his mission?" and decides that he was not. I now agree that "in the beginning he conceived his work as merely the Arabian part of a universal task"—in which case *dhikr* "li 'l-'ālamīn" in the passage quoted will mean "a warning to all the people (of Mecca or Arabia)." But similar expressions in *Sūras* of the Medina period carry, I think, a wider significance. The conception of Islam as a world-religion is implied in Mohammed's later belief—he only came to it gradually—that the Jewish and Christian scriptures are corrupt and that the Koran alone represents the original Faith which had been preached in turn by all the prophets before him. And having arrived at that conviction, he was not the man to leave others to act upon it.

P. 223, l. 9. In an article which appeared in the *Rivista degli studi orientali*, 1916, p. 429 foll., Professor C. A. Nallino has shown that this account of the origin of the name "Mu'tazilite" is erroneous. The word, as Mas'ūdī says (*Murūju 'l-Dhahab*, vol. vi, p. 22, and vol. vii, p. 234), is derived from *i'tizāl*, i.e. the doctrine that anyone who commits a capital sin has thereby withdrawn himself (*i'tazala*) from the true believers and taken a position (described as *fiṣq*, impiety) midway between them and the infidels. According to the Murjites, such a person was still a true believer, while their opponents, the Wa'īdites, and also the Khārijites, held him to be an unbeliever.



P. 225, l. 1. The Ḥadīth, "No monkery (*rahbāniyya*) in Islam," probably dates from the third century of the Hijra. According to the usual interpretation of Koran, LVII, 27, the *rahbāniyya* practised by Christian ascetics is condemned as an innovation not authorised by divine ordinance; but Professor Massignon (*Essai sur les origines du lexique technique de la mystique musulmane*, p. 123 foll.) shows that by some of the early Moslem commentators and also by the Ṣūfīs of the third century A.H. this verse of the Koran was taken as justifying and commending those Christians who devoted themselves to the ascetic life, except in so far as they had neglected to fulfil its obligations.

P. 225, l. 6 from foot. For the life and doctrines of Ḥasan of Basra, see Massignon, *op. cit.*, p. 152 foll.

P. 228 foll. It can now be stated with certainty that the name "Ṣūfī" originated in Kūfa in the second century A.H. and was at first confined to the mystics of 'Irāq. Hence the earliest development of Ṣūfism, properly so called, took place in a hotbed of Shī'ite and Hellenistic (Christian and Gnostic) ideas.

P. 233, l. 4 from foot. In *Rābi'a the Mystic* (Cambridge, 1928) Miss Margaret Smith has given a scholarly and sympathetic account of the life, legend, and teaching of this celebrated woman-saint. The statement that she died and was buried at Jerusalem is incorrect. Moslem writers have confused her with an earlier saint of the same name, Rābi'a bint Ismā'il († 135).

P. 313 foll. The text and translation of 332 extracts from the *Luzūmiyyāt* will be found in ch. ii of my *Studies in Islamic Poetry*, pp. 43-289.

P. 318, l. 12. Since there is no warrant for the antithesis of "knaves" and "fools," these verses are more faithfully rendered (*op. cit.*, p. 167):

They all err—Moslems, Christians, Jews, and Magians;  
Two make Humanity's universal sect:  
One man intelligent without religion,  
And one religious without intellect.

P. 318, l. 7 from foot. *Al-Fuṣūl wa 'l-Ghāyāt*. No copy of this work was known before 1919, when the discovery of the first part of it was announced (*J.R.A.S.*, 1919, p. 449).

P. 318, note 2. An edition of the *Risālatu 'l-Ghufrān* by Shaykh Ibrāhīm al-Yāziji was published at Cairo in 1907.

P. 319, l. 6. The epistle of 'Alī b. Manṣūr al-Ḥalabī (Ibnu 'l-Qārīḥ), to which the *Risālatu 'l-Ghufrān* is the reply, has been published in *Rasā'ilu 'l-Bulaghā*, ed. Muḥammad Kurd 'Alī (Cairo, 1913).

P. 332, note 2. For rhymed prose renderings of the 11th and 12th *Maqāmas*, see *Translations of Eastern Poetry and Prose*, pp. 116-124.

P. 367, l. 7 from foot. New light has recently been thrown upon the character of the Mu'tazilite movement by the publication of the Mu'tazilite al-Khayyāt's *Kitābu 'l-Intiṣār* (ed. H. S. Nyberg, Cairo, 1926), a third (ninth) century polemical work directed against the Shi'ite freethinker Ibnū 'l-Rāwandī (cf. p. 375 *supra*). It is now evident that this "heretical" sect played an active part as champions of Islam, not only in the early controversies which arose between Moslems and Christians in Syria but also against the more dangerous attacks which proceeded in the first hundred years of the 'Abbāsid period from the Manichæans and other "*zanādīqa*" in Persia and especially in 'Irāq (cf. I. Guidi, *La Lotta tra l'Islam e il Manicheismo* (Rome, 1927)). In order to meet these adversaries on equal terms, the Mu'tazilites made themselves acquainted with Greek philosophy and logic, and thus laid the foundations of an Islamic scholasticism. Cf. H. H. Schaeder, *Der Orient und die Griechische Erbe* in W. Jaeger's *Die Antike*, vol. iv, p. 261 foll.

P. 370, l. 3 foll. From what has been said in the preceding note it follows that this view of the relation between the Mu'tazilites and the *Ikhwānu 'l-Ṣafā* requires considerable modification. Although, in contrast to their orthodox opponents, the Mu'tazilites may be described as "rationalists" and "liberal theologians," their principles were entirely opposed to the anti-Islamic eclecticism of the *Ikhwān*.

P. 375, note 2. Professor Schaeder thinks that Middle Persian *zandik* has nothing to do with the Aramaic *zaddiq* (*Z.D.M.G.*, vol. 82, Heft 3-4, p. lxxx).

Pp. 383-393. During the last twenty years our knowledge of early Ṣūfism has increased, chiefly through the profound researches of Professor Massignon, to such an extent as to render the account given in these pages altogether inadequate. The subject being one of great difficulty and unsuitable for detailed exposition in a book of this kind, I must content myself with a few illustrative remarks and references, which will enable the student to obtain further information.

P. 383. Massignon's view is that Ṣūfism (down to the fourth century A.H.) owed little to foreign influences and was fundamentally Islamic, a product of intensive study of the Koran and of inward meditation on its meaning and essential nature. There is great force in his argument, though I cannot help believing that the development of mysticism, like that of other contemporary branches of Moslem thought, must have



been vitally affected by contact with the ancient Hellenistic culture of the Sásánian and Byzantine empires on its native soil. Cf. A. J. Wensinck, *The Book of the Dove* (Leyden, 1919) and *Mystic Treatises by Isaac of Niniveh* (Amsterdam, 1923).

P. 384, l. 1. The identity of third-century Šúfiism with the doctrines of the Vedānta is maintained by M. Horten (*Indische Strömungen in der Islamischen Mystik*, Heidelberg, 1927-8). Few, however, would admit this. The conversion of Šúfiism into a monistic philosophy was the work of Ibnu 'l-'Arabí (1165-1240 A.D.). See p. 402 foll.

P. 384, l. 5. The so-called "Theology of Aristotle," translated from Syriac into Arabic about 830 A.D., is mainly an abstract of the *Enneads* of Plotinus. There is an edition with German translation by Dieterici.

P. 385, l. 11. All previous accounts of the development of mystical doctrines in Islam during the first three centuries after the Hijra have been superseded by Massignón's intimate analysis (*Essai*, chs. iv and v, pp. 116-286), which includes biographies of the eminent Šúfis of that period and is based upon an amazingly wide knowledge of original and mostly unpublished sources of information. A useful summary of these two chapters is given by Father Joseph Maréchal in his *Studies in the Psychology of the Mystics*, tr. Thorold (1927), pp. 241-9.

P. 386, l. 6 from foot. For Dhu 'l-Nún, see Massignón, *op. cit.*, p. 184 foll.

P. 389, l. 12. *The Book of the Holy Hierotheos* has recently been edited in Syriac for the first time, with English translation, by F. S. Marsh (Text and Translation Society, 1927).

P. 391. For Báyzáf of Bisám, see Massignón, *op. cit.*, p. 243 foll. The oldest complete Arabic version of his "Ascension" (*Mi'râf*)—a spiritual dream-experience—has been edited and translated into English in *Islamica*, vol. ii, fasc. 3, p. 402 foll.

P. 396, l. 8. See my essay on the Odes of Ibnu 'l-Fárid (*Studies in Islamic Mysticism*, pp. 162-266), which comprises translations of the *Khamriyya* and three-fourths of the *Tá'iyyatu 'l-Kubrâ*.

P. 399, note 1. With Halláj, thanks to the monumental work of Massignón (*La Passion d'al-Halláj*, 2 vols., Paris, 1922), we are now better acquainted than with any other Moslem mystic. His doctrine exhibits some remarkable affinities with Christianity and bears no traces of the pantheism attributed to him by later Šúfis as well as by Von Kremer and subsequent European writers. Cf. the summary given by Father Joseph Maréchal, *op. cit.*, pp. 249-281, and *The Idea of Personality in Šúfism* (Cambridge, 1922), pp. 26-37.



P. 402, l. 9. For Ibnu 'l-'Arabî's theory of the Perfect Man, see Tor Andrae, *Die Person Muhammads*, p. 339 foll., and for the same theory as expounded by 'Abdu 'l-Karîm al-Jîlî († circ. 1410 A.D.), a follower of Ibnu 'l-'Arabî, in his famous treatise entitled *al-Insân al-Kâmil*, cf. *Studies in Islamic Mysticism*, pp. 77-142.

P. 456, l. 1 foll. Here, though he is out of place in such an academic company, mention should have been made of Ibn Battâta of Tangier († 1377), whose frank and entertaining story of his almost world-wide travels, entitled *Tuhfatu 'l-Nuzzâr*, is described by its latest translator, Mr H. A. R. Gibb, as "an authority for the social and cultural history of post-Mongol Islam."

P. 465, last line. For a summary of the doctrines and history of the Wahhâbîs, see the article *Wahhâbîs* by Professor D. S. Margoliouth in Hastings' *Encyclopædia of Religion and Ethics*.

P. 469. *La littérature arabe au xix<sup>e</sup> siècle*, by L. Cheikho (Beyrouth, 1908-10), which deals chiefly with the literature produced by the Christian Arabs of Syria, deserves mention as one of the few works on the subject written in a European language. The influence of Western ideas on Moslem theology may be studied in the *Risâlatu 'l-tauhîd* of the great Egyptian divine, Muḥammad 'Abduh (1842-1905), which has been translated into French by B. Michel and Mustapha 'Abd el Razik (Paris, 1925).

## BIBLIOGRAPHY OF WORKS BY EUROPEAN AUTHORS

THE following list is intended to give students of Arabic as well as those who cannot read that language the means of obtaining further information concerning the various topics which fall within the scope of a work such as this. Since anything approaching to a complete bibliography is out of the question, I have mentioned only a few of the most important translations from Arabic into English, French, German, and Latin; and I have omitted (1) monographs on particular Arabic writers, whose names, together with the principal European works relating to them, will be found in Brockelmann's great History of Arabic Literature, and (2) a large number of books and articles which appeal to specialists rather than to students. Additional information is supplied by E. G. Browne in his *Literary History of Persia*, vol. i, pp. 481-496, and D. B. Macdonald in his *Development of Muslim Theology, etc.* (London, 1903), pp. 358-367, while the Appendix to H. A. R. Gibb's *Arabic Literature* (Oxford University Press, 1926) contains a well-chosen list of books of reference and translations. Those who require more detailed references may consult the *Bibliographie des ouvrages arabes ou relatifs aux Arabes publ. dans l'Europe chrétienne de 1810 à 1885*, by V. Chauvin (Liège, 1892-1903), the *Orientalische Bibliographie*, edited by A. Müller, E. Kuhn, and L. Scherman (Berlin, 1887—), the *Handbuch der Islam-Litteratur*, by D. G. Pfannmüller (Berlin and Leipzig, 1923), and the *Catalogue of the Arabic Books in the British Museum*, by A. G. Ellis, 2 vols. (London, 1894-1902) with the *Supplementary Catalogue*, by A. S. Fulton and A. G. Ellis (London, 1926).

As a rule, titles of monographs and works of a specialistic character which have been already given in the footnotes are not repeated in the Bibliography.

### I

#### PHILOLOGY.

1. *Die Semitischen Sprachen*, by Th. Nöldeke (2nd ed. Leipzig, 1899).

An improved and enlarged reprint of the German original of his article, 'Semitic Languages,' in the *Encyclopædia Britannica* (9th edition).

2. *A Grammar of the Arabic Language*, by W. Wright, 3rd ed., revised by W. Robertson Smith and M. J. de Goeje, 2 vols. (Cambridge, 1896-98).

The best Arabic grammar for advanced students. Beginners may prefer to use the abridgment by F. du Pre Thornton, *Elementary Arabic: a Grammar* (Cambridge University Press, 1905).

3. *Arabic-English Lexicon*, by E. W. Lane, 8 parts (London, 1863-93).

This monumental work is unfortunately incomplete. Among other lexica those of Freytag (Arabic and Latin, 4 vols, Halle, 1830-37), A. de Biberstein Kazimirski (Arabic and French, 2 vols., Paris, 1846-60, and 4 vols., Cairo, 1875), and Dozy's *Supplément aux Dictionnaires arabes*, 2 vols. (Leyden, 1881), deserve special notice. Smaller dictionaries, sufficient for ordinary purposes, have been compiled by Belot (*Dictionnaire arabe-français*, Beyrout, 1928), and Wortabet and Porter (*Arabic-English Dictionary*, 3rd ed., Beyrout, 1913).

4. *Abhandlungen zur Arabischen Philologie*, by Ignaz Goldziher, Part I (Leyden, 1896).

Contains masterly studies on the origins of Arabic Poetry and other matters connected with literary history.

5. *Die Rhetorik der Araber*, by A. F. Mehren (Copenhagen, 1853).

## II

### GENERAL WORKS ON ARABIAN HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY, GEOGRAPHY, LITERATURE, ETC.

6. *The Encyclopædia of Islam* (Leyden, 1913—).

A great number of Orientalists have contributed to this invaluable work, of which the first half (A-L) is now completed.

7. *Chronique de Tabari, traduite sur la version persane de... Bel'amî*, by H. Zotenberg, 4 vols. (Paris, 1867-74).

8. *The Murûju 'l-Dhahab of Mas'ûdî (Maçoudî: Les Prairies d'Or)*, Arabic text with French translation by Barbier de Meynard and Pavet de Courteille, 9 vols. (Paris, 1861-77).

The works of Tabari and Mas'ûdî are the most ancient and celebrated Universal Histories in the Arabic language.

9. *Abulfedæ Annales Muslemici arabice et latine*, by J. J. Reiske, 5 vols. (Hafnia, 1789-94).

10. *Der Islam im Morgen- und Abendland*, by August Müller, 2 vols. (Berlin, 1885-87).



11. *Histoire des Arabes*, by C. Huart, 2 vols. (Paris, 1912).
12. *A Short History of the Saracens*, by Syed Ameer Ali (London, 1921).
13. *Essai sur l'histoire de l'Islamisme*, by R. Dozy, translated from the Dutch by Victor Chauvin (Leyden and Paris, 1879).
14. *The Preaching of Islam, a History of the Propagation of the Muslim Faith*, by T. W. Arnold (2nd ed., London, 1913).
15. *Sketches from Eastern History*, by Th. Nöldeke, translated by J. S. Black (London, 1892).
16. *The Mohammadan Dynasties*, by Stanley Lane-Poole (London, 1894).

Indispensable to the student of Moslem history.

17. *Genealogische Tabellen der Arabischen Stämme und Familien mit historischen und geographischen Bemerkungen in einem alphabetischen Register*, by F. Wüstenfeld (Göttingen, 1852-53).
18. *Ibn Khallikān's Biographical Dictionary*, translated from the Arabic by Baron MacGuckin de Slane, 4 vols. (Oriental Translation Fund, 1842-71).

One of the most characteristic, instructive, and interesting books in Arabic literature.

19. *Géographie d'Aboulféda, traduite de l'arabe*, by Reinaud and Guyard, 2 vols. (Paris, 1848-83).
20. *Travels in Arabia Deserta*, by C. M. Doughty, 2 vols. (Cambridge, 1888).

Gives a true and vivid picture of Bedouin life and manners.

21. *Personal Narrative of a Pilgrimage to al-Madinah and Meccah*, by Sir R. F. Burton, 2 vols. (London, 1898).
22. *The Penetration of Arabia: a record of the development of Western knowledge concerning the Arabian Peninsula*, by D. G. Hogarth (London, 1905).
23. *Ḥājjī Khalīfa, Lexicon bibliographicum et encyclopædicum*, Arabic text and Latin translation, by G. Flügel, 7 vols. (Leipzig and London, 1835-58).
24. *Die Geschichtschreiber der Araber und ihre Werke* (aus dem xxviii. und xxix. Bande der Abhand. d. Königl. Ges. d. Wiss. zu Göttingen), by F. Wüstenfeld (Göttingen, 1882).
25. *Litteraturgeschichte der Araber bis zum Ende des 12. Jahrhunderts der Hidschret*, by J. von Hammer-Purgstall, 7 vols. (Vienna, 1850-56).

A work of immense extent, but unscientific and extremely inaccurate.

26. *Geschichte der Arabischen Litteratur*, by Carl Brockelmann, 2 vols. (Weimar, 1898-1902).

Invaluable for bibliography and biography.

27. *A Literary History of Persia*, by E. G. Browne, vol. i from the earliest times to Firdawsī (London, 1902), and vol. ii down to the Mongol Invasion (London, 1906).  
The first volume in particular of this well-known work contains much information concerning the literary history of the Arabs.
- ✓ 28. *A History of Arabic Literature*, by Clément Huart (London, 1903).  
The student will find this manual useful for purposes of reference.
29. *Arabic Literature: an Introduction*, by H. A. R. Gibb (London, 1926).  
A trustworthy outline of the subject.
30. *Arabum Proverbia*, Arabic text with Latin translation, by G. W. Freytag, 3 vols. (Bonn, 1838-43).
31. *Arabic Proverbs*, by J. L. Burckhardt (2nd ed., London, 1875).

## III

## PRE-ISLAMIC HISTORY, LITERATURE, AND RELIGION.

32. *Essai sur l'histoire des Arabes avant l'Islamisme*, by A. P. Caussin de Perceval, 3 vols. (Paris, 1847-48).  
Affords an excellent survey of Pre-islamic legend and tradition.
33. *Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden*, translated from the Annals of Ṭabarī, by Th. Nöldeke (Leyden, 1879).  
The ample commentary accompanying the translation is valuable and important in the highest degree.
34. *Fünf Mu'allagāt übersetzt und erklärt*, by Th. Nöldeke (Vienna, 1899-1901).  
The omitted *Mu'allagās* are those of Imru'u 'l-Qays and Ṭarafa.
- ✓ 35. *The Seven Golden Odes of Pagan Arabia*, translated from the original Arabic by Lady Anne Blunt and done into English verse by Wilfrid Scawen Blunt (London, 1903).
36. *Hamāsa oder die ältesten arabischen Volkslieder übersetzt und erläutert*, by Friedrich Rückert, 2 vols. (Stuttgart, 1846).  
Masterly verse-translations of the old Arabian poetry.
- ✓ 37. *Translations of ancient Arabian poetry, chiefly Pre-islamic*, with an introduction and notes, by C. J. Lyall (London, 1885).
38. *Beiträge zur Kenntniss der Poesie der alten Araber*, by Th. Nöldeke (Hannover, 1864).

39. *Studien in arabischen Dichtern*, Heft iii, *Altarabisches Beduinenleben nach den Quellen geschildert*, by G. Jacob (Berlin, 1897).
40. *Kinship and Marriage in Early Arabia*, by W. Robertson Smith (2nd ed., London, 1903).
41. *Lectures on the Religion of the Semites*, First Series, by W. Robertson Smith, 3rd ed., revised by S. A. Cook (London, 1927).
42. *Reste Arabischen Heidentums*, by J. Wellhausen (2nd ed., Berlin, 1897).

## IV

## MUHAMMAD AND THE KORAN.

43. *Das Leben Mohammed's*, translated from the Arabic biography of Ibn Hishām by G. Weil, 2 vols. (Stuttgart, 1864).
44. *Muhammed in Medina*, by J. Wellhausen (Berlin, 1882).  
An abridged translation of Wāqidi's work on Muḥammad's Campaigns.
45. *Das Leben und die Lehre des Moḥammad*, by A. Sprenger, 3 vols. (Berlin, 1861-65).
46. *Life of Mahomet*, by Sir W. Muir, ed. by T. H. Weir (Edinburgh, 1923).
47. *Das Leben Muhammed's nach den Quellen populär dargestellt*, by Th. Nöldeke (Hannover, 1863).
48. *The Spirit of Islam*, by Syed Ameer Ali (London, 1922).
49. *Mohammed*, by H. Grimme, 2 vols. (Münster, 1892-95).
50. *Die weltgeschichtliche Bedeutung Arabiens: Mohammed*, by H. Grimme (Munich, 1904).
51. *Mohammed and the Rise of Islam*, by D. S. Margoliouth in 'Heroes of the Nations' Series (London and New York, 1905).
52. *Mohammed and Islam*, by A. A. Bevan in *The Cambridge Mediæval History*, vol. ii, ch. 10 (Cambridge, 1913).
53. *Die Person Muhammeds in Lehre und Glauben seiner Gemeinde*, by Tor Andrae (Uppsala, 1918).
54. *The origin of Islam in its Christian environment*, by R. Bell (London, 1926).
55. *Annali dell' Islām*, by Leone Caetani, Principe di Teano, vol. i (Milan, 1905).

Besides a very full and readable historical introduction this magnificent work contains a detailed account of Muḥammad's life during the first six years after the Hijra (622-628 A.D.).



56. *The Koran*, translated into English with notes and a preliminary discourse, by G. Sale (London, 1734).  
Sale's translation, which has been frequently reprinted, is still serviceable. Mention may also be made of the English versions by J. M. Rodwell (London and Hertford, 1861) and by E. H. Palmer (the best from a literary point of view) in vols. vi and ix of 'The Sacred Books of the East' (Oxford, 1880); reprinted in *The World's Classics*, vol. 328.
57. *Geschichte des Qorâns*, by Th. Nöldeke, 2nd ed., revised by F. Schwally (Leipzig, 1909-19).  
Cf. Nöldeke's essay, 'The Koran,' in *Sketches from Eastern History*, pp. 21-59, or his article in the *Encyclopædia Britannica* (11th ed.).
58. *The Teaching of the Qur'ân*, by H. W. Stanton (London, 1920).

## V

## THE HISTORY OF THE CALIPHATE.

59. *The Caliphate*, by T. W. Arnold (Oxford, 1924).
60. *Geschichte der Chalifen*, by G. Weil, 3 vols. (Mannheim, 1846-51).  
Completed by the same author's *Geschichte des Abbasiden-Chalifats in Egypten*, 2 vols. (Stuttgart, 1860-62).
61. *Annals of the Early Caliphate*, by Sir W. Muir (London, 1883).
62. *The Caliphate, its rise, decline, and fall*, by Sir W. Muir (2nd ed., London, 1924).
63. *The Arab Conquest of Egypt and the last thirty years of Roman dominion*, by A. J. Butler (London, 1902).
64. *Das Arabische Reich und sein Sturz*, by J. Wellhausen (Berlin, 1902).  
An excellent history of the Umayyad dynasty based on the Annals of Tabari.
65. *The Eclipse of the Abbasid Caliphate*, by H. F. Amedroz and D. S. Margoliouth, 7 vols. (Oxford, 1920-1).  
Arabic texts and translations valuable for the history of the fourth century A.H.
66. *The life and times of 'Alī b. 'Īsā, the Good Vizier*, by H. Bowen (Cambridge, 1928).
67. *Geschichte der Fatimiden-Chalifen, nach arabischen Quellen*, by F. Wüstenfeld (Göttingen, 1881).

## VI

## THE HISTORY OF MOSLEM CIVILISATION.

68. *Prolégomènes d'Ibn Khaldoun*, a French translation of the *Muqaddima* or Introduction prefixed by Ibn Khaldûn to his Universal History, by Baron MacGuckin de Slane, 3 vols. (in *Notices et Extraits des Manuscrits de la Bibliothèque Impériale*, vols. xix-xxi, Paris, 1863-68).
69. *Culturgeschichte des Orients unter den Chalifen*, by A. von Kremer, 2 vols. (Vienna, 1875-77).
70. *Culturgeschichtliche Streifzüge auf dem Gebiete des Islams*, by A. von Kremer (Leipzig, 1873).  
This work has been translated into English by S. Khuda Bukhsh in his *Contributions to the History of Islamic Civilization* (Calcutta, 1905; 2nd ed., 1929).
71. *Geschichte der herrschenden Ideen des Islams*, by A. von Kremer (Leipzig, 1868).  
A celebrated and most illuminating book.
72. *La civilisation des Arabes*, by G. Le Bon (Paris, 1884).
73. *Muhammedanische Studien*, by Ignaz Goldziher (Halle, 1888-90).  
This book, which has frequently been cited in the foregoing pages, should be read by every serious student of Moslem civilisation.
74. *Islamstudien*, vol. i, by C. H. Becker (Leipzig, 1924).
75. *Umayyads and 'Abbāsids*, being the Fourth Part of Jurji Zaydān's *History of Islamic Civilisation*, translated by D. S. Margoliouth (E. J. W. Gibb Memorial, vol. iv, 1907).
76. *Die Renaissance des Islams*, by A. Mez (Heidelberg, 1922).
77. *Baghdad during the Abbasid Caliphate*, by G. le Strange (Oxford, 1900).
78. *A Baghdad Chronicle*, by R. Levy (Cambridge, 1929).
79. *The Lands of the Eastern Caliphate*, by G. le Strange (Cambridge, 1905).
80. *Palestine under the Moslems*, by G. le Strange (London, 1890).
81. *Painting in Islam*, by T. W. Arnold (Oxford, 1928).
82. *Moslem Architecture*, by G. T. Rivoira, translated by G. M. Rushforth (Oxford, 1919).
83. *Arabian Society in the Middle Ages*, by E. W. Lane, edited by Stanley Lane-Poole (London, 1883).
84. *Die Araber im Mittelalter und ihr Einfluss auf die Cultur Europa's*, by G. Diercks (2nd ed., Leipzig, 1882).
85. *An account of the Manners and Customs of the Modern Egyptians*, by E. W. Lane (5th ed., London, 1871).

## VII

MUHAMMADAN RELIGION, THEOLOGY, JURISPRUDENCE,  
PHILOSOPHY, AND MYSTICISM.

86. *Development of Muslim Theology, Jurisprudence, and Constitutional Theory*, by Duncan B. Macdonald (London, 1903).  
The best general sketch of the subject.
87. *Asch-Schahrastâni's Religionspartheien und Philosophen-Schulen*, translated by T. Haarbrücker (Halle, 1850-51).
88. *The Traditions of Islam*, by A. Guillaume (Oxford, 1924).  
See also No. 73, Pt. ii.
89. *Les traditions islamiques trad. de l'arabe*, by O. Houdas and W. Marçais (Paris, 1903-14).  
A translation of the celebrated collection of Traditions by Bukhârî.
90. *A Handbook of early Muhammadan Tradition*, by A. J. Wensinck (Leyden, 1927).
91. *Mohammedanism*, by C. Snouck Hurgronje (American lectures on the history of religions, 1916).
92. *Vorlesungen über den Islam*, by I. Goldziher (Heidelberg, 1910; 2nd ed., 1925).
93. *The Early Development of Mohammedanism*, by D. S. Margoliouth (London, 1914; re-issued, 1927).
94. *L'Islam, croyances et institutions*, by H. Lammens (Beyrout, 1926); translation by E. Denison Ross (London, 1929).
95. *The Islamic Faith*, by T. W. Arnold (Benn's Sixpenny Library, No. 42).
96. *The History of Philosophy in Islam*, by T. J. de Boer, translated by E. R. Jones (London, 1903).
97. *Die Mutaziliten oder die Freidenker im Islam*, by H. Steiner (Leipzig, 1865).
98. *Die Philosophie der Araber im X. Jahrhundert n. Chr. aus den Schriften der lautern Brüder herausgegeben*, by F. Dieterici (Berlin and Leipzig, 1861-79).
99. *Averroes et l'Averroïsme*, by E. Renan (Paris, 1861).
100. *Mélanges de Philosophie Juive et Arabe*, by S. Munk (Paris, 1859).
101. *Fragments, relatifs à la doctrine des Ismaélites*, by S. Guyard (Paris, 1874).
102. *Exposé de la Religion des Druzes*, by Silvestre de Sacy, 2 vols. (Paris, 1838).
- ✓ 103. *The Mystics of Islam*, by R. A. Nicholson (London, 1914).
104. *The Religious Attitude and Life in Islam*, by D. B. Macdonald (Chicago, 1909).



105. *Essai sur les origines du lexique technique de la mystique musulmane*, by L. Massignon (Paris, 1922).
106. *La Passion d'al-Hallāj*, by L. Massignon, 2 vols. (Paris, 1922).
107. *Al-Kuschairis Darstellung des Šūfismus*, by Richard Hartmann (Berlin, 1914).
108. *Kleinere Schriften des Ibn al-'Arabī*, by H. S. Nyberg (Leiden, 1919).
109. *Studies in Islamic Mysticism*, by R. A. Nicholson (Cambridge, 1921).
- ✓ 110. *The Idea of Personality in Šūfism*, by R. A. Nicholson (Cambridge, 1923).
111. *The Dervishes or Oriental Spiritualism*, by John P. Brown, ed. by H. A. Rose (London, 1927).
112. *Les Confréries religieuses musulmanes*, by O. Depont and X. Coppolani (Algiers, 1897).

## VIII

## THE HISTORY AND LITERATURE OF THE MOORS.

113. *Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne jusqu'à la conquête de l'Andalusie par les Almoravides (711-1110 A.D.)*, by R. Dozy, 4 vols. (Leyden, 1861). Translated into English under the title *Spanish Islam* by F. G. Stokes (London, 1913).
114. *History of the Moorish Empire in Europe*, by S. P. Scott, 3 vols. (New York, 1904).
115. *The Moriscos of Spain, their conversion and expulsion*, by H. C. Lea (Philadelphia, 1901).
116. *History of the Mohammedan dynasties of Spain*, translated from the *Nafḥ al-'Iṭb* of Maqqari by Pascual de Gayangos, 2 vols. (London, Oriental Translation Fund, 1840-43).
117. *The History of the Almohades*, by 'Abdu 'l-Wāḥid al-Marrākoshī, translated by E. Fagnan (Algiers, 1893).
118. *Recherches sur l'histoire et la littérature de l'Espagne pendant le moyen âge*, by R. Dozy, 2 vols. (3rd ed., Leyden, 1881).
119. *Poesie und Kunst der Araber in Spanien und Sicilien*, by A. F. von Schack, 2 vols. (2nd ed., Stuttgart, 1877).
120. *Moorish remains in Spain*, by A. F. Calvert (London, 1905).
121. *Storia dei musulmani di Sicilia*, by M. Amari (Firenze, 1854-72). A revised edition is in course of publication.

## IX

THE HISTORY OF THE ARABS FROM THE MONGOL  
INVASION IN THE THIRTEENTH CENTURY TO THE  
PRESENT DAY.

122. *Histoire des Sultans Mamlouhs de l'Égypte, écrite en arabe par Taki-eddin Ahmed Makrizi, traduite en français... par M. Quatremère*, 2 vols. (Oriental Translation Fund, 1845).
123. *The Mameluke or Slave dynasty of Egypt*, by Sir W. Muir (London, 1896).
124. *Histoire de Bagdad depuis la domination des Khans mongols jusqu'au massacre des Mamlouhs*, by C. Huart (Paris, 1901).
125. *History of the Egyptian revolution from the period of the Mamelukes to the death of Mohammed Ali*, by A. A. Paton, 2 vols. (London, 1870).
126. *The Shaikhs of Morocco in the XVI<sup>th</sup> century*, by T. H. Weir (Edinburgh, 1904).
127. *The Arabic Press of Egypt*, by M. Hartmann (London, 1899).
128. *Neuarabische Volkspoesie gesammelt und uebersetzt*, by Enno Littmann (Berlin, 1902).

# INDEX

In the following Index it has been found necessary to omit the accents indicating the long vowels, and the dots which are used in the text to distinguish letters of similar pronunciation. On the other hand, the definite article *al* has been prefixed throughout to those Arabic names which it properly precedes: it is sometimes written in full, but is generally denoted by a hyphen, e.g. 'Abbas for al-'Abbas. Names of books, as well as Oriental words and technical terms explained in the text, are printed in italics. Where a number of references occur under one heading, the more important are, as a rule, shown by means of thicker type.

## A

- Aaron, 215, 273  
 'Abbad, 421  
 'Abbadid dynasty, the, 414, 421-424, 431  
 'Abbas, 146, 249, 250, 251  
 'Abbas b. -Ahnaf (poet), 261  
 'Abbas, 261  
 'Abbasid history, two periods of, 257  
 'Abbasid propaganda, the, 249-251  
 'Abbasids, the, xxviii, xxix, xxx, 65, 181, 182, 193, 194, 220, 249-253, 254-284, 287-291, 365-387, 373  
 'Abdullah, father of the Prophet, xxvii, 146, 148, 250  
 'Abdullah, brother of Dura'yd b. -Simma, 83  
 'Abdullah, the Amir (Spanish Umayyad), 411  
 'Abdullah b. -'Abbas, 145, 237, 249  
 'Abdullah b. Hamdan, 269  
 'Abdullah b. Ibad, 211  
 'Abdullah b. Mas'ud, 352  
 'Abdullah b. Maymun al-Qaddah, 271-274, 363  
 'Abdullah b. Muhammad b. Adham, 423  
 'Abdullah b. -Mu'tazz. See *Ibnu 'l-Mu'tazz*  
 'Abdullah b. Saba, 215, 216  
 'Abdullah b. Tahir, 129  
 'Abdullah b. Ubayy, 172  
 'Abdullah b. Yasin al-Kuruli, 430  
 'Abdullah b. Zubayr, 198, 199, 200, 202  
 'Abdu 'l-'Aziz (Marinid), 436  
 'Abdu 'l-'Aziz, brother of 'Abdu 'l-Malik, 200  
 'Abdu 'l-'Aziz, son of Muhammad b. Sa'ud, 466  
 'Abdu 'l-Ghani al-Nabulusi, 402  
 'Abdu 'l-Hamid, 267  
 'Abdu 'l-Malik (Umayyad Caliph), 200-202, 206, 209, 224, 240, 242, 244, 247, 349, 407  
 'Abd Manaf, 146  
 'Abdu 'l-Mu'min (Almohade), 412  
 'Abdu 'l-Muttalib, 66-68, 146, 148, 154, 250  
 'Abdu 'l-Qadir al-Baghdadi, 131  
 'Abdu 'l-Qadir al-Jili, 393  
 'Abd al-Qays (tribe), 94  
 'Abdu 'l-Rahman I, the Umayyad, 253, 264, 405-407, 417, 418  
 'Abdu 'l-Rahman II (Spanish Umayyad), 409, 418  
 'Abdu 'l-Rahman III (Spanish Umayyad), 411-412, 420, 425  
 'Abdu 'l-Rahman V (Spanish Umayyad), 426  
 'Abdu 'l-Rahman b. 'Awf, 186  
 'Abdu 'l-Razzaq-Kashani, 402  
 'Abd Shams, 146  
 'Abd Shams Saba, 14  
 'Abdu 'l-Uzza, 159  
 'Abdu 'l-Wahhab, founder of the Wahhabite sect. See *Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Wahhab*  
 'Abdu 'l-Wahhab al-Sha'rani. See *-Sha'rani*  
 'Abdu 'l-Wahid of Morocco (historian), 431, 433  
 'Abid b. -Abbas (poet), 39, 44, 86, 101  
 'Abid b. Sharya, 13, 19, 247  
 'Abida b. Hilal, 239  
 'Abir, xviii  
 'Abia, 115  
 -Abiaq (name of a castle), 84  
 Ablutions, the ceremonial, incumbent on Moslems, 149  
 -Abna, 29  
 Abrahah, 6, 15, 28, 65-68  
 Abraham, xviii, 22, 62, 63, 66, 149, 150, 165, 172, 177  
 Abraham, the religion of, 62, 149, 177  
 'Abs (tribe), xix, 61, 88, 114-117  
 Absal, 433  
 Abu 'l-'Abbas (Marinid), 436  
 Abu 'l-'Abbas Ahmad al-Mursi, 327  
 Abu 'l-'Abbas al-Nami (poet), 270  
 Abu 'l-'Abbas-Saffah, 182, 253. See *-Saffah*  
 Abu 'Abdallah Ibnu 'l-Ahmar (Nasrid), 437  
 Abu 'Abd al-Rahman al-Sulami, 338  
 Abu Ahmad al-Mihrajani, 370  
 Abu 'l-'Ala al-Ma'arri, 166, 167, 206, 271, 289, 291, 296, 308, 313-324, 376, 448  
 Abu 'Ali al-Qali, 131, 420  
 Abu 'Ali b. Sina, 265. See *Ibn Sina*  
 Abu 'Amir, the Monk, 170  
 Abu 'Amr b. al-'Ala, 242, 285, 343  
 Abu 'l-'Aswad al-Du'li, 342, 343  
 Abu 'l-'Atahya (poet), 261, 291, 296-308, 308, 312, 324, 374  
 Abu Ayman (title), 14  
 Abu Bakr (Caliph), xxvii, 142, 153, 175, 180, 183, 185, 210, 214, 215, 257, 268, 297  
 Abu Bakr b. Abi 'l-Azhar, 344  
 Abu Bakr Ibnu 'l-'Arabi of Seville, 399  
 Abu Bakr b. Mu'awiya, 420  
 Abu Bakr al-Nabulusi, 460  
 Abu Bakr al-Razi (physician), 265. See *-Razi*  
 Abu Bakr b. 'Umar, 439  
 Abu 'l-Darda, 225  
 Abu Dawud al-Sijistani, 337  
 Abu 'l-Faraj of Isfahan, 32, 123, 131, 270, 347, 419. See *Kutabu 'l-Aghani*  
 Abu 'l-Faraj al-Babbagha (poet), 270  
 Abu 'l-Fida (historian), 308, 316, 331, 454  
 Abu Firas al-Hamdani (poet), 270, 304  
 Abu Ghubshan, 65  
 Abu Hanifa, 222, 284, 402, 408  
 Abu 'l-Hasan 'Ali b. Harun al-Zanjani, 370  
 Abu 'l-Hasan al-Ash'ari, 284. See *-Ash'ari*



- Abu Hashim, the Imam, 220, 251.  
 Abu Hashim, the Sufi, 229.  
 Abu Hudhayl 'Allaf, 369.  
 Abu 'l-Husayn al-Nuri, 392.  
 Abu 'Imran al-Fasi, 429.  
 Abu Ishaq al-Farisi. See *Istakhrī*.  
 Abu Ja'far -Mansur, 258. See *-Mansur, the Caliph*.  
 Abu Jahl, 158.  
 Abu Karib, the Tubba', 12, 19. See *Ar'ad Kamil*.  
 Abu Lahab, 159, 160.  
 Abu 'l-Mahasin b. Taghribirdi (historian), 257, 262, 267, 268, 350, 369, 404.  
 Abu Marwan Ghaylan, 224.  
 Abu Ma'shar, 361.  
 Abu Mihjan (poet), 127.  
 Abu Mikhnaf, 210.  
 Abu Musa al-Ash'ari, 192, 377.  
 Abu Muslim, 220, 251-252, 375.  
 Abu Nasr al-Isma'ilī, 339.  
 Abu Nasr al-Sarraj, 393.  
 Abu Nu'aym al-Isfahani, 338.  
 Abu Nuwas (poet), 261, 277, 288, 290, 291, 292-296, 303, 308, 345, 375.  
 Abu Qabus, kunya of -Nu'man III, 45.  
 Abu 'l-Qasim Ahmad. See *-Mustansir*.  
 Abu 'l-Qasim Muhammad, the Cadi, 421.  
 Abu 'l-Qasim b. -Muzaffar, 312.  
 Abu 'l-Qasim al-Zahravi, 420.  
 Abu Qays b. Abi Anas, 170.  
 Abu Qurra, 221.  
 Abu Sa'id b. Abi 'l-Khayr, 391, 394.  
 Abu Salama, 257.  
 Abu Salih Mansur b. Ishaq (Samanid), 265.  
 Abu 'l-Salt b. Abi Rabi'a, 69.  
 Abu Shaduf, 450.  
 Abu Shamir the Younger, 50.  
 Abu Shamir, kunya of -Harith b. 'Amr Muharriq, 50.  
 Abu Shuja' Buwayh, 266.  
 Abu Sufyan, 124, 175, 195.  
 Abu Sulayman al-Darani, 384, 386, 388.  
 Abu Sulayman Muhammad b. Ma'shar al-Bayustī, 370.  
 Abu Talib, uncle of the Prophet, 146, 148, 154, 157, 183, 250.  
 Abu Talib al-Makki, 338, 393.  
 Abu Tammam, author of the *Hamasa*, 79, 129-130, 288, 316, 324, 331. See *-Hamasa*.  
 Abu 'Ubayda (philologist), 94, 242, 262, 280, 343, 344, 345, 459.  
 Abu 'Ubayda b. al-Jarrah, 51.  
 Abu 'l-Walid al-Baji, 428.  
 Abu Yazid al-Bistami, 391. See *Bayazid of Bistam*.  
 Abu Yusuf, the Cadi, 283.  
 Abu Zayd of Saruj, 330, 331, 332, 335.  
 Abu Zayd Muhammad al-Qurashi, 130.  
 Abusir, 326.  
 Abyssinia, 53, 155, 156.  
 Abyssinians, the, xxi; in -Yemen, 3, 6, 26-29; invade the Hijaz, 66-68.  
 Academy of Junde-shapur, the, 358.  
 Academy of Sabur, the, 267, 314.  
 'Ad (people), 1, 2, 3.  
 'Adab, 283, 346.  
 'Adabu 'l-Katib, 346.  
 Adam, xxvi, 62, 63, 244, 398.  
 Adana (river), 15.  
 'Adawi dervishes, the, 393.  
 Adharbayjan, 17.  
 'Adi (tribe), 233.  
 'Adi b. 'Amr, 94.  
 'Adi al-Hakkari, 393.  
 'Adi b. Marina, 244.  
 'Adi b. Nasr, 35.  
 'Adi b. Zayd, 40, 45-48, 49, 188, 244.  
 'Adiya, 85.  
 Adler, 316.  
 'Adnan, xviii, xix, xx, 64.  
 'Adudu 'l-Dawla (Buwayhid), 266, 307.  
 Ælius Gallus, 9.  
 Æthiopic language, the, xvi, xxi.  
 Afghanistan, 268, 275.  
 Africa, xv, xvi.  
 Africa, North, 53, 203, 253, 274, 274, 405, 419, 423, 424, 429, 430, 434, 437, 439, 442, 443, 468.  
 Afshin, 375.  
 'Afwah al-Awli (poet), 83.  
 'Aghans. See *Kutabu 'l-Aghani*.  
 Aghlabid dynasty, the, 264, 274, 441.  
 Aghmat, 424.  
 'Ahlaf, at -Hira, 38.  
 Ahlu 'l-Kitab, 341.  
 Ahlu 'l-Taswiya, 280. See *Shu'ubites, the*.  
 Ahlu 'l-tawhid wa-'l-'adl, a name given to the Mu'tazilites, 224.  
 Ahlwanit, W., 76, 101, 125, 128, 133, 136, 286, 293, 294, 304, 349, 454.  
 Ahmad (Buwayhid), 266.  
 Ahmad, brother of Ghazali, 339.  
 Ahmad, father of Ibn Hazzam, 426.  
 Ahmad b. Hanbal, 284, 369, 376, 402.  
 Ahmad al-Nahhas, 102.  
 Ahmad b. Tulun, 354.  
 Ahmad of Thamus, 3.  
 Ahnum, 19.  
 Ahqafu 'l-Raml (desert), 1.  
 Ahlanu 'l-Taqasim fi ma'r-*ajati 'l-Aqilim*, 357.  
 ahwal, mystical term, 231, 391.  
 -Ahwas (poet), 237.  
 -Ahwas, 271, 293.  
 'Aisha, 151, 183.  
 'Aja 'idu 'l-Maqdur, 454.  
 'Ajam (the non-Arabs), 277. See *-Mawali*.  
 'Ajjal (poet), 138.  
 'Ajfurumiyya, 456.  
 Akbar (Mogul Emperor), xxx.  
 Akhhara 'l-Zaman, 353.  
 Akhtal (poet), 221, 238, 239-242, 285.  
 akhu 'l-safa, 370.  
 Aklu 'l-Murar (surname), 42.  
 'Alam (philologist), 123.  
 Alamut, 445.  
 'Ala'u 'l-Din Muhammad Khwarizmshah, 444.  
 Albategnius, 361.  
 Albucassis, 420.  
 Albumaser, 361.  
 Alchemists, the, 361, 387.  
 Alchemy, works on, translated into Arabic, 358.  
 Aleppo, 269, 270, 275, 291, 303, 305, 313, 360, 415, 446, 451, 460, 461.  
 Alexander the Great, 17, 276, 358, 457.  
 Alexandria, 340.  
 Alexandrian Library, the, 435.  
 Alf Layla wa-Layla, 456, 459. See *Thousand Nights and a Night* and *Arabian Nights*.  
 'Alfiyya, 456.  
 Alfraganus, 361.  
 Algeria, 430.  
 Algiers, 468.  
 Alhambra, the, 435.  
 'Ali (Buwayhid), 266.  
 'Ali, grandson of 'Umar Ibnu 'l-Farid, 394.  
 'Ali b. Abi Talib, the Prophet's son-in-law, xxvii, xxviii, 105, 153, 181, 183, 190-193, 194, 196, 205, 207-211, 218-218, 220-222, 243, 249, 250, 251, 264, 267, 273, 274, 342, 343, 349, 377, 412, 442.  
 'Ali b. Abi Talib, public cursing of, 205.  
 'Ali b. -Mansur, Shaykh, 319.  
 'Ali b. Musa b. Ja'far al-Rida, 262, 385.  
 'Alids, the, 258, 259, 337. See *'Ali b. Abi Talib* and *Shu'ubites, the*.  
 Allah, 62, 134, 135, 164, 231, 392.  
 Allah, the Muhammadan conception of, 225, 231.  
 Almaqa, 18.  
 Almeria, 421.  
 Almohades, the, 217, 429, 431-434.  
 Almoravides, the, 423, 429-431.  
 Alp Arslan (Seljuq), 275, 276, 340, 379.

- Alphabet, the South Arabic, 6, 8, 12  
 Alphonso VI of Castile, 422, 423, 431  
 'Alqama b. 'Abada (poet), 121, 125, 128  
 'Alqama b. Dhi Jadan (poet), 12  
 Alvaro, Bishop of Cordova, 414  
 Ama, 22  
 -Amal, 420. See *K'abab*  
 'Amaliq (Amalekites), 2, 3, 63  
 Amidu 'I-Mulk al-Kunduri, 379  
 -Amin, the Caliph, 255, 282, 293, 343  
 Amina, mother of the Prophet, 146  
 'Amir b. Sa'sa'a (tribe), 119  
 'Amir b. Uhaymir, 87  
 Amiru 'I-Mu'minin (Commander of the Faithful), 185  
 Amru 'I-Umara (title), 264  
 'Amr, the Tubba', 25, 26  
 'Amr b. 'Adi b. Nasr, 35, 36, 37, 40  
 'Amr b. 'Amir (tribe), 94  
 'Amr b. 'Amir Ma' al-Sama al-Muzayyiqi, 15, 16, 49  
 'Amr b. -'As-, 192  
 'Amr b. -Harith (Ghassanid), 50, 54, 122  
 'Amr b. Hind (Lakhmite), 44, 107, 108, 109, 112  
 'Amr b. Kulthum (poet), 44, 82, 102, 109-113, 128, 269  
 'Amr b. Luhayy, 63, 64  
 'Amr b. Ma'dikarib, 82  
 'Amr b. Mas'ud, 43  
 'Amr b. 'Ubayd, 223, 374  
 'Amr b. Zarib, 35  
 Amul, 350  
 Anas, 58  
 'anasa, 459  
 'Anasa (tribe), xix  
 -Anbar, 38  
 -Anbari (philologist), 128  
 -Anbat, xxv. See *Nabateans, the*  
 Ancient Sciences, the, 282  
 -Andarin, 112  
 Angels, the Recording, 161  
 Angora, 104  
 -Ansar (the Helpers), 171, 241  
 'Ansar, the Romance of, 34, 459  
 'Antara (poet), 76, 109, 114-116, 128, 459  
 'antari, 459  
 Anthologies of Arabic poetry, 128-130, 289, 325, 343, 347, 348, 417  
 Anthropomorphism, 369, 376, 379, 432  
 Antioch, 43  
 Anushirwan (Sasanian king). See *Nushirwan*  
 Anushirwan b. Khalid, 329  
 Aphrodite, 43  
 -'Aqida, by 'Iszu 'I-Din b. 'Abd al-Salam, 461  
 'Aqil, 35  
 Arab horses, the training of, 226  
 Arab singers in the first century A.H., 236  
 a'rabi (Bedouin), 210  
 Arabia, in the 'Abbasid period, 276  
 Arabia Felix, xvii, 4. See -Yemen  
 Arabian History, three periods of, xxvi  
*Arabian Nights, the*, 238, 256, 261, 292, 421, 456-459  
 Arabic language, the, xvi, xvii, xxi-xxv, 6, 77, 201, 203, 239, 265, 277-280, 336, 342, 344  
 Arabic literature, largely the work of non-Arabs, xxx, xxxi, 276-278  
 Arabic Press, the, 469  
 Arabic writing, 201; oldest specimens of, xxi, xxii  
 Arabs, the Ishmaelite, xviii  
 Arabs of Khurasan, the, thoroughly Persianised, 250  
 Arabs, the Northern. See *Arabs, the Ishmaelite*  
 Arabs, the Northern and Southern, racial enmity between, xx, 199, 200, 252, 405, 406  
 Arabs, the Southern, xvii, xviii, xx, 4. See *Arabs, the Yemenite*  
 Arabs, the Yemenite, xvii, xviii, xx, 38, 55, 199, 252, 405, 406. See *Sabaeans, the; Himyarites, the*  
 Arabs, the Yocitanid, xviii. See *Arabs, the Yemenite*  
 Aramaeans, the, xv, xxv  
 Aramaic language, the, xvi, xxv, 279, 375  
 -Aragim, 113, 114  
 Arbela, 451  
 Artashir Babakan, founder of the Sasanian dynasty, 34, 38  
 'Arpitas roû Taphala, 51  
 Arhakim, 11  
 'arif (gnostic), 356  
 'Arifu 'I-Zanadiqa, 373  
 Aristocracy of Islam, the, 188, 190  
 Aristotle, 358, 359, 360  
 -'Arji (poet), 237  
 Armenia, xv, 352  
 Arnaud, Th., 9, 15, 17  
 Arnold, F. A., 105, 107, 109, 112, 113, 114  
 Arnold, T. W., 184, 223, 224, 360, 448  
 Arsacids, the, 21, 38  
 Aryat, 27, 28  
 'Asa (name of a mare), 36  
 'asbiyya, 440  
 Asad (tribe), xix, 104  
 Asad Kamil, the Tubba', 12, 19-23, 25, 26, 137  
 Asad b. Musa, 247  
 Asai, 433  
 asabi, 289, 315  
 Ascalon, 456  
 Ascension of the Prophet, the, 169, 405  
 Asd (tribe), 19  
 -'Asha (poet), 126, 101, 121, 123-125, 128, 138, 139  
 -Ash'ari (Abu 'I-Hasan), 284, 376-379, 431  
 Ash'arites, the, 379, 380, 460  
 Ash'aru 'I-Hudhalayyin, 128  
 -Ashram (surname of Abrahah), 28  
 Asia, xv, 275, 352, 414  
 Asia, Central, 255  
 Asia Minor, 269, 399, 434, 446  
 Asia, Western, xvi, xxix, 358, 442, 444, 446  
 Asin Palacios, 404  
 aslama, 153  
 -Asma'i (philologist), 261, 343, 344, 345, 459  
 Assassins, the, 272, 371, 372, 381, 445  
 Assyrian language, the, xvi  
 Assyrians, the, xv  
 Astrologers and Astronomers, 361  
 Astronomy, 276, 283  
 Aswad b. -Mundhir, 47  
 -Athar al-Baqiya, 361  
 Athura 'I-Bilad, 416  
 Athens, 240, 358  
 'Athtar, 'Athtar (Sabaeans divinity), 11, 28  
 Atial, 286  
 'Attar (Persian mystic). See *Faridu'ddin 'Attar*  
 'Atwada, 28  
 Aurelian, 34  
 Aurora, 412  
 Avempace. See *Ibn Bajja*  
 Avenzoar, 434  
 Averroes. See *Ibn Rushd*  
 Avicenna. See *Ibn Sina*  
 ama'u (origins), 247  
 'Amariya 'I-Ma'arif, 250, 338  
 -'Awn, 370  
 awiya (saints), 393  
 Awrangzeb (Mogul Emperor), xxx  
 Aws (tribe), 170  
 Aws b. Hajar (poet), 131  
 Awram Dhu 'Iran Alu, 11  
 a'yan thabita, 402  
 ayat (verse of the Koran, sign, miracle), 166  
 Ayatu 'I-Kursi (the Throne-verse), 176  
 Aybak, 447  
 -Ayham b. -Harith (Ghassanid), 50  
 'Ayn Jalut, battle of, 446  
 'Ayn Ubayh, battle of, 52  
 ayyamu 'I-'Arab, 55, 156



- Ayyubid dynasty, the, 275, 447, 453  
 And (tribe), 79, 374  
 -Azhar, the mosque, 395  
 Azraqites (-Azariqa), the, 208, 239
- B**
- Baalbec, 111  
 Bab al-Mandab, 5  
 Babak, 258, 375  
 Babur (Mogul Emperor),  
 xxix, 444  
 Babylon, xxv, 38  
 Babylonica, 34, 38, 138, 253,  
 255, 307. See *-Iraq*  
 Babylonian and Assyrian  
 inscriptions, the, xvi, xxv  
 Babylonians, the, xv  
 Badajoz, 421, 423  
 Badia, 428  
 Bad'u 'l-Zaman al-Hama-  
 dhami, 328, 329, 331  
 Badr, battle of, 158, 174, 175  
 Badr, freedman of 'Abdu  
 'l-Rahman the Umayyad,  
 405, 406  
 -Baghawi, 337  
 Baghdad, xxviii, xxix, 131,  
 182, 254, 256-258, 290-293,  
 303, 307, 313, 314, 315, 326,  
 338, 340, 343, 346, 347, 350,  
 351, 352, 353, 357, 359, 362,  
 365, 369, 376, 380, 382, 385,  
 387, 392, 399, 412, 413, 418,  
 431, 441, 444-446, 447, 449,  
 450, 458, 461, 465, 466  
 Baghdad, history of its  
 eminent men, by -Khatib,  
 355  
 Baha'u 'l-Dawia (Buwayhid),  
 267, 314  
 Bahdala (tribe), 87  
 Bahira, the monk, 148  
 Bahman (Sasanian), 457  
 Bahram Gor (Sasanian), 40, 41  
 -Bahrayn (province), 107, 108,  
 186  
 Bahri Mamelukes, the, 447  
 Baju, 445  
 Bakharzi, 348  
 Bakil (tribe), 12  
 Bakr (tribe), xix, 55-60, 61,  
 69, 70, 76, 93, 107, 109, 113,  
 114, 242  
 -Bakri (geographer), 357, 428  
 Balasam, 73  
 Baladhuri (historian), 280,  
 349  
 -Balagh al-ahbar, 371  
 Balak, 73  
 -Bal'am, 265, 352  
 Balag (mountain), 17  
 Balh, 232, 233, 259, 362, 383  
 -Balqa, 63  
 Banat Su'ad, the opening  
 words of an ode, 119, 127,  
 327  
 Banu 'l-Ahrar, 29  
 Banu Hind, 58  
 Banu Khaldun, 437  
 Banu Musa, 359  
 Banu Nahhal, 245  
 Baptists, name given to the  
 early Moslems, 149  
 baqa, mystical term, 390  
 Baqqa, 36  
 -Baramika, 259. See *Barme-  
 cides, the*  
 Barbier de Meynard, 13, 15,  
 37, 195, 259, 350, 352, 353,  
 380, 457  
 Bardesanes, 364  
 Barmak, 259  
 Barmakites, the. See *Barme-  
 cides, the*  
 Barmecides, the, 255, 259-  
 261, 262, 293  
 Barquq, Sultan (Mameluke),  
 452  
 Bashama, 119  
 Bashshar b. Burd, 245, 277,  
 290, 373-374, 375  
 -bast (metre), 75  
 -Basra, xxiv, 127, 133, 134,  
 186, 189, 195, 202, 209, 210,  
 215, 222, 223, 225, 226, 233,  
 242, 243, 246, 273, 281, 293,  
 294, 329, 331, 336, 341, 342,  
 343, 345, 346, 369, 370, 374,  
 377, 378  
 Basset, R., 327  
 -Basus, 56  
 -Basus, the War of, 55-60, 61,  
 76, 107, 114  
 -Batiniyya (Batinites), 381,  
 382, 402. See *Isma'ilis, the*  
 -Battani, 361  
 -bayan, 283  
 -Bayan al-Mughrib, 407  
 Bayard, 191  
 Bayazid of Bistam, 391, 460.  
 See *Abu Yaris al-Bistami*  
 Baybars, Sultan (Mameluke),  
 447, 448  
 -Baydawi, 145, 179  
 bayt (verse), 74, 77  
 Baytu 'l-Hikma, at Baghdad,  
 359  
 -Bazbaz, 60  
 Bedouin view of life, the, 136  
 Bedouin warfare, character  
 of, 54, 55  
 Bedouin women, Mutanabb'i's  
 descriptions of, 310  
 Benu Marhadim, 11  
 Berber insurrection in Africa,  
 405  
 Berbers, the, 204, 274, 405-  
 409, 413, 420, 423, 424,  
 429-432, 442, 443  
 Berbers, used as mercenaries,  
 407  
 Berlin Royal Library, 8, 12  
 Bevan, Prof. A. A., 46, 80,  
 129, 151, 166, 168, 199, 205,  
 239, 244, 253, 356, 373, 374,  
 375  
 Beyrout, 238, 469  
*Bibliographical Dictionary, by*  
*Hajji Khalifa, 456*  
*Bibliotheca Geographorum*  
*Arabicorum, 356*  
*Bilpai, the Fables of, 330,*  
*346*  
*Bilqis, 18*  
*-Bimaristan al-'Adudi, 266*  
 Biographies of poets, 346, 347,  
 348  
 Birnam Wood, 25  
 -Biruni (Abu Rayhan), 269,  
 280, 381  
 Bishr b. Abi Khazim (poet),  
 86  
 Bishr al-Hafi, 228  
 Bishr b. -Mu'tamir, 369  
 Bistam, 391  
 Black, J. S., 184, 249, 258  
 Black, the colour of the  
 'Abbasids, 220, 262  
 Black Stone in the Ka'ba,  
 the, 63, 274, 319, 467  
 Blunt, Lady Anne, 83, 101  
 Blunt, Wilfrid, 88, 101  
 Bobastro, 410  
 Boer, T. J. de, 433  
 Bohlen, 308, 312  
 Bokhara, 201, 265, 275, 360  
*Book of Examples, the, by Ibn*  
*Khalidun, 437*  
*Book of Sihawayhi, the, 343*  
*Book of the Thousand Tales,*  
*the. See Hajar Afshan*  
*Book of Visions, the, 458*  
 Books, the Six Canonical,  
 337  
 Boswell, 144, 313, 452  
 Brethren of Purity, the, 370-  
 372  
 British Museum, the, 12, 402  
 Brockelmann, C., 205, 236,  
 237, 308, 328, 339, 346, 349,  
 449, 459, 468, 469  
 Browne, Prof. E. G., 29, 42,  
 185, 217, 218, 230, 247, 251,  
 258, 265, 272, 275, 290, 299,  
 346, 362, 375, 381, 383, 394,  
 399, 445  
 Brunnov, R. E., 32, 35, 49,  
 51, 209, 210  
 Brutus, 252  
 Bu'ath, battle of, 170  
 Buddha, 297, 298  
 Buddhism, 373, 375, 390, 391.  
 See *Nirvana*  
 -Buhturi (poet), 130, 316,  
 324  
 Buljayr b. 'Amr, 58  
 Bukhara. See *Bokhara*  
 -Bukhari, 144, 146, 151, 337  
 Bulaq, 469  
 Bunyan, 112  
 Burckhardt, 95, 465, 466, 467  
 Burd, 373  
 -Burda, 326, 327  
 -burda (the Prophet's mantle),  
 327, 366  
 Burji Mamelukes, the, 447  
 Burns, Robert, 450  
 burnas, the, a mark of ascetic-  
 ism, 210  
 Burton, Sir Richard, 459



Besir, 326  
 -Busiri (poet), 326, 327  
 Buthayna, 238  
 Butrites, the, a Shi'ite sect,  
 297  
 Buwayhid dynasty, the, 264,  
 268-269, 271, 275, 303, 338  
 Byzantine Empire, the, 3, 29,  
 46, 171, 255, 261, 269, 359

C

Cadiz, 405  
 Casar, 252  
 Caxani, Prince, 149, 155, 156,  
 171  
 Cairo, 275, 350, 394, 395, 437,  
 447, 448, 451, 452, 453, 454,  
 455, 458, 461, 464, 469  
 Caliph, the, must belong to  
 Quraysh, 207  
 Caliph, name of the, men-  
 tioned in the Friday sermon,  
 263, 264; stamped on the  
 coinage, 264; title of, as-  
 sumed by the Fatimids,  
 271; by the Umayyads of  
 Spain, 412  
 Caliphs, the, -Mas'udi's ac-  
 count of, 354  
 Caliphs, the 'Abbasid. See  
 'Abbasids, the  
 Caliphs, the Orthodox, xxiii,  
 xxvii, 181-193  
 Caliphs, the Umayyad. See  
 Umayyad dynasty, the  
 Calpe, 204  
 Campbell, D., 360  
 Canaanites, the, 3  
 Canonical Books, the Six, 337  
 Capuchins, the, 228  
 Carmathians, the, 272, 274,  
 322, 324, 371, 375, 381, 467.  
 See Fatimid dynasty;  
 Isma'ili  
 Carmona, 437  
 Casanova, P., 371  
 Caspian Sea, the, xxviii, 21,  
 264, 266, 350, 352, 391  
 Castle, 422, 437  
 Castles of Yemen, the, 24  
 Catharine of Siena, 233  
 Cathay, xxv  
 Causin de Perceval, 32  
 Cave-dwellers of Khurasan,  
 the, 232  
 Celibacy condemned by Mu-  
 hammad, 224  
 Cemetery of the Sufis, the, at  
 Damascus, 463  
 Ceuta, 403, 412, 423, 434  
 Ceylon, 352  
 Chagar Beg, 275  
 Charles the Hammer, 204  
 Charter, the, drawn up by  
 Muhammad for the people  
 of Medina, 173  
 Chaucer, 289  
 Chauvin, Victor, 214  
 Chenery, T., 244, 328, 332,  
 333, 336

Chilhraxad, 457  
 China, 203, 352, 419, 444  
 Chingiz Khan, 444  
 Christian poets who wrote in  
 Arabic, 138, 139  
 Christianity in Arabia, 217,  
 137-140; in Ghassan, 51, 54,  
 123; at Hira, 39, 41, 43, 44,  
 46, 49, 123, 124, 138; in  
 Najran, 26, 27, 124, 137; in  
 Moslem Spain, 407, 411,  
 412, 413, 414-415, 431, 435,  
 441  
 Christianity, influence of, on  
 Muhammadan culture, xxii,  
 176, 177, 216, 221, 231, 389,  
 390  
 Christians, Monophysite, 51  
 Christians, supposed by Mos-  
 lems to wear a girdle, 461  
 Christians at the Umayyad  
 court, 221, 240, 241  
 Chronology of Ancient Nations,  
 the, by -Biruni, 361  
 Church and State, regarded  
 as one by Moslems, 170,  
 182, 197  
 Chwolschn, 363  
 Classicism, revolt against,  
 287-289  
 Cleopatra, 34  
 Coinage, Arabic, introduced  
 by 'Abdu'l-Malik, 201  
 Commercial terms derived  
 from Arabic, 281  
 Companions of the Prophet,  
 biographies of the, 144, 356,  
 456  
 Confession of faith, the Mu-  
 hammadan, 403  
 Conquests, the early Muham-  
 madan, work on the, 349  
 Constantinople, xxix, 29, 45,  
 52, 84, 104, 318, 362, 412  
 Cordova, 131, 341, 347, 406-  
 411, 412, 413-415, 418, 420-  
 426, 428, 434, 435  
 Cordova, the University of,  
 420  
 Courage, Arabian, the nature  
 of, 82  
 Criticism of Ancient and  
 Modern Poets, 283-289  
 Cromwell, 189  
 Crusade, the Third, 275  
 Crusaders, the, 331, 447  
 Crutenden, 8  
 Ctesiphon, 47, 48, 210. See  
 -Mada'in  
 Cureton, 211, 216, 341

D

Dabba (tribe), xix  
 -Dahab al-'Ijli, 44  
 Dahis (name of a horse), 61  
 Dahis and -Ghabra, the War  
 of, 61, 62, 114, 116  
 -dakriyyun, 381  
 da's (missionary), 249, 272  
 -Daja'ima, 50

-Dajjal (the Antichrist), 216  
 dakhil, 95  
 Damascus, xxi, xxviii, 13, 46,  
 51, 53, 54, 111, 181, 104,  
 195, 202, 203, 207, 235, 240,  
 241, 242, 244, 247, 251, 255,  
 274, 304, 313, 335, 340, 374,  
 386, 399, 408, 451, 462, 493  
 -Damigh, 375  
 Daniel, 162  
 Dante, 360, 404  
 daftr (Secretary), 257  
 Daqiqi, Persian poet, 265  
 Daraya, 386  
 Darius, 256  
 Darmesteter, J., 217  
 Daru'l-Rum (Constantinople),  
 362  
 Daughters, the birth of, re-  
 garded as a misfortune, 91,  
 156  
 Daughters of Allah, the, 135,  
 156  
 Davidson, A. B., 82  
 dawidar (damsadar), 445  
 Daws Dhu Tha'laban, 27  
 -Daylam, 266  
 Dead Sea, the, 249  
 Decline of the Caliphate, 257,  
 263  
 Dernenbourg, H., 54, 122, 123,  
 194, 260, 331, 445, 454  
 Dervish orders, the, 393  
 Desecration of the tombs of  
 the Umayyad Caliphs, 205  
 -Dhahabi (Shamsu'l-Din), his-  
 torian, 339, 446, 454  
 Dhamar'ali Dharril, 10  
 Dhu'l-Khalasa, name of an  
 idol, 105  
 Dhu'l-Khursayn (name of a  
 sword), 96  
 Dhu'l-Majaz, 114  
 Dhu Nafar, 66, 67  
 Dhu'l-Nun al-Misri, 386-388,  
 389, 450  
 Dhu'l-Nusur (surname), 2  
 Dhu Nuwas, 12, 26-27, 137,  
 162  
 Dhu Qar, battle of, 69, 70  
 Dhu'l-Qarnayn, 17, 18  
 Dhu'l-Qurrah (title), 104  
 Dhu Ru'ayn, 23, 26  
 Dhu'l-Rumma (poet), 246  
 Dhu'l-Urayn, nickname of  
 Ibnu'l-Khatib, 436  
 Dhu'l-Wizaratayn (title), 425  
 Dhuhyar (tribe), xix, 61, 62,  
 116, 117, 121  
 Diacritical points in Arabic  
 script, 201  
 Di'bil (poet), 261, 375  
 Dictionaries, Arabic, 343, 403,  
 456  
 Didactic poem by Abu'l-  
 'Atahiya, 300  
 Diercks, 360  
 Dieterici, F., 270, 305, 307,  
 308, 310, 312, 313, 371  
 dihqan, 291  
 Diminutives, 396, 449

- din* (religion), 178, 287  
 Dinarrad, 457  
 Dinarrade, 457  
 -Dinawar, 346  
 -Dinawari (historian), 251, 349  
 Dinazad, 457  
 Diodorus Siculus, 3  
 Dionysius the Areopagite, 387, 389  
 -Dira'yya, 466  
 Dirge, the Arabian, 126  
*dihar*, 152  
*Dinan-i Shams-i Tabriz*, 298  
 Divine Right, the Shi'ite theory of, 214, 271  
*diwan* (collection of poems), 127, 128  
 Diwan (Register) of 'Umar, the, 187, 188  
*Diwans of the Six Poets, the*, 128  
*diya* (blood-wit), 93  
 -Diyarbakri (historian), 445  
 Dog, the, regarded by Moslems as unclean, 445  
 Doughty, E. M., 3  
 Doxy, 214, 399, 407, 410, 411, 413, 414, 415, 420, 422, 424, 428, 429, 431, 465, 467  
 Drama, the, not cultivated by the Semites, 328  
 Drinking parties described in Pre-Islamic poetry, 124, 125, 167  
*Droit du seigneur, le*, 4  
*dubayt* (a species of verse), 430  
 Dubeux, 352  
 Duka, T., 390  
 Dumas, 272  
*Dumyad-i-Qasr*, 348  
 Duns Scotus, 367  
 Durayd b. -Simma, 83  
 Durayd b. Zayd b. Nahd, 75  
*Durratu 'l-Ghannam*, 336  
*Durra'u 'l-Islam*, 446  
 Dvorak, R., 304  
 Dyke of Ma'rib, the, 2, 5, 14-17, 50, 63  
 Dynasties of the 'Abbasid period, 264-276
- E
- Eber, xviii  
 Echstana, 129, 328. See *Hamadham*  
 Ecstasy, 387, 393, 394  
 Edessa, 331, 358  
 Egypt, xxiv, xxix, xxx, 4, 5, 132, 184, 186, 193, 215, 268, 274, 275, 307, 323, 326, 327, 350, 354, 355, 358, 387-390, 399, 419, 432, 434, 447, 443, 447, 448, 450, 451, 454, 460, 461, 464, 466, 468  
 Egypt, conquest of, by the Moslems, 184  
*Egypt, History of*, by Ibn Ishaq, 454  
 Eichhorn, xv

- Elegiac poetry, 126, 127  
*Elephant, the Sura of the*, 68  
 Elephant, the year of the, 28, 66, 146  
 Eloquence, Arabian, 345, 347  
 Emanation, Plotinus's theory of, 393  
 Emessa, 304  
 Emigrants, the. See -*Mu-hajirun*  
 Encomium of the Umayyad dynasty, by -Akhtal, 242  
 Epic poetry not cultivated by the Arabs, 325  
 Equality of Arabs and non-Arabs maintained by the Shu'ubites, 279, 280  
 Equites Thamudeni, 3  
 Erotic prelude, the. See *nasib*  
 Erpenius, 355  
 Essenes, the, 224  
 Euphrates, the, xv, 33, 36, 37, 38, 41, 53, 110, 113, 186, 189, 192, 196, 256, 418, 443, 449  
 Euting, Julius, 9

## F

- Fables of beasts, considered useful and instructive, 330  
 -Fadi, the Barmecide, 260  
 -Fadi b. al-Rabi', 293  
 -Fahl (surname), 125  
 Fahm (tribe), 81  
 Fairs, the old Arabian, 135  
 -Fakhr, 187, 188, 194, 203, 260, 311, 445, 454  
 Fakhr u'-Dawia (Buwayhid), 267  
 Fakhr u'-Mulk, 340  
 Falcon of Quraysh, the, 407, 417  
 -*falsafa* (Philosophy), 283  
 fama (dying to self), 233, 390, 391  
 -*fanak*, 53  
 -*fajra*, 464  
 -*fajr* (fakir), 230, 464  
 -*fajr* (poverty), 230  
 Farab, 360  
 -Farabi (Abu Nasr), 270, 380, 393  
 -Farasdaq (poet), 196, 238, 239, 240, 262-264, 245, 246  
 -Farhami, 361  
 Faridu'ddin 'Attar, 226, 228, 386  
 -Farqadan (name of two stars), 35  
 -Farra, 343  
 Farrukh-mahan, 45  
 Fars (province), 266  
 Fathers, the Christian, 342  
 -*Fatima*, 143  
 Fatima, daughter of -Khurshub, 88  
 Fatima, daughter of the Prophet, 183, 218, 250, 251, 258, 267, 274

- Fatima (mother of Qusayy), 64  
 Fatima, a woman loved by Imru' al-Qays, 106  
 Fatimid dynasty, the, 217, 265, 268, 269, 271-275, 322, 371, 412  
 -*Fatra*, 152  
*Fawatu 'l-Wafayat*, 449, 452  
*Faylasfu 'l-'Arab* (title), 360. See -*Kindi*  
 Faymiyun (Phemion), 26  
 Ferdinand I of Castile, 422  
 Ferdinand III of Castile, 434  
 Ferdinand V of Castile, 441  
 Fex, 436  
 Fihri (tribe), six  
 -*Fikrat*, 13, 142, 345, 359, 381-384, 387, 457  
 -*Find*, 58, 60, 84  
 -*fisa* (jurisprudence), 283  
 denoting law and theology, 339, 420, 465  
 Firdaws, Persian poet, 265, 269  
 Firuz (Firuzan), father of Ma'ruf al-Karkhi, 385  
 Firuz, a Persian slave, 189  
 -*Firuzabadi* (Majdu 'l-Din), 403, 456  
 Fleischer, 400, 404  
 Flint, Robert, 441  
 Fluegel, G., 142, 297, 362, 364, 459  
 Folk-songs, Arabic, 238, 416-417, 449-450  
*Font Vise*, 428  
 Foreigners, Sciences of the, 282, 283  
 Forgery of Apostolic Traditions, 145, 146, 279  
 Forgery of Pre-Islamic poems, 133, 134  
 France, 9, 412, 469  
 Frederick II of Hohenstaufen, 434, 441  
 Free schools, founded by Hakam II, 419  
 Free-thought in Islam, 283, 284, 298, 345, 460. See *Mu'tazilites* and *Zindiqs*  
 Free-will, the doctrine of, 223, 224  
 Freytag, G. W., 16, 31, 48, 50, 55, 73, 89, 91, 109, 119, 292, 371  
 Friedlaender, L., 428  
 Frothingham, 389  
 -*Fudayl* b. 'Iyad, 232, 233, 385  
 -*fuhul*, 138  
 Fukayha, 89  
 -*fusun al-sab'a* (the seven kinds of poetry), 450  
 Fuqaym (tribe), 28  
 -*Fusul wa'l-Ghayat*, 318  
*Fusus 'l-Hikam*, 400, 401, 402  
 -*Futuh al-Makkiyya*, 400, 464

Future life, Pre-Islamic notions of the, 166

G

Gabriel, 63, 141, 150, 267  
Galen, 358  
Galland, 458  
Gallienus, 33  
Gaulonitis, the, 53  
Gaza, 5  
Geber, 361  
Geiger, 163  
Genealogy, Muhammadan, xx  
Genealogy, treatise on, by Ibn Durayd, 343  
Genesis, Book of, xv  
Geographers, the Moslem, 356, 357  
George-Makin, 353  
Georgians, the, 445  
Germany, 8, 412  
Gesenius, 8  
-Ghabra (name of a mare), 61  
-Gharid, 336  
-Gharriyyan, 43  
Ghassan, xxi, 33, 37, 38, 42, 43, 121, 122, 138, 139, 158, 332  
Ghassanid court, the, described by Hassan b. Thabit, 53  
Ghassanids, the, 33, 49-54, 122  
Ghatafan (tribe), xix, 61  
-Ghawf, 119  
ghayba (occultation), 216  
Ghayman (castle), 24  
Ghayy b. Murra, 117  
Ghazala, 339  
-Ghazali, 230, 234, 277, 338-341, 380-383, 393, 437, 463  
Ghazan, 446  
Ghaziyya (tribe), 83  
Ghazna, 268-269, 355  
Ghaznevid dynasty, the, 265, 268-269, 271, 275  
ghiyar, 461  
Ghiyathu 'l-Din Mas'ud (Seljuq), 326, 329  
-Ghuwat (the extreme Shi'ites), 216  
Ghumdan (castle), 24  
Gibb, E. J. W., 443, 460  
Gibb, H. A. R., 470  
Gibbon, 439  
Gibraltar (Jabal Tariq), 204, 414  
Glaser, E., 9, 15  
Gnosis, the Sufi doctrine of, 386, 387  
Gnosticism, 389, 390  
Gobineau, Comte de, 320  
Goeje, M. J. de, 179, 180, 253, 256, 257, 287, 322, 349, 350, 351, 353, 354, 356, 366, 371, 409  
Goethe, 97  
Gog and Magog, 18

Golden Meadows, the. See *Muruj*  
-Mas'udi  
Goldriber, Ignaz, xx, xxi, 10, 18, 30, 73, 90, 119, 145, 177, 178, 199, 200, 221, 225, 246, 278, 279, 280, 285, 287, 289, 297, 298, 315, 344, 345, 366, 368, 370, 372, 374, 379, 390, 409, 431, 435, 466  
Gospel, the, 165, 171  
Grammar, Arabic, the origin of, 202, 278, 282, 341-343, 363  
Grammars, Arabic, 343, 456  
Granada, 421, 424, 428, 431, 434, 435-437, 441, 442, 447  
Gray, T., 77  
Greece, 131, 296, 361, 434  
Greece, the influence of, on Muhammadan thought, 220, 221, 229, 266, 358-361, 363, 369, 370, 386, 388  
Greek Philosophers, the, 341, 363  
Green, the colour of the 'Alida, 262  
Grimme, H., xv, 10  
Grünert, M., 346  
Guadalquivir, the, 422  
Guest, A. R., 453  
Guillaume, A., 360  
Guirgass, 251  
Guyon, Madame, 233

H

Haarbrücker, 220, 221, 223, 224, 297  
Habib b. Aws. See *Abu Tammam*  
hadarat, mystical term, 402  
-Hadi, the Caliph, 260, 373  
Hadigatu 'l-Afrak, 449  
-hadith (Traditions of the Prophet), 132, 134, 143-146, 201, 247, 258, 348. See *Traditions of the Prophet*  
Hadramawt (province), 1, 5, 42  
Hadrian, 137  
Hafsa, 142  
Hafsid dynasty, the, 442  
Hagar. See *Hajar*, wife of Abraham  
Hajar (in-Bahrayn), 94, 96  
Hajar, wife of Abraham, xviii, 63  
-Hajaj b. Yusuf, 200, 201-203, 209, 213, 244  
Hajji Khalifa, 456  
-Hakam I (Spanish Umayyad), 409  
-Hakam II (Spanish Umayyad), 412, 419  
hakim (philosopher), 387  
kal, mystical term, 387  
Halbata 'l-Kumayy, 417  
Halévy, Joseph, 9  
Halila, 56

Halima, daughter of -Harith al-A'raj, 30  
Halima, the battle of, 43, 50, 51, 125  
Halima, the Prophet's nurse, 147  
-Halla]. See *Husayn b. Man-sur*  
Halle, 8  
Ham, xv  
hama (owl or wraith), 94, 166  
Hamadhan (Ecbatana), 129, 292, 328, 333  
-Hamadhani, 328. See *Badi'u 'l-Zaman*  
Hamal b. Badr, 61, 88  
-hamasa, of Abu Tammam, 55, 57-61, 79, 81, 82, 83, 84, 87, 92, 93, 98, 100, 126, 128-130, 136, 137, 199, 213, 324, 331  
-hamasa, of -Buhturi, 130, 324  
hamasa (fortitude), 79, 326  
Hamat, 454  
-Hamaysa' b. Himyar, 12  
Hamdan, 19  
Hamdan Qarmat, 274  
-Hamdani (geographer), 6, 11, 12, 13, 17, 18, 20, 24  
Hamdanid dynasty, the, 268, 269-271, 291, 303  
Hamilton, Terrick, 459  
Hamud al-Rawiya, 103, 113, 128, 132-134, 344  
Hammer, J. von, 308, 316, 396, 459  
Hamza of Isfahan (historian), 14, 280  
Hanbalites, the, 376, 462  
handasa (geometry), 283  
Hanf, a chieftain of Bakr, 69  
Hanifa (tribe), 183  
Hanifs, the, 69, 140, 150, 170, 318  
Hanzala of Tayyif, 44  
hasiqat, mystical term, 392  
hasiqatu 'l-haqiq, mystical term, 403  
-hasiqatu 'l-Muhammadiyah, mystical term, 403  
-haqq, mystical term, 392  
Haram (tribe), 331  
Harim b. Sinan, 61, 116, 117, 288  
-Hariri, author of the *Maqamat*, 329-336  
-Harith al-Akbar. See *Harith b. 'Amr Muharrir*  
-Harith b. 'Amr (kindite), 42, 44, 103, 104  
-Harith b. 'Amr Muharrir (Ghassanid), 50  
-Harith al-A'raj (Ghassanid), 43, 50, 54, 125. See *Harith b. Jabala*  
-Harith b. 'Awf, 61, 116, 117  
-Harith b. Hammam, 330, 331, 333  
-Harith b. Hilliza (poet), 44, 100, 109, 113-114, 128



- Harith b. Jabala (Ghassanid), 43, 50, 51, 52. See *-Harith al-A'raf*
- Harith al-Ra'ish, 17
- Harith b. Surayy, 222
- Harith b. 'Ubad, 58, 59
- Harith the Younger (Ghassanid), 50
- Harith b. Zalim, 85
- harj, 249
- Harran, 221, 358, 361, 462
- Harran, the bilingual inscription of, 221
- Hartmann, M., 450, 468
- Harun al-Rashid, the Caliph, 221, 255, 258, 259, 260-261, 262, 277, 283, 292, 293, 296, 298, 343, 345, 347, 366, 367, 368, 373, 385, 386, 458, 459
- Harura, 208
- Harwa, 11
- hasab, 100
- Hasan (Burwayhid), 266
- Hasan of -Basra, 208, 222, 223, 225-227, 230, 243, 244, 294
- Hasan b. Ahmad al-Hamdani, 11. See *-Hamdani*
- Hasan b. 'Ali, the Nizamu 'l-Mulk, 276. See *Nizamu 'l-Mulk*
- Hasan b. 'Ali b. Abi Talib, 216, 297
- Hasan al-Burini, 396
- Hasan b. -Sabbah, 445
- Hashid (tribe), 12
- Hashim, 65, 146, 250
- Hashimiyya (Shi'ite sect), 220, 251
- Hassan b. Thabit (poet), 18, 52, 53, 54, 127
- Hassan (son of As'ad Kamil), the Tubba', 19, 23, 25
- Hatim of Tayyir, 85-87, 288
- Hawazin (tribe), 119
- Hayy b. Yaqzan, 433
- Hayy, 19
- Hazar Afsan (Hazar Afsana), 363, 457-458
- Hazi (Abu 'l-Ma'ali), 348
- Hazn 'l-Quhuf, 450
- Hebrew language, the, xvi
- Hebrews, the, xv
- Heilsfont, the, 219
- Helpers, the. See *-Ansar*
- Hengstenberg, 102
- Heraclius, 52
- Heresies of the Caliph -Ma'mun, 262
- Herodotus, 353
- Hierothus, 389
- hija (satire), 73, 294
- Hijaz, xvii, 2, 21, 62, 63, 64, 69, 137, 149, 150, 215, 340, 395, 398, 399, 465, 466
- Hijr, the inscriptions of, 21, 3
- Hijra (Hegira), xxv, 158, 171
- Hilla, 449
- Hilyatu 'l-Awliya, 338
- himay (a species of verse), 450
- Hims, 304
- Himyar (person), 14
- Himyar (people), xxv, 1, 6, 10, 17, 24, 25, 26, 429
- Himyarite kings, the, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 17-27. See *Tubba'*
- Himyarite language, the, xvi, xvii, xxi, 6-11
- Himyarite Ode, the, 12, 13
- Himyarites, the, xviii, xx, xxi, 4, 5, 6, 7, 12, 17, 23, 26
- Hind, mother of Bakr and Taghlib, 58
- Hind (a Bedouin woman), 46
- Hind, daughter of -Nu'man III, 46, 47
- Hind, wife of -Mundhir III, 44, 45, 110
- Hinwam (hill), 20
- Hira, xxii, xxiii, 29, 33, 34, 37-49, 51, 52, 53, 54, 60, 69, 70, 85, 87, 103, 107, 108, 109, 110, 112, 114, 121, 122, 124, 138, 139, 189, 244, 439
- Hira, Mount, 150
- Hirran, 11
- Hirschfeld, H., 151
- Hisham (Umayyad Caliph), 200, 206, 224, 243
- Hisham I (Spanish Umayyad), 347, 409
- Hisham II (Spanish Umayyad), 412, 421
- Hisham b. Muhammad al-Kalbi, 38, 39, 40, 348
- Hish Ghurab, 8
- Historians, Arab, 11-14, 144, 247, 348-356, 420, 428, 435-440, 452-454
- Historical studies encouraged by the Umayyads, 247
- History, the true purpose of, 437; subject to universal laws, 438; evolution of, 439, 440
- History of the Berbers, by Ibn Khaldun, 429, 435
- History of the Caliphs, by -Suyuti, 455
- History of Islamic Civilization, by Jurji Zaydan, 435
- History of Old and New Cairo, by -Suyuti, 455
- Holy Ghost, the, 150
- Holy War, the, enjoined by the Koran, 174
- Homer, the Iliad of, translated into Arabic verse, 469
- Homerites, the, 5
- Hommel, F., xv, 1
- Honour, Pre-Islamic conception of, 82-100
- Horace, 326
- Hospitality, the Bedouin ideal of, 85
- House of the Prophet, the, 250. See *'Ali b. Abi Talib; 'Alida; Shi'ites*
- Houtama, Th., 193, 242, 329, 349
- Huart, C., 468
- Hubal (name of an idol), 64
- Hubba, 64
- Hud (prophet), 2
- Hudhalites (Hudhaylites), 22, 128. See *Hudhayl*
- Hudhayla b. Badr, 61
- Hudhayfa b. al-Yaman, 142
- Hudhayl (tribe), xix, 64, 93, 99, 100
- Hughes, G., 80
- Hujr (Kindite), 42
- Hujr, father of Imru' al-Qays, 104
- Hulagu, xxix, 152, 444-446
- Hulayl b. Hubshiyah, 64
- Hulail al-Siyara, 418
- Hulton, 8
- Hulul (incarnation), 396, 402
- Hulwan, 292
- Humani, 457
- Humayma, 249
- Hunayn b. Ishaq, 359
- hur (hours), 167
- Hurruza (Sasanian), 47
- Huruza, the, 460
- Husayn, son of 'Ali b. Abi Talib, 196, 197, 198, 216, 218, 243, 466
- Husayn b. Dardam, 117
- Husayn b. Mansur -Hallaj, 363, 375, 399
- Husnu 'l-Muhadara, 455
- Hutay'a (poet), 127, 131, 261
- Huzwa, 398
- Hypocrites, the. See *-Munafiqun*

## I

- Iamblichus, 389
- 'Ibad, the, of -Hira, 38, 39, 138
- Ibadites (a Kharijite sect), the, 211
- Ibad, by -Dhahabi, 339
- Ibn 'l-Abbar, 418, 424
- Ibn 'Abd Rabbih, 102, 347, 420
- Ibn Abi Du'ad, 376
- Ibn Abi Usaybi'a, 266, 355
- Ibn Abi Ya'qub al-Nadim, 362
- Ibn Abi Zar, 429
- Ibn 'l-Ahmar (Nasrid), 435
- Ibn 'A'isha, 236
- Ibn 'l-'Alqami, 445
- Ibn 'l-'Amid, 267
- Ibn 'Ammar (poet), 422, 424
- Ibn 'l-'Arabi. See *Muhyi 'l-Din Ibn 'l-'Arabi*
- Ibn 'l-'Arabi, the Cadi, of Seville, 399
- Ibn 'l-'Arabi (philologist), 128
- Ibn 'Arabshah, 454
- Ibn 'l-Athir, 201, 205, 253, 355-356, 376, 379, 420, 429
- Ibn Bajja, 361, 434
- Ibn Bashkuwal, 426, 434
- Ibn Bassam, 422, 434
- Ibn 'l-Baytar, 434
- Ibn Durayd, 253, 280, 343

- Ibn 'I-Farid. See 'Umar  
 Ibn 'I-Farid  
 Ibn Hajar, 456  
 Ibn 'I-Hanafiyya. See Mu-  
 ammad Ibn 'I-Hanafiyya  
 Ibn Hani (poet), 419, 420  
 Ibn Hawqal, 356  
 Ibn Hayyan, 428  
 Ibn Hazm, 222, 341, 402, 426-  
 428  
 Ibn Hisham, 17, 22, 23, 63, 64,  
 69, 144, 147, 150, 151, 152,  
 154, 156, 158, 166, 170, 173,  
 175, 349  
 Ibn Humam, 105  
 Ibn 'I-Idhari, 407, 428, 429  
 Ibn Ishaq, 69, 144, 146, 149,  
 156, 247, 349  
 Ibn Jahwar, 424  
 Ibn 'I-Jawzi, 355  
 Ibn Jubayr, 357, 434  
 Ibn Kabsha, nickname of  
 Muhammad, 166  
 Ibn Khalawayh, 271  
 Ibn Khaldun, 32, 228, 229,  
 277, 278, 288, 289, 350, 353-  
 429, 435, 437-440, 443, 452  
 Ibn Khalikan, 120, 132, 190,  
 213, 224, 234, 245, 261, 266,  
 267, 276, 288, 295, 308, 312,  
 320, 343, 344, 346, 348, 355,  
 357, 359, 360, 377, 378, 387,  
 408, 422, 425, 427, 451-452  
 Ibn Khinqan, 425, 434  
 Ibn 'I-Khatib, the Vizier,  
 413, 435, 436, 437  
 Ibn Khudham, 105  
 Ibn Khuradadhi, 356  
 Ibn Maja, 337  
 Ibn Malik of Jaen, 456  
 Ibn Mukarram (Jamalu  
 'I-Din), 456  
 Ibn Muljam, 193  
 Ibn 'I-Muqaffa', 330, 346,  
 348, 358  
 Ibn 'I-Mu'tazz (poet), 325  
 Ibn Nubata (man of letters),  
 61  
 Ibn Nubata, the preacher,  
 271, 328  
 Ibn 'I-Qifti, 355, 370, 387  
 Ibn Qutayba, xviii, 35, 49, 50,  
 51, 75, 77, 105, 117, 145,  
 202, 223, 237, 277, 280,  
 286, 287, 288, 289, 293, 294,  
 345, 346  
 Ibn 'I-Qutayba, 420  
 Ibn Qusman, 417  
 Ibn Rashid, 71, 288  
 Ibn 'I-Rawandi, 375  
 Ibn Rushd, 341, 361, 432, 434  
 Ibn Sa'd, 144, 256, 349  
 Ibn 'I-Sammak, 261  
 Ibn 'I-Sikkiti, 343  
 Ibn Sina (Avicenna), 265, 266,  
 341, 360, 361, 393  
 Ibn Sirin, 244  
 Ibn Surayy, 236  
 Ibn Taymiyya, 371, 482, 483,  
 465, 466  
 Ibn 'I-Tiqtaqa, 454  
 Ibn Tufayl, 361, 432, 433, 434  
 Ibn Tumart, 431-432  
 Ibn 'I-Wahshiyya, xxv  
 Ibn 'I-Wardi, 455  
 Ibn Zaydun (poet), 419, 424-  
 426  
 Ibn Zuhri, 434  
 Ibrahim (Abraham), xviii, 63.  
 See Abraham  
 Ibrahim ('Alid), 258  
 Ibrahim b. Adham, 232  
 Ibrahim b. Hilal al-Sabl, 328  
 Ibrahim of Mosul, 261  
 Idol-worship at Mecca, 62-64  
 Idris, 264  
 -Idrisi (geographer), 357, 434  
 Idrisi dynasty, the, 264  
 Isha'u Uhum al-Din, 230, 234,  
 338, 340  
 -Iji (Adudu 'I-Din), 456  
 -ijma', 460  
 -ihsas, 164  
 Ikhtim, 387  
 -Ikhtiyarat, 128  
 Ikhwana 'I-Safa, 370-372, 388  
 -Ikhl, 6, 12, 13, 24  
 -ilakhyum, 382  
 -Iliad, the, xxii, 325, 469  
 Il-Khans, the, xxix, 446  
 Il-Makali, 11  
 'Imu 'I-hadith (Science of  
 Apostolic Tradition), 283  
 'Imu 'I-kalam (Scholastic  
 Theology), 283  
 'Imu 'I-najum (Astronomy),  
 283  
 'Imu 'I-qira'at (Koranic  
 Criticism), 283  
 'Imu 'I-tafsir (Koranic  
 Exegesis), 283  
 'Idq, 101  
 'Imadu 'I-Dawla (Buwayhid),  
 266  
 'Imadu 'I-Din al-Katib al-  
 Isfahani, 348, 355  
 Imam (head of the religious  
 community), 210  
 Imam, the Hidden, 216-217,  
 371; the Infallible, 220,  
 432  
 Imam-Husayn, a town near  
 Baghdad, 466. See Karbala  
 -Imam al-ma'mum, 432  
 Imamites, the, 251  
 Imams, the Seven, 217, 273  
 Imams, the Shi'ite, 214-220  
 Imams, the Twelve, 217  
 Imamu 'I-Haramaya, 339,  
 379  
 iman (faith), 222  
 Imru'u 'I-Qays (poet), 42, 84,  
 85, 101, 102, 106-107, 128,  
 136, 246, 289  
 India, 4, 17, 268, 341, 352,  
 361, 389  
 India, History of, by -Biruni,  
 361  
 India, the influence of, on  
 Moslem civilisation, 361,  
 389, 390  
 India, Moslem conquests in,  
 203, 268  
 Indian religion, described by  
 -Shahrastani, 341  
 Indus, the, xxiv, 203, 264  
 Infanticide, practised by the  
 pagan Arabs, 149, 243  
 Initiation, the Isma'ili de-  
 grees of, 273  
 Inquisition (mihsa) estab-  
 lished by -Ma'mun, 368,  
 369  
 -Insan al-Kamil, the Perfect  
 Man, 402  
 Inscriptions, the Babylonian  
 and Assyrian, xxv, 4  
 Inscriptions, Himyarite. See  
 Inscriptions, South Arabic  
 Inscriptions, Nabataean, xxv, 3  
 Inscriptions, South Arabic,  
 xvi, xxi, xxvi, 6-11  
 Inspiration, views of the  
 heathen Arabs regarding,  
 72, 73, 152, 165  
 Intellectual and Philosophical  
 Sciences, the, 282  
 Ionia, the dialect of, xxiii  
 -'Iqd al-Farid, 102, 131, 347,  
 420  
 Iran, 1  
 -Iraq, 34, 38, 42, 123, 132,  
 142, 201, 202, 207, 208, 243,  
 244, 255, 262, 266, 273, 303,  
 350, 419, 445. See Babylonia  
 -Isaia b. Isma'el al-Sakabi,  
 456  
 Isabella of Castile, 441  
 Isaiab, 151  
 Isfahan, 14, 131, 268, 280,  
 326, 347, 355, 419  
 Isfandiyyar, 330, 363  
 Ishaq b. Ibrahim al-Mawaffi,  
 261, 362, 418  
 Ishaq b. Khalaf, 92  
 Ishmael. See Isma'il  
 Isidore of Hispalis, 198  
 Islam, meaning of, 153; car-  
 dinal doctrines of, 163-168;  
 formal and ascetic character  
 of, 168, 224; derived from  
 Christianity and Judaism,  
 176, 177; pagan elements in,  
 177; opposed to the ideals  
 of heathendom, 177, 178;  
 identified with the religion  
 of Abraham, 62, 177; a  
 world-religion, 184  
 Isma'li (Ishmael), xviii, 63,  
 64  
 Isma'li (Samanid), 265  
 Isma'li b. 'Abbad, 267. See  
 -Sahib Isma'li b. 'Abbad  
 Isma'li b. Naghdala, 428  
 Isma'lis, the, 217, 272-274,  
 363, 371, 372, 381, 420, 445  
 -ismad, 144, 278, 332  
 -Isnawi, 339  
 Israel, 73  
 Istakhr, 356  
 -Istakhr, 356  
 -istifa, 228

- Italy, 412, 414, 441  
 Ithamar (Sabeian king), 4  
 Ithna 'ashariyya (the Twelve), 217  
 Itimad, name of a slave-girl, 422  
 Itan, 145, 455  
 Ithad, 402  
 'iyar, 297  
 Iyas b. Qabisa, 53  
 'Izzu 'l-Din b. 'Abd al-Salam, 461
- J**
- Jabal Tariq (Gibraltar), 204  
 Jahala b. 'Ayham (Ghassanid), 50, 51, 52, 53, 54  
 Jahariyya (the Predestinarians), 224  
 Jafir b. Hayyan, 361, 387  
 jabr (compulsion), 224, 297  
 Jacob, G., 74, 76  
 Jadal (tribe), 429  
 Jadhima al-Abraah, 34, 35, 36, 40  
 Jadia (tribe), 4, 25  
 Jaen, 456  
 Ja'far, the Barmecide, 260  
 Ja'far, son of the Caliph -Hadi, 260  
 Jafna, founder of the Ghassanid dynasty, 50  
 Jafnites, the. See *Ghassanids*, the  
 Jaghhub, 468  
 Jahdar b. Dubay'a, 59  
 jahiliyya (the Age of Barbarism), xxvi, 30, 31, 34, 71, 90, 158, 287  
 Jahiz, 267, 280, 346-347, 375  
 jahiz, 346  
 Jahiziyya (Mu'tazilite sect), 346  
 jahl, meaning 'barbarism', 30  
 Jahn b. Safwan, 222  
 Jahshiyari (Abu 'Abdallah Muhammad b. 'Abdus), 458  
 Jalalu 'l-Din Khwarizmshah, 444  
 Jalalu 'l-Din al-Mahallil, 455  
 Jalalu 'l-Din Rumi, Persian poet, 298, 393, 404  
 Jallaban, 293  
 Jamkara b. 'l-Lughz, 343  
 Jamkaratu Ash'ari 'l-'Arab, 130  
 Jami ('Abdu 'l-Rahman), Persian poet, 229, 284, 386, 433  
 -jami, by -Tirmidhi, 337  
 -jami'a, 371  
 Jamil, 239  
 Jandal, 245  
 Janissaries, the, 413  
 Jannabi, 375  
 Jaradatan (name of two singing girls), 2  
 Jarir (poet), 205, 238, 239, 240, 242, 244-248  
 Jassas b. Murra, 56, 57  
 -Jawf, 9  
 Jawhar, 429  
 -Jawlan, 54  
 Jerusalem, 169, 177, 233, 275, 340, 355, 357  
 Jesus, 215, 216  
 Jews, the, 341. See *Judaism*  
 -Jibal (province), 292, 356, 445  
 Jibril (Gabriel), 150  
 Jihad, 450  
 Jinn, the, 72, 112, 119, 152, 165  
 jinni (genie), 165  
 Jirjis -Ma'in (historian), 355  
 John of Damascus, 221  
 John of Ephesus, 52  
 Johnson, Dr., 286, 313  
 Joktan, xviii  
 Jones, E. R., 433  
 Jones, Sir William, 102, 452  
 Jong, P. de, 366  
 Jordan, the, 446  
 -Jubba'l, 377, 378  
 Judaism, established in  
 -Yemen, 23, 137; zealously fostered by Dhu Nuwas, 26; in Arabia, 137-140, 149, 158, 170-172, 173, 176, 177; in Spain, 415, 428, 429; in Sicily, 441  
 Judaism, influence of, on Muhammadan thought, 176, 177, 215, 216  
 -Ju'ayya (the Fasters), 232  
 Juliana of Norwich, 233  
 Junayd of Baghdad, 228, 230, 392, 466  
 Jundel-shapur, 358  
 Jurhum (tribe), xviii, 63, 117  
 Jurjan, 339  
 Jurji Zaydan, 435  
 Justinian, 43, 51, 104, 358  
 Justinus (Byzantine Emperor), 27, 52  
 -Juwayni (Abu 'l-Ma'ali), 339, 379  
 Juynboll, 257, 262, 268, 330, 369
- K**
- Ka'b (tribe), 246  
 Ka'b b. Zuhayr (poet), 119, 127, 327  
 -Ka'ba, 63, 64, 65, 67, 101, 117, 154, 155, 157, 164, 169, 177, 198, 319, 400, 403, 467  
 Ka'bu 'l-Ahbar, 185  
 -Kadhdhad (title of Musaylima), 183  
 Kafur (Ikhshidite), 306, 307  
 Kahlan, 14  
 -Kalabadi, 338  
 -Kalam (Scholasticism), 361, 378  
 Kalb (tribe), 199, 405  
 kaib, 445  
 Kalila and Dimna, the Book of, 346, 363  
 -Kamala (title), 88  
 -kamil (metre), 75  
 -Kamil of Ibbu 'l-Athir, 355, 379, 429. See *Ibbu 'l-Athir*  
 -Kamil of -Mubarrad, 92, 131, 202, 226, 227, 237, 244, 343  
 kannahan (a species of verse), 450  
 Karbala, 196, 198, 208, 216, 218, 243, 466  
 Kariba'll Watar, 10  
 -Karkh, a quarter of Baghdad, 267, 385  
 Kasab, 379  
 Kasifu 'l-Zumun, 456  
 -Kashaf, 145  
 kasib (secretary), 257, 326  
 Kawadh (Sasanian), 48  
 Kerbogha, 446  
 Khadija, 148, 150, 151, 152, 153, 157  
 -Kasaf (metre), 75  
 Khalaf, 421  
 Khalaf al-Ahmar, 97, 134, 293, 344  
 Khalid b. -Mudallil, 43  
 Khalid b. -Walid, 184  
 Khalid b. Yazid, 358  
 Khalifa (Caliph), xxvii, 175  
 -Khalil b. Ahmad, 75, 285, 343  
 Khamir (village), 19  
 -Khamriyya, by Ibbu 'l-Farid, 396  
 Khamriyyat, 294  
 Khamraqa (monastery), 229  
 -Khamsa (poetess), 126, 127  
 Kharidaw 'l-Qasr, 348  
 Khariri (Kharirite), 209  
 Kharirites, the, 193, 207, 208-213, 221, 222, 239, 245, 259, 428  
 Kharmaythan, 360  
 -Khasib, 373  
 khatib, 271  
 -Khatib, of Baghdad, 355  
 -Khatim b. 'Adi, 94, 96  
 -Khawarij. See *Kharirites*, the  
 -Khawarnaq (castle), 40, 41  
 -Khaybar, 50  
 -Khayf, 237  
 Khazaza, battle of, 5  
 -Khazraj (tribe), 170  
 Khedival dynasty, the, 468  
 Khidash b. Zuhayr, 93, 96  
 Khindif, xix  
 -Khatir, by -Maqrizi, 453  
 Khiva, 361, 444  
 -Khatiratu 'l-Adab, 131  
 Khuda Bukhsh, S., 279  
 Khuday-nama, 348  
 Khulafa al-Rashidun, xxvii. See *Caliphs*, the *Orthodox*  
 Khurasan, xxviii, 129, 132, 220, 221, 232, 233, 239, 249, 250, 251, 254, 256, 258, 263, 265, 266, 273, 303, 339, 341, 379, 390, 391, 419, 444  
 Khurasan, dialect of, 339  
 Khuruj (secession), 209  
 Khuraw Parwez. See *Parwez*



khudba, 263, 328  
 Khuzayma (tribe), 63, 64, 65  
 Khuzayma (tribe), xix  
 Khuzistan, 266, 274, 293, 358  
 Khwarizm, 357, 361, 444  
 -Khwarizmi (Abu 'Abdallah), 361  
 -Khutub al-ahmar, 399  
 Kilab (tribe), 246  
 Kilab b. Murra, 64  
 -kimiya (the Philosophers' Stone), 401  
 Kimiya'u 'l-Sa'adat, 340  
 -kimiya'un (the Alchemists), 364  
 Kinana (tribe), xix, 64  
 Kinda (tribe), xviii, 42, 43, 69, 85, 103, 104, 360  
 -Kindi, 288, 360  
 -Kina'i (philologist), 261, 343  
 Kisra (title), 45  
 Kitabu 'l-Aghani (the Book of Songs), 19, 26, 31, 32, 37, 43, 44, 46, 47, 53, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 94, 102, 104, 109, 110, 123, 124, 131, 134, 138, 139, 150, 200, 205, 216, 236, 237, 239, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 270, 279, 291, 292, 297, 345, 347, 374, 419  
 Kitabu 'l-Akham al-Sulamiyya, 338  
 Kitabu 'l-Akhar al-Tawal, 349  
 Kitabu 'l-Amali, 131  
 Kitabu Amali 'l-Ashraf, 349  
 -Kitab al-Awsat, 353  
 Kitabu 'l-Ayn, 343  
 Kitabu 'l-Badi', 325  
 Kitabu 'l-Bayan wa-'l-Tabyin, 347  
 Kitabu 'l-Falahat al-Naba'iyya, xxv  
 Kitabu Futuhi 'l-Buldan, 349  
 Kitabu 'l-Hayawan, 346, 375  
 Kitabu 'l-Ibar, by Dhahabi, 339  
 Kitabu 'l-Ibar, by Ibn Khaldun, 437  
 Kitabu 'l-Ibbi, 345  
 Kitabu 'l-Ihtiqaq, 343  
 Kitabu 'l-Kamil fi 'l-Ta'rikh, 355. See -Kamil of Ibnu 'l-Athir  
 Kitabu Khalq al-Insan, 345  
 Kitabu 'l-Khayi, 345  
 Kitabu 'l-Luma', 393  
 Kitabu 'l-Ma'arif, xviii, 202, 223, 224, 345, 346  
 Kitabu 'l-Maghazi, by Musa b. 'Uqba, 247  
 Kitabu 'l-Maghazi, by -Waqidi, 144  
 -Kitab al-Manzuri, 265  
 Kitabu 'l-Manalik wa-'l-Mamalik, 356  
 Kitabu 'l-Matal wa-'l-Nihal, by Ibn Hazm, 341, 427, 428  
 Kitabu 'l-Matal wa-'l-Nihal, by -Shahrastani, 341. See -Shahrastani

Kitabu 'l-Muluk wa-akhbar al-Madin, 13  
 Kitabu 'l-Sha'r wa-'l-Shu'ara, 75, 78, 105, 127, 257, 293, 346  
 Kitabu 'l-Ta'arruf li-Madh-habi ahli 'l-Tasawwuf, 338  
 Kitabu 'l-Tabaqat al-Kabir, 144  
 Kitabu 'l-Tanbih wa-'l-Ishraf, 353, 354  
 -Kitab al-Yamini, 355  
 Kitabu 'l-Zuhd, 247  
 Koran, the, xvii, xx, xxii-xxv, xxvi, xxvii, 1, 2, 3, 15, 17, 18, 27, 68, 74, 91, 102, 119, 137, 134, 141-143, 144-155, 154-156, 158, 159-168, 169, 172, 174, 175, 176, 178, 179, 183, 184, 185, 187, 192, 201, 203, 207-212, 215, 221, 223, 225, 231, 234, 235, 237, 247, 249, 273, 277, 278, 279, 282, 284, 287, 294, 318, 327, 329, 330, 342, 343, 344, 363, 365, 368, 369, 375, 378, 379, 397, 398, 403, 408, 417, 433, 449, 454, 455, 460, 461, 462, 463, 467  
 Koran, the, derivation of, 159; collection of, 142; historical value of, 143; style of, 159, 318, 368; not poetical as a whole, 160; held by Moslems to be the literal Word of God, 159, 235; heavenly archetype of, 151, 163, 368; revelation of, 150-152, 159; designed for oral recitation, 161; commentaries on, 144, 145, 351, 455; imitations of, 318, 368, 375; dispute as to whether it was created or not, 262, 368, 369  
 Koran-readers (-qurra), the, 209, 210, 277  
 Kosegarten, 128  
 Krehl, L., 151, 360  
 Kremer, Alfred von, 13, 14, 18, 19, 23, 24, 101, 139, 140, 220, 221, 225, 233, 279, 281, 302, 304, 316, 318, 321, 323, 324, 360, 373, 379, 383, 399, 439  
 -Kufa, xxiv, 38, 70, 127, 133, 134, 186, 189, 193, 196, 198, 202, 207-210, 215, 218, 219, 229, 250, 253, 291, 293, 296, 304, 342, 343, 344  
 -Kulab, battle of, 253  
 Kulayb (tribe), 244, 245  
 Kulayb b. Rabi'a, 5, 55, 56, 57, 76, 93  
 Kulayb b. Wa'il, 110. See Kulayb b. Rabi'a  
 Kulthum b. Malik, 110  
 -Kumayt (poet), 138  
 kunya (name of honour), 45, 50, 112  
 -Kusa', 244  
 Kuthayyir (poet), 216

-kutub al-sitta (the Six Books), 337  
 -Kutubi, 449, 452  
 I.  
 La Fontaine, 469  
 Lahid (poet), 50, 109, 119-121, 128, 139, 140  
 Lagrange, Grangeret de, 396, 417  
 Lahore, 268  
 Lakhmites, the, of -Hira, 33, 38, 39-40, 54, 69  
 Lamiis (name of a woman), 82  
 Lamiyyatu 'l-Ajam, 326  
 Lamiyyatu 'l-Arab, 78, 80, 89, 134, 326  
 Lamta (tribe), 429  
 Lamtuna (tribe), 429  
 Lane, E. W., 53, 164, 448, 459  
 Lane-Poole, Stanley, 264, 275, 371, 432  
 -Lat (goddess), 135, 155  
 Lata'ifu 'l-Minan, 464  
 Latifi (Turkish biographer), 460  
 Lams duplex (rhetorical figure), 311  
 Law, Muhammadan, the schools of, 283, 284, 363, 465; the first corpus of, 337  
 Lamiyyatu 'l-Awwal, 225, 226, 392  
 -Lawh al-Mahfuz, 163, 378  
 Layla, mother of 'Amr b. Kulthum, 44, 109, 110  
 Layla, the beloved of -Majnun, 238  
 Le Strange, G., 256, 356, 357  
 Learning, Moslem enthusiasm for, 281  
 Lees, Nassau, 356  
 Leo the Armenian, 359  
 Letter-writing, the art of, 267  
 Lexicon, the first Arabic, 343  
 Library of Nuh II, the Samanid, 264, 266; of Hakim II, the Spanish Umayyad, 419  
 Linguistic Sciences, the, 282  
 Lippert, 370  
 Lisani 'l-Arab, 456  
 Lisani 'l-Din Ibnu 'l-Khatib. See Ibnu 'l-Khatib  
 Literary culture despised by the Arabs, 278  
 Lillan, 423  
 Littmann, Enno, 73  
 Logon, the, 403  
 Lollards, the, 374  
 Longland, 450  
 Loth, O., 1  
 Lourdes, 382  
 Love, Divine, the keynote of Sufism, 231; two kinds of, 234; an ineffable mystery, 387; hymn of, 396; in Sufi poetry, 334, 397, 398, 402, 403  
 Loyalty, as understood by the heathen Arabs, 83-85

- Lucian, 319  
*Luḡha* (Lexicography), 283  
 Luḡayy, 63  
 Lull, Raymond, 404  
 Lu'lu', 304  
 Luḡman b. 'Ad (king), 2, 14  
*Luzumiyyat*, 315, 316, 319, 323, 324  
*Luzumu ma la yalaam*, 315  
 See *Luzumiyyat*  
 Lyall, Sir Charles, 32, 54, 71, 75, 82, 89, 92, 97, 101, 109, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 117, 118, 120, 121, 125, 129, 139, 140, 149
- M
- Ma' al-Sama (surname), 41  
 Ma'ab, 63  
*ma'ad* (place of return), 215  
 Ma'add, xix, xi, 112  
*Ma'arratu 'l-Nu'man*, 313, 314, 323  
*Ma'arri* (Abu 'l-'Ala), 448  
 See *Abu 'l-'Ala al-Ma'arri*  
*Ma'bad* (singer), 236  
*Ma'bad al-Juhani*, 224  
*Macbeth*, Arabian parallel to an incident in, 25  
 Macdonald, D. B., 273, 378, 382, 433  
 Macedonia, 276  
 Machiavelli, 439  
 Macoraba, 5, 62  
 Madagascar, 352  
*Madā'in* (Ctesiphon), 29, 33, 46, 47, 48. See *Ctesiphon*  
*Madā'in Salih*, 3  
*madā al-muwaṣṣaḥ*, 311  
*madid* (metre), 98  
*madid* (panegyric), 78, 294  
*Madinat 'l-Salam*, 235. See *Baghdad*  
 Madri, 420  
*maḡabbir*, 100  
*maḡhar*, 247  
*Maḡrib*, 460  
*Maḡi* (Magians), the. See *Zoroastrians*, the  
*Magian fire-temple at Balkh*, the, 259  
 Mahaffy, J. P., 82  
 Mahdi, the, 216, 217, 248, 249, 274, 431  
 Mahdi, the Caliph, 103, 128, 257, 258, 296, 343, 367, 373, 374, 418  
 Mahdiyya, 274  
 Mahmud (Ghaznavid), 268-269, 335  
 Mahra, dialect of, xxi  
 Maimonides, 434  
 Majdu 'l-Din al-Firuzabadi. See *Firuzabadi*  
*Majma' al-Mubarrak*, 355  
 Majnun, 238  
 majnun, 165  
 Maḡa, 410, 421, 428, 434  
 Malik (boon companion of Jadhima), 35  
 Malik (brother of Qays b. Zuhayr), 61  
 Malik the Ardite, 34  
 Malik, the slayer of -Khatim b. 'Adi, 94, 95  
 Malik b. Anas, 284, 337, 368, 408  
 -Malik al-Dillil (title of Imru'u 'l-Qays), 104  
 -Malik al-Kamil (Ayyubid), 395, 434  
 -Malik al-Salih Najmu'l-Din (Ayyubid), 447  
 Malik Shah (Seljuq), 275, 276, 326, 340  
 -Malik al-Zahir (Ayyubid), 275  
 -Malik al-Zahir Baybars. See *Baybars*, Sultan  
 Malikiite books burned by the Almohades, 433  
 Malikiite school of Law, the, 408  
 Mameluke dynasty, the, xxix, 442, 446, 447, 448, 453, 464  
 Mamelukes, the, 413  
*mamluk*, 447  
 -Ma'mun, the Caliph, 92, 129, 255, 257, 262, 263, 284, 302, 343, 358-359, 361, 368, 369, 373, 388  
 Manat (goddess), 135, 455  
 Mandeville, Sir John, xxv  
 Manfred, 441  
 -Manfuha, 124  
 Mani (Manes), 364, 375  
 Manichaeans, the, 218, 297, 341, 372-375. See *Zindiq*, 144  
 -Mansur, the Caliph, 128, 206, 252, 253, 255, 257, 258-260, 291, 314, 337, 346, 349, 358, 373, 407  
 Mansur I (Samanid), 265, 352  
 -Mansur Ibn Abi 'Amir, 412, 413, 426  
*Manile Ode* (-Burda), the, 326, 327  
*maqama*, 328  
*-Maqamat*, of Badi'u 'l-Zaman al-Hamadani, 328, 329  
*-Maqamat*, of Hariri, 329-336  
*Maqamu Ibrahim*, 63  
 -Maqdisi. See *Muqaddasi*  
 -Maqqari, 399, 401, 413, 418, 419, 427, 436, 454  
 -Maqrizi (Taḡiyyu 'l-Din), 453  
*-Maqura*, 343  
 Marabout, modern form of *murabbi*, 430  
*Marasidu 'l-Itizil*, 357  
*marathi*, 294  
 Marathon, battle of, 174  
 Marchoe, 364  
 Margoliouth, Prof. D. S., xxiv, 183, 267, 314, 316, 317, 319, 337, 469  
 Marzaba, 5  
 Ma'rib, 2, 5, 9, 14, 15, 16, 17, 50. See *Dike of Ma'rib*  
 Maridin, 449  
*ma'rifa* (gnosis), 386  
 Marhid dynasty, the, 442  
 Mariya, mother of -Mundhir III, 41  
 Mariya (name of a hand-maiden), 46, 47  
 Mariya of the Ear-rings, 50  
 Marj Rahit, battle of, 199  
 Marr al-Zahrān, 95  
 Marriage, a loose form of, prevailing among the Shi'ites, 262  
 Ma'ruf al-Karkhi, 385, 386, 388  
 Marwan I (Umayyad Caliph), 199  
 Marwan II (Umayyad Caliph), 181, 251, 253, 347  
 -Marruci (philologist), 128  
*Masabih 'l-Suma*, 337  
*Masabih 'l-Mamalik*, 356  
*-mashaf*, 294  
 Mashhad-Husayn, 466  
 Maslama b. Ahmad, 420  
 Masrug, 28  
 Mas'ud, Sultan, 329. See *Ghiyathu 'l-Din Mas'ud*  
 -Mas'udi, 13, 15, 37, 195, 205, 206, 209, 260, 267, 349, 352-354, 387, 456  
*Materia Medica*, by Ibn 'l-Baytar, 434  
*mathalid*, 100, 280  
*Mathnawi*, the, by Jalalu 'l-Din Rumi, 404  
 -Matin, 428  
*matla'*, 309  
*matn*, 144  
 Mauritania, 412  
*-Mawazir wa 'l-Fihar fi dāhiri 'l-Khalat wa 'l-Athar*, 453  
 -Mawali (the Clients), 198, 207, 219, 222, 248, 250, 278, 279, 373  
 -Mawali (the Clients), coalesces with the Shi'ites, 198, 219, 220, 250; treated with contempt by the Arabs, 219, 248, 278, 279; their culture, 248; their influence, 278, 279  
*maḡaliyya*, a species of verse, 450  
 -Mawardi, 337, 338  
 Mawriyya, mother of -Mundhir III, 41  
 Mawriyya, wife of Hatim of Tayy, 87  
 -Maydani, 31. See *Proverbs*, Arabic  
 Maymun b. Qays. See *-A'sha*  
 Maysun, 195  
 Mazlak, 42, 258, 364  
 Mazyar, 375  
 Mecca, xviii, xxiii, xxvi, xxvii, 2, 3, 5, 6, 22, 23, 53, 62, 63, 64, 65-68, 101, 102, 114, 117, 146, 150, 154-156, 158, 169, 171, 174, 175, 196, 198, 202, 236, 249, 274, 319, 339, 340, 393, 396, 429, 431, 434, 439, 466, 468

- Mecca, Pre-Islamic history of, 62; attacked by the Abyssinians, 66-69; submits to the Prophet, 64, 175  
 Mecca, the dialect of, xxiii  
*Meccan Revelations, the*, 464  
 See *Futūḥ al-Makkiyya*  
 Meccan Suras of the Koran, the, 160-168  
 Media, 356  
 Medina, (-Madina), xxvi, xxvii, 3, 21, 22, 49, 50, 52, 62, 71, 84, 150, 157, 158, 169, 170, 171, 173, 174, 176, 177, 181, 183, 186, 188, 198, 208, 209, 236, 241, 243, 337, 339, 365, 466, 468  
 Medina, Suras of the Koran revealed at, 175, 176  
 Mediterranean Sea, the, 5, 235, 275, 404, 412, 444  
 Merv, 352, 346  
 Merz, A., 384, 389  
 Mesopotamia, 35, 186, 238, 240, 269, 355, 358, 385, 388, 411, 446  
 Messiah, Moslem beliefs regarding the, 215-217, 248, 249. See *Mahdi, the*  
 Metempsychosis, the doctrine of, 267  
 Metres, the Arabian, 74, 75  
 Mevlevi dervish order, the, 393  
 miḥna, 368  
 -Mihras, 124  
 Mihrigan, Persian festival, 250  
 Milton, 212  
 Mina, 119  
 Minean language, the, xxi  
 Mineans, the, 7  
 minbar (pulpit), 199  
 Minqar, 57  
 Miqlab (castle), 24  
 Miracles demanded by the Quraysh from Muhammad, 165; falsely attributed to Muhammad, 166  
 -Mi'raj (the Ascension of the Prophet), 169, 403  
 Mi'ratu 'l-Zaman, 355  
 Miḥkātū 'l-Masābiḥ, 337  
 Mīr (Old Cairo), 394  
 misra' (hemistich), 74  
 -Miskar, 455. See *Mushir*  
 Moqris, the Great, xxix, 444  
 Moiré, 469  
 Monasticism, alien to Islam, 225  
 Mongol invasion, the, xxiv, xxix, xxx, 272, 277, 326, 443, 444-446  
 Mongols, the, 234, 264, 275, 442, 443, 462. See *Mongol Invasion, the*  
 Monte Cristo, 469  
 Montrose, 191  
 Mordtmann, 9  
 Morocco, 264, 341, 423, 424, 430, 431, 442  
 Moses, 165, 172, 185, 215, 273, 397  
 Moslem, meaning of, 153  
 Moslems, the first, 153  
 Moslems, the non-Arabian. See *Mawali*  
 Mosul (-Mawṣil), 261, 269, 287, 326, 335, 362, 399, 445, 454  
 -Mu'ailaqat, 77, 82, 101-121, 128, 131, 416, 459  
 Mu'awiya b. Abi Sufyan (Caliph), xxviii, 13, 119, 181, 191, 192, 193, 194, 196, 196, 206, 207, 208, 213, 214, 222, 256, 377, 407, 426  
 Mu'awiya b. Bakr (Amalekite prince), 2  
 Mu'awiya, brother of -Khanṣa, 126  
 Mu'ayyidu 'l-Dawia (Burwayhid), 267  
 -Mubarrad (philologist), 92, 131, 202, 226, 237, 244, 343, 344  
 Mudar b. Nizar, xix, 252  
 Mudar, the tribes descended from, xix  
 -Mudhakhat, -Mudhakhatat, 101  
 -Mufaddal al-Dabbī (philologist), 128, 133, 343  
 Mufaddal b. Salama, 31  
 -Mufaddaliyyat, 90, 128, 343  
 -Mughannas, 69  
 mukafat (scooking-match), 238  
 -Muhajirun (the Emigrants), 171, 209  
 Muhallil b. Rabi'a, 58, 76, 109, 110  
 -Muhallab b. Abi Sufra, 239  
 -Muhallabi, the Vizier, 267, 347  
 Muhammad, the Prophet, xxiii, xxvi-xxviii, 3, 10, 15, 18, 27, 30, 31, 62, 64, 65, 66, 69, 70, 71, 74, 86, 87, 103, 124, 132, 134, 135, 137, 139, 141-180, 181-183, 186-188, 190-191, 201, 202, 207-209, 213-218, 223, 224, 229, 231, 233, 235, 237, 249, 250, 251, 257, 258, 267, 271, 274, 277, 278, 279, 280, 318, 327, 339, 341, 342, 348, 349, 355, 356, 360, 363, 392, 400, 403, 420, 428, 431, 449, 455, 462, 463, 465, 467  
 Muhammad, question whether he could read and write, 131; his attitude towards the heathen poets, 159, 212, 235; his aim in the Meccan Suras, 160; his death, 175; his character, 179, 180; biographies of, 144, 146, 247, 349; poems in honour of, 124, 127, 326, 327, 449; medieval legend of, 327; identified with the Logos, 403; pilgrimage to the tomb of, 463; his tomb demolished by the Wahhabis, 467  
 Muhammad ('Alid), 258  
 Muhammad (Seljuq), 326  
 Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Wahhab, 465-467  
 Muhammad b. 'Ali ('Abbasid), 251  
 Muhammad 'Ali Pasha, 466, 468  
 Muhammad b. 'Ali b. -Sanusi, 468  
 Muhammad Ibnu 'l-Hanaḡiyya, 216, 218, 220  
 Muhammad b. -Hasan, the Imam, 227  
 Muhammad b. Isma'il, the Imam, 217, 272-274  
 Muhammad al-Kalbi, 348  
 Muhammad b. Sa'ad, 466  
 -Muḥtadī, the Caliph, 264  
 Muḥvi 'l-Dīn Iḡmū 'l-'Arabī, 399-404, 434, 462  
 Muḥvi 'l-Maw'udat (title), 243  
 Muir, Sir W., 142, 143, 146, 156, 184, 197, 338  
 -Mu'izz (Fatimid Caliph), 420  
 Mu'izzu 'l-Dawia (Burwayhid), 266, 267, 347  
 -Muḡammī (title), 63  
 Mu'ayyidu 'l-Buldan, 17, 357  
 Mu'ayyidu 'l-Udaba, 357  
 Mukarrir (title), 10  
 Mukhadramun (a class of poets), 127  
 -Mukhtar, 198, 218-220, 250  
 -Mukhtarat, 128  
 -Muktaḡ, the Caliph, 257, 269, 325  
 -Munaththanun, 423  
 Müller, A., 3, 101, 261, 266, 355, 429  
 Müller, D. H., 9, 10, 12, 13, 17, 18, 24  
 Multan, 203  
 Muluku 'l-Tawa'if (the Party Kings of Spain), 414  
 -Munāḡiqun (the Hypocrites), 271, 172, 176  
 -Munakkiḡhal (poet), 49  
 -Mundhir I (Lakhmite), 41  
 -Mundhir III (Lakhmite), 41-44, 45, 50, 51, 60, 87, 103, 104  
 -Mundhir IV (Lakhmite), 45, 47  
 -Mundhir b. -Harith (Ghassanid), 50, 52  
 -Mundhir b. Ma' al-sama, 50, 51. See *Mundhir III*  
 -Munjabat (title), 88  
 Munk, S., 360  
 -Munqidh min 'l-Dalal, 340, 380  
 Munshi, 326  
 -Muḡaddasī (geographer), 356, 357, 409  
 -Muḡaddima, of Ibn Khaldun, 32, 229, 278, 289, 437-440. See *Ibn Khaldun*  
 -Muḡanna', 258



- Muqattam, Mt., 394, 396  
 -Mugabib, 428  
 -Mugtadir, the Caliph, 325, 343, 399  
 -murabbi, 430  
 -Murabitun, 423. See *Almoravides*, the  
*murid*, 392  
*murji* (Murjite), 221  
 Murjites, the, 206, 220, 221-222, 428  
 Murra, 56, 57, 58  
 Mursiya (Murcia), 399  
*Muruja 'l-Dhahab*, 13, 15, 37, 195, 203, 205, 206, 259, 260, 267, 340, 353, 354, 387, 457  
*murwana* (virtue), 71, 82, 176, 287  
 Musa b. Maymun (Maimonides), 434  
 Musa b. Nusayr, 203, 204, 405  
 Musa b. 'Uqba, 247  
 Mus'ab, 199  
 Musaylima, 183  
*Mushtarik*, 357  
 Music in Pre-Islamic Arabia, 236  
 Musicians, Arab, 236  
*-musiqi* (Music), 283  
 Muslim (Moslem), meaning of, 153  
 Muslim (author of *-Sakhi*), 144, 337  
 Muslim b. 'Aqil, 196  
 Muslim b. 'Walid (poet), 261  
*musnad* (inscriptions), 6  
 -Mustakhi (Spanish Umayyad), 424  
 -Mustakhi, 'Abbasid Caliph, 266  
 -Mustansir (Abbasid), 448  
 -Mustarhid Billah, the Caliph, 329  
 -Musta'im, the Caliph, 254, 445  
 -Mustawrid b. 'Ullfa, 210  
*-mu'sa*, 262  
 -Mu'tadid ('Abbadid), 421, 425  
 -Mu'tadid ('Abbasid Caliph), 325  
 -Mu'tamid ('Abbadid), 421-424  
 -Mutajarrida, 49, 122  
 -Mutalamim (poet), 107, 108, 138  
 Mutammim b. Nuwayra, 127  
 -Mutanabbi (poet), 266, 269, 270, 289, 290, 291, 292, 304-313, 315, 316, 324, 396, 416, 448  
*mutasawwifa* (aspirants to Sufism), 229  
 -Mu'tasim, the Caliph, 129, 257, 263, 369, 375  
 -Mutawakkil, the Caliph, 257, 264, 284, 344, 350, 369, 375, 378, 388  
*mutawakkil*, 233  
 Mu'tasilitas, the, 206, 220, 222-224, 225, 230, 262, 268, 284, 346, 367-370, 376, 377, 378, 392, 409, 428, 431  
 -Mu'tazz, the Caliph, 325  
 -Muti, the Caliph, 353  
 Muti' b. Iyas (poet), 291, 292  
*muwakkid*, 432  
 -Muwalladun, 278, 408  
*muwawshah*, verse-form, 416, 417, 449  
 -*Muwatt'a*, 337, 408, 409  
 Muzaffar Qutuz (Mameluke), 446  
 Muzayna (tribe), 116  
 -Muzayyisa (surname), 15  
 -*Mushir*, 71, 455  
 Mystical poetry of the Arabs, the, 325, 396-398, 403  
 Mysticism. See *Sufism*
- N
- Nabat, the Nabateans, xxv, 279  
 Nabatean, Moslem use of the term, xxv  
*Nabatean Agriculture, the Book of*, xxv  
 Nabatean inscriptions, xxv, 3  
 -Nabigha al-Dhubyani (poet), 39, 49, 50, 54, 86, 101, 121-128, 128, 139  
*nadhir* (warrior), 164  
 Nadir (tribe), 170  
 -Nadr b. Harith, 330  
*Nafahatu 'l-Uns*, by Jami, 386  
*Nafsu 'l-Fit*, by Maqqari, 399, 413, 436  
 Nafi' b. 'Azraq, 208  
 -Nafi al-zakiyya (title), 258  
 -Nahhas (philologist), 102  
 -Nahrawan, battle of, 208  
*-nahu* (grammar), 283  
 Na'ila, 35  
 -Najaf, 40  
 -Najashi (the Negus), 26, 27, 28  
 Najid, xvii, 62, 107, 466  
 Najda b. 'Amir, 209  
 Najdites (a Kharijite sect), the, 208  
 Najran, 26, 27, 105, 124, 136, 137, 162  
 Na'man, 11  
 Namir (tribe), xix  
 Napoleon, 468  
 -*Napa'id*, of Akhtal and Jarir, 240  
 -*Napa'id*, of Jarir and Farazdaq, 239  
 Naqb al-Hajar, 8  
 -Nasafi (Abu 'l-Barakat), 456  
 -*Nassa'i*, 337  
 Nashwan b. Sa'id al-Himyari, 12, 13  
*nasib* (erotic prelude), 77, 310  
 Nasim, a place near Baghdad, 461  
 -Nasimi (the Hurufi poet), 460, 462  
 Nasir-i Khusrav, Persian poet, 323  
 Nasiru 'l-Dawla (Hamdanid), 269, 411  
 Nasr b. Sayyar, 251  
 Nasr II (Samanid), 265  
 Nasrid dynasty of Granada, the, 435, 442  
*nas'*, 257  
 -Nawaji (Muhammad b. Hasan), 417  
 Nawar, wife of Farazdaq, 243, 244  
 Nawar, the beloved of Labid, 121  
 Nawruz, Persian festival, 250  
 Naysabur, 232, 276, 330, 339, 340, 348  
*Nazmu 'l-Suluk*, 396  
 -Nazzam, 369  
 Neo-platonism, 360, 384, 389, 390  
 Neo-platonist philosophers welcomed by Nushirwan, 358  
 Nero, 325  
 Nessus, 104  
 Nicephorus, 261  
 Niebuhr, Carsten, 7  
 Night journey of Muhammad, the, 169, 403  
 Night of Power, the, 150  
*Nihayatu 'l-'Arab*, 455  
 Nile, the, xviii, 264, 354, 455  
 Nirvana, 233, 391  
 -Nizamiyya College, at Baghdad, 276, 340, 380, 431  
 -Nizamiyya College, at Naysabur, 276, 340  
 Nizamu 'l-Mulk, 276, 340, 379  
 Nizar, xix  
 Noah, xv, xviii, 163  
 Noldeke, Th., xv, xi, xxxiii, xxv, 5, 27, 29, 38, 42, 44, 45, 48, 49, 51, 52, 54, 55, 57-60, 66, 70, 78, 80, 81, 101, 102, 103, 109, 113, 122, 123, 126, 127, 130, 134, 145, 151, 160, 167, 172, 184, 195, 228, 237, 238, 240, 252, 258, 288  
 Nomadic life, characteristics of, 459, 440  
 Nominalists, 367  
 Normans, the, 441  
 Nubia, 387  
 Nuh I (Samanid), 265  
 Nuh II (Samanid), 265  
 -*Nujum al-Zahira*, 257, 262, 268, 369, 464  
 -Nu'man I (Lakhmite), 40, 41, 139  
 -Nu'man III (Lakhmite), 45-49, 50, 53, 54, 69, 80, 121, 122  
 -Nu'man al-Akbar. See *Nu'man I*  
 -Nu'manal-A'war (Lakhmite). See *Nu'man I*  
 -Nu'man b. Mandhir Abu Qabus. See *Nu'man III*  
 Numayr (tribe), 245, 246

-Nuri (Abu 'l-Husayn), 392  
Nushirwan (Sasanian king),  
39, 42, 45, 358  
-Nuwayri, 15, 455  
Nyberg, H. S., 404

O

Occam, 367  
Ockley, Simon, 433  
Ode, the Arabian, 76-78. See  
gasida  
Odenathus, 33, 35  
Odysey, the, xxii  
O'Leary, De Lacy, 360  
Ordeal of fire, the, 21  
Orthodox Caliph, the, xxiii,  
xxvii, 181-193  
Orthodox Reaction, the, 284,  
376. See -Ash'ari  
Oslander, 9  
Ottoman Turks, the, xxix,  
442, 447, 464-467  
Oxus, the, xxviii, 341, 444

P

Pahlavi (Pehlevi) language,  
the, 214, 330, 346, 348, 358  
Palermo, 441  
Palestine, 52, 104, 137, 219  
Palmer, E. H., 172, 176, 260  
Palma, the Feast of, 54  
Palm-tree, verses on the, by  
'Abd al-Rahman I, 418  
Palm-trees of Hulwan, the  
two, 292  
Palmryra, 33, 53  
Panegyric, two-sided (rhetori-  
cal figure), 311  
Panjab (Punjab), the, 203,  
268  
Pantheism, 231, 233, 234, 275,  
372, 390, 391, 394, 402, 403,  
460  
Paracelsus, 388  
Paradise, the Muhammadan,  
burlesqued by Abu'l-'Ala  
al-Ma'arri, 318, 319  
Parthian kings, the, 457  
Parwez, son of Hurmuz (Sa-  
sanian), 48, 69  
Passion Play, the, 218  
Paul and Virginia, 469  
Pavet de Courteille, 349  
Pearl-fishing in the Persian  
Gulf, 354  
Pedro of Castile, 437  
Penitents, the (a name given  
to certain Shi'ite insur-  
gents), 218  
Pentateuch, the, 165, 171, 323  
Perfect Man, doctrine of the,  
402  
Persecution of the early Mos-  
lems, 154, 155, 157; of heret-  
ics, 224, 368, 369, 372-373,  
376, 436, 460, 461  
Persepolis, 356  
Persia, xxiv, xxvii, xxix, 21,  
29, 33, 34, 38, 41, 42, 46, 113,

169, 182, 184, 185, 188, 208,  
214, 247, 255, 258, 265, 266,  
274, 279, 328, 348, 349, 390,  
394, 404, 444, 446, 454, 457  
Persia, the Moslem conquest  
of, 184  
Persia, the national legend of,  
349  
Persian divines, influence of  
the, 278  
Persian Gulf, the, 4, 107, 354,  
357  
Persian influence on Arabic  
civilisation and literature,  
xxviii, xxix, 182, 250, 256,  
265, 267, 276-281, 287, 288,  
290, 295, 418  
Persian influence on the Shi'a,  
214, 219  
Persian Kings, *History of the*,  
translated by Ibnu 'l-Mu-  
qaffa', 348  
Persian literature, fostered by  
the Samanids and Buway-  
hids, 265, 303  
Persian Moslems who wrote  
in Arabic, xxx, xxxi, 276-  
278  
Persians, the, rapidly became  
Arabised, 280, 281  
Persians, the, in -Yemen, 29  
Petra, xxv, 5  
Petrarch, 425  
Pharaoh, 162, 403  
Pharaohs, the, 4, 5  
Philip III, 441  
Philistines, the, 3  
Philologists, the Arab, xxiv,  
32, 127, 128, 133, 246, 341-  
348  
Philosophers, the Greek, 341,  
363  
Philosophers, the Moslem, 360,  
361, 381, 382, 432-434  
Philosophers and scientists,  
*Lives of the*, by Ibnu 'l-  
Qaffi, 355  
Philosophus *Autodidactus*, 433  
Phonician language, the, xvi  
Phonicians, the, xv  
Physicians, *History of the*, by  
Ibn Abi Usayb'a, 266, 355  
Piers the Plowman, 450  
Pietists, the, 207, 208  
Pilgrimage to Mecca, the, 63,  
65, 133, 136, 319  
Pilgrimage, of the Shi'ites, to  
the tomb of -Husayn at  
Karbala, 218, 466  
pir (Persian word), 392  
Plato, 304  
Plutarch, 363  
Pocock, E., 433  
Poems of the Hudhaylites, the,  
128  
Poems, the Pre-Islamic, xxii,  
xxiii, 30, 31, 71-140, 282,  
285-289, 290; chief col-  
lections of, 127-131; the  
tradition of, 131-134; first  
put into writing, 132

Poems, the Suspended. See  
-Mu'allagat  
Poetics, work on, by Ibnu  
'l-Mu'tazz, 325  
Poetry, Arabian, the origins  
of, 72-75; the decline of,  
not due to Muhammad, 235;  
in the Umayyad period,  
235-246; in the 'Abbasid  
period, 285-336; in Spain,  
415-417, 425, 426; after the  
Mongol Invasion, 448-450  
Poetry, conventions of the  
Ancient, criticised, 286, 288,  
315  
Poetry, Muhammadan views  
regarding the merits of,  
308-312; intimately con-  
nected with public life, 436;  
seven kinds of, 450  
Poetry, the oldest written  
Arabic, 138  
Poetry and Poets, *Book of*, by  
Ibn Qutayba. See *Kutub*  
*'l-Sha'r wa'l-Sha'ara*  
Poets, the Modern, 289-336;  
judged on their merits by  
Ibn Qutayba, 287; pro-  
nounced superior to the  
Ancients, 288, 289  
Poets, the Pre-Islamic, char-  
acter and position of, 71-  
75; regarded as classical,  
xxiii, 72, 285, 286  
Politics, treatise on, by -Ma-  
wardi, 337, 338  
Portugal, 416  
Postal service, organised by  
'Abdu 'l-Malik, 201  
Postmaster, the office of, 45  
Pratorius, F., 10  
Prayers, the five daily, 149, 163  
Predestination, 157, 223, 224,  
378, 379  
Preston, Theodore, 330  
Prideaux, W. F., 21, 13  
Primitive races in Arabia, 1-4  
Proclus, 389  
Procreation, considered sin-  
ful, 317  
Prophecy, a, made by the  
Carmathians, 322  
Prose, Arabic, the beginnings  
of, 31  
Proverbs, Arabic, 3, 16, 31, 50,  
84, 91, 109, 244, 292, 373  
Ptolemies, the, 276  
Ptolemy (geographer), 3, 358  
Public recitation of literary  
works, 314  
Pyramids, the, 354  
Pyrenees, the, xxviii, 204  
Pythagoras, 102

Q

Qabus (Lakhmite), 44, 45, 52  
qadar (power), 224  
-Qadariyya (the upholders of  
free-will), 224  
qadakh (oculist), 271

- qadi 'I-qudat* (Chief Justice), 395  
*Qadiri* dervish order, the, 393  
*Qahira*, 275, 394. See *Cairo*  
*qahramana*, 457  
*Qahtan*, xviii, 12, 14, 18, 200  
*Qala'idu 'l-Iqyan*, 425  
*Qamus*, 403, 456  
*Qanun*, 361  
*qara'a*, 159  
*Qarafa* cemetery, 396  
*Qaramita*, 274. See *Carmanians*, the  
*qarawi*, 138  
*qarn*, meaning 'ray', 18  
*qasida* (ode), 76-78, 105, 288  
*qasida* (ode), form of the, 76, 77; contents and divisions of the, 77, 78; loose structure of the, 134; unsuitable to the conditions of urban life, 288  
*Qasidatu 'l-Burda*. See *Burda*  
*Qasidatu 'l-Himyariyya*, 12  
*Qasir*, 36, 37  
*Qasirin*, 111  
*Qasiyun*, Mt., 399  
*Qastallani*, 455  
*Qatada*, 294  
*Qatari b. Fuja'a*, 213  
*Qayrawan*, 264, 429  
*Qays 'Aylan* (tribe), xix, 199, 293, 405  
*Qays b. Khatim*, 94-97, 137  
*Qays b. Zuhayr*, 61, 62  
*Qayyar* (title), 45  
*Qazwin*, 445  
*Qazwini* (geographer), 416  
*Qift*, 355  
*Qiyas*, 297  
*Qniya*, 404  
*Quatremere, M.*, xxv, 437, 445, 453  
*Qudar* the Red, 3  
*Qumis* (province), 391  
*Qur'an*, 159. See *Koran*, the  
*Quraysh* (tribe), xix, xxiii, xxvii, 22, 84, 65-68, 117, 124, 134, 142, 146, 153-158, 164, 165, 170, 174, 175, 183, 207, 216, 237, 241, 279, 330, 347, 375, 407, 417  
*Quraysh*, the dialect of, xxiii, 142; regarded as the classical standard, xxiii, 134  
*Qurayza* (tribe), 21, 170  
*qurra* (Readers of the Koran), 277. See *Koran-readers*, the  
*Qusayy*, 64, 65, 146  
*Qushayri*, 226, 227, 228, 230, 338, 379  
*Quss b. Sa'ida*, 136  
*qusais*, 374  
*Qusta b. Luqa*, 359  
*Qudu 'l-Qulud*, 338, 393
- R
- rahad*, 409  
*Rabi'*, son of Fatima, the daughter of Khurshub, 88  
*Rabi'a al-'Adawiyya*, 227, 232, 233-234  
*Rabi'a b. Nizar*, xix, 5  
*Rabi'a* (b. Nizar), the descendants of, xix  
*Racine*, 469  
*Radi*, the Caliph, 376  
*Radwa*, Mount, 216  
*Rafidites*, the, 268. See *Shi'ites*, the  
*Ra'i 'l-Ibil* (poet), 245, 246  
*raja* (palingenesis), 113  
*rajaz* (metre), 74, 75, 76, 77  
*Rakhman*, 126  
*Rakusians*, the, 149  
*Ralfs*, C. A., 327  
*Ramadan*, the Fast of, 224, 450  
*Ramla*, 229  
*Raqqa*, 274  
*Rasul al-Ikhwan al-Safa*, 370, 371  
*Rasmussen*, 61  
*Rationalism*. See *Mu'tazilites* and *Free-thought*  
*Rawda*, island on the Nile, 455  
*rawi* (reciter), 131  
*Rawis*, the, 131-134  
*Raydan*, 10  
*Rayy*, 258, 259, 268, 333, 350, 361, 420, 445  
*Rayyan*, 120  
*Razi* (Abu Bakr), physician, 361. See *Abu Bakr al-Razi*  
*Razi* (Abu Bakr), historian, 420  
*Reading* and *writing* despised by the pagan Arabs, 39  
*Realists*, 368  
*Red Sea*, the, 4, 5, 62  
*Reformation*, the, 468  
*Reforms* of 'Abdu 'l-Malik, 201; of 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Aziz, 205  
*Register* of 'Umar, the, 187, 188  
*Reiske*, 15, 102, 308, 312, 316, 331  
*Religion*, conceived as a product of the human mind, 317  
*Religion* of the Sabaeans and Himyarites, 10, 11; of the Pagan Arabs, 56, 135-140, 164, 166; associated with commerce, 135, 154  
*Religions and Sects*, Book of, by Shahrastani, 341; by Ibn Hazm, 341. See *Kutubu 'l-Milal wa-'l-Nihal*  
*Religious* ideas in Pre-Islamic poetry, 117, 119, 123, 124, 135-140  
*Religious* literature in the 'Abbasid period, 337-341  
*Religious* poetry, 298-302  
*Renaissance*, the, 443  
*Renan*, xv, 432  
*Renegades*, the, 408, 415, 426  
*Resurrection*, the, 166, 215, 297, 299, 316  
*Revenge*, views of the Arabs concerning, 93, 94; poems relating to, 97  
*Rhages*. See *Rayy*  
*Rhapsodists*, the, 131  
*Rhazes*, 261, 361. See *Abu Bakr al-Razi*  
*Rhetoric*, treatise on, by Jahiz, 347  
*Rhinoceros*, the, 354  
*Rhymed* Prose. See *saj'*  
*Rihab b. Murra*, 25  
*ribat*, 276, 430  
*Richelieu*, 195  
*Rifa'i* dervish order, the, 393  
*Rijam*, 119  
*Risalat al-Ghufran*, 166, 167, 205, 318, 319, 375  
*Risalat al-Qushayriyya*, 226, 227, 338  
*Roderic*, 204, 405  
*Rödiger*, Emil, 8  
*Roger II* of Sicily, 434  
*Rome*, 33, 34, 41, 43, 50, 57, 113, 252, 314. See *Byzantine Empire*, the  
*Ronda*, 410  
*Rosary*, use of the, prohibited, 467  
*Rosen*, Baron V., 375  
*Rothstein*, Dr. G., 37, 53  
*Rub' al-Khail*, xvii  
*Rubicon*, the, 252  
*Rückert*, Friedrich, 93, 97, 104, 292, 332  
*Rudagi*, Persian poet, 265  
*Ruhu 'l-Quds* (the Holy Ghost), 150  
*ruiz*, 152  
*Ruknu 'l-Dawla* (Buwayhid), 266, 267  
*Rumaykiyya*, 422  
*Rushayyid al-Dahdah*, 394, 396  
*Rustam*, 330, 363  
*Ruzbih*, 346. See *Ibn 'l-Muqaffa'*
- S
- Sa'b Dhu 'l-Qarnayn*, 17  
*Sab' al-Tisal* (the Seven Long Poems), 193  
*Saba* (Sheba), xxv, 1, 4, 5, 6, 10, 16, 17. See *Sabaeans*, the  
*Saba* (person), 14  
*Sabaeans* language, the, xvi. See *South Arabic language*, the  
*Sabaeans*, the, xv, xvii, xviii, xx, xxi, 1, 4, 5, 7, 14, 17  
*Saba'ites*, the, a Shi'ite sect, 215, 216, 217, 219  
*Sabians*, the, 149, 341, 354, 358, 363, 364, 388  
*Sab'iyya* (the Seveners), 217  
*Sabota*, 5  
*Sabuktagin*, 268



- Sabur I, 33  
 Sabur b. Ardashir, 267, 314  
 Sacbau, E., xxxi, 361  
 Sacy, Silvestre de, 8, 80, 102, 353, 354  
 Sa'd (client of Jassas b. Murra), 56, 57  
 Sa'd (tribe), 147  
 Sa'd b. Malik b. Dubay'a, 57  
 sada (owl or wraith), 94, 166  
 Sa'd-Allah, 11  
 sadin, 259  
 -Sadir (castle), 41  
 Sadru 'l-Din of Qoniya, 404  
 safa (purity), 228, 370  
 Safa, the inscriptions of, xxi  
 -Safadi, 326, 456  
 Saffar-Nama, 324  
 Saffawid dynasty, the, xxix  
 -Saffah, 253, 254, 257, 259  
 -Saffah b. Abd Manaf, 253  
 -Saffah, meaning of the title, 253  
 -Saffar (title), 265  
 Saffarid dynasty, the, 265  
 sah (pure), 228  
 Sahybu 'l-Din al-Hilli (poet), 449, 450  
 sag (Persian word), 445  
 -Sahaba (the Companions of the Prophet), 229  
 Sahara, the, 423, 429, 468  
 -Sahib Isma'il b. 'Abbad, 267, 347  
 Sahibul 'l-Zanadiqa (title), 373  
 -Sahib, of -Bulchari, 144, 146, 337  
 -Sahib, of Muslim, 144, 337  
 Sahb b. 'Abdallah al-Tustari, 392  
 Sa'id b. Husayn, 274  
 St. John, the Cathedral of, 203  
 St. Thomas, the Church of, at -Hiira, 46  
 Saints, female, 233  
 Saints, the Moslem, 386, 393, 395, 402, 403, 463, 467  
 say' (rhymed prose), 74, 75, 159, 327, 328  
 Sakhr, brother of -Khamsa, 126, 127  
 Sal', 398  
 Saladin, 273, 348, 355  
 Salahu 'l-Din b. Ayyub, 275. See *Saladin*  
 Salama b. Khalid, 253  
 Salaman, 433  
 Salaman (tribe), 79  
 Salamya, 274  
 Salih (prophet), 3  
 Salih (tribe), 50  
 Salih b. 'Abd al-Quddus, 372-375  
 Salim al-Suddi, 204  
 Saltpetre industry, the, at -Basra, 273  
 Sam b. Nuh, xviii. See *Shem, the son of Noah*  
 sama' (oral tradition), 297  
 sama' (religious music), 394  
 Samah'ali Yanuf, 10, 17  
 -Sam'ani, 339  
 Samanid dynasty, the, 265, 268, 268, 271, 303  
 Samarcand, 203, 268, 447  
 Samarra, 263  
 -Samaw'al b. 'Adiya, 84, 85  
 Samuel Ha-Levi, 428, 429  
 Sam'a, 8, 9, 17, 24, 28, 66, 215  
 sanad, 144  
 -Sanhaji, 456  
 Sanjar (Seljuq), 264  
 -Sanusi (Muhammad b. Yusuf), 456  
 Sanusiyya Brotherhood, the, 468  
 -Saqliba, 413  
 Sagta 'l-Zand, 313, 315  
 Sarabi (name of a she-camel), 56  
 Sargon, King, 4  
 Sari al-Raffa (poet), 270  
 Sari al-Saqati, 386  
 Saruf, 330, 331, 332  
 Sa'sa'a, 242  
 Sasanian dynasty, the, 34, 38, 40, 41, 42, 214, 256, 358, 457  
 Sasanian kings, the, regarded as divine, 214  
 Satire, 73, 200, 245, 246  
 Saturn and Jupiter, conjunction of, 322  
 Sa'ud b. 'Abd al-'Aziz b. Muhammad b. Sa'ud, 466  
 Sawa, 333  
 Sayf b. Dhi Yazan, 29  
 -Sayfiyya College, the, in Cairo, 395  
 Sayfu 'l-Dawla (Hamdanid), 269-271, 303-307, 311, 313, 360  
 Sayin 'l-Arim, 14  
 Schack, A. F. von, 360, 416, 439, 441  
 Schofer, C., 324  
 Scheherazade, 457  
 Scholasticism, Muhammadan, 284, 363, 460. See *-Ash'ari; Ash'arites; Orthodox Reaction*  
 Schreiner, 379  
 Schultze, F., 87  
 Sciences, the Fornig, 282, 283, 338-364  
 Sciences, the Moslem, development and classification of, 282, 283  
 Scripture, People of the, 341  
 Sea-serpent, the, 354  
 Sedillot, 360  
 Seetzen, Ulrich Jasper, 8  
 Seleucids, the, 276  
 Self, dying to (*sama*), the Sufi doctrine of, 233  
 Selim I (Ottoman Sultan), 448  
 Seljuq dynasty, the, 264, 265, 268, 275, 276, 326, 443  
 Seljuq b. Tuqaq, 275  
 Seljuq Turks, the, 275, 444  
 Sell, Rev. E., 468  
 Semites, the, xv, xvi, 1, 328  
 Semitic languages, the, xv, xvi  
 Senegal, 430  
 Seville, 399, 406, 416, 420, 421, 422, 424, 425, 427, 431, 435, 437, 447  
 Shabib, 209  
 Shabwat, 5  
 Shaddad (king), 1  
 Shaddad b. -Aswad al-Laythi, 166  
 -Shadharatu 'l-Dhakab, 339, 392, 436, 460  
 -Shadhili (Abu 'l-Hasan), 461  
 Shadhili order of dervishes, 393, 461  
 -Shafi'i, 284, 409  
 Shafi'ite doctors, biographical work on the, 339  
 -Shahnama, the, by Firdawsi, 265, 325  
 -Shahrastani, 211, 216, 220, 221, 223, 224, 297, 311, 388  
 Shahrazad, 457  
 sha'ir (poet), 72, 73  
 Shakespeare, 252  
 Shamir b. Dhi 'l-Jawshan, 196, 197, 198  
 Shams (name of a god), 11  
 Shams b. Malik, 81  
 -Shamsiyya, Queen of Arabia, 4  
 -Shamsu 'l-'Ulam, 13  
 -Shanfara, 79-81, 89, 97, 134, 326  
 Sharq (Abu 'Ali), of Balkh, 232, 233, 385  
 Sharahil (Sharahbil), 18  
 -Sha'rani, 225, 226, 392, 400, 403, 443, 460, 462, 464-465  
 -shari'at, 392  
 -Sharif al-Jurjani, 456  
 -Sharif al-Kadi (poet), 314  
 Sharifs, of Morocco, the, 442  
 Sharik b. 'Amr, 44  
 Shas, 125  
 Shayban (clan of Bakr), 58  
 -Shaykh al-Akbar, 404. See *Muhyi 'l-Din Ibnu 'l-Arabi*  
 Sheba, 4  
 Sheba, the Queen of, 18  
 Shem, the son of Noah, xv, xviii  
 sha's (party), 213  
 Sha's, the, 213. See *Shi'ites, the*  
 -Shifa, 361  
 Shihabu 'l-Din al-Suhrawardi. See *-Suhrawardi*  
 -Shir, dialect of, xxi  
 Shi'ites, the, xxviii, 207, 208, 213-220, 222, 248, 249, 250, 262, 267, 268, 271-275, 297, 379, 409, 428, 432, 445, 466  
 -shikafi (Persian word), 232  
 -shikafiyya (the Cave-dwellers), 232  
 Shih, 416  
 Shikar, 266, 307  
 Shifrazad, 457

- Shirbini, 450  
 -shurat (the Sellers), 209  
 Shu'ubites, the, 279-280, 344, 372  
 Sibawayhi, 343  
 Sibt Ibn al-Jawzi, 355  
 Sicily, xvi, 52, 441  
 siddiq, meaning of, 218, 375  
 -Siddiq (title of Abu Bakr), 183  
 Sidi Khalil al-Jundi, 456  
 Sifat Jari al-'Arab, 12, 18, 20  
 Siffin, battle of, 192, 208, 377  
 -sir wa-'l-kimiya (Magic and Alchemy), 283  
 -Sila fi ahbabi a'immati 'l-Andalus, 416  
 Silves, 416  
 Simak b. 'Ubayd, 210  
 Sinbadh the Magian, 258  
 Sindbad, the Book of, 363  
 Sinimmar, 40  
 Siqadan, 252  
 Siratu 'Anjar, 459  
 Siratu Rasuli 'l-lah, 349  
 siyaka, 394  
 Siyaru Muluk al-'Ajam, 348  
 Slane, Baron MacGuckin de, 32, 104, 129, 132, 136, 190, 213, 224, 229, 245, 261, 267, 278, 288, 289, 295, 326, 343, 344, 348, 355, 357, 359, 360, 377, 377, 378, 387, 408, 422, 425, 427, 429, 435, 437, 438, 440, 451  
 Slaves, the, 413  
 Smith, R. Payne, 52  
 Smith, W. Robertson, 56, 199  
 Snouck Hurgronje, 217  
 Soetra, dialect of, xxi  
 Solecisms, work on, by -Hariri, 336  
 Solomon, xvii  
 Solomon Ibn Gabirol, 428  
 Soothsayers, Arabian, 72, 74, 152, 159, 265  
 South Arabic Inscriptions, the. See *Inscriptions, South Arabic*  
 South Arabic language, the, xvi, xxi, 6-11  
 Spain, xvi, xxx, 199, 203, 204, 253, 264, 276, 399, 405-441, 442, 443, 449, 454  
 Spain, the Moslem conquest of, 203, 204, 405  
 Spencer, Herbert, 382  
 Spitta, 378  
 Sprenger, A., 143, 145, 149, 153, 456  
 Steiner, 369  
 Steingass, F., 328  
 Stephen bar Sudall, 389  
 Stones, the worship of, in pagan Arabia, 56  
 Stories, frivolous, reprobated by strict Moslems, 330  
 Street-preachers, 374  
 Stylistic, manual of, by Ibn Qutayba, 346  
 -Subdi (Taj al-Din), 461  
 Suetonius, 334  
 suf (wool), 228  
 Sufi, derivation of, 227, 228; meaning of, 228, 229, 230  
 Sufism, 227-235, 382, 383-404, 460, 462, 463-465  
 Sufism, Arabic works of reference on, 338  
 Sufism, origins of, 228-231, 388-389; distinguished from asceticism, 229, 230, 231; the keynote of, 231; argument against the Indian origin of, 233; composed of many different elements, 389, 390; different schools of, 390; foreign sources of, 390; principles of, 392; definitions of, 228, 385, 392  
 Sufis, the, 206, 327, 339, 381, 460-465. See *Sufism*  
 Suiyan b. 'Uyayna, 166  
 Suhaym b. Wathil (poet), 202  
 -Suhrawardi (Shihab al-Din Abu Hafs 'Umar), 230, 232, 338, 396  
 -Suhrawardi (Shihab al-Din Yahya), 275  
 -Sukkari, 128, 343  
 -Sulayk b. -Sulaka, 89  
 Sulaym (tribe), xix  
 Sulayma, 34  
 Sulayman (Umayyad Caliph), 200, 203  
 Sulayman al-Bistami, 469  
 -Suli, 297  
 -Suluk li-ma'rifati Duwal al-Muluk, 453  
 -Sumayl b. Hatim, 406  
 Sumayya, 195  
 -Sunan, of Abu Dawud al-Sijistani, 337  
 -Sunan, of Ibn Maja, 337  
 -Sunan, of -Nasa'i, 337  
 -sunna, 144, 234  
 -sunna, collections of traditions bearing on, 337  
 Sunnis, the, 207  
 Sunnis and Shi'ites, riot between the, 445  
 sura, 143, 159  
 Sura of Abu Lahab, the, 160  
 Sura of Coagulated Blood, the, 151  
 Sura of the Elephant, the, 68  
 Sura of the Enwrapped, the, 152  
 Sura of the Morning, the, 152  
 Sura, the Opening, 143, 168  
 Sura of Purification, the, 164. See *Suratu 'l-Ikhlās*  
 Sura of the Securing, the, 161  
 Sura of the Signs, the, 162  
 Sura of the Smiting, the, 163  
 Sura of the Unbelievers, the, 163  
 Suratu 'l-Fatiha (the opening chapter of the Koran), 168. See *Sura, the Opening*  
 Suratu 'l-Ikhlās, 461. See *Sura of Purification, the*  
 Suratu 'l-Tahrim, 454  
 Surra-man-ra'a, 263  
 Surshana, 391  
 Sus, 431  
 Suwayqa, 398  
 Suyut, 454  
 -Suyuti (Jalal al-Din), 55, 71, 145, 403, 454, 455  
 Syria, xxiv, xxvii-xxx, 3, 5, 26, 33, 35, 43, 46, 49, 50, 51, 52, 54, 63, 73, 84, 123, 132, 142, 148, 170, 184, 185, 186, 191, 193, 199, 207, 215, 232, 240, 247, 255, 262, 268, 269, 271, 274, 275, 303, 304, 350, 355, 358, 381, 388, 390, 405, 418, 419, 442, 443, 446, 448, 451, 461, 468  
 Syria, conquest of, by the Moslems, 184  
 T  
 Ta'abbata Sharra (poet), 79, 81, 97, 107, 126  
 Tabala, 105  
 Tabagatu 'l-Atibba, 266  
 Tabagatu 'l-Sufiyya, 338  
 Tabaran, 339  
 -Tabari, 1, 27, 35, 37, 38, 41, 42, 44, 45, 48, 49, 66-68, 70, 145, 155, 156, 158, 185, 186, 187, 189, 210, 212, 215, 218, 219, 256, 258, 259, 265, 277, 340, 352, 355, 356, 373, 376  
 -Tabari's Annals, abridgment of, by -Bal'ami, 265, 352  
 Tabaristan, 350  
 Tab'iyyan, 381  
 -Tabi'un (the Successors), 229  
 Table, the Guarded, 163  
 Tabriz, 461  
 Tacitus, 194  
 Tadkhiratu 'l-Awliya, by Faridu'ddin 'Attar, 220, 228, 387  
 Tadiis, 145  
 Tafsiru 'l-Jalalayn, 455  
 Tafsiru 'l-Qur'an, by -Tabari, 1, 145, 351  
 -Tafazzani, 456  
 Taghlib (tribe), xix, 44, 55-60, 61, 76, 93, 107, 109, 110, 112, 113, 240, 253, 269  
 Tahafutu 'l-Falasiya, 341  
 Tahir, 262, 263  
 Tahiri dynasty, the, 263, 265  
 Tahrimu 'l-makarid, 297  
 Ta'il, 158  
 -Ta'yyatu 'l-Kubra, 396, 397, 402  
 -Ta'yutu 'l-Sughra, 397  
 tajrid, 394  
 Talha, 190  
 Ta'limites, the, 381, 382  
 Talisman, the, 469  
 Tamerlane, 437. See *Timur*  
 Tamim (tribe), xix, 135, 242, 293

- Tamim al-Dari, 225  
*tanasukk* (metempsychosis), 267  
 Tanukh (tribe), xviii, 34, 38  
*taqīd*, 402  
 Tarafa (poet), 44, 101, 107-109, 128, 138, 308  
*tardiyat*, 294  
*Ta'rikhu 'l-Hind*, 361  
*Ta'rikhu 'l-Hukama*, 355, 370  
*Ta'rikhu 'l-Khams*, 445  
*Ta'rikhu 'l-Khulafa*, 455  
*Ta'rikhu 'l-Rusul wa-'l-Muluk*, 351  
*Ta'rikhu 'l-Tamaddun al-Islami*, 435  
 Tariq, 204, 405  
*Tarjumanu 'l-Ashwaq*, 403  
 Tarsus, 361  
 Tartary, 444  
*tasawwuf* (Sufism), 228  
 Tasm (tribe), 4, 25  
*tawaf*, 117  
*tawakkul*, 233  
*tawhid*, 401  
*ta'wil* (Interpretation), the doctrine of, 220  
*ta'wil* (metre), 75, 80  
 -Tawwabun (the Penitents), 218  
 Tayma, 84  
 Tayyi' (tribe), xviii, 44, 53, 115  
*ta'ziya* (Passion Play), 218  
 Teheran, 361  
 Temple, the, at Jerusalem, 169, 177  
 Tennyson, 79  
 Teresa, St., 233  
 Testament, the Old, 161, 179  
 -Tha'alibi, 267, 271, 288, 290, 303, 304, 308-312, 348  
 Thabit b. Jahl b. Sufyan, 81, 126. See *Ta'abata Sharra*  
 Thabit b. Qurra, 359  
 Thabit Qutna, 221  
 Tha'lab, 344  
 Thales, 363  
 Thamud, 1, 8, 162  
*thamawī*, 374  
 Thapem, 274  
 Thaqlif (tribe), 69  
 Theodore Abuqura, 221  
 Theologians, influence of, in the 'Abbasid period, 247, 283, 356, 367  
 Thomas (St. Thomas), 46  
 Thomas Aquinas, 367  
 Thorbecke, H., 55, 90, 114, 129, 336, 459  
*Thousand and One Nights*, the, 34, 456-459. See *Arabian Nights*, the  
 -*ḥubb* (medicine), 283  
 Tiberius, 194  
 -Tibrizi (commentator), 55, 130  
 Tibullus, 425  
 Tides, a dissertation on, 354  
 Tigris, the, 189, 238, 256, 446  
 -Thama, 62  
 Tihama, the, of Mecca, 3
- Tilimsan, 454  
 Timur, xxix, 444, 454. See *Tamerlane*  
 Timour, biography of, by Ibn 'Arabshah, 454  
*tinmin*, 354  
 -Tirmimah (poet), 138  
 -Tirmidhi (Abu 'Isa Muhammad), 337  
 Titus, 137  
 Tobacco, the smoking of, prohibited, 467  
 Toledo, 204, 421-423  
 Toleration, of Moslems towards Zoroastrians, 184; towards Christians, 184, 414, 441  
 Torab, the, 403. See *Pentateuch*  
 Tornberg, 203, 205, 253, 355, 429  
 Tours, battle of, 204  
 Trade between India and Arabia, 4, 5  
 Trade, expansion of, in the 'Abbasid period, 281  
 Traditional or Religious Sciences, the, 282  
 Traditions, the Apostolic, collections of, 144, 247, 337  
 Traditions of the Prophet, 143-148, 217, 277, 278, 279, 282, 337, 356, 378, 462, 463, 464, 465, 467  
 Trajan, xxv  
 Translations into Arabic, from Pehlevi, 330, 346, 348, 358; from Greek, 358, 359, 469; from Coptic, 358; from English and French, 469  
 Translators of scientific books into Arabic, the, 358, 359, 363  
 Transoxania, 203, 233, 263, 265, 266, 275, 360, 419, 444  
 Transoxania, conquest of, by the Moslems, 203  
 Tribal constitution, the, 83  
 Tribes, the Arab, xix, xx  
 Tripoli, 468  
 Tubba's, the (Himyarite kings), 5, 14, 17-28, 42  
 Tudih, 398  
*tughra*, 326  
*tughra'* (chancellor), 326  
 -Tughra' (poet), 326  
 Tughril Beg, 264, 275  
*tuḥm*, 286  
 Tumadir, 126  
 Tunisia, 174, 428, 437, 441  
 Turkey, xvi, 169, 394, 404, 445, 466  
 Turkey, the Sultans of, 448  
 Turks, the, 263, 264, 268, 325, 343. See *Ottoman Turks*; *Seljuq Turks*  
 Tus, 339, 349  
 Turwayil, 398  
 Tuways, 236  
*Twenty Years After*, by Dumas, 272
- U  
 'Ubaydu'llah, the Mahdi, 274  
 'Ubaydu'llah b. Yahya, 359  
 'Ubaydu'llah b. Ziyad, 296, 298  
 Udhayna (Odenathus), 33, 35  
 Uhud, battle of, 170, 175  
 'Ukar, the fair of, 101, 102, 135  
 -'Ulama, 320, 367, 460, 461  
 Ultra-Shi'ites, the, 258. See -*Ghulat*  
 'Uman (province), 4, 62  
 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Aziz (Umayyad Caliph), 200, 203, 204-206, 283  
 'Umar b. Abi Rahl'a (poet), 237  
 'Umar Ibnu 'l-Farid (poet), 325, 394-398, 402, 448, 462  
 'Umar b. Hafsun, 410  
 'Umar b. al-Khattab (Caliph), xxvii, 51, 105, 127, 142, 157, 183, 185-190, 204, 210, 214, 215, 242, 254, 268, 297, 435  
 'Umar Khayyam, 339  
 'Umar, 88  
 Umayma (name of a woman), 90, 91, 92  
 Umayya, ancestor of the Umayyads, 65, 146, 181, 190  
 Umayya b. Abi 'l-Salt (poet), 69, 149-150  
 Umayyad dynasty, the, xxviii, 65, 134, 181, 190, 193-208, 214, 222, 264, 273, 274, 278, 279, 282, 283, 347, 358, 366, 373, 408  
 Umayyad literature, 235-247  
 Umayyads (descendants of Umayya), the, 190, 191. See *Umayyad dynasty*, the  
 Umayyads, Moslem prejudice against the, 154, 193, 194, 197, 207  
 Umayyads of Spain, the, 253, 264, 347, 405-414  
 -'Umda, by Ibn Rashid, 283  
 Umm 'Asim, 204  
 Umm Jamil, 89  
 Unays, 67  
 -'Urayd, 398  
 Urquid dynasty, the, 449  
 -'Uda' 'l-Ghaha, 356  
 'Ufayn, 22  
 -'Ustad, 392  
 Ustadhisi, 258  
 Usyut, 454  
 -'Utha, a slave-girl, 296  
 -'Uthi (historian), 269, 354  
 -'Uthman b. 'Affan, Caliph, xxvii, 142, 185, 190, 191, 210, 211, 213, 214, 215, 221, 236, 297  
 -'Uyuna 'l-Akhdar, 346  
 -'Uyuna 'l-Anha fi *Tabaqat al-Akhdar*, 355. See *Tabaqat al-Akhdar*  
 -'Uzza (goddess), 43, 135, 155



## V

- Valencia, 421  
 Valerian, 33  
 Van Vloten, 221, 222, 250  
 Vedanta, the, 384  
 Venus, 18  
 Vico, 439  
 Victor Hugo, 312  
 Villon, 243  
 Visier, the office of, 256, 257.  
 See *wasir*  
 Viziers of the Buwayhid  
 dynasty, the, 267  
 Vogue, C. J. M. de, xxii  
 Voliers, 450  
 Vowel-marks in Arabic script,  
 201

## W

- Wadd, name of a god, 123  
 Wadi 'l-Mustad'afin, 394  
 Wafayatu 'l-'A'yan, 451, 452.  
 See *Ibn Khalishan*  
 -Wafi bi 'l-Wafayat, 456  
 -wafir (metre), 75  
 Wabb b. Munabbih, 247, 459  
 wahlata 'l-wujud, monism,  
 402  
 Wahhabis, the, 463, 465-468  
 Wahhabite Reformation, the,  
 465-468  
 -Wahidi (commentator), 305,  
 307  
 -wa'id, 297  
 Wa'il, xix, 56, 57  
 wajd, mystical term, 387, 394  
 Wajra, 398  
 -Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik  
 (Umayyad Caliph), 200,  
 208, 405  
 -Walid b. Yazid (Umayyad  
 Caliph), 132, 206, 291, 375  
 Wallada, 424, 425  
 -Waqidi (historian), 144, 261,  
 349  
 Waraqa b. Nawfal, 149, 150  
 wasi (executor), 215  
 Wasil b. 'Ata, 223, 224, 374  
 Wasit, 385, 386  
 Water-diviners, honoured by  
 the pagan Arabs, 73  
 -Watting, the Caliph, 257, 369  
 wasir, an Arabic word, 256.  
 See *Visier*  
 Wellhausen, J., 56, 128, 135,  
 139, 149, 149, 173, 198,  
 205, 207, 209, 210, 215, 218,  
 219, 222, 250, 365  
 Well-songs, 73  
 Wellsted, J. K., 8  
 West Gothic dynasty in  
 Spain, the, 204  
 Weyers, 425  
 Wine-songs, 124, 125, 138,  
 206, 325, 417  
 Witches, Ballad of the Three,  
 19  
 Women famed as poets, 89,  
 126, 127; as Sufis, 233

- Women, position of, in Pre-  
 Islamic times, 87-92  
 Woollen garments, a sign of  
 asceticism, 228, 296  
 Wright, W., 202, 226, 343  
 Writing, Arabic, the oldest  
 specimens of, xxi  
 Writing, the art of, in Pre-  
 Islamic times, xxii, 31, 102,  
 131, 138  
 Wostenfeld, F., xviii, 17, 129,  
 132, 190, 213, 243, 253, 275,  
 295, 357, 376, 408, 416, 452,  
 459

## X

- Xerxes, 256  
 Ximenez, Archbishop, 435

## Y

- Yahud (the Jews), 171  
 Yahya b. Abi Mansur, 359  
 Yahya b. Khalid, 259, 260,  
 451  
 Yahya b. Yahya, the Berber,  
 408, 409  
 Yaksum, 28  
 -Yamama, 25, 111, 124  
 -Yamama, battle of, xxii, 142  
 Ya'qub b. -Layth, 265  
 Ya'qub al-Mansur (Almo-  
 hade), 432  
 -Ya'qubi (Ibn Wadli), his-  
 torian, 193, 194, 349  
 Yaqut, 17, 357  
 Ya'rub, 14  
 Yatha'amar (Sasanian king), 4  
 Yatha'amar Bayyin, 10, 17  
 Yathrib, 62. See *Medina*  
 Yathrippa, 62  
 -Yatima. See *Yatimatu 'l-  
 Dahr*  
 Yatimatu 'l-Dahr, 267, 271,  
 304, 308, 348  
 -Yawagut, by -Sha'rani, 403,  
 460  
 Yazdigird I (Sasanian), 40, 41  
 Yazid b. 'Abd al-Malik (U-  
 mayyad Caliph), 200  
 Yazid b. Abi Sufyan, 426  
 Yazid b. Mu'awiya (Umayyad  
 Caliph), 195-199, 208, 241  
 Yazid b. Rabi'a b. Mufarrigh,  
 19  
 -Yemen (-Yaman), xvii, 2, 5,  
 7, 11, 12, 15, 17, 22, 23, 24,  
 26, 27, 28, 29, 42, 49, 65, 68,  
 87, 99, 103, 137, 215, 247,  
 252, 274, 405  
 Yoqtan, xviii  
 Yoqtanids, the, xviii, 4. See  
*Arabs, the Yemenite*  
 Yusuf b. 'Abd al-Barr, 428  
 Yusuf b. 'Abd al-Mu'min (Al-  
 mohade), 432  
 Yusuf b. 'Abd al-Rahman al-  
 Fihri, 406  
 Yusuf b. Tashifin (Almora-  
 vids), 423, 430, 431

## Z

- Zab, battle of the, 181, 253  
 Zabud, the trilingual inscrip-  
 tion of, xxii  
 -Zabba, 35, 36, 37. See *Zeno-  
 bia*  
 Zabdai, 34  
 zaddig, 375  
 Zafar (town in -Yemen), 7, 8,  
 17, 19, 21  
 Zafar (tribe), 94  
 zahid (ascetic), 230  
 Zahirites, the, 402, 417, 433  
 -Zahra, suburb of Cordova,  
 425  
 zajal, verse-form, 416, 417,  
 449  
 Zallaqa, battle of, 423, 431  
 -Zamakhshari, 145, 280, 336  
 zandik, 375  
 -Zani, 273  
 Zanzibar, 352  
 Zapiski, 375  
 Zarica, 15  
 Zarqa'a 'l-Yamama, 25  
 Zayd, son of 'Ali b. Zayd, 48  
 Zayd b. 'Ali b. -Husayn, 297  
 Zayd b. 'Amr b. Nutayl, 149  
 Zayd b. Hammad, 45  
 Zayd b. Haritha, 153  
 Zayd b. Kilab b. Murra, 64.  
 See *Qusayy*  
 Zayl b. Rifa'a, 370  
 Zayd b. Thabit, 142  
 Zaydites, the, 297  
 Zaynab (Zenobia), 35, 36  
 Zaynab, an Arab woman, 237  
 Zaynu 'l-'Abidin, 243  
 Zenobia, 33, 34, 35  
 Zinatu 'l-Dahr, 348  
 Zindigs, the, 291, 296, 319,  
 368, 372-375, 387, 460  
 Ziryab (musician), 418  
 Ziyad, husband of Fatima,  
 the daughter of -Khurshub,  
 88  
 Ziyad ibn Abihi, 195, 256, 342  
 Ziyad b. Mu'awiya. See *-Na-  
 bigha al-Dhubyan*  
 Ziyadid dynasty, the, 442  
 Zize, the, worn by Zoroa-  
 strians, 461  
 Zoroaster, 184, 258  
 Zoroastrians, the, 184, 341,  
 354, 373, 461  
 Zotenberg, H., 352  
 Zubayda, wife of Harun al-  
 Rashid, 262  
 -Zubayr, 190  
 -Zuhara, 18  
 Zuhayr b. Abi Sulma (poet),  
 62, 118-119, 128, 131, 137,  
 140, 312  
 zuhi (asceticism), 229, 230,  
 299  
 zuhdiyyat, 294  
 Zuhra b. Kilab b. Murra, 64  
 -Zuhri (Muhammad b. Mus-  
 lim b. Shihab), 153, 247, 258  
 zunnar, 461











CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY,  
NEW DELHI

Borrowers record.

No.892.709/Nic-4283



2 ✓

